



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

his rebus gestis. omni gallia pacata
et huius belli et barbaros oppinio perlata ē. ut ab his nationibus quae
trans rhenum incolerent. mitterentur legati ad caesarem. quos obfides
et aurum imperata facturam pollicerentur. quae legationes caesar. quod
in italiam illis in cuiusque propeperabat in ita proxima aestate. ad se reuecti
iussit. ipse in carinas et ad desuronesque. quae curat. et prope in quibus
erant ubi bellum gesserat. legionibus in hiberniamque deductis. in italiam
profectus. ob eamque res ex litteris caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio
declata ē. quod contra id tempus acciderit nulli.

The Lake Classical Series

A NEW SECOND LATIN BOOK

BY

CHARLES H. BEESON

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL

(A REVISION OF THE MILLER AND BEESON SECOND LATIN BOOK)

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO **NEW YORK**

~~PL 117.6584~~

EducT 919.16.198

March 28, 1921
Harvard University,
Library of the Graduate School
of Education

TRANSFERRED TO
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
1932

COPYRIGHT 1902, 1916, BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

ROBERT O. LAW COMPANY
EDITION BOOK MANUFACTURERS
C H I C A G O, U. S. A

PREFACE

The present volume is a revision of the Miller and Beeson Second Latin Book, which was published in the year 1900. In the Preface to the original edition the following statement of purpose and point of view was made:

“The right of Caesar to occupy an important place in the early years of the Latin program of secondary schools has not been successfully challenged. His Commentaries will continue to enjoy the prestige which the traditions of centuries have assigned them. And rightly; for no Latin writer has surpassed this literary soldier in the composition of vigorous and luminous prose, which so admirably fits his work to be a medium for the presentation of the form and structure of the Latin language to the young student.

“But the right of Caesar to occupy not alone the center of the stage but the whole stage as well, in the second year of Latin study, has been justly and successfully challenged. During the last few years a very general call has been heard for an easier, better graded, richer second year program in Latin than the study of Caesar alone affords. Not only have secondary teachers urged this change, but college professors and administrative officers have generally approved the plan, and accepted this more varied program in lieu of their long established requirements in Caesar.

“The Second Latin Book which is herewith presented to the public, is intended to meet this need. It makes no professions of originality — so far as the plan is concerned of presenting selections from other authors supplementary to Caesar. Its reason for existence lies in the consistent working out of this plan: in the attempt to make the work of this most critical period in the study of Latin so attractive that the student will be drawn on by a real pleasure in the work itself; so well-graded, that he will never find it hopelessly beyond his powers; so varied, that he will never lose interest through the monotony of his task.”

Attention is called to the following points in the revised edition:

(1) The material has been still further simplified, and the vocabulary has been decreased. This has been accomplished by omitting the selections from Phaedrus and the prose versions of the fables, and by reducing the number of selections from Viri Romae, Aulus Gellius, and Ovid. By these changes the vocabulary of Part I has been reduced by almost a half. Experience has shown that the most serious difficulty in the work of the pupil in the second year arises from the limitations of his vocabulary.

(2) The additions to the original text comprise chapters 1-29 from Book I of Caesar's Gallic War and four "Lives" of Nepos. The inclusion of this material makes it possible to vary the work in Caesar more widely from year to year, or even to give the entire year to Caesar occasionally, using the other parts of the book for sight reading. The selections from Nepos are sufficient in amount to give the pupil a knowledge of the character of the work of this author.

In the separate text edition which is furnished with this book for class-room use chapters 30-54 of Book I of the Gallic War and an additional "Life" of Nepos are included for sight or rapid reading. The General Vocabulary is made to cover this material.

(3) The page vocabularies have been revised and simplified, only the most important meanings being given, together with the special meanings required for the passage in which the word first occurs.

(4) The notes have been made to furnish a greater amount of help in the translation of difficult passages and in the understanding of the grammatical principles illustrated by the text.

The notes accompanying the selections from Ovid were originally prepared by Professor Miller, and they have been retained with a few slight changes and additions.

(5) A chapter on Word Formation and English Derivatives has been added, the first part presenting the more important noun and verb formations, with their English equivalents. The second part illustrates the great indebtedness of the English vocabulary to Latin by a systematic presentation of important Latin formative elements from the point of view of their use in English derivatives. It also furnishes material for a study of Latin adjective formatives which may be used to supplement the first part.

The grammatical appendix which appeared in the former edition has been retained with the changes made by its author, Professor Arthur Tappan Walker, for his edition of Caesar.

Throughout the notes, references are made to the standard Latin grammars for the convenience of teachers who prefer to have their pupils begin the use of the grammar in connection with the work of the second year.

As in the original edition, the General Vocabulary is made to cover the topics of military equipment and organization in such a way as to fulfill the purpose of the usual introduction to the school editions of Caesar. The general vocabulary of the first edition was the work of Mabel Banta Beeson, formerly Instructor in Latin in Indiana University, and it has been retained with only minor changes.

As in the first edition, care has been taken to secure accuracy in the marking of quantities, in accordance with the latest conclusions of competent scholars.

In the revision of the selections from Caesar due attention has been paid to the recent literature, especially to Meusel's work on the text and Holmes' remarkable investigations, covering every phase of the subject.

C. H. B.
H. F. S.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE.....	3
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.....	9-10
INTRODUCTION: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY.....	11
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.....	44

PART I

ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY:

I. The Period of the Kingdom

1. The Founding of Rome.....	47
2. Numa Pompilius.....	51
3. Tullus Hostilius.....	53
4. Ancus Marcius.....	54
5. Lucius Tarquinius Priscus.....	55
6. Servius Tullius.....	57
7. Lucius Tarquinius Superbus.....	59
8. Horatius at the Bridge.....	61

II. The Period of the Republic

9. The First Consuls.....	65
10. The First Dictatorship.....	67
11. The First Tribune of the People.....	69
12. From the Plow to the Presidency.....	70
13. Rome Captured by the Gauls.....	73
14. The Second Samnite War.....	75
15. The Roman Disgrace at the Caudine Forks.....	77
16. The Third Samnite War: The Fall of Tarentum.....	79
17. Beginning of Imperialism: The First Punic War.....	86
18. Rome's First Naval Victory.....	87
19. Regulus Invades Africa.....	88
20. The Aegates Islands.....	92
21. The Second Punic War.....	94
22. Hannibal's Successes in Italy.....	96
23. The Roman Respect for an Oath.....	100
24. The Battle of the Metaurus: The Beginning of the End..	103
25. Hannibal Recalled to Defend Africa.....	104
26. The Battle of Zama: The End of the War.....	106
27. The Third Punic War: Destruction of Carthage.....	109
28. The Conquest of Greece: Destruction of Corinth.....	111

	PAGE
29. A Century of Civil Strife.....	113
30. Gaius Marius.....	113
31. Sulla Supreme in Rome.....	115
32. The Rise of Pompey.....	117
33. The Conspiracy of Catiline.....	119
34. The First Triumvirate: Julius Caesar Consul.....	120
35. Civil War between Pompey and Caesar.....	123
36. The Battle of Pharsalus.....	124
37. Caesar Supreme in Rome: His Assassination.....	127
38. Caesar Avenged at Philippi.....	129
39. Battle of Actium: End of Civil Strife.....	131
<i>III. The Period of the Empire</i>	
40. Augustus Emperor.....	132
PART II	
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR:	
Book I. (Chap. 1-29)—War with the Helvetians.....	135
Book II. (complete)—War with the Belgae.....	190
Book III. (complete)—Campaigns against the Veneti, etc....	239
Book IV. (complete)—War with the Germans and First In- vasion of Britain.....	275
Book V. (Chap. 1-25)—Second Invasion of Britain.....	316
Book VI. (Chap. 9-29)—Customs of Gauls and Germans....	340
Book VII. (Chap. 68-90)—War with Vercingetorix.....	357
PART III	
SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS:	
1. Aristides.....	380
2. Hamilcar.....	383
3. Hannibal.....	386
4. Cato.....	397
PART IV	
STORIES FROM OVID:	
1. How the Human Race Was Destroyed by Flood.....	401
2. How Two Young Lovers Came to a Tragic End.....	409
3. How Two Pious People Entertained Angels Unawares.....	415
EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION.....	421
WORD FORMATION AND ENGLISH DERIVATIVES.....	429
APPENDIX.....	437
GENERAL VOCABULARY	

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
A Chapter from a Manuscript of Caesar's Gallic War.....	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Amulets.....	13
The Bulla.....	14
Child with Toy Cart.....	16
Blind Man's Buff.....	17
Children Playing Ball.....	17
Abacus.....	24
Waxed Tablets and Stylus.....	25
A Flogging at School.....	27
Reading a Roll.....	29
Reproduction of Virgil Manuscript.....	30
The Boxers.....	33
Discus Thrower.....	34
Game of Ball.....	35
Medallion.....	64
Galea.....	68
Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.....	<i>Facing</i> 107
Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus.....	" 117
Gaius Julius Caesar.....	" 127
Roman Officers and Gauls.....	" 135
Pas de l'Écluse.....	" 151
Roman Soldiers.....	" 201
The Storming of a Besieged City.....	" 233
Caesar's Bridge over the Rhine.....	" 295
Caesar's Works before Alesia.....	" 363
Acies Triplex.....	<i>Vocab.</i> 2
Aquilæ.....	" 9
Aries.....	" 10
Diagram of Cohort Arrangement.....	" 21
Essedum.....	" 37
Falx.....	" 41
Funda.....	" 44
Galeae.....	" 45
Gladii.....	" 46
Glans.....	" 46
Pilum.....	" 79

	PAGE
Plutei	<i>Vocab.</i> 80
Scutum	" 95
Testudo	" 106
Turris Ambulatoria	" 110
Vallum et Fossa	" 113
Vineae	" 116

LIST OF MAPS AND PLANS

MAPS

	PAGE
I. Roman Empire	<i>Front Cover</i>
II. Italy	" "
III. Rome	" "
IV. Gaul in Caesar's Time	<i>Following</i> 133
V. Caesar's Fortifications on the Rhone	151

PLANS

Capitoline Hill	20
Roman Camp	43
Battle with the Helvetians	182
Battle on the Aisne	<i>Facing</i> 203
Battle on the Sambre	" 223
Siege of the Town of the Atuatuca	" 231
Alesia	" 359

INTRODUCTION

THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY

BY FRANK JUSTUS MILLER

His Birth.—One bright morning in Rome, in the spring ¹ of the year of the city 681 (or 73 B.C. as we count time), the early passer-by might have noticed unusual bustle and signs of festivity at the house of Gnaeus Cornelius Rufus. A passing slave of the family is ready enough to tell that this morning an infant son of the master is to be named with religious ceremonies and started upon his journey in life as a formal member of the little world of the home.

Nine days ago he was born, and immediately upon birth he was laid at the feet of his father, who, by stooping and raising the child in his arms, acknowledged him to be his own. This act admitted the infant to all the rights and privileges belonging to membership in the family. Pitiful indeed would have been his fate had his father, who held all power as head of the household, not thus acknowledged him. He would have become an outcast, exposed in the street to die or to be carried off by the first chance prowler and brought up very probably as a slave or professional beggar.

The Name.—And now the ninth day has come, when, ² according to custom, the whole family is assembled in the *ātrium*, the large central living room of the house. All are in holiday attire, even the slaves being tricked out in their best finery. Relatives and friends also of the family have come in, even from distant homes, to do honor to the new member who is to-day to be formally introduced into their clan.

The father, acting as priest, first performs a simple ceremony of purification (*lūstrātiō*), sprinkling the child with pure water by means of an olive or laurel branch and burning rich incense upon the altar. As the sweet odor fills the room, he next offers sacrifices for the child, commending him to the especial favor of the gods. Then, amid the profound and reverent silence of the household, he solemnly confers upon the child the *praenōmen*, or given name, by which familiar title he is hereafter to be known among his relatives and intimate friends.

The name which has thus been given to the child is not in any sense a legal name, for he does not become an object of legal recognition until he has "come of age," or reached his majority. The little fellow has, however, even at this early age, like all other well-born Roman boys, three names, one which is now given him as his own distinctive name, and two which he has by right of birth. One of these, the "name" proper (Cornelius), distinguishes the clan or *gēns* into which he is born, the noble Cornelian *gēns*. This name is called *nōmen gentilīcium*, or simply *nōmen*. The other name, third and last in order (Rufus), called the *cognōmen*, designates the particular branch or family of the *gēns* to which he belongs (in this case the *Rūfīnī* branch of the Cornelian *gēns*). The *cognōmen* in older times was usually a nickname indicative of some physical trait as, for instance, Cicero, the man with a pea-like wart; Naso, the long-nosed man; Paetus, the squint-eyed man; Rufus, the red-headed man. But these names have lost their significance at the time of which we are speaking.

So our young man is born into the world a Cornelius Rufus. What is to be his given name? The father, being a Cornelian, has only seven names from which to choose, for that clan confines its selection to the following names: Aulus (A.), Gnaeus (Cn.), Lucius (L.), Marcus (M.), Publius (P.), Servius (Ser.), and Tiberius (Ti.). As the bright morning

light streams down through the *impluvium*, or square aperture in the roof, and illumines the infant's head, the father joyfully accepts the happy omen and names the boy *Lūcius*, "the child of light"—Lucius Cornelius Rufus.

Presents and Amulets; the Bulla.—The relatives and friends now crowd around the baby who has just arrived at the dignity of a name, rejoicing over him in the demonstrative Italian fashion, and showering congratulations upon the father and mother. Everyone, including the slaves, has some trinket to offer as a present to the child. There are

AMULETS

dolls, rattles, and similar playthings; also numerous little metal toys in the shape of flowers, dolphins, crescents, axes, swords, etc., called collectively *crepundia*. They are intended for the baby's amusement as they dangle from his neck within reach of his delighted fingers.

These little images serve also as amulets or charms; for these superstitious folk have much fear of witchery and unseen evil powers of every sort. Especially do they fear the "evil eye," a malignant influence that is thought to be lurking ever ready to blight the health, prospects, and even life of the unlucky victim. This fear still haunts the Italian

peasant of this modern time, and even the cultured classes are not without the same dread, as the secret possession of horn-shaped bits of coral and other such charms may testify.

But the charm of greatest power, one which is always henceforth to be worn about our Lucius's neck until he has arrived at man's estate, is placed there on this naming day

by his father—the *bullæ*, a locket made of two concave plates of gold fastened by a spring and hung upon a cord. The *bullæ* worn by children of the poor was only a piece of leather; but it was worn by these as religiously as the costlier gold that our more fortunate Lucius wears throughout the period of childhood.

4

The Nursery.—The next seven years were spent in such simple and natural development as comes to any child in any place or age of the world. Lucius

THE BULLÆ

made his first timid explorations on hands and knees from one side of the sunny room to the other, tracing with delight the curious patterns on the marble pavement; he pulled himself to his feet by the aid of chair or table, and took his first tottering but triumphant steps to the huge delight of his admiring family—for all the world as such things happen nowadays.

One lucky thing for Lucius was that it was the fashion in those days for the Roman mother to devote herself to her child and to take entire charge of his training, especially during these early years. Slaves there were, a plenty, to

render all needful service; but the mother's personality was the atmosphere in which the child grew up. The next most important personage in the nursery was the nurse, who not merely cared for the child in his infancy but in many cases continued to be his devoted attendant up even into manhood. The nurse was frequently a Greek slave, so selected in order that the child might from the first and without effort acquire a speaking knowledge of that language of elegant culture, an acquaintance with which was much sought after by the cultivated Romans of that day, just as in modern practice a French or German maid is secured for the little child. The affection which grew up between the nurse and her charge during these years of intimate service and dependence was often very deep and beautiful.

Here in the nursery we may be sure was the same "baby talk" as nowadays, consisting of that distorting and clipping of words, that use of diminutives and other tricks of speech, which have been the language of brooding affection since the world began. Inasmuch as we have nothing left us but the dignified language of Roman "grown-ups," it is hard to believe that real, human children ever learned to use it in their everyday life or that it was used as the very undignified language of the nursery. But then, Roman babies and Roman mothers were just as human as the American babies and mothers of to-day.

By the time of Lucius the world had arrived at the use of cradles with rockers, though in more ancient times this soothing motion had been gained in the hollow of father's spreading shield, in a winnowing fan, and so on, back to the time when the half-human mother swung with her baby "on the tree top." As for lullabies, those crooning, half meaningless songs which are the natural accompaniment of the swaying cradle, we may be sure that Lucius heard these from his earliest consciousness. Indeed, one of these old Roman slumber songs has by strange good fortune come

down to us. Here it is, just as Lucius himself may have heard it:

Lalla, lalla, lalla, aut dormi aut lacta.

To a baby of our own land this song would mean:

Lullaby, lullaby, go to sleep or take your milk.

We may be sure, too, that there were plenty of stories for the wondering child to hear—stories of fairies and witches, of nymphs that haunt the springs and woods and mountains, of strange creatures, half man half goat, that dance merrily in the deep green woods, of wonderful changes that happened in the olden time, such as when a man was changed into a wolf, or a maid into a laurel tree. And then as the child grew older there would be the old Roman tales, stories of the little Romulus and Remus, and the mother wolf that suckled them; of how Romulus got wives for his

men; of the tragic fate of Tarpeia, the daughter of the Roman guard; of the heroic struggle of Horatius at the bridge, and all the thrilling deeds of those wild old days. And the little Roman boy heard of the famous deeds of his own great ancestors, and was stirred by them till his blood ran more quickly in his veins, though as yet he but half comprehended them.

6

CHILD WITH TOY CART

not very different from those of to-day, except that the picture books so abundant in our homes were entirely lacking then,

Playthings, Games, Pets.

The playthings in our youngster's nursery were

and the elaborate mechanical toy had not yet been invented. The playthings were, however, sufficiently varied. There were dolls of clay and wax (but their eyes did not open and shut); there were toy wagons, whistles, tops and whiplash to spin them with, marbles (round nuts were most commonly used), hoops rolled with sticks, and balls of every sort.

Lucius had as many pets as any child of to-day could wish. Tame birds in great variety were his delight. Doves and pigeons cooed around the sunny court of the



BLIND MAN'S BUFF

big house in which he lived; ducks and geese swam in the little lake which the fountain made; sparrows and quails fitted familiarly within his reach; and crows and parrots croaked their hoarse notes, often in human words, to his huge

CHILDREN PLAYING BALL

amusement. Then he had tame mice which he trained to draw a little cart. The only pet familiar to our modern households which he did not have was the cat.

Of children's games, besides his marbles and tops and

rolling hoops, he had such old time favorites as "Blind Man's Buff," "Odd or Even," "Hide and Seek," "See-Saw"; such games of ball as "Two Old Cats," "Barney Ball," and, at least in rudimentary form, all the other varieties of ball games which are familiar to the boy of to-day.

- 6 **Home Training.**—The moral atmosphere of the home in which Lucius grew up was a wholesome one. Simplicity and integrity of life were daily enforced by example and precept. His parents believed that if ever their son was to become strong and manly the place and time to begin the training for this was in the home in early childhood. There were three cardinal virtues which Lucius learned once for all, and which made him fit in after life for the proud position of citizenship in the state that was even then mastering the world. These virtues were truthfulness, obedience to authority, and self-reliance. Reverence for the gods he also learned, both from direct teaching and because the very atmosphere of the household breathed this. If he knew nothing as yet of the great gods whose stately temples adorned the Capitol and the Forum, he heard much of the Lares and Penates, whose images stood within his father's house, and upon whose altar at the hearth of the great living-room incense was daily burned and sacrifices offered. He was taught that these household gods were the kindly deities who watched over the family and allowed no evil to pass its threshold.

As to intellectual training, this was not neglected even in these early years. Lucius was taught his "letters" by means of the blocks so familiar to our own childhood. Blocks of ivory or some less costly material were painted or inscribed with the different letters of the alphabet, and so in his sport the child became familiar with these "seeds of words." He would be taught also to trace these himself with a sharp-pointed *stilus* of metal or bone, his hand being held at first and guided over the tablet thinly coated with wax.

To these elements of reading and writing were added a simple use of numbers as in counting, and a careful training in the proper pronunciation and use of his mother tongue. Reference has already been made to opportunities from the earliest years of childhood for gaining acquaintance with the Greek language. The glorious traditions of Rome, which described her progress from a simple settlement upon the Palatine to a world power, had no small part in the early development of this Roman boy.

Lucius Starts to School.—When Lucius was seven years of 7 age, it was decided by his parents that he should now be sent from the sheltered training of the home to a public school, where he might receive his further education in company with other boys of his own age. Accordingly, a kind-faced, elderly slave man, who has belonged in the family for years, is on hand this morning to conduct his little master to the schoolhouse. This slave, because of the duty thus assigned him, is called in the household *paedagōgus* (pedagogue) or “child leader.” But Lucius himself, who is to-day placed under his care and authority, calls him *dominus*, or “master.” This slave is to be the little fellow’s “guide, philosopher, and friend” throughout his boyhood, helping him with his lessons at home, accompanying him to school, remaining there throughout the hours of study, and bringing him safely home again.

His Dress.—And a pretty sight the lad makes as he walks 8 briskly along this bright morning beside his staid companion. His head is, according to the fashion of the time, quite unprotected, except for his thick hair which falls in dark glossy locks nearly to his shoulders. Around his neck hangs the precious golden *bullā* which he has worn constantly since his naming day. An outer garment of pure white wool with a broad purple border (the *toga praetexta*, worn by boys and girls alike until the legal majority of the one or the marriage of the other) is draped gracefully over the

upper part of his body, while another garment, also of wool, is worn beneath this next to the skin. This is called the *tunica*, a plain shirt or tunic, of the natural white color of the wool, with very short sleeves and reaching from the neck to a little below the knees. There is, besides, a *subligāculum* or loin cloth of linen, somewhat resembling the trunks worn by athletes. His feet are protected by the *calceus* or low shoe, fastened with a lace.

- 9 **On the Way to School.**—The house of Lucius's father stood upon the southwestern slope of the Capitoline Hill facing the River Tiber and the Janiculan Hill beyond. This morning the pedagogue leads him up to the higher ground of the hill through streets which even in that more wealthy quarter of the city are quite narrow and unattractive. Plain, brick-fronted houses face the narrow, stone-paved streets. Some of these streets have no sidewalks at all, while others have narrow, shelf-like walks raised a foot or more above the street level, with high stepping-

PLAN OF CAPITOLINE HILL

stones at the street intersections for crossing from side to side.

They soon reach that part of the Capitoline Hill which lies between two higher crests on either side. Here the way widens out into a spacious open court with the ancient temple of the Capitoline Jove upon their right, the summit crowned with the famous *quadriga*, or four-horse chariot, brought from Etruria. Lucius is reminded that upon this crest, within this temple, the Romans had made their last stand more than two centuries ago when all else had been abandoned to the vic-

torious Gauls. Upon their left is the *Arx* or citadel, with a temple of Juno crowning its summit. In front, shutting off the forum from their view, is the huge pile of the *Tabulārium*, or treasury building, in which public records and precious state papers of every sort are kept.

Further off to the right, beyond the temple of Jove, is the infamous Tarpeian Rock, recalling the dreadful death of state criminals who, in the earlier times, were thrown headlong from this steep precipice to the rocks below. Lucius thinks, too, with pity, of the treacherous and unfortunate Tarpeia who here, as he has heard from his old nurse, was buried and crushed beneath the weight of the heavy Sabine shields.

The two now pass to the right down the famous *Clivus Capitōlinus*, that continuation of the *Via Sacra* up which so many Roman generals had proudly ridden in their triumphal chariots. As he walks down this way, the heart of the lad swells with pride while he recalls the stories of the heroic deeds of his great kinsman, Publius Cornelius Scipio, who, over a hundred years ago, was led up this very slope amid the plaudits of thousands of grateful citizens, after he had defeated the dreaded Hannibal and brought the long struggle of the second Punic war to a close.

Their way has wound around the eastern slope of the Capitoline, between the *Tabulārium* on the left and the temple of Saturn upon the lower level on the right. And now Lucius can see immediately before him the outer structure of the ill-famed *Tulliānum*, or underground prison (*carcer*). He thinks with a shudder of the dark, frightful den, deep under ground, completely walled in and covered with massive stones. Entrance is gained only through a narrow hole in the ceiling of the prison; and exit is made too often through a hole in the floor which drops down into the darkness of the great sewer (*cloāca maxima*), which runs beneath. Grewsome stories of this place his father's slaves have often told the boy with bated breath. He has heard

too how the wicked African prince, Jugurtha, was let down into this dark, cold grave, and left there miserably to starve to death. Lucius is glad to turn away his eyes from this place with all its sad traditions, to the bright beauty of the open, sunshiny forum which now lies spread out before him.

10 **Across the Forum.**—What a scene of busy and varied activity this forum is! Here, as Lucius and his guide stand upon the slight elevation in front of the temple of Saturn, they can see groups of white-haired senators making their way to the senate house (*cūria*) near by. These men, in their quiet dignity, are the embodiment of the majesty of that state whose power is already felt throughout Italy and Greece and in two continents besides. Here is the *rōstra* with its high, wide platform of marble, its triumphal pillars adorned with the beaks of captured ships (whence its name, “the place of beaks”), where orators for generations past have stood and addressed the sovereign people of the Republic. Here are the stalls of the money changers around which eager merchants cluster for a while and then hasten away to their own shops which either border upon the forum or are to be found within the neighboring streets. Among the crowd can be seen captains of Roman galleys which lie full of foreign merchandise down by the Tiber side; swarthy Spaniards, fair-haired, shrewd-faced Greeks, Jews, Moors—all the world seems jostling here in this centre of the world. Yonder, within the shelter of a *basilica* or public court, is a strolling street philosopher, haranguing a restless crowd of temporary listeners. Silent processions of grave priests are seen ascending the steps of the temples which face the busy square, and soon clouds of fragrant incense arise from the altars within the richly colonnaded temple areas. Most impressive of all to the little boy is a procession of white-robed vestal virgins who now come forth from the large, rambling structure at the further end of the forum (the *ātrium Vestae*, or “house of Vesta”), a sort of convent

home for the priestesses of the oldest religious cult in Rome. Headed by their senior sister (*Vestālis maxima*) they cross the short intervening space to the beautiful round temple of their goddess upon whose altar it is their duty to cherish the eternal fire.

At the School.—Lucius and his pedagogue have crossed the forum diagonally, and now, proceeding a few squares directly north, come to the schoolhouse, which is the objective point of this morning's walk.

This is a rough, shed-like structure, built as a sort of lean-to against a large public building of the neighborhood, with a roof but no side walls. The din of the noisy street resounds through the schoolroom, but this is more than equaled by the din of the school itself. The noise of the distant shouting of children's voices can be heard a block away; and when our friends reach the place they find that it is only an exercise in reading that is in progress. They stand at one side and watch this busy and seemingly disorderly scene.

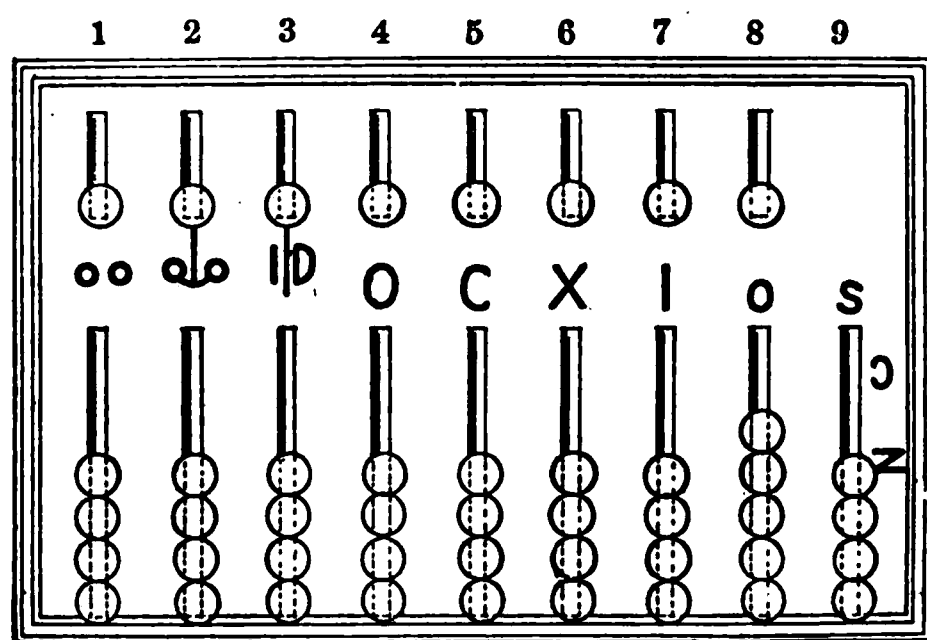
The teacher, a loud-voiced, severe-looking man, in appearance a freedman (*libertīnus*), stands at the head of the room giving out with great exactness of pronunciation some piece of Latin poetry line by line. As he throws out each line in a loud and formal tone, the scholars in concert catch it up and shout it back to him at the top of their united voices. In this way correct pronunciation (if not enunciation) is taught, and by the same process the lines are committed to memory. Similarly, wise saws, proverbs, etc. (called *sententiae*) are committed to memory by means of this loud-voiced reiteration.

During a lull in this exercise Lucius is duly introduced to the teacher and is assigned by him to a place upon one of the rough, backless benches that serve for seats; while the faithful pedagogue takes his place with others of his class at the back of the room.

The thing which would first attract the attention of a modern boy visiting this school is the utter absence of books. All instruction is given by the oral method. The reading, or pronouncing, we have already heard. Arithmetic is taught in much the same way, the teacher giving out simple problems in adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing, and the student performing these operations in his mind. Here is a sample sum which dates from very near Lucius's own time:

Question: "If from five ounces (i.e. of copper) one be subtracted, what is the remainder?" Answer: "A third of a penny." Question: "If an ounce be added, what does it make?" Answer: "The half of a penny."

Calculations which are too long to be held in the mind are assisted by a species of counting board (*abacus*), consisting of



ABACUS

a wooden frame with perpendicular partitions, in which balls or buttons are placed, the different partitions representing units, tens, and hundreds, respectively.

As to writing, or rather print-

ing, for at this time there was no cursive or running handwriting, most of the scholars have already learned at home how to form the different letters. They are now given exercises at dictation which they are asked to put down upon their waxed tablets of wood which serve in place of slates, the sharp pointed metal *stilus* corresponding to the slate pencil. When proficient in this exercise, they will be taught

the use of the reed pen with ink upon papyrus or parchment; but these materials were used very sparingly, owing to their high price.

And so to the ancient and honorable three R's—Reading, Writing, and Arithmetic, these sturdy Roman lads of the primary school pay their respects — enforced respects, it must be confessed. For it is not to be supposed that these youngsters had any more natural studiousness or any less explosive activity pent up under their little tunics than the modern boy. And in their case it must be added that, as a rule, the teacher was not one to inspire respect except as he enforced it at the rope's end, or by vigorous resort to the birch-rod.

WAXED TABLETS AND STYLUS

School Hours and Holidays.—The school to which Lucius 12 was thus introduced began its daily sessions before sunrise, a custom in general vogue in Roman business life. This early start was necessitated by the extreme heat in the middle of the day. The boys, therefore, would arrive in the early dawn, each provided with his candle or torch, and the combined lights of all of these would sufficiently illumine the schoolroom. The consequent smoke and grime, however, must have added much to the generally forbidding appearance and atmosphere of the place. The session continued until well along in the forenoon, and, after a liberal midday allowance of time for luncheon and recreation, was resumed in the afternoon.

The Romans had no division of time corresponding to our days of the week, and consequently no welcome and regularly

recurring Saturday and Sunday for holiday and rest from ordinary employment. But, notwithstanding this, the Roman boy was not so badly off for holidays. According to Roman traditions and customs, there was a large number of days either set apart as sacred or otherwise designated as unavailable for secular business. Thus in Lucius's time, or a very few years later (i.e. under the Julian Calendar), there were 126 out of 365 days so designated. This prohibition of secular business may not have extended in all cases to the schools, but it is certain that the holidays were numerous enough to satisfy the most exacting schoolboy.

There were two periods in particular extending over several days and corresponding loosely to our Spring and Christmas holidays. These were the *Quīnquātria*, or "days of Minerva," as Ovid calls them, extending from March nineteenth to twenty-third, inclusive; and the *Sāturnālia*, beginning on the seventeenth of December. In addition to these shorter holidays, there was the long summer vacation which came as a matter of course on account of the heat which drove out of Rome all who could get away. As to school work in summer, most parents in Lucius's time would readily have agreed with the poet Martial, who, more than a hundred years later said: "If boys keep well in summer time, that's work enough."

- 13 **The Grammar School.**—The next grade above the elementary school, to which Lucius in due time attained, was the grammar school. We are fortunately able to give the name of the teacher of this particular grammar school to which Lucius went, the school which, a few years later, the little Quintus Horatius Flaccus himself attended. This teacher was one Orbilius, who came to Rome from Beneventum when Lucius was ten years old. He was a harsh man and hammered learning into his boys with rope and ferule unmercifully. Horace, in his later days, cannot think of him without wincing, and calls him "Orbilius the Flogger" (*plāgōsus*).

The program of this school contained studies in elocution, music, and geometry. But the time was chiefly devoted to the Greek and Roman poets. Among the Greek poets, Homer was then, as he has always been, the popular school

A FLOGGING AT SCHOOL

classic. Apart from the language itself, the grammar of which was most carefully studied, there would be many other interesting objects of study in the two great Homeric epics, such as geography, mythology, antiquities, history, etc. Of course, the stories themselves would be matter for never failing enjoyment. And it is an inspiring thought that in the thrill of interest which the modern schoolboy feels in these old tales, he is by that very experience in most real sympathy with the schoolboys of those days many centuries ago.

Lucius studied also the poetry of his own language. And what was this? What was the poetic product of his country

which he could know? He had no *Aeneid*, for the poet who was to write that immortal work was even now himself a schoolboy away up in Mediolanum in Northern Italy. As for the poet Horace, he was still a little lad eight years younger than Lucius, in a small provincial town of Apulia, though destined soon to be pursuing his studies in these very schools of Rome. Lucretius and Catullus were older contemporaries of Lucius, while Ovid was nearly a generation younger.

The Roman poetry which was known to him was, first, the *Annālēs* of Ennius, who embodied in this great poem the early traditions and history of Rome; then there were the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the tragedies of Ennius, Pacuvius, Accius, and others, and the satires of Lucilius. Such was, for the most part, the Latin poetry available at that time for use in the schools. But, strange as it may seem, the Latin text-book which had been most in vogue for over a century and a half, and was still in general use, was not a Latin poem at all, but Homer's *Odyssey*, translated into crabbed old Latin by one Livius Andronicus.

This Livius was a Greek slave who came to Rome in 240 B.C., and, setting up as a teacher of Latin, made this crude translation in order that he might have a text-book from which to teach that language. His was the first literary work in the language of the Romans of which we have definite knowledge, and he was the first professor of Latin on record!

- 14 **The Character of Lucius's Text-Books.**—The modern school-boy little realizes how much better equipped he is with his neat, well-printed book, than were Lucius and his school-mates. Their books were clumsy affairs, consisting of many sheets of papyrus, written on one side and pasted together at the lateral edges so as to form one long, continuous sheet. The columns of written matter would thus stand parallel to one another and perpendicular to the bottom of the sheet.

The right and left edges of this sheet were glued to thin strips of wood, and the whole was rolled tightly around the right-hand strip. Thus the book was, in a real sense, a "volume" (*volūmen*, roll), a name not properly applied to our modern books.

When a student would read his book, he held it upright before him and slowly unrolled the volume, reading first the left-hand sheet or page. This, when read, would be rolled upon the left-hand wooden strip, and the next page unrolled. So the reading was a process of rolling and unrolling to the end of the volume. This would then be rolled back upon the right-hand roller ready for use again. The

READING A ROLL

accompanying cut represents a man reading in this way.

The text itself of the ancient book seems to us almost unreadable. The letters were all in capitals, often very rude and clumsy; the words were unspaced save only by a dot which was frequently omitted; and the sentences were not punctuated. The difficulties of reading such a text may easily be imagined.

We have no manuscript of any Latin author dating from the time of the original composition, nor within several hundred years of this; but we are able to get some idea of the appearance of a page of Latin poetry from the later

copies which have come down to us. We are reproducing here a page of the poet Vergil (*Georgics*, I., 277-299), from

a manuscript dating from about the fifth century of our era now kept in the Vatican Library at Rome.

The Schools of Rhetoric.—For most Roman boys, especially of the middle and lower classes, the studies of the school last described completed their formal education. They would go from this directly into business life. But for the high-born lads and the more ambitious of the lower classes there remained a third school, not a part of the system of more elementary education, but corresponding to our college. Schools of this type were devoted largely to the study of rhetoric, and embraced composition, debate, and declamation.

The students were now put upon the prose authors, who were studied chiefly as models of prose composition, in which the narrative style was first practised. As proficiency was gained in this, the students would be given opposite sides upon some disputed point in history, and required to present the arguments in defense of their respective positions. Such exercises were called *suāsōriæ*. We know what some of these questions were which Lucius and his fellows debated. Following are two favorite examples: "Shall Hannibal march upon Rome after his victory at Cannæ?" "Shall Sulla, after attaining the dictatorship, retire to private life upon his laurels?"

The next exercise which was taken up was a series of debates involving some imaginary knotty problem in law (*contrōversiae*). One such question is outlined by Suetonius, a chatty old historian who lived a hundred years later than Lucius. The case is stated thus: "A party of young people were picnicking at Ostia and saw some fishermen preparing to draw in their nets. The youths bargained for the haul for a certain sum and paid their money. But when the net was drawn in, it was found to contain no fish at all, but a basket full of gold. Each side claimed the gold, the one, on the ground that they had paid for the haul, the other, on the ground that the bargain related to fish alone." It would be worth something to hear the arguments of the schoolboys upon this difficult point.

Another exercise, much in vogue in the school of rhetoric, involved training in oratorical composition and declamation. The boys would be given some dramatic historical situation and required to compose for the chief actor in the scene a speech consistent with the known facts. We have none of these academic exercises, but our Latin historical books are full of speeches of this sort, so realistic as to show that their authors must have had excellent training in this style of composition. Instances of these are Hannibal's address to his army, which had lost courage amid the difficulties of the passage of the Alps; the harangues of Scipio and Hannibal to their respective armies on the eve of the battle of the Ticinus, and scores of other such speeches in Livy. Sallust, in his history of the conspiracy of Catiline, records the supposed speeches of Caesar, Cato, and others during the discussion as to the fate of the captured conspirators, and admirably adapts the style and sentiments of these speeches to the supposed speakers. Tacitus has given us the stirring speech of the Caledonian chief, Calgacus, to his countrymen upon the occasion of their last great stand against the Romans in Britain.

- 16 **A Day of Sport in the Campus Martius.**—But we must not lose sight of the fact that during these ten years over which his schooldays stretched, the daily life of Lucius was full, besides, of interesting events and varied activity in home, street, field, and forum. We have seen already how the child's mother was his constant companion in his nursery days, and how large a place in his school days was filled by his pedagogue and his teacher. But what of his father? Did a Roman boy grow up without the important influence of his father's companionship? On the contrary, the boy was much under his father's care and instruction, during the out-of-school hours and on holidays. At such times Lucius would generally be found at his father's side on the street or in the forum, and then would his father tell

him of the earlier years of Rome and all the stirring deeds of which his country's history was full. In this way every public monument and building became familiar to the boy. And on great occasions his father would reverently open the cabinets that stood in one corner of the *atrium* of his home and show him the waxen images of his great ancestors, telling him at the same time of their history. Lucius would also attend the sessions of the Senate in his father's charge and observe with eager eyes and ears the transactions of that august assembly.

And, best of all, when the necessary tasks were done, the two would almost daily repair to the Campus Martius for

THE BOXERS

exercise and amusement. This Campus was a large, green expanse lying without the city and inclosed by the Tiber, which, at that point, makes a wide bend to the west. This was the recreation ground of Rome to which boys and men of all ages made daily resort. The Romans were an athletic race and delighted in every form of physical exercise. Here might be seen wrestlers, stripped and anointed with oil, their struggles an object of eager interest to the on-lookers.

who dearly loved such an exhibition of strength and skill; and boxers, with their hands and forearms protected with heavy strips of leather (the *caestus*); races of footmen and horsemen, and occasionally the wild dash of the chariot.

The throwing of the *discus* also was a popular test of athletic skill. This was a disc of stone or metal about ten or twelve inches in diameter held in the right hand and leaning against the forearm. The position in throwing is shown in the accompanying cut.

But the game that was most popular with young and old was the game of ball, which was played then as now, in many forms. It may be said that the rudiments, at least, of all forms of ball games as they are now played existed then. Generally a small, hard ball was used, the simplest form of the game being that in which two players merely passed the

DISCUS THROWER

ball back and forth. A more difficult game was called *trigōn*, in which three players stood at the angles of a triangle and passed the ball, perhaps more than one, rapidly and irregularly to one another. This game required the ability to catch and throw with either hand. Again, there was a large, inflated ball of leather, like a foot-ball, which could

be either thrown or kicked back and forth. This was much in favor with boys and old men for the gentle and safe exercise which it afforded.

The close proximity of the Tiber made swimming a natural accompaniment of all these games, and at the same time furnished the convenient bath which was much coveted after the vigorous exercise of the athletic field.

Lucius sees a Roman Triumph.—One day, in the year in which Lucius was twelve years old, the city was in an unusual bustle of excitement.

17

GAME OF BALL

The whole population was in the streets in festive attire and hurrying toward the forum. The air was full of the fragrance of incense which rose in white clouds from the temple altars, and all the sacred images were garlanded with flowers. For, on this morning, the great imperator, Gnaeus Pompeius, was to enter the city walls and celebrate the triumphs which the Senate had decreed to him. The name of the general was on every lip, for had he not brought the long war against Mithradates to a successful close, after a campaign which included the conquest of fifteen different nations, scores of princes, and hundreds of cities, which vastly extended the territory of Rome and enriched her treasury by thousands of talents of silver and gold? The spectacle of a triumph in Rome, while not of frequent occurrence, was still familiar to all, and Pompey had himself triumphed twice before; but this grand pageant was to surpass any that had ever before been witnessed in the imperial city.

Among these thronging spectators we may be sure that Lucius is eagerly waiting under the care of his faithful pedagogue, for his father, as a senator, is marching in the triumphant procession itself.

And now the distant fanfare of trumpets is heard which announces that the moving pageant has entered the city gates. Here they come at last, along the Via Sacra, heading into the forum. First appears the stately procession of senators in festal robes with the magistrates marching at their head. These are followed by a band of trumpeters filling the air with their inspiring and triumphant notes; then, a long train of wagons bearing the spoils captured in war, the rude, heavy wheels creaking and groaning beneath their load. There is much craning of necks here to see this new wealth which is destined for the public treasury, and to read the tablets which accompany and describe each load.

Next comes a band of flute-players. Then the white bulls selected for sacrifice walk stolidly along, their horns gilded and garlanded. Following these are the forlorn and dejected band of captive princes before whom are borne their insignia and arms. The people look in amazement upon the captives, for never before have so many conquered princes graced a Roman triumph. The lesser captives follow these, dismally clanking their heavy fetters.

It would be only in accordance with established custom for some of these wretched captives to be led aside to the *Tullianum*, and there pitilessly dispatched as a sacrifice in the lowest dungeon. But this barbarous custom the more merciful Pompey disregards.

There now appear the lictors of the imperator walking in single file, with laurel-wreathed fasces in their hands. All eyes are centred upon the space next beyond these, for here rides the imperator himself. A great wave of cheers rolling up from the distance in constantly increasing volume has heralded his progress. And now the forum fairly rocks with

tumultuous shouts as the general at last appears in his rich triumphal chariot drawn by four horses. He is attired in a gold embroidered toga and flowered tunic, his brow laurel-crowned, a branch of laurel in his right hand and a sceptre in his left. Surely, this is a veritable deification of man. Lest it should prove too dangerous exaltation for a human soul, a slave is set within the chariot to remind him in his ear that he is only mortal still (*hominem tē mementō*); and the *bullā* of his boyhood, long since laid by, is again about his neck to protect him from the evil eye of envy.

Last of all comes the veteran and victorious army by which the general has wrought all these victories. They march in serried ranks with their spears all wreathed in laurel, a model of discipline except for their jests and songs and shouts of triumph.

Through the forum and up the sacred slope the long procession takes its way; and finally the general stands before the temple of the Capitoline Jove. He enters this and lays his wreath at the feet of the god, while at the temple altar the sacrificial bulls are offered up, the pomp and ceremony culminating in the most solemn of religious rites.

The great pageant is over. The throngs of spectators gradually melt away to their homes, there to rehearse the incidents of this exciting day. To most of them it is but one more huge spectacle to be enjoyed. To Lucius, as to every highborn boy in Rome, it is a revelation of the unimagined glories of his country, something to dream about for years to come. And in the dream, it will not be the form of Pompeius Magnus, but the dreamer's self that stands exultant in the triumphal chariot.

Lucius Becomes a Man.—We have now come to the closing 18 scene in the life of every Roman boy, to the time when he passed out of the seclusion and shelter of the home into the larger life of the State. The legal age at which a boy became a man and a citizen varied somewhat with different periods;

but at this time the boy commonly attained his legal majority upon the completion of his sixteenth year. This event, the most important in all his life as yet, was observed with great ceremony, as befitted such an occasion. It was customary to observe these ceremonies, not always upon the sixteenth birthday itself, but upon that seventeenth of March which fell nearest to the birthday. This day was the so-called *Liberālia*, or festival to Liber, of hallowed memory to Roman youth for generations past.

Accordingly, again to-day, as on that morning sixteen years ago with which this Roman boy's story opens, we may see signs of unusual bustle and festivity at the house of Gnaeus Cornelius Rufus upon the Capitoline slope. The order of the ceremonies and festivities has been established by long custom. Early in the morning the whole household together with relations and friends have assembled in the roomy *ātrium* once more.

And now the *bullā*, which has been worn so faithfully during all these years is removed from the boy's neck and consecrated to the Lares of the household. Only upon such an occasion as we have described in a Roman triumph will the *bullā* ever again be worn, when its charms may be needed against such peculiar dangers of the evil eye. The boy is next dressed by his father in the *tunica recta*, a long undergarment of wool woven in one piece; and over this is draped, not the *toga praetexta*, which, with the *bullā*, has been the distinguishing mark of boyhood (*īnsignia pueritiae*), but the *toga virīlis*, the pure, white robe of manhood and Roman citizenship.

Before leaving the house a sacrifice is offered to the household gods and their blessing invoked upon the young man. And now an orderly procession of all the retinue is formed—slaves, freedmen, clients, friends, relatives, and the immediate family. By this guard of honor the proud youth is escorted to the forum, that heart of Rome, where every

important event is consummated; and there Lucius is formally presented to the State as a candidate for citizenship. Many similar processions are entering the forum on this festal day, escorting other scions of Roman houses; and there is much mutual congratulation and rejoicing as these processions meet and pass.

The last official act of the ceremony is the registration of the full name of the candidate in the official list of Roman citizens kept in the *Tabulārium*, whereby it is made known to all the world that one Lucius Cornelius Rufus, son of Gnaeus, is endowed with all the duties, rights, and privileges appertaining to Roman citizenship. After public sacrifice upon an altar in the temple near by, the whole retinue retrace their steps to the father's house, there to make merry and rejoice that their Lucius has at length come to his man's estate, and that the Republic has been enriched by one more worthy citizen.

Supplementary Education and Culture; the *Tirōcinium*.— 19
And now the world of broader culture and activity opened invitingly to the young man. After the fashion of his time, he would naturally turn to travel and residence in foreign lands where he might freely indulge his tastes for the study of history, works of art, social customs, and like objects of general interest. Especially desirable in the eyes of the young men of Rome was a period of residence at Athens, during which the youth would devote himself to a study of Greek philosophy. Indeed, so prevalent did this custom become, that Athens came to be the centre of higher culture for Rome—the recognized University of the ancient world.

But the most important of all questions which Lucius had to answer at this critical period of his life, was as to his choice of a profession. As a matter of fact, there were only two fields of activity open to a Roman gentleman, the forum and the army. For either of these a year of special training

and preparation was necessary, called the *tīrōcinium*, or apprenticeship. If the young man chose the law and politics, he would attach himself to some prominent statesman and orator. This learned patron he would attend in all his public duties, assisting him where this was possible, and listening to all his public utterances—just such a course in law and statesmanship as was followed by students in modern times up to the general establishment of schools of law. Such training was called by the Romans *tīrōcinium forī*. Similarly, if the young man elected the army as his profession, his military training, called *tīrōcinium militiæ*, would be gained in the camp of some Roman general, who would allow young nobles, in the character of lieutenants or aids-de-camp, to serve under him a full apprenticeship in the arts of war. Here a young man would be given abundant opportunities both to observe and to practise the duties of an officer and leader of men, while at the same time he would be excused from the drudgery of the hard drill that fell to the lot of the common soldier.

20 Lucius Joins the Army of Julius Caesar in Gaul.—At the beginning of the year 57 B.C., in which Lucius attained his legal majority, all Rome was ringing with the praises of Caius Julius Caesar, the popular hero of the hour. He had, in the previous year, fought two brilliant campaigns; in one, he had swept back again to their cramped home in the Alps the migrating hordes of the Helvetians, who had threatened to overflow the Roman borders in the west; and, in the other, he had met and crushed the terrible Ariovistus and his Germans who had crossed the Rhine in overwhelming numbers.

The natural enthusiasm for war which had always characterized the highborn young men of Rome was kindled into unusual life by these brilliant successes. Where could they better learn the arts of war than under a leader whose very name inspired courage and admiration in all ranks of

his soldiers, and fear in the hearts of his enemies? And so the second year of Caesar's campaign in Gaul found many young men in his camp, who, like Lucius, had just reached their legal majority and were eager to serve their military apprenticeship under such a master.

Lucius in Camp.—Lucius and his companions joined 21 Caesar in the early summer of 57, in the region of the Po river, where the general was levying fresh troops for his campaign against the Belgians. Having completed his levy, Caesar gave the new legions to one of his lieutenants to lead northward, while he himself, taking the young men with him, hastened to the Sequanian country, where his veteran army was still in winter quarters under the famous Labienus.

Here in camp Lucius gained his first lesson in the art of war—the lesson of absolute order. The camp was indeed a model of orderly arrangement, with its site carefully selected with reference to fuel and water, with its four sides defended by wall and ditch, each wall pierced by a well-protected gate, with its carefully laid out streets dividing the camp into equal portions like a well-planned town, with its neat rows of tents where were encamped the veteran legions, each in its own district or ward; there also were the *praetorium*, containing the general's quarters, the *forum*, or meeting place of the soldiers, and the tribunal from which the general would harangue the troops.

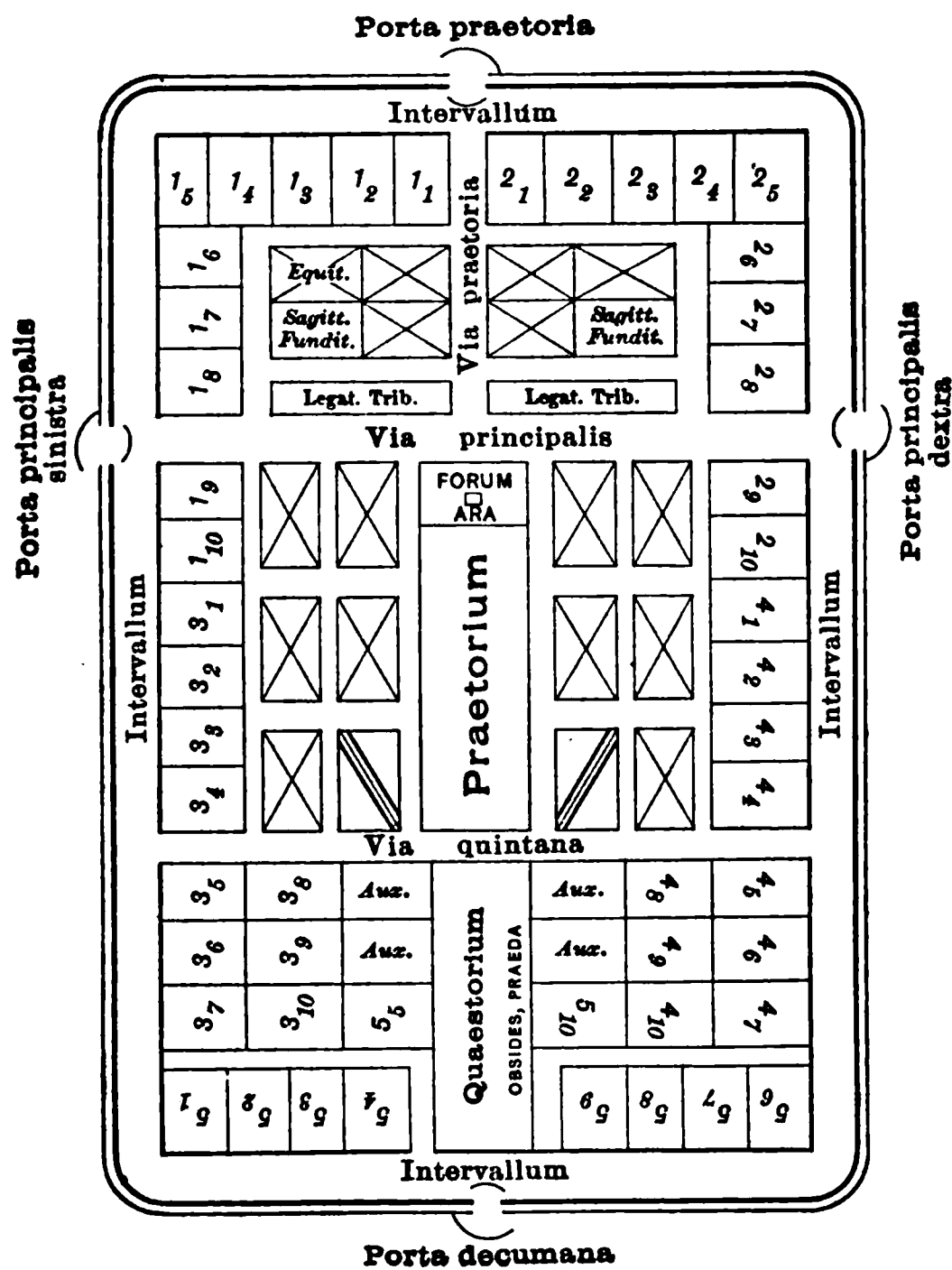
The young men were also much impressed with the absolute discipline of the veteran troops as they were put through the daily drill in military evolution. Small, but hardy, with muscles like whipcords, with the bold, confident air born of successful experience, with the perfection of every movement which comes from constant and long practice, these soldiers excited the wondering admiration of the untrained young men, and awoke in them the ambition to handle and command for themselves some day this perfect military mechanism.

22 On the March.—Then came long marches north and westward toward the country of the rebellious Belgians. This great movement of thousands of men was begun one morning in June at sunrise. A long blast upon the *tuba* sounded, and instantly throughout that great camp the tents were struck and the baggage packed. Again the trumpet sounded, and straightway the wagons and pack animals were loaded; and at the third blast the great army was in motion. Here, again, absolute order prevailed. In front of the great column was its vanguard composed of auxiliary cavalry and light-armed troops. Then came the main army of Roman infantry marching by legions, each legion in columns of cohorts, with its own baggage train following. The whole marching army was guarded at the back by a rear-guard of cavalry. After a day's march of about seventeen miles, the army again encamped; and Lucius was surprised to find that, though the stay was to be but a single night, the same elaboration and care were observed in the camp formation.

During these days, being admitted close to the general's person, our young soldier soon came to feel the devoted loyalty which all felt who came under the influence of that marvelous personality, a personality which in senate and forum, in camp and on battlefield, never failed to animate and inspire to heroic action.

23 Back to Rome a Veteran.—The events that followed in this first year of our young soldier's military life, embracing long marches over rough mountains, through vast, primeval forests, and across rushing streams; battles with hostile tribes; stormings of walled cities; treaties with faithless enemies, and the last desperate but victorious struggle with the Nervii,—these events are all recorded in the history of that second Gallic campaign which Caesar himself has written. And when the campaign was over and the army assigned to winter quarters, it was the proud task of Lucius, now no longer tyro but veteran, to carry his general's

litterae laureatae, the bay-bound letter of victory, announcing to Rome the wonderful successes of her armies in the north; and to witness the unprecedented *supplicatio*, or thanksgiving festival of fifteen days, which the senate decreed in Caesar's honor.



1₂ First Legion
Second Cohort

This camp is for five legions with
cavalry and auxiliary troops

PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP (ACCORDING TO RÜSTOW)

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE NOTES AND VOCABULARY

A. = Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar.	impf. = imperfect.
abbr. = abbreviated, abbreviation.	inv. = imperative.
abl. = ablative.	indecl. = indeclinable.
abs. = absolute, absolutely.	ind. dis. = indirect discourse.
acc. = accusative.	indef. = indefinite.
act. = active, actively.	ind. = indicative.
adj. = adjective, adjectively.	inf. = infinitive.
antec. = antecedent.	interrog. = interrogative, interrogatively.
adv. = adverb, adverbial, adverbially.	intens. = intensive.
App. = Appendix.	interj. = interjection.
B. = Bennett's Latin Grammar.	intrans. (intr. in <i>Vocab.</i>) = intransitive.
Bk. = Book.	l., ll. = line, lines.
cf. = <i>cōnfer</i> , i.e., compare.	lit. = literally.
ch. = chapter.	loc. = locative.
cl. = clause.	masc. (m. in <i>Vocab.</i>) = masculine.
comp. = comparative.	neg. = negative.
cond. = condition, conditional.	neut. (n. in <i>Vocab.</i>) = neuter.
conj. = conjunction.	nom. = nominative.
constr. = construction.	num. = numeral.
correl. = correlative, correlatively.	obj. = object.
cpd. = compound.	p., pp. = page, pages.
dat. = dative.	part. = participle.
defect. = defective.	pass. = passive.
dem. = demonstrative.	pers. = person, personal.
desid. = desiderative.	pf. = perfect.
dim. = diminutive.	pl. = plural.
dir. dis. = direct discourse.	poss. = possessive.
distrib. = distributive.	pred. = predicate.
e.g. = <i>exempli grātiā</i> , i.e., for example.	prep. = preposition.
encl. = enclitic.	pres. = present.
Eng. = English.	pron. = pronoun.
esp. = especially.	recipr. = reciprocal.
fem. (f. in <i>Vocab.</i>) = feminine.	ref. = reference.
fig. = figurative, figuratively.	reflex. = reflexive.
freq. = frequentative.	rel. = relative.
fut. = future.	sc. = <i>scilicet</i> , i.e., supply.
gen. = genitive.	sing. = singular.
H. = Harkness's Latin Grammar.	subj. = subjunctive.
H.-B. = Hale-Buck Latin Grammar.	subst. = substantive, substantively.
hist. = historical.	sup. = superlative.
i.e. = <i>id est</i> , that is.	tr. = translate, translation.
illus. = illustration.	trans. (tr. in <i>Vocab.</i>) = transitive.
impers. = impersonal, impersonally.	Vocab. = General Vocabulary.
	w. = with.

PART I.—EUTROPIUS AND VIRI ROMAE

PART II.—CAESAR

PART III.—NEPOS

PART IV.—OVID

ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY

The beginnings of Roman history are wrapped in obscurity. The stories of Romulus and his royal successors, which sound so familiar to our ears, are largely mere tradition. These traditions come down to us through the works of various ancient writers, notably of Livy, who lived many centuries after the earlier events of which he writes. The almost complete absence of reliable information upon this early period is due partly to the fact that it was not an age of many literary records of events, and largely to the destruction by fire in 390 B.C. of such records as were in existence, at the time when Rome was captured by the Gauls.

Roman history naturally divides itself into three great periods: I. *The Period of the Kingdom*, from the founding of the city, fixed by tradition in the year 753 B.C., to the expulsion of the Tarquins in 509 B.C.; II. *The Period of the Republic*, from its establishment in 509 B.C., to the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., which left Augustus sole master of the Roman world; III. *The Period of the Empire*, extending to 476 A.D., when the last Roman emperor was deposed.

Following is an outline of Roman history down to the establishment of imperial government. The selections are from the *Breviarium*, or abridged history, by Eutropius, an historian of the fourth century A.D. His account follows Livy rather closely through the regal and republican periods, and continues with the empire until the death of Jovian, A.D. 364. This outline is supplemented by illustrative material selected from Aulus Gellius, and the *Viri Romae Illustres* of Lhomond.

PART I

ROMAN TRADITIONS AND HISTORY

I. THE PERIOD OF THE KINGDOM, 753-509 B.C.

1. THE FOUNDING OF ROME

Romulus founds his city upon the Palatine Hill, recruits his citizens, establishes an advisory body called the Senate, and obtains wives for his men from among the women of the neighboring tribes.

Rōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō exōrdium habet, quī Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, fīlius et, quantum putātus est, Mārtis

1. **imperium**, *state* (literally *authority*).

quī Rhēae Silviae, etc., order for translation, *quī fuit fīlius Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, et (quantum putātus est) Mārtis*.

2. **Vestālis virginis**: the Vestal Virgins were the priestesses of Vesta. They were six in number.

quantum putātus est, *as it was believed* (literally, *as he was thought*).

1. **Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rome, Roman; *as subst., m.*, a Roman, *pl.*, the Romans.

imperium, -ī, *n.* [imperō], command, authority, sovereignty, empire.

ā, ab, or abs, *prep. with abl.*, from, away from, by.

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, the mythical founder and first king of Rome.

exōrdium, -ī, *n.* [ex+ōrdō], a beginning.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, have, hold; consider, regard.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that.

Rhēa, -ae, *f.*, praenomen of Rhea

Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

2. **Silvia**, -ae, *f.*, see Rhēa.

Vestālis, -e, *adj.*, Vestal, pertaining to Vesta.

virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin, young girl.

fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son.

et, *conj. and adv.*, and, also, too; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

quantum, *adv.* [quantus], as much as, as much; how much, how far.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, consider, suppose, think.

Mārs, -tis, *m.*, the Roman god of war.

fuit. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem exiguam in Palātīnō monte cōstituit, post Troiae excidium annō trecentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō quārtō.

Conditā civitāte, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec

3. decem et octō annōs nātus, at the age of eighteen years (literally, having been born eighteen years); *annōs* is accusative of duration of time.

Palātīnō monte, the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

4. annō trecentēsīmō, etc.: according to the common legend Rome was founded in the year 753 B.C. Some authorities give 754.

6. conditā civitāte, after he had founded the city, when the city was founded (literally, with the city founded; ablative absolute).

haec ferē ēgit, his further achievements were about as follows (he did about these things).

3. sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist.
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that, this; he, she, it; such, of such a sort.

decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.

octō, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight.

annus, -ī, m., year.

nātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of nāscor*], born; old, of age.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [*exigō*], limited, small, slight.

in, *prep. with acc. or abl.*; with *acc.*, into, to, toward, against, upon; with *abl.*, in, upon, among.

Palātīnus, -a, -um, adj., Palatine, of the Palatium. *Map III, D-E, 4.*

4. mōns, montis, m., hill, height; mountain.

cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr. [*com-+statuō*], place, station; set up, arrange; build, found, establish; appoint; determine upon.

post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*; as *adv.*, behind; after, afterwards, later; as *prep.*, behind, after.

Troia, -ae, f., Troy, a city of Asia Minor. *Map I, H-I, 5.*

excidium, -ī, n. [*cadō*], downfall, destruction, ruin.

trecentēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*trecentī*], three-hundredth.

5. nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*nōnāgintā*], ninetieth.

quārtus, -a, -um, adj. [*quattuor*], fourth, the fourth.

6. condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [*com-+dō*], found; build; put away, store.

civitās, -ātis, f. [*cīvis*], citizenship; state, tribe, nation; city.

ex or (only before consonants) **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*, out of, from.

nōmen, -inis, n., name; reputation, renown.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., his own, her own, its own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. *Map I, E, 4.*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*vōx*], call, summon; call by name, name.

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, referring to an object comparatively near in space, time, order of words, or thought, this, this one; he, she, it; the following.

ferē ēgit. Multitūdinem finitimōrum in cīvitātem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit ad spectāculum 10 lūdōrum vicinās urbī Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs

8. lēgit: how distinguished from the similar form of the present tense? quōrum . . . ageret, *by whose advice he should act in all matters (should do everything)*; a relative clause of purpose.

9. cum, *since*.

uxōrēs: object of *habērent*.

11. Rōmae: not genitive.

7. ferē or fermē, *adv.*, nearly, usually, generally; about.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, drive, extend, bring up, pursue; do, act, transact, perform.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus], multitude, crowd, great number.

finimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis], bordering, neighboring; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, neighbors.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+capiō], receive, admit; sē recipere, recover oneself; betake oneself, withdraw, retreat.

8. centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, a hundred.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; as *subst.*, *m.*, an old man, elder; *comp.*, senior, -ōris, older; as *subst.*, *m.*, old man, *pl.*, the elders.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *tr.*, choose, select, appoint; read.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, advice, plan; judgment, council, assembly.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole, the whole of.

9. senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex], senator.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], name, call, mention.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, near; on account of.

senectūs, -ūtis, *f.* [senex], old age.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, thereupon.

cum, *conj.* [=quom, *acc. of quī*], of time, when, while, whenever, after; of cause, since, because; of opposition, though, although.

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

10. ipse, -a, -um, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; *emphatic*, very, the very.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, invite, request, urge.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, up to, toward; to the vicinity of; at, near to, close by.

spectāculum, -ī, *n.* [spectō], show, spectacle.

11. lūdus, -ī, *m.* [lūdō], game, public game.

vicinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vicus], neighboring, near.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.

atque or (before consonants) ac, *conj.* [ad+-que], and; and also, and even; as, than; after alius, from.

rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum iniūriam Caenīnēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs, Fidēnātēs, Veientēs. Haec omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum ortā subitō tem-
 15 pestāte nōn compāruisset, annō rēgnī trīcēsīmō septīmō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōsecrātus. Deinde Rōmae per

12. commōtis bellis, *when war broke out*; ablative absolute.

raptārum iniūriam (supply *virginum*), *the wrong done in stealing the maidens*. The participial phrase explains *iniūriam*.

13. Sabinōs: in apposition with the three proper names preceding. The towns whose inhabitants are referred to were Sabine towns. The other two towns (Fidenae and Veii) were Etruscan towns.

15. nōn compāruisset, *had disappeared*.

16. cōsecrātus (*est*), *was deified*. **Rōmae**: locative case.
per quīnōs diēs, *for five days each*.

12. rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *tr.*, carry off, seize, snatch or hurry away, take by force.

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move, disturb, alarm; begin.

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.

iniūria, -ae, *f.* [in-+iūs], injustice, wrong, injury.

Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of the town of Caenina, northeast of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

13. vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *tr. and intr.*, conquer, defeat; win.

Antemnātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Antemnae, a town north of Rome. Map I, A, 7.

Crustumīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Crustumeria, a town northeast of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sabines, an Italian people adjoining the Latins on the north. Map II, D, 4.

Fidēnātēs, -ium, *m.*, the inhabitants of Fidenae, a town north of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

Veientēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of the Etruscan town Veii. Map I, A, 7.

14. oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, city; stronghold.

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *tr.*, surround, encircle.

orior, -īrī, ortus, *intr.*, arise, spring; come forth, be born; begin.

subitō, *adv.* [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly.

tempestās, -ātis, *f.* [tempus], season; weather; storm, tempest.

15. com-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, appear, make one's appearance.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [rēx], royal authority, rule, reign, kingdom.

trīcēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [trīgintā], thirtieth.

septīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [septem], seventh.

deus, -ī, *m.*, a god, deity.

16. trāns-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go over, pass over, cross; pass by, pass; desert.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr. and intr.*, intrust, trust; believe, think.

cōsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+sacrō], consecrate; honor as a deity, deify.

deinde or dein, *adv.*, thence, from there; afterwards, then, next.

per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, among, throughout; along, across; during; by means of.

quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus annus ūnus complētus est.

17. hīs rēgnantibus, *under their rule* (lit., *these ruling*); ablative absolute.

17. quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [quīnque], five each.

diēs, -ēī, *f. and m.*, day; time, period of time, appointed time.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [in+parō], command, bid; demand; levy; rule, govern.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [rēgnum], be king, reign.

18. ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, only, alone.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [com-+-pleō, fill], fill up; complete.

2. NUMA POMPILIUS

Romulus had been a warrior king. His life was spent in subduing the peoples living in the country immediately surrounding Rome, and in strengthening his new kingdom against attack from without. His successor, Numa Pompilius, devoted himself to the internal welfare of the state, giving laws, and establishing social and religious customs.

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī quam Rōmulus prōfuit.

1. **quidem**, *it is true*, is regularly concessive when followed by *sed*, "yet." It is often used to emphasize a preceding word, especially a relative pronoun, and is frequently best translated by putting special stress of voice upon the emphatic word. The translation "indeed" should seldom be employed as it too often means nothing.

2. **cīvitatī**: dative with *prōfuit*. Most compounds of *sum* take the dative.

1. **post-eā**, *adv.*, afterwards.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, a Roman proper name; esp. Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

Pompilius, -ī, *m.* See Numa.

rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make; choose, appoint.

quidem, *adv.*, *postpositive*, indeed, it is true, even; **nē . . . quidem**, not even, not . . . either.

2. **nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ne+ūllus],

no, not any; *as subst., m.*, no one.

gerō, -ere, **gessi**, **gestum**, *tr.*, bear, wear, have; conduct, wage, carry on; hold, manage, transact, do.

sed, *conj.*, but, on the contrary.

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough; *as subst., n.*, an insufficiency, lack; *comp.*, **minus**, less; *sup.*, **minimē**, least.

quam, *adv.*, to what degree, how, than; *correl. w. tam*, as.

prō-sum, **prōdesse**, **prōfui**, —, *intr.*, be useful, benefit, help.

Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōstituit, quī cōsuētūdine proeliōrum iam latrōnēs ac sēmibarbarī putābantur, et annum
 5 dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs prius sine aliquā supputātiōne cōnfūsum, et infīnīta Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō et tertiō imperī annō.

3. *et*: correlative with *et* in line 4, *both . . . and*. The first *et* may be omitted in translation.

Rōmānīs, *for the Romans*; a dative of reference.

cōsuētūdine proeliōrum, *from their continual battles (from their custom of battles)*.

5. in decem mēnsēs: others say that Numa divided the year into twelve months.

aliquā = ūllā, which is the regular word in connection with a negative or in an expression implying a negative.

cōnfūsum agrees with *annum*.

6. Rōmae: for case see App. 151 a; A. 427, 3; B. 232; H. 483; H.-B. 449.

morbō dēcessit, *died a natural death (died from illness)*; morbō is ablative of cause.

3. *nam*, *conj.*, for, inasmuch as.

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, condition, terms.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, usage, custom.

-que, *conj.*, *encl.*, and; -que . . . -que, both . . . and.

cōsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōsuētus], habit, custom; manner of living.

4. *proelium*, -ī, *n.*, battle.

iam, *adv.*, presently, now; by this time, already.

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.

sēmi-barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, semi-barbarous.

5. dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.*, mark off, divide.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

prius, *comp. adv.* [prior], before, previously; first; prius . . . quam, sooner . . . than, before.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

aliquis (-quī), aliqua, aliquid (-quod), *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, someone, somebody, something; anyone; as *adj.*, some, any.

supputātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+putō], reckoning, computation.

cōnfūsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of cōfundō], confused, unregulated.

6. in-fīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unlimited, countless; enormous.

sacrum, -ī, *n.* [sacer], something holy; *pl.*, sacred things; religious rites, sacrifices.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

morbū, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease.

7. dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go away, depart, withdraw; (sc. vītā) die.

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quadrāgintā], fortieth.

tertius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], third.

3. TULLUS HOSTILIUS

Tullus Hostilius pushed still farther Rome's conquest of her neighbors, and enlarged the boundaries of the city itself by extending its original walls to include the Caelian Hill.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparavit, Albānōs vicit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō mīliārīō sunt, Veientēs et Fidēnātēs, quōrum aliī sextō mīliārīō absunt ab urbe Rōmā, aliī octāvō decimō, bellō superavit, urbem ampliavit adiectō

1. **huic successit Tullus**, *he was succeeded by Tullus*. We use the passive more freely than the Latin, and a change to the passive construction in translating is often the best way to retain the emphasis of the Latin order.

• **bella reparavit**: *i.e.*, he renewed the wars that had been interrupted by Numa's reign.

2. **duodecimō mīliārīō**: ablative of place with the preposition omitted. The Romans set up milestones along their military roads to indicate the distance from the city. We should say "twelve miles from Rome."

3. **quōrum aliī . . . aliī**: translate as if *quōrum* referred to the names of the towns instead of to their inhabitants: *one of which . . . the other*. A Latin writer of the best period would use *alterī . . . alterī*.

4. **octāvō decimō**: what is the commoner form? See App. 47; A. 133; B. 79; H. 163; H.-B. 130.

bellō: ablative of means.

adiectō . . . monte, *by annexing the Caelian Hill*; ablative absolute, denoting means.

1. **succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**, *intr.* [sub+cēdō], go under, enter, advance; succeed to, follow.

Tullus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Hostilius, -ī, m., Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

re-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum *tr.*, renew, restore.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj. [Alba], Alban, of Alba; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Albans.

2. **duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [duodecim], twelfth.

mīliārium, -ī, n. [mille], milestone.

3. **alius, -a, -ud, adj.**, another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another, the one . . . the other; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others.

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sex], sixth.

ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, intr., be away from, be lacking, be absent, be distant from.

4. **octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [octō], eighth; **octāvus decimus**, eighteenth.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], tenth.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [superus], surpass; subdue, conquer.

ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [amplus], increase, enlarge.

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [ad+iaciō], join to, annex, add.

- 5 Caeliō monte. Cum trīgintā et duōs annōs rēgnāset, fulmine ictus cum domō suā ārsit.

5. duos: for the declension see App. 49.

rēgnāset: contracted form of rēgnāvisset.

6. domō: for the declension see App. 29, d; A. 93; B. 49, 4; H. 133, 1; H.-B. 97, 5.

ārsit, was consumed; from ārdeō, burn, in intransitive sense.

5. Caelius, -a, -um, adj., Caelian; mōns Caelius, the Caelian Hill at Rome. Map III, F, 4.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

fulmen, -inis, n. [fulgeō], flash of lightning, thunderbolt.

6. icō, -ere, icī, ictum, tr. (only the

pf. tenses in classical prose), strike.

cum, prep. with abl., with, together with.

domus, -ūs, f., house, home; loc. domī, at home.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, intr., burn, be burned, be consumed.

4. ANCUS MARCIUS

The fourth king of Rome was Ancus Marcius, who was very like his grandfather Numa in character. His reign was rich in public works. He added two hills to the city's territory, extended the city walls, and built a seaport town at the mouth of the Tiber. He also built the Tullianum, the first prison at Rome.

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem

1. Numae ex filiā nepōs, a grandson of Numa, the son of his daughter.

suscēpit imperium, succeeded to the throne. Suscipere is the regular word for taking up a burden or a task; cf. Eng. "undertake."

1. Ancus, -ī, m., praenomen of Ancus Marcius, fourth king of Rome.

Mārcius, -ī, m., a Roman name; see Ancus.

fīlia, -ae, f., daughter.

nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson; descendant.

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [sub+capiō], take up, assume, receive.

2. contrā, adv. and prep.; as adv.,

on the contrary, in opposition; as prep., against, opposite to, contrary to.

Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., of Latium, Latin; as subst., m. pl., the Latins. Map II, D, 4.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., fight, contend.

Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., Aventine; mōns Aventīnus, the Aventine Hill. Map III, D, 5.

cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem
 suprā mare sextō decimō mīliārīō ab urbe Rōmā condidit.
 Vicēsīmō et quārtō annō imperī morbō periit.

5

3. Iāniculum: part of the object of *adiēcit*. The Janiculum is on the opposite side of the Tiber from the other hills and is not usually reckoned as one of the seven hills.

apud ōstium: the conjunction *et* is understood before *apud*, and also before *Aventīnum* in line 2. Conjunctions are omitted more freely in Latin than in English.

cīvitātem: the name of the city was Ostia. It was the seaport of Rome until the time of the Emperor Claudius. The site of the ancient city is now four miles inland, owing to the alluvial deposits of the river.

4. suprā mare, on the sea.

- 3. Iāniculum, -ī, n.** [Iānus, an old Italian deity], the Janiculum. Map III, B, 3-4.

apud, prep. with acc., at the house of, with; near, among.

ōstium, -ī, n. [ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, the principal river of central Italy. Map II, C, 3-4.

4. suprā, adv. and prep. with acc. [superus]; as *adv.*, above; before; as *prep.*, above, on.

mare, -is, n., the sea; **mare Ōceanum,** the ocean.

5. vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [vīgintī], twentieth.

per-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr., go through; perish, die.

5. LUCIUS TARQUINIUS PRISCUS

Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king, was famous for his public buildings, as well as for being the first to institute those Roman games which were so large a feature in the later life of the city.

Deinde rēgnum Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum

1. numerum . . . duplicāvit: what had been the number? See text of 1, 8. This number was increased to three hundred and then remained unchanged for several centuries. Sulla added three hundred and Caesar three hundred more, but Aūgustus reduced the number to about six hundred.

- 1. Prīscus, -ī, m.,** elder; as a cognomen, the Elder.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., name of an early Roman gens; **Tarquinius Prīscus,**

the fifth king of Rome.

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [ad+capiō], take, receive, accept.

numerus, -ī, m., number.

senātōrum duplicāvit, circum Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs instituit, quī ad nostram memoriam permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabīnōs et nōn parum agrōrum sublātum

2. duplicāvit, aedificāvit, instituit: in a series of coördinate words or statements the connective is omitted with all (asyndeton), or is expressed between the first and second, second and third, etc., or *-que* (rarely *et*) may connect the last two; *i.e.*, we may have *a b c*, *a et b et c*, or *a b cque*.

circum (noun): the Circus Maximus, an enclosure between the Palatine and the Aventine hills, for races and other sports. The games mentioned in 1 are said to have been held here. At first the spectators sat or stood on the grassy slopes of the two hills, until Tarquin erected wooden seats. The structure was destroyed and enlarged many times, until it is said to have accommodated 485,000 people, but this number is a gross exaggeration. Here were held horse and chariot races, athletic contests, and for a time gladiatorial combats and wild beast fights.

lūdōs Rōmānōs: this was a particular celebration occurring in September of each year. The games included racing, boxing, dancing, etc., and later, plays were performed.

3. memoriam, time.

4. idem: translate simply *he* (subject of *vicit*). It is sometimes difficult to indicate in English the exact emphasis given by this word.

nōn parum agrōrum, a large area of their country (not a little of their land); the phrase is the object of *iūnxit*. The word *parum*, which is sometimes an adverb, is here a noun.

sublātum isdem . . . iūnxit, he took from them (isdem) a large area of their country and annexed it; isdem is a dative of reference used with a word of taking away.

sublātum: perfect participle of *tollō*, in agreement with *parum*. The participle is occasionally translated, as here, by a verb coördinate with the main verb of its sentence.

2. duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [duplex], double.

circus, -ī, m., circle; a circus. Map III, D-E, 4.

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [aedēs, temple+faciō], build.

3. instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr. [in+statuō], place; found, establish; begin, institute; determine upon.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [nōs], our, ours, our own.

memoria, -ae, f. [memor], memory, recollection; time.

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, intr., continue, remain.

4. idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., the same, same one; also.

et-iam, adv. and conj., still, even; also, too.

ager, agrī, m., field, farm; land, country.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, tr., lift, raise, take up; take away, carry off, remove.

isdem urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxit, prīmusque triumphāns 5
urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohāvit.
Trīcēsīmō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī filiōs occīsus est, rēgis
eius, cui ipse successerat.

5. **prīmus** . . . **intrāvit**, *he was the first to enter.*

triumphāns, *with a triumphal procession.* See Introd. 17.

6. **mūrōs fēcit**: this wall was known as the Servian Wall, and was commonly believed to have been built by the king who followed Tarquinius Priscus.

cloācās: the most famous of these was the Cloaca Maxima, a remarkable engineering achievement which until a few years ago, after a lapse of twenty-six centuries, served the purpose for which it was built.

Capitōlium: this magnificent temple, which was not finished until the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (533 B.C.), covered eight acres. The sums of money spent in decorating it were enormous. After being destroyed several times it was rebuilt for the last time on a more magnificent scale than ever by Domitian, who is said to have spent \$12,500,000 on the gilding alone.

7. **trīcēsīmō octāvō**: in what other way may this numeral be written?

per filiōs: the accusative with *per* is here equivalent to the ablative of agent, *ā filiīs*.

5. **territōrium**, -ī, *n.* [terra], territory.
iungō, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iūctum**, *tr.*,
join, unite.

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sup. of prior],
first, foremost, earliest.

triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*
[triumphus], celebrate a triumph.

6. **intrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, go
into, enter.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

faciō, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, *tr.*, make,
construct, do, perform, cause,

render, effect.

cloāca, -ae, *f.*, sewer. *Map III, D, 4.*

Capitōlium, -ī, *n.* [caput], *the chief temple of Jupiter at Rome, the Capitol; the Capitoline Hill on which the temple was built; the citadel of Rome. See Introduction 9, and Map III, D, 3.*

incohō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, begin,
undertake.

7. **occidō**, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.*
[ob+caedō], cut down, kill.

6. SERVIUS TULLIUS

Servius Tullius added three of the seven hills to the city, and surrounded the whole with a new wall. He was the first to take a census of the people.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex

1. **genitus ex**, *a son of.*

1. **Servius**, -ī, *m.*, *a praenomen.*

Tullius, -ī, *m.*, *name of a Roman gens; Servius Tullius, the sixth*

king of Rome.

gignō, -ere, **genuī**, **genitum**, *tr.*,
bear, produce.

nōbilī fēminā, captivā tamen et ancillā. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Viminālem, Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus omnium
5 cēsum ōrdināvit, quī adhūc per orbem terrārum incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēsum dēlātis habuit capita

2. *quoque* always follows the emphatic word. It is distinguished from the abl. of *quisque* by the quantity of the *o*.

4. *dūxit*, *extended*. He finished the wall begun by his predecessor and further strengthened it by a ditch.

5. *orbem terrārum*: "the circle of lands" around the Mediterranean, a common expression for *the world*.

6. *omnibus in cēsum dēlātis*, *when all had been enumerated*.

capita . . . *Rōmānōrum*, *a population of eighty-three thousand Roman citizens*; *mīlia* is a noun in apposition with *capita*, which means *heads*, as in the phrase, "so many head of cattle."

2. *nōbilis*, -e, *adj.* [*nōscō*], highborn, noble; excellent.

fēmina, -ae, *f.* [*feō*, bear], woman.

captiva, -ae, *f.* [*captivus*], female captive, captive.

tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless, however.

ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant.

quoque, *conj.*, also, too.

3. *subigō*, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [*sub+agō*], conquer, subdue.

trēs, *tria*, *num. adj.*, three.

Quirīnālis, -e, *adj.* [*Quirīnus*], of Quirinus or Romulus, Quirinal; as *subst.*, *m.* (*sc. collis*), the Quirinal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

Viminālis, -e, *adj.* [*vīmen*], of osiers; Viminal; as *subst.*, *m.* (*sc. collis*), the Viminal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

Ēsquilīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Esquiline; as *subst.*, *m.* (*sc. mōns*), the Esquiline Hill. *Map III, F, 2-3.*

4. *ad-iungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *tr.*, join to, add.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*fossus*], ditch.

circum, *prep. w. acc. and adv.*, around, about.

dūcō, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductum*, *tr.*, lead, conduct; construct; inscribe; think, consider.

5. *cēsus*, -ūs, *m.* [*cēseō*], census. *ōrdinō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*ōrdō*], arrange.

ad-hūc, *adv.*, up to this time, as yet.

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle; the world; also *orbis terrae* or *terrārum*, the world.

terra, -ae, *f.*, the earth; land; country.

in-cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown.

6. *sub*, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under, beneath.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring down, carry away, convey; confer, report, register.

caput, -itis, *n.*, the head.

LXXXIII milia civium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant. Occisus est scelere generī suī Tarquinī Superbī, filī eius rēgis cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem.

10

7. LXXXIII: in reading the text the Latin words should be given for the Roman numerals. The numerals may stand for either cardinals, ordinals, or distributives.

quī . . . erant: *i.e.*, the Roman citizens who lived outside the city walls.

9. filiae: genitive, depending on *scelere*, connected by *et* with *generī*.

10. uxōrem, *as his wife*.

7. LXXXIII = tria et octōgintā; octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.* [octō], eighty.

mille, *num. adj.*, a thousand; *pl.*, milia, -ium, *n.*, thousands.

civis, -is, *m. and f.*, citizen, fellow-citizen.

8. scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, an evil or impious act.

gener, generī, *m.*, son-in-law.

superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, proud; *as subst., m.*, the Proud, *cognomen of Tarquinius, the seventh king of Rome*.

7. LUCIUS TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS

Lucius Tarquinius Superbus was the seventh and last of the Roman kings. Having obtained the kingdom by his own crime, he was destined to lose it through that of his son. Still he reigned for twenty-four years, during which time he added greatly to the Roman state by reducing many cities of Latium to subjection.

L. Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe

1. L.: such abbreviations should be read and translated in full.

2. quae gēns, *a nation which*. When a new substantive (here *gēns*) is added to explain an antecedent (*Volscōs*) it is incorporated in the rel. cl. with the case of the relative.

ad Campāniam euntibus, *in the direction of Campania (for those going toward)*, a special use of the dative of reference; the participle is used as a substantive.

1. L., *abbr. for Lūcius, -ī, m.*, a Roman praenomen.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of ulterior*], most remote or distant; last part of, last.

2. Volscī, -ōrum, *m.*, an ancient tribe of Latium. Map II, D, 4-5.

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation.

Campānia, -ae, *f.*, a district south of Latium. Map II, D-E, 5.

eō, ire, ī or īvī, itum, *intr.*, go, proceed.

longē, *adv.* [longus], far away, afar; by far; far.

- est, vīcit, Gabiōs cīvitātem et Suessam Pōmētiam subēgit, cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitōliō aedificāvit.
 5 Postea Ardeam oppugnāns, in octāvō decimō mīliārīō ab urbe Rōmā positam cīvitātem, imperium perdidit. Cumque imperāset annōs quattuor et vīgintī cum uxōre et liberīs suis fūgit.

3. Gabiōs cīvitātem, the city of Gabii. When the name of a city is given with the word *urbs* (or *cīvitās*) it usually stands in apposition. The English equivalent is *of* and the proper name. Many names of towns in Latin have only plural forms.

4. Capitōliō here means the Capitoline Hill; in **5, 6** *Capitōlium* means the Capitoline temple. A depression divides the crest of the hill into two summits. On the north summit was the Arx or citadel, on the south the Capitoliūm, mentioned in **5, 6**.

5. oppugnāns, while besieging.

in octāvō decimō mīliārīō: the preposition might have been omitted without affecting the meaning, as in **3, 2**.

6. positam, situated.

perdidit: he was compelled to flee because of the indignation aroused by a crime committed by one of his sons.

cumque imperāset, etc., and after a reign of twenty-four years. *-que* is always translated before the word to which it is added.

imperāset: contracted form of *imperāvisset*.

7. fūgit: how distinguished from the similar form of the present?

3. Gabiī, -ōrum, m., an ancient town of Latium, east of Rome. Map I, B, 8.

Suessa, -ae, f., a city in Latium, usually called Suessa Pometia. Map I, B, 8.

Pōmētia, -ae, f., see Suessa.

4. Tuscus, -a, -um, adj., Tuscan, Etruscan; as subst., m. pl., the Etruscans, Etrurians. Map II, C, 3-4.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter or Jove, god of the heavens, the supreme deity of the Romans.

5. Ardea, -ae, a town of the Rutuli,

south of Rome. Map I, A, 8.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ob + pugnō], attack, storm, assault, besiege.

6. pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, tr., put, place, set up; pf. part. positus, situated, lying.

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., ruin; lose.

7. quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four. vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty.

liberī, -ōrum, m. [liber], the free members of the household, children.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, tr. and intr., flee, escape.

Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus, cum adhūc Rōma, ubi plūrimum, vix usque ad quīntum decimū mīliārium possidēret.

10

8. Rōmae: the same case as *Rōmae* in 1, 16.
 rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, *the reigns of seven kings lasted.* The verb is impersonal.
 annīs: occasionally in classical prose, and oftener in later Latin, the abl. is used to denote duration of time where the acc. would be expected.
9. cum, *although, while.*
 ubi plūrimum, *at its greatest extent, literally, where (it extends) most.*

8. ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way, to such a degree; on this condition.
 septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven.
 ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo+centum], two hundred.
9. quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty.
 ubi, *adv.; rel.*, where, when, whenever; *as; interrog.*, where?
 multum, *adv.* [multus], much,
- greatly; *comp.*, plūs, more; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very.
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
 usque, *adv.*, all the way, even, as far as.
10. quīntus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnque], fifth.
 possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por=prō+sedeō], hold, possess, occupy.

8. HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE (*Viri Romae*)

During an attempt made by the Etruscan king to restore the Tarquins to power, occurred the famous defense of the wooden bridge over the Tiber by Horatius Cocles, which Macaulay has immortalized for English readers.

Porsenna, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnū Tar-

1. Etrūscōrum: at the time of the founding of Rome the most powerful people in Italy, consisting of a confederation of twelve cities. Little is known of their history, but they did not belong to the same family as the Romans or speak the same language.
 ad . . . Tarquiniōs: for this use of the gerundive to denote purpose, see App. 293; A. 506; B. 338; 3, 339; H. 628; H.B. 612.

1. Porsenna, -ae, *m.*, a king of Etruria.
 Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Etruscans; people of Etruria, *on the west coast*
- of Italy. Map II, C, 3-4.
 restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [re-+statuō], replace, restore, reinstate.

quiniōs infestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsit: adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat magnumque Porsennae
5 nōmen. Ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia urbis pars mūrīs, alia Tiberī obiectō tūta

2. **infestō exercitū**, with a hostile army; ablative of accompaniment. In military expressions *cum* may be omitted in this construction when the abl. is modified by an adjective not a numeral.

3. **nōn . . . ante**, never before.

4. **rēs . . . Clūsīna**, the commonwealth of Clusium; the adjective is often thus used in Latin instead of a subjective or objective genitive or a prepositional phrase.

5. **ex agrīs**, from the country.

6. **alia . . . alia**, one . . . another. When a noun is modified by an adjective and a genitive (or a phrase equivalent to a genitive) a common order is: adjective, genitive (or phrase), noun.

Tiberī obiectō, by the interposition of the Tiber; ablative absolute.

2. **infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile.

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō], army.

veniō, -ire, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, go.

impetus, -ūs, *m.* [petō], attack; force; fury.

3. **capiō**, -ere, **cēpī**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, take possession of, capture, seize, receive.

umquam, *adv.* [cum+quam], at any time, ever.

aliās, *adv.* [alius], at another time.

ante, *adv. and prep.*; as *adv.*, before; in front; formerly; **antequam**, sooner . . . than, before; as *prep.*, before, in front of.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, such, so large.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [terreō], fear, panic.

4. **in-vādō**, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *tr.*, invade, seize.

ad-eō, *adv.*, to this point, to such an extent, so very, so.

validus, -a, -um, *adj.* [valeō], strong, powerful.

rēs, **reī**, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; fact, circumstance; deed, achievement, event; *pl.*, things in general, the universe; **rēs or rēs pūblica**, the state, commonwealth, government.

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Clusium; **rēs Clūsīna**, the commonwealth of Clusium. *Map II, C, 3.*

agnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large, of great extent.

5. **dē-migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, emigrate, remove, depart.

saepiō, -ire, -psī, -ptum, *tr.* [saepēs], hedge in, inclose, surround, guard.

6. **praesidium**, -ī, *n.* [praeses], defense, garrison, guard, outpost.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, division; side, direction.

obicīō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ob+iaciō], throw before, interpose; *pf. part. as adj.*, interposed, lying before.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of tueor*], protected, safe, secure.

vidēbātur. Pōns sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus vir fuisset Horātius Coclēs, illō cognōmine appellātus, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is extrēmā pontis parte occupātā aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō inter- 10 rumperētur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostēs; ponte rescissō

7. **paene . . . dedit . . . fuisset**: the sentence is elliptical; after *dedit*, supply *et dedisset*,—*almost gave* (and would have given), *had it not been for a single man, Horatius*, etc.

10. **ā tergō**: a common idiom; in Eng. we say, "in the rear."

interrumperētur: for the subjunctive with *dōnec*, see App. 235, b.

11. **ipsa**, *very*.

7. **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, tr.**, see, perceive, observe; *pass.*, seem, appear, seem best.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

sublicius, -a, -um, adj. [sublica], resting on piles; **pōns sublicius**, the pile-bridge built by Ancus Marcius. *Map III, D, 4.*

iter, itineris, n., way, road, march.

paene, adv., nearly, almost.

hostis, -is, m. and f., an enemy, public enemy; *pl.*, the enemy.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, tr., give, concede, grant, afford, assign.

nisi, conj. [nī+sī], if not, unless; *after a neg. cl.*, except, unless.

8. **vir, virī, m.**, man; man of courage; husband.

Horātius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Coclēs, -itis, m., a cognomen, literally "one-eyed."

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., referring to an object comparatively remote in space, time, order of words, or order of thought, that, that one; he, she, it.

cognōmen, -inis, n. [com-+(g)nōmen], surname, family name.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call by name; name, call.

quod, adv. and conj. [quī]; *as adv.*, in

respect to which, in what; *as conj.*, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that, because, since.

9. **oculus, -ī, m.**, eye.

ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., dismiss; lose.

exterus, -a, -um, adj. [ex], on the outside; *comp.*, exterior, -ius, outer, exterior; *sup.*, extrēmus, -a, -um, extreme, farthest; the end of, extremity of.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ob+capiō], take possession of, seize.

10. **aciēs, -ēī, f.**, sharp edge; line of battle, battle.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. and intr. [sub+teneō], support, sustain, withstand.

dōnec, conj., while, as long as; until, till.

tergum, -ī, n., the back, rear.

inter-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr., break through, break down.

11. **audācia, -ae, f.** [audāx], daring, boldness.

ob-stupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [stupefaciō, make stupid], amaze, stupefy.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, tr., cut down, tear down, destroy.

armātus in Tiberim dēsiliuit et multis superincidentibus tēlis incolumis ad suōs trāsnāvit. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit; eī tantum agrī pūblicē datum est, quantum ūnō
15 diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī in comitiō posita.

12. Tiberim: for the ending in -im see App. 25.

multis . . . tēlis: ablative absolute, equivalent to an adversative clause, *although many weapons fell about him from above.*

14. agrī: genitive of the whole.

pūblicē, *by the state.*

15. eī, *in his honor*; dative of reference. posita: *supply est.*

12. armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [arma], arm, equip; *pf. part. as adj.*, armed, in arms.

dēsiliō, -ire, -silui, —, *intr.* [dē + saliō], leap down; dismount.

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, many a, much, abundant; *pl.*, many.

super-incidō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, fall from above, fall upon.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin, weapon.

13. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe,

trāns-nō, -āre, -āvi, —, *tr. and intr.*, swim across.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant; pleased, grateful.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward, to, for.

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir], manliness, courage, bravery.

14. pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus], in behalf of the state, officially.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*; *interrog.*, how great? how large? how much? *rel.*, as great, as large, or as much as; tantus . . . quantus, as much or so much . . . as.

15. circum-arō, -āre, -āvi, —, *tr.*, plow around.

statua, -ae, *f.* [status], statue.

comitium, -ī, *n.* [com- + eō], a place of meeting; *esp. a place adjacent to the Forum where assemblies and courts of law were held*, the Comitium. *Map III, A, 5.*

II. THE PERIOD OF THE REPUBLIC, 509-31 B.C.

9. THE FIRST CONSULS

In place of a kingdom, Rome now became a republic under elective consuls, two of whom were chosen in order that one might be a check upon the power of the other. Also, as a precaution against the attainment of too much power, the consul's term of office was limited to one year.

Hinc cōsulēs coepēre, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creāti, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset, alter eum habēns potestātem

1. *hinc cōsulēs coepēre*, after this the consulship was established.

cōsulēs: the consuls called and presided over meetings of the senate and carried out its orders. They had charge of the election of magistrates, raised armies and commanded them in the field, and administered the affairs of the state in general.

coepēre: the ending *-ērunt* is more frequently used than *-ēre* in the third person plural of the perfect, but some writers use both; for the conjugation of *coepī* see App. 86.

prō ūnō . . . creāti, two (consuls) being chosen in place of one king, for this reason.

2. **malus** may here be translated *troublesome to the state*.

voluisset: the subjunctive here represents an act which was at a past time regarded as yet to take place (future from a past point of view).

eum: object of *coerceret*; the subject and object are often thus grouped together, especially in the case of pronouns.

1. **hinc**, *adv.*, from this place, hence; from this time, henceforth.

cōsul, *-ulis, m.*, consul.

coepī, *-isse, coeptum, tr. and intr.*, begin, commence.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in return for, instead of; as.

causa, *-ae, f.*, cause, reason; *abl. with gen.*, on account of, for the sake of.

?. **ut or utī**, *adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*,

when, as; *as conj.*, that, so that, in order that.

sī, *conj.*, if; whether, to see if.

malus, *-a, -um, adj.*, bad, wicked; *comp.*, **peior**, *-ius*; *sup.*, **pessimus**, *-a, -um*.

volō, velle, voluī, —, *tr. and intr.*, will, be willing, wish.

alter, *-tera, -terum, adj.*, one of two, the other; a second.

potestās, *-ātis, f.* [**potis**, *able*], power, authority, opportunity.

similem coërcēret. Et placuit, nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis insolentiōrēs
 5 redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē post annum scīrent futūrōs esse prīvātōs. Fuērunt igitur annō prīmō ab expulsīs rēgibus cōsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus

3. **placuit nē habērent**, *it was thought best that they should not hold (it was pleasing that, etc.).*

4. **nē redderentur**, *that they might not become (be rendered).*

5. **sed** (supply *ut*) . . . **essent**: note the shift from the negative purpose to an affirmative one.

cīvīlēs, *of the character of citizens.*

quī scīrent, *since they knew.*

6. **ab . . . rēgibus**, *after the expulsion of the kings.*

7. **maximē . . . pellerētur**, *had been most active in driving out Tarquinius.*

3. **similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar; *comp.*, **similior**, -ius; *sup.*, **similimus**, -a, -um.

coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [com-+arceō], restrain, check.

placeō, -ēre, -uī (-itum est), -itum, *intr.*, please; *impers.*, it is settled, determined.

nē, *adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even; as *conj.*, that not, for fear that.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, long-continued.

4. **annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], lasting a year; annual.

diūturnitās, -ātis, *f.* [diūturnus, long], long continuance, length of time.

in-solēns, -entis, *adj.*, haughty, insolent.

5. **red-dō**, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, give back, give up; render, make.

cīvīlis, -e, *adj.* [cīvis], of citizens, civil; befitting a citizen.

semper, *adv.*, always.

suī, **sibi**, **sē** or **sēsē**, *sing. and pl., reflex. pron. of 3d pers.*, of himself, herself, itself; of themselves; *in acc. as subject of inf.*, him, her, it, them, he, she, etc.

6. **sciō**, -īre, -īvī, -itum, *tr.*, know, know how.

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of prīvō], individual, private; as *subst., m.*, a private citizen.

igitur, *conj.*, usually postpositive, therefore, accordingly.

7. **ex-pellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive out, expel.

Iūnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

maximē, *sup. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, exceedingly, especially, most.

8. **pellō**, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, *tr.*, strike, drive out, banish, expel; repulse.

Collātīnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

marītus, -ī, *m.* [mās], husband.

Lucrētia. Sed Tarquiniō Collātīnō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat enim, nē quisquam in urbe manēret, quī Tarquinius 10 vocārētur. Ergō acceptō omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit et locō ipsīus factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

9. *Lucrētia*: she was the victim of the crime which had been the cause of the uprising against Tarquinius.

Tarquiniō Collātīnō, from *Tarquinius Collatinus*. The case is the same as that of *īdem*, 5, 5.

10. *nē quisquam*, *that no one*.

11. *vocārētur*: for the mood see App. 274; A. 593; B. 324; H. 652; H.-B. 539.

12. *locō ipsīus*, *in his place*.

cōsul: predicate nominative with *factus est*.

9. *Lucrētia*, -ae, *f.*, the wife of *Collatinus*.

statim, *adv.* [stō], at once, immediately.

dignitās, -ātis, *f.* [dignus], worth, honor, rank, dignity; authority, office.

10. *enim*, *conj.*, *postpositive*, for, for in fact, really.

quis-quam, *quidquam* or *quicquam*, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, any one, anybody, anything; as *adj.*, any.

maneō, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsum*, *intr.*, stay, remain.

11. *ergō*, *adv.*, therefore, so then, then.

patrimōnium, -ī, *n.* [pater], inheritance, property.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, move, migrate.

12. *locus*, -ī, *m.* (*pl. locī and loca*), place, locality, position.

Valerius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Pūblicola, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

10. THE FIRST DICTATORSHIP

In 501 B.C., at a time of especial public danger, the office of dictator was created, whose powers exceeded the powers of the consul.

Nōnō annō post rēgēs exāctōs cum gener Tarquini ad

1. *post rēgēs exāctōs*, *after the expulsion of the kings*. Compare *ab . . . rējibus*, 9, 6.

ad . . . vindicandam, *to avenge the overthrow of his father-in-law*. The gerundive is used to denote purpose, usually only in short phrases.

1. *nōnus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [no-*vem*], ninth.

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ex-*agō*], drive out, expel; require.

iniūriam socerī vindicandam ingentem conlēgisset exercitum, nova Rōmae dignitās est creāta, quae dictātūra appellātur, maior quam cōsulātus. Eōdem annō etiam magister equitum factus est, qui dictātōrī obsequerētur. Dictātor autem Rōmae primus fuit T. Larcus, magister equitum primus Sp. Cassius.

2. socerī: objective genitive. *ingentem* modifies *exercitum*.

3. Rōmae: locative. *dignitās*, office.

5. dictātōrī: dative with a compound of *ob*. The dictator was appointed for special emergencies, but regularly not for a longer period than six months. He was chosen for a specific purpose, on the fulfillment of which he resigned his office. He had supreme military and judicial power, and during his term of service all the ordinary magistrates except the tribunes of the people were responsible to him.

obsequerētur: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

2. socer, socerī, *m.*, father-in-law.
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vin-
dex], claim, maintain; avenge,
punish.

ingēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+gēns],
enormous, huge, great, very large.

conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.*
[com-+legō], collect, assemble;
recover.

3. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, recent;
strange.

dictātūra, -ae, *f.* [dictātor], dicta-
torship.

4. cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsul], con-
sulship.

magister, -trī, *m.*, master; magister

equitum, master of the horse,
aid-de-camp of a dictator.

eques, -itis, *m.* [equus], horseman,
knight; *pl.*, cavalry.

5. dictātor, -ōris, *m.* [dictō, dictate],
dictator.

ob-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *intr.*, yield,
submit, obey; assist.

autem, *conj.* (never first in its
clause), but, however, moreover.

6. T., *abbr.* for Titus, -ī, *m.*, a *prae-*
nomen.

Larcus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Sp., *abbr.* for Spurius, -ī, *m.*, a
praenomen.

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

11. THE FIRST TRIBUNE OF THE PEOPLE

In all these changes the lower classes had not been greatly benefited, having merely exchanged regal for patrician lords; and at length, in 494 B.C., by an act of secession, they forced the senate and consuls to create the office of tribune, which was to be the people's own office, the occupants of which were to stand between them and patrician oppression.

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs sēditionem populus Rōmae fēcit, tamquam ā senātū atque cōsulibus premerētur. Tum et ipse sibi tribūnōs plēbis quasi propriōs iūdicēs et dēfēnsōrēs creāvit, per quōs contrā senātum et cōsulēs tūtus esse posset.

5

1. **sēditionem**: note etymology. This is known as the First Secession of the Plebs; it marked the beginning of a long and bitter struggle between the two orders, which did not end until, in 286 B.C., the plebs were admitted to an equal share in the government.

2. **tamquam premerētur**, *on the ground that they were oppressed*; subjunctive because the reason is quoted.

3. **tum et ipse**, *then, also, they*; *ipse* is singular to agree with *populus*, but the English idiom requires a plural.

tribūnōs: at first two, then five, and later ten. At first they were appointed merely to protect the plebs against any abuse on the part of the patrician magistrates; and to enable them to do this more effectually their persons were declared sacred and inviolate. Their power gradually increased with the influence of the plebs until they became the most powerful officials in the state.

4. **dēfēnsōrēs**: what is the force of the ending *-sor* (more often *-tor*)? See on Word Formation, page 429, section 1.

1. **sēditio**, -ōnis, *f.* [sēd-+eō], dis-sension, rebellion, revolt.

2. **tam-quam**, *adv.*, as if, just as if; on the ground that.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex], council of elders, senate.

premō, -ere, **pressī**, **pressum**, *tr.*, press, press hard, oppress, harass.

3. **tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune.

plēbs, **plēbis** or **plēbēs**, -eī, *f.*, common people.

qua-si, *adv.*, as if, just as if, as though.

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, own, special; peculiar.

iūdex, -icis, *m. and f.* [iūs+dīcō], a judge.

4. **dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō], defender.

5. **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, —, *intrans.* [potis, able+sum], be able, can.

12. FROM THE PLOW TO THE PRESIDENCY (*Viri Romae*)

The familiar story of how Cincinnatus was called from the plow to the highest office in the state is told in the following selection.

Aequi cōsulem Minucium atque exercitum eius circumsessōs tenēbant. Id ubi Rōmam nūntiātum est, tantus pavor, tanta trepidātiō fuit, quanta sī urbem ipsam, nōn castra hostēs obsidērent; cum autem in alterō cōsule parum esse praesidī
5 vidērētur, dictātōrem dīcī placuit, quī rem adflīctam restitueret. Quīntius Cincinnātus omnium cōsēnsū dictātor est dictus. Ille, spēs ūnica imperī Rōmānī, trāns Tiberim tunc quattuor

1. circumsessōs tenēbant, *were holding surrounded.*

2. ubi . . . nūntiātum est, *when news of this was brought to Rome.* The acc. *Rōmam*, not the locative, is used on account of the motion implied in the verb.

3. quanta (*fuiisset*) . . . obsidērent, *as (there would have been) if the enemy were besieging, etc.*

4. parum (subject of *vidērētur*) . . . praesidī, *too little (of) protection.*

5. dictātōrem . . . placuit (supply *populō*), *they determined that a dictator should be appointed.*

rem adflīctam restitueret, *should rescue the country from the danger (lit., should restore the distressed commonwealth).*

1. Aequi, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of central Italy. Map I, B, 7.

Minucius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

circum-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.*, besiege, blockade.

2. teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, hold, keep; occupy, watch, guard; possess.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, report.

pavor, -ōris, *m.* [paveō], terror.

3. trepidātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [trepidō], alarm, confusion.

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fortress; usually *pl.*, castra, -ōrum, camp.

4. obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [ob+sedeō], obstruct, blockade.

5. adflīctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of adflīgō], overwhelmed, distressed.

6. Quīntius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Cincinnātus, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of a famous Roman dictator.

cōsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsentiō], agreement, consent.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, *tr.*, say, speak; appoint.

7. spēs, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation; source of hope.

ūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus], single, only.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond.

tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time.

iūgerum colēbat agrum. Ad quem missī lēgātī nūdum eum arantem offendērunt. Salūte datā redditāque Quīnctius togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre uxōrem Raciliam iussit, ut senātūs 10 mandāta togātus audīret.

Postquam abstersō pulvere ac sūdōre togā indūtus prōcessit Quīnctius, dictātōrem eum lēgātī grātulantēs cōnsalūtant; quantus terror in exercitū sit, expōnunt. Quīnctius igitur

8. iūgerum: observe that the genitive plural of this word ends in -um instead of -ōrum.

nūdum: without his toga, which was regularly laid aside in any active employment. A woolen tunic was worn next to the body.

10. prōferre: the infinitive is the regular constr. with iubeō.

14. sit: why subjunctive?

8. iūgerum, -ī, *n.* (*gen. pl.*, iūgerum), a Roman acre, a little more than half an acre of our land measure.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *tr.*, till, cultivate; cherish, honor.

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum, *tr.*, send, send away; cast.

lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, [lēgō, depute], ambassador; lieutenant.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked; lightly clad.

9. arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, plow.

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsū, *tr. and intr.* [ob+-fendō, strike], strike; come upon, find.

salūs, salūtis, *f.*, health, safety; greeting, salutation.

toga, -ae, *f.* [tegō], toga, the outer garment worn by the Romans in civil life.

10. properē, *adv.* [properus, quick], hastily, quickly.

tugurium, -ī, *n.*, hut, cottage.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry out, bring out.

Racilia, -ae, *f.*, the wife of Cincinnatus.

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussum, *tr.*, order, command; direct.

11. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō], command, charge.

togātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [toga], wearing the toga.

audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.*, hear, listen to; hear of.

12. post-quam, *conj.*, after, as soon as.

abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersum, *tr.*, wipe off or away.

pulvis, -eris, *m. and f.*, dust.

sūdor, -ōris, *m.* [sūdō, sweat], sweat, perspiration.

induō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, put on, clothe; indūtus, clothed, clad.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, come forward, advance; proceed.

13. grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [grātus], rejoice; congratulate.

cōnsalūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+salūtō], greet, salute.

14. ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, put forth; set forth, relate, explain.

- 15 Rōmam vēnit et antecēdentibus lictōribus domum dēductus est. Posterō diē ab urbe profectus Minuciō obsidiōne liberātō victōs hostēs sub iugum mīsit. Urbem triumphāns ingressus est. Ductī ante currum hostium ducēs, militāria signa praelāta; secūtus est exercitus praedā onustus; epulae instrūctae sunt
20 ante omnium domōs. Atque haec tantā vėlōcitāte gessit Quīctius, ut dictātūrā in sex mēnsēs acceptā sextō decimō diē sē abdicāret, prōrsus ut festināsse dictātor ad relictum opus

15. *vēnit*: how distinguished from the similar form of the present?

17. *sub iugum mīsit*: the yoke was made by setting two spears upright and placing a third spear crosswise upon them. Under this the conquered army passed in token of submission. Cf. Eng. "subjugate."

21. *dictātūrā . . . sē abdicāret*, *resigned the dictatorship*; *dictātūrā* is ablative of separation. *in*: *for*.

22. *ad relictum opus*, *to the work which he had left*.

15. *ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr. and intr.*, precede, go ahead; surprise.

lictōr, -ōris, m. [*ligō, bind*], lictor.
dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead down, lead away; lead, conduct, escort.

16. *posterus, -a, -um, adj.* [*post*], the following, next.

proficīscor, -ī, profectus, intr. [*cf. prōficiō*], set out, proceed.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [*ob+sedeō*], siege; peril; oppression.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*liber*], set free, free, release.

17. *iugum, -ī, n.*, yoke, ridge, crest.

ingredior, -ī, -gressus, tr. and intr. [*in+gradior*], enter, advance.

18. *currus, -ūs, m.* [*currō*], chariot.

dux, ducis, m. [*dūcō*], leader, guide, general.

militāris, -e, adj. [*mīles*], of war, military.

signum, -ī, n., sign, token; a military standard, ensign; signal; statue.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,

carry in front, carry in procession, display; prefer.

19. *sequor, -ī, secūtus, tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, ensue.

praeda, -ae, f., booty, plunder.

onustus, -a, -um, adj. [*onus*], burdened, laden.

epulae, -ārum, f., only in pl., banquet, dinner.

in-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, tr., construct, draw up, array, prepare.

20. *vėlōcitās, -ātis, f.* [*vėlōx*], swift-ness, speed.

21. *sex, indecl. num. adj.*, six.

22. *ab-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.*, disavow; *w. sē and the abl.*, resign, abdicate.

prōrsus, adv. [*prō+vorsus=versus*], by all means, indeed, certainly.

festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., hasten.

re-linguō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, tr., leave behind, leave.

opus, -eris, n., work, task; deed, achievement.

vidērētur; expeditiōne enim finītā ad bovēs rediit triumphālis agricola.

23. bovēs: for the declension of this word see App. 27; A. 79; B. 41; H. 107; H.-B. 92.

rediit: the use of the perfect *ivī* of the verb *eō* is rare, both in the forms of the simple verb and of the compounds. Usually, as here, the perfect *ivī* is used.

23. expeditiō, -ōnis, f. [expediō], military expedition, campaign.	red-eō, -ire, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr., return.
finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr. [finis], bound, limit, end, finish.	triumphālis, -e, adj. [triumphus], triumphal; having had a triumph.
bōs, bovis, m. and f., bull, ox, cow; <i>pl.</i> , cattle, oxen.	24. agricola, -ae, m. [ager+colō], farmer.

13. ROME CAPTURED BY THE GAULS

The next landmark in Roman history is the capture of Rome by the Gauls in 390 B.C. This remarkable event, which nearly put an end to the existence of Rome, was not planned by those northern nations, but was an incident in one of their widely extended plundering expeditions. They made no attempt at permanent conquest in central Italy, but after laying Rome in ashes and collecting rich booty, returned whence they had come.

Statim Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vērērunt et victōs Rōmānōs
ūndecimō mīliārīō ā Rōmā apud flūmen Alliam secūtī etiam

1. *statim, just at this time.*

Gallī Senonēs, the Senones, a tribe of Gauls.

victōs Rōmānōs . . . secūtī . . . occupāvērunt: note the fondness of the Latin for the participial construction. Translate, *after defeating the Romans . . . they followed (them) . . . and seized, etc.*

2. **Alliam:** in memory of this terrible defeat, the eighteenth of July (*diēs Alliēnsis*) was declared an unlucky day in the Roman calendar, on which no public business could be transacted.

1. **Gallus, -a, -um, adj.,** pertaining to Gaul, Gallic; as *subst., m.,* a Gaul; *pl.,* the Gauls. *Map I, C-D, 2-4.*

Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of northern Celtic Gauls, part of whom settled

in upper Italy. Map II, D, 3.

2. **ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.** [ūnus+decimus], eleventh.

flūmen, -inis, n. [fluō], river.

Allia, -ae, f., a small tributary of the Tiber. *Map I, B, 7.*

urbem occupāvērunt. Neque dēfendī quicquam nisi Capi-
tōlium potuit; quod cum diū obsēdissent et iam Rōmānī famē
5 labōrārent, acceptō aurō, nē Capitōlium obsidērent, reces-
sērunt. Sed ā Camillō, quī in vicinā cīvitāte exsulābat, Gallīs
superventum est gravissimēque victī sunt. Posteā tamen etiam
secūtus eōs Camillus ita cecīdit, ut et aurum, quod hīs datum
fuerat, et omnia, quae cēperant, militāria signa revocāret. Ita
10 tertiō triumphāns urbem ingressus est et appellātus secundus
Rōmulus, quasi et ipse patriae conditor.

3. Capitōlium: see on *Capitōliō*, 7, 4.

4. famē: the ablative of *famēs* is a fifth declension form.

5. labōrārent, *were suffering*.

nē, (*on condition*) *that . . . not*; see App. 225, b; A. 531; B. 282; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 2.

6. vicinā cīvitāte: the city was Ardea.

Gallīs superventum est, *the Gauls were surprised*; impersonal construction.

7. gravissimē, *overwhelmingly*.

8. eōs ita cecīdit, *so thoroughly crushed them*.

datum fuerat: we should have expected *datum erat*.

11. quasi et ipse, *as if he too, as well as Romulus*.

3. neque or nec, *conj.*, and not, nor;
nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque,
neither . . . nor.

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsū, *tr.*
and *intr.* [dē+-fendō, strike],
ward off, repel; defend, pro-
tect.

4. diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time,
for a long while; *comp.*, diūtius;
sup., diūtissimē.

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation.

5. labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*
[labor], labor; be hard pressed, be
in distress, suffer.

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*,
retreat.

6. Camillus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

exsulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*
[exsul], be in exile.

7. super-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,
tr. and intr., come up, come upon,
surprise.

graviter, *adv.* [gravis], heavily,
severely, seriously.

8. caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, *tr.*,
cut, cut down; strike; kill.

9. re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,
recall, withdraw, recover.

10. tertiō, *adv.* [tertius], for the
third time.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor],
second; favorable, successful.

11. patria, -ae, *f.* [patrius], native
country, country.

conditor, -ōris, *m.* [condō], founder.

14. THE SECOND SAMNITE WAR

Over a hundred years of wars now ensued, which, reaching out in ever-widening circles, with occasional repulses for Rome, still brought more and more peoples under her sway, until at last all Italy acknowledged the power of Rome. The most notable of these struggles were those against the Samnites, the cities of the Latin league, the Etruscans, and against the Greek cities in the southeast, ending in the fall of Tarentum in 272 B.C.

The first Samnite war (343-341 B.C.) arose from the request of the Campanians for the aid of Rome against the incursions of the Samnites. Rome accepted the offer of the Campanians for an alliance, but in the midst of the struggle with the Samnites the revolt of the Latin league compelled Rome to make a treaty with her late enemies and face the Latins. The grievance of the Latins was that while they were ostensibly in partnership with Rome, Rome was not disposed to share her power and conquered territory with them. This revolt was suppressed by the combined forces of the Romans and Samnites after a struggle of two years (340-338 B.C.), ending in the battle of Mt. Vesuvius.

The second Samnite war (326-304 B.C.) arose because the Romans while securing their conquests in Campania encroached upon the rights of some cities which were under the Samnite protection. Here is an incident of this war:

Iam Rōmānī potentēs esse coepērunt. Bellum enim in centēsīmō et tricēsīmō ferē mīliārīō ab urbe apud Samnītas gerēbātur, quī mediū sunt inter Picēnum, Campāniam et Āpūliam. L. Papīrius Cursor cum honōre dictātōris ad id bellum profectus

2. Samnītas: some third declension nouns in Latin, especially names of peoples, have the Greek accusative plural ending *-as* instead of *-ēs*.

3. mediū sunt inter, *are situated between.* The Samnite country was mountainous and its people were brave soldiers. Their subjugation was a much more difficult task than that of the peoples which Rome had previously brought under her sway.

1. potēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of possum*], mighty, powerful, influential.

centēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*centum*], hundredth.

2. Samnītēs, -ium (acc. pl. -ēs or -as), m., the Samnites, a Sabine people east of Latium. *Map II, D-E, 4.*

3. medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, the middle of; in the middle.
inter, prep. with acc., between,

among, in the midst of; during.

Picēnum, -ī, n., a district of eastern Italy. *Map II, D, 3-4.*

Āpūlia, -ae, f., Apulia, a district of southeastern Italy. *Map II, E-F, 4-5.*

4. Papīrius, -ī, m., a Roman name.
Cursor, -ōris, m. [*cursor, a runner*], a cognomen.

honor or honōs, -ōris, m., honor, esteem; official honor, office.

5 est. Quī cum Rōmam rediret, Q. Fabiō Maximō, magistrō
equitum, quem apud exercitum relīquit, praecēpit, nē sē
absente pugnāret. Ille occāsiōne repertā fēlicissimē dīmīcāvit
et Samnitas dēlēvit. Ob quam rem ā dictātōre capitis damnā-
tus, quod sē vetante pugnāset, ingentī favōre mīlitum et populī
10 liberātus est, tantā Papiriō sēditione commōtā, ut paene ipse
interficeretur.

5. Maximō: why dative?

6. nē . . . pugnāret: what part of the sentence is this clause?

sē absente: ablative absolute, *in his* (i.e., Papirius's) *absence*; for the indirect reflexive, see App. 165; A. 300, 2 a; B. 244, II; H. 504; H.-B. 262. 2, a.

8. rem, *disobedience*.

capitis damnātus, *condemned to death* (lit. *condemned of a capital offense*); for the genitive with a verb of condemning see App. 108; A. 352; B. 208, 2; H. 456; H.-B. 342.

9. quod . . . pugnāset: the subjunctive indicates that the reason given is quoted.

sē vetante, *against his orders*; see sē absente, l. 6.

favōre: ablative of cause.

10. Papiriō, *against* (lit. *for*) *Papirius*; for case see App. 120; A. 376; B. 188; H. 425, 4; H.-B. 366.

5. Q., *abbr. for Quintus, -ī, m., a praenomen.*

Fabius, -ī, m., *a Roman name.*

Maximus, -ī, m., *a cognomen.*

6. praecipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr. [prae+capiō], instruct, order.*

7. absēns, -entis, *adj. [pres. part of absum], absent, away.*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. [pugna], fight, contend.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f. [ob+cadō], occasion, opportunity.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *tr., find, discover, find out.*

fēliciter, *adv. [fēlix], happily, successfully, auspiciously.*

8. dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr., destroy, overthrow.*

ob, *prep. with acc., toward; on account of, by reason of.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. [damnum], condemn, sentence.*

9. vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr., forbid.*
favor, -ōris, *m. [faveō], favor, goodwill.*

mīles, -itis, *m., soldier.*

11. interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. [inter+faciō], kill.*

15. THE ROMAN DISGRACE AT THE CAUDINE FORKS

The Romans, at first successful, received a most crushing defeat (in 321 B.C.) at the Caudine Forks, a place forever after of unhappy memory to them. After this defeat, with varying events the war was finally brought to a successful close.

Posteā Samnītēs Rōmānōs T. Veturiō et Sp. Postumiō cōsulibus ingentī dēdecore vicērunt et sub iugum mīsērunt. Pāx tamen ā senātū et populō solūta est, quae cum ipsīs propter necessitātem facta fuerat. Posteā Samnītēs victī sunt ā L. Papiriō cōsule, septem mīlia eōrum sub iugum missa. Papī- 5 rius prīmus dē Samnītibus triumphāvit. Eō tempore Ap.

1. T. Veturiō . . . cōsulibus, in the consulship of Titus Veturius, etc. (lit. Titus Veturius and Spurius Postumius being consuls), i.e., in the year 321 B.C. The consuls held office for twelve months beginning at the first of the year, and the Romans designated a given year by the names of the consuls in office during that time. In such expressions *et* is usually not written unless the *praenōmina* are not given.

2. ingentī dēdecore: ablative of manner.

3. ipsīs = *iīs*, as often in Eutropius; so *ipsōrum*, line 11.

4. facta fuerat: for *facta erat*.

6. dē Samnītibus, in consequence of a victory over the Samnites.

Ap. Claudius cēnsor: see Vocab., *Claudius* (2). After 443 B.C., two censors were elected every four or five years, holding office for eighteen months. Their duty was to assemble the people every five years on the *Campus Mārtius* to take the census. They had charge also of the finances of the state and the construction and maintenance of public works. They exercised a general supervision over the public morals, and had power to remove a senator from the senate, a knight from the equestrian order, or a common citizen from his tribe, for such offenses as did not come under the laws, *e.g.*, luxury, irregular life, or bad treatment of children, slaves, or clients.

1. Veturius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Postumius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

2. dē-decus, -oris, *n.*, dishonor, disgrace.

3. solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, *tr.* [sē-+luō], loosen, release; impair, annul.

4. necessitās, -ātis, *f.* [necesse],

necessity, need, compulsion.

6. dē, *prep.* with *abl.*, from; concerning, in regard to; on account of, for, about.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, occasion.

Ap., *abbr.* for Appius, -ī, *m.*, a *praenomen*; as *adj.*, Appius, -a, -um, of Appius, Appian.

Claudius cēnsor aquam Claudiam indūxit et viam Appiam strāvit. Samnītēs reparātō bellō Q. Fabium Maximum vicē-
 10 runt tribus milibus hominum occīsīs. Postea, cum pater eī Fabius Maximus lēgātus datus fuisset, et Samnitas vīcit et plūrima ipsōrum oppida cēpit. Deinde P. Cornēlius Rūfinus, M. Curius Dentātus, ambō cōsulēs, contrā Samnitas missī ingentibus proeliīs eōs cōnfēcēre. Tum bellum cum Samnītibus per annōs quadrāgintā novem āctum sustulērunt. Neque

7. aquam Claudiam: this aqueduct, usually called *Aqua Appia*, was over ten miles in length, almost entirely underground. It was the first of fourteen aqueducts (the longest of which was over fifty-five miles in length), built at an immense cost, that furnished Rome with an enormous quantity of water. Modern Rome is abundantly supplied by four aqueducts with a capacity of less than one-tenth of the ancient water supply.

viam Appiam: the first and most famous of a splendid system of military roads that formed a vast network over Italy and brought Rome into closer communication with her provinces. The *Via Appia* ran from Rome to Capua, but was later extended to Brundisium. The natural obstructions to be overcome were very great. Rocks had to be cut through, valleys filled up, ravines bridged, and swamps embanked. The remains of this road are still visible and show that the cost must have been enormous.

8. Q. Fabium Maximum: son of the Fabius mentioned in 14. See Vocab., *Fabius* (2).

10. lēgātus: predicate nominative.

13. eōs cōnfēcēre, *crushed them.*

14. quadrāgintā novem: Eutropius is mistaken. It was thirty-nine years. **āctum:** translate by a relative clause.

7. Claudius, -ī, m., a Roman name; as *adj.*, Claudius, -a, -um, of Claudius, Claudian.

cēnsor, -ōris, m. [cēnsēō], censor, a Roman magistrate.

aqua, -ae, f., water.

in-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., bring in; draw on, cover.

via, -ae, f., way, road, journey, march.

8. sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, tr., stretch out, spread; lay, pave; overthrow.

9. homō, -inis, m. and f., human being, man.

pater, -tris, m., father.

11. P., abbr. for Pūblius, -ī, m., a praenomen.

Cornēlius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Rūfinus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

12. M., abbr. for Mārcus, -ī, m., a praenomen.

Curius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Dentātus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., both.

13. cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [com- + faciō], make ready, complete, finish up; wear out, exhaust; kill.

14. novem, indecl. num. adj., nine.

ūllus hostis fuit intrā Italiam, quī Rōmānam virtūtem magis 15
fatigāverit.

16. *fatigāverit*: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283 1, 2; H. 591 1:
H.-B. 521 1.

15. *ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūllius, adj.,*
any; *as subst., any one, anybody.*
intrā, prep. with acc., within, inside
of; into, inside.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy. Map II.

magis, comp. adv., more, rather.

16. *fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,*
weary, fatigue; test.

16. THE THIRD SAMNITE WAR: THE FALL OF TARENTUM

The third war with the indomitable Samnites, who were leagued with almost all Italy against Rome, was started because of Samnite interference with what Rome deemed her rights in Lucania. At the end of this war, Tarentum, a Greek city in southeastern Italy, was the only obstacle to the complete supremacy of Rome. Rome soon found cause of quarrel against the Tarentines, who summoned Pyrrhus, king of Epirus in Greece, to their aid. The events of this war (281-272 B.C.) are here described:

Eōdem tempore Tarentīnīs, quī iam in ultimā Italiā sunt, bellum indictum est, quia lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcissent. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs auxilium poposcērunt, quī ex genere Achillis orīginem trahēbat. Is

1. *in ultimā Italiā, in (the) remotest (part of) Italy, i.e., southern Italy, known as Magna Graecia, because it was largely settled by Greek colonies.*

3. *Pyrrhum . . . auxilium*: for two accusatives with verb of demanding see App. 125 a; A. 396; B. 178, a; H. 411; H.-B. 393.

1. *Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m., the people of Tarentum, Tarentines. Map II, F, 5.*

2. *in-dīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, tr.,*
proclaim, appoint; *w. bellum,*
declare.

quia, conj., because.

3. *Pyrrhus, -ī, m., a king of Epirus.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., the northwest district of Greece. Map I, G, 5.

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], aid, help.

4. *poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, tr., ask,*
ask for, demand.

genus, -eris, n. [cf. gēns], race,
family; sort, class.

Achillēs, -is, m., the hero of the Iliad,
and the most famous Greek warrior
in the Trojan war.

orīgō, -inis, f. [orior], source, origin;
lineage.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, tr., draw,
drag, draw out or forth; derive.

- 5 mox ad Italiam vēnit, tumque primum Rōmānī cum trāns-marīnō hoste dīmīcāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendī omnem exercitum tumque dīmīttī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.
- 10 Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quōs incognitōs Rōmānī expāvērunt. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit; Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et eōs summō honōre tractāvit,

5. **primum**, for the first time. What would *prīmī* mean?

8. **dūcī, ostendī . . . dīmīttī**: see on *duplicāvit*, etc., 5, 2. The subject of *ostendī* is *exercitum*. With *dīmīttī* the subject is shifted back to *eōs*.

10. **iam**, meaning "now," is to be distinguished from *nunc*, "now," "at the present time," denoting absolute time. *Iam* always has reference to another time, past or future, more or less immediate. Used of past time it often marks the end of a series of events. Used with the imperfect, *iam* often denotes the beginning of an act.

12. **finem**: note difference of meaning in sing. and plural.

dedit, put.

5. **mox**, *adv.*, soon, thereupon, then, afterwards.

primum, *adv.* [**prīmus**], first, at first; **cum primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**marīnus**, of the sea], from over the sea; foreign.

7. **Laevīnus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [**explōrō**], scout, spy.

8. **ostendō**, -ere, -dī, -tum, *tr.* [obs = ob + tendō], display, show, point out.

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send away, let go.

9. **re-nūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, bring back word, report.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.

10. **com-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, bring together; engage in, begin; intrust.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.

11. **ex-pavēscō**, -ere, -pāvī, —, *tr. and intr.* [**pavēscō**, begin to fear], fear greatly, dread.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night.

12. **finis**, -is, *m. and f.*, boundary, end, close; *pl.*, territory, land.

13. **octingentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [octō + centum], eight hundred.

superus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**super**], high; *comp.*, superior, -ius, higher, upper, superior; former, previous; *sup.*, **summus**, -a, -um, and **suprēmus**, -a, -um, highest; the highest or uppermost part of, top of; greatest, utmost.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**trahō**], handle, manage, treat.

occisōs sepelīvit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur 15 cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi mīlitēs contigissent.

Posteā Pyrrhus coniūctīs sibi Samnītibus, Lūcānīs, Bruttiīs Rōmam perrēxit, omnia ferrō ignique vāstāvit, Campāniam

14. *cum*: not the preposition.

adversō vulnere, with wounds in front. They died with their faces turned toward the foe.

15. *dīcitur*: personal constr. What shows it?

16. *hāc vōce*, these words.

orbis: see on *orbem terrārum*, 6, 5.

esse potuisse, could have been; for the use of the present infinitive with *posse* see App. 205, a; A. 486, a; B. 270, 2; H. 618, 2; H.-B. p. 311, ft. note 2. The perfect infinitive (*potuisse*) is used because in direct discourse an indicative *potuī* would be written.

18. *sibi*: *coniungō* may govern either the abl., usually with *cum*, or the dative.

14. *sepeliō*, -īre, -ivī, -pultum, *tr.*, bury.

adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, [perf. part. of *advertō*], turned toward, facing, in front, opposite.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.

trux, *trucis*, *adj.*, fierce, stern.

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, expression, countenance, look.

15. *mortuus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *morior*], dead.

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate, lie dead.

ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; lift.

caelum, -ī, *n.*, the sky, heaven.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; force, band of troops.

16. *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f.*, voice, utterance; word.

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, the whole

of, all, entire.

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner, ruler.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a sort; of this sort; *tālis* . . . *quālis*, such . . . as.

17. *contingō*, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* and *intr.* [com-+tangō], touch, extend to; happen, fall to one's lot.

18. *coniungō*, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūntum, *tr.* [com-+iungō], join, unite.

Lūcānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Lucania, Lucanians. Map II, E-F, 5.

Bruttiī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Bruttians, inhabitants of the southwestern point of Italy. Map II, F, 6.

19. *pergō*, -ere, *perrēxī*, *perrēctum*, *intr.* [per+regō], go on, advance.

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron; spear, sword.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vās-tus], devastate, ravage, destroy.

20 populātus est atque ad Praeneste vēnit, miliāriō ab urbe octāvō
decimō. Mox terrōre exercitūs, quī eum cum cōsule sequē-
bātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redi-
mendis captīvīs missī ab eō honōrificē susceptī sunt. Captīvōs
sine pretiō Rōmam mīsīt. Ūnum ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum,
25 Fābriciū, sic admīrātus, cum eum pauperem esse cognōvisset,
ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā sollicitāre voluerit, ut ad sē
trānsīret, contemptusque est ā Fābriciō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus
Rōmānōrum ingentī admīrātiōne tenērētur, lēgātum mīsīt,
quī pācem aequīs condiciōnibus peteret, praecipuum virum,

20. ad Praeneste: for the use of the preposition see App. 131, *a*; A. 428, *a*; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453.

25. Fābriciū: Fabricius is an embodiment of the sturdy virtues that went to make up an ideal Roman of the old school, and is often referred to by Roman writers as a model citizen.

admīrātus: supply *est*.

26. prōmissā, by the promise of.

27. -que, but. A proposition is often introduced by *-que, et, or atque* where *but* would be used in English.

20. populo, -ārī, -ātus, tr., lay waste, ravage.

Praeneste, -is, n., one of the oldest cities of Latium. Map I, B, 8.

22. redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [red-+emō], ransom, release.

23. captīvus, -ī, m. [capiō], prisoner.
honōrificē, adv. [honōrificus, honorable], with honor, honorably.

24. pretium, -ī, n., price, reward, ransom.

25. Fābricius, -ī, m., a Roman name.
sic, adv., thus, so, to such a degree.

ad-miror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., wonder at, admire.

pauper, -eris, adj., poor, of small means; as *subst., m.,* a poor man.

cognōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, tr. [com-+(g)nōscō], become acquainted with, learn; in the *pf. tenses*, know.

26. prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., promise, assure, give hope of.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., stir up, instigate, urge.

27. contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptum, tr. [com-+temnō, scorn], despise, disregard.

quā-rē, adv., by reason of which, for this reason, therefore, then.

28. admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [admīror], admiration; surprise.

29. aequus, -a, -um, adj., even; fair, just; favorable.

condiciō, -ōnis, f. [condicō, agree], agreement, terms, condition, stipulation.

petō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -itum, tr., aim at, seek; make for, attack; demand, ask for, ask.

praecipuus, -a, -um, adj. [praecipiō], eminent, prominent.

Cīneam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus partem Italiae, quam iam armīs 30 occupāverat, obtinēret.

Pāx displicuit remandātumque Pyrrhō est ā senātū eum cum Rōmānīs, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habēre nōn posse. Tum Rōmānī iussērunt captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus red- 35 diderat, infāmēs habērī, quod armātī capī potuissent, nec ante eōs ad veterem statum revertī, quam sī bīnōrum hostium occīsōrum spolia rettulissent. Ita lēgātus Pyrrhī reversus est. Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam comperisset, Cīneās dixit rēgum sē patriam vīdisse; scīlicet tālēs illīc ferē

30. nōmine: for ablative see App. 149; A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; H.-B. 441. ita ut, *on condition that*; the *ut* clause denotes purpose.

32. eum . . . posse: subject of *remandātum est*.

33. recessisset stands for a future perfect in direct discourse.

posse, *would be able*, is equivalent to a future infinitive (representing a future indicative in direct discourse), as the word has in itself a future idea.

35. ante . . . quam, *sooner . . . than, before*; often written as one word.

38. ā: omit in translating. With *quaerō* the name of the person asked is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex*, or *dē*.

quālem . . . comperisset: indirect question; *what kind of city he had found Rome to be* (lit. *of what sort he had found Rome*).

39. tālēs . . . quālis, *such . . . as*.

30. Cīneās, -ae, *m.*, the minister of Pyrrhus.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons.

31. obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [ob+teneō], hold, occupy; retain.

32. displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [dis+placeō], displease, be unsatisfactory.

re-mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, send back word.

35. infāmis, -e, *adj.* [in+fāma], infamous.

36. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient; former.

status, -ūs, *m.* [stō], standing, position; condition.

revertor, revertī, *perf.* revertī, (*rarely*

reversus sum), *intr.*, return.

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by twos, two each.

37. spoliū, -ī, *n.*, spoil, booty.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *tr.*, bring back, bring; report, tell.

38. quaerō, -ere, -sīvī or -sīī, -sītum, *tr.*, seek, ask, inquire.

quālis, -e, *adj.*; *interrog.*, of what sort? what kind of? *rel.*, of such a kind, such as, as.

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.*, discover, learn.

39. scīlicet, *adv.* [scire+licet], without doubt, evidently, that is; *ironically*, doubtless.

illīc, *adv.* [ille], in that place, there.

40 omnēs esse, quālis ūnus Pyrrhus apud Ēpīrum et reliquam Graeciam putārētur.

Missi sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est, elephantī interfectī, vīgintī mīlia caesa hostium, et ex Rōmānīs
45 tantum quīnque mīlia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fābricius est missus, quī prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vīcīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum
50 occīsūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur. Quem Fābricius vīnctum redūcī iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus spopondisset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum

40. ūnus, *alone*. apud Ēpīrum, *in Epirus*.

45. tantum, *only*, a common meaning.

48. vīcīna castra . . . habērent, *had their camps close together*.

50. occīsūrum (*esse*): verbs of promising are usually followed by the future infinitive. *Esse* is often omitted in the future infinitive.

vīnctum, *in chains*; give principal parts of *vinciō*, *vīvō*, and *vincō*.

51. dīcī: what is the subject?

40. reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [relinquō], remaining, other, rest of.

41. Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. *Map I, G-H, 5-6*.

42. Sulpicius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Decius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Mūs, Mūris, *m.*, a cognomen.

43. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, struggle], struggle, battle.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vulnus], wound.

45. tantum, *adv.* [tantus], so much; only, merely; tantum . . . quantum, as much or as far . . . as.

quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five.

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, a Greek city in southern Italy. *Map II, F, 5*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [fuga], rout, put to flight.

46. intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [inter+iaciō], interpose, put between; *pass.*, of time or place, intervene.

48. medicus, -ī, *m.*, physician.

49. venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison.

50. polliceor, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, offer, promise.

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *tr.*, bind.

51. re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or conduct back.

quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? what sort of?

52. spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *tr.*, promise, undertake.

dixisse fertur: "Ille est Fābricius, quī difficilior ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest." Tum rēx ad Siciliam profectus est. Fābricius victīs Lūcānīs et Samnītibus triumphāvit. 55

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversum Pyrrhum missī sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit, ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. Eā diē caesa hostium vīgintī tria mīlia. Curius in cōsulātū triumphāvit. Prīmus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. 60 Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae civitātem, occīsus est.

57. **Dentātus**: see 15, 12. This was his third consulship. His *praenomen* was *Manius* not *Mārcus*.

60. **eā diē**: in the singular *diēs* is either masculine or feminine; in the plural it is masculine.

in cōsulātū triumphāvit: this was his third triumph, as he had already celebrated victories over the Samnites and Sabines. He was noted for the simplicity of his manners and life, being content after all his successes to live in a rude cottage on a little farm; and he was fond of declaring that "that citizen was a pernicious one who did not find seven acres sufficient for his needs."

62. **ā Tarentō**: the preposition sometimes occurs with names of towns, contrary to regular usage.

53. **difficulter**, *adv.* [difficilis], with difficulty; *comp.*, **difficilior**; *sup.*, **difficillimē**.

honestās, -ātis, *f.* [honōs], honor.

54. **sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, the sun.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [currō], speed; course.

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.*, turn away, turn.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily. *Map I, F, 6.*

57. **Lentulus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

58. **adversum** or **adversus**, *adv.* and *prep.* [advertō], opposite. against.

62. **Argos**, *n.* (*nom. and acc. only*), or **Argī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of Greece. *Map I, H, 6.*

17. BEGINNINGS OF IMPERIALISM: THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Another critical point in Roman history has now been reached, when, with all Italy reduced to the condition of a subject state, Rome stands upon the threshold of that career of foreign conquest which was to make her mistress of the whole known world. And the first step in this foreign conquest was taken against the Carthaginians in Africa, a nation, however, which was not to be finally overcome until after three mighty struggles, involving forty-three years of actual warfare, and covering a period of one hundred and eighteen years.

Annō quadringentēsīmō septuāgēsīmō septimō, cum iam clārum urbis Rōmae nōmen esset, arma tamen extrā Italiam mōta nōn fuerant. Ut igitur cognōscerētur quāe cōpiae Rōmānōrum essent, cēsus est habitus. Tum inventa sunt
5 cīvium capita ducenta nōnāgintā duo mīlia trecenta trīgintā quattuor.

Et contrā Āfrōs bellum susceptum est primum Ap. Claudiō

1. *cum*: the force of *cum* is indicated by the following *tamen*.

3. *cōpiae*: note different meanings in sing. and plural.

5. *capita*: see on *capita*, 6, 6.

7. *Āfrōs*: *i.e.*, the Carthaginians, a people of whose early history little is known. As far back as 600 B.C. Carthage was the center of a mighty empire extending from Cyrene (see Map I, H, 7) to the Strait of Gibraltar, holding as provinces the Balearic Islands (Map I, C, 5), Sardinia (Map I, E, 5), and some settlements on the coast of Spain and Gaul. At the time of the first Punic war the Carthaginians felt so sure of their mastery on the water that they boasted that the Romans could not even wash their hands in the sea without permission from Carthage. When Pyrrhus left Sicily after a stay of two years he is said to have exclaimed: "What a fine battleground we are leaving for the Carthaginians and the Romans!" This expectation was soon fulfilled.

Ap. Claudiō: see Vocab., *Claudius* (3).

1. *quadringentēsīmus*, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [*quadringentī*], four-hundredth.

septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [*septuāgintā*], seventieth.

2. *clārus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear; renowned.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [*exter*, outward], outside, outside of.

3. *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, *tr.*,

move, stir, set in motion; arouse.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, supplies; troops, forces.

4. *in-veniō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, find, discover.

5. *nōnāgintā*, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety.

trecentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [*trēs +centum*], three hundred.

7. *Āfer*, *Āfrī*, *m.*, an African; *Āfrī*, Africans, Carthaginians.

Q. Fulviō cōsulibus. In Siciliā contrā eōs pugnātum est et Ap. Claudius dē Āfrīs et rēge Siciliae Hierōne triumphāvit.

9. rēge Siciliae: *i.e.*, of Syracuse and the east coast of Sicily. Hiero later became an ally of the Romans, rendering them valuable service in the latter part of this war and in the Second Punic War.

triumphāvit, *celebrated a triumph over (dē).*

8. Fulvius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

9. Hierō, -ōnis, m., a king of Syracuse.

18. ROME'S FIRST NAVAL VICTORY

The necessity of a navy was very soon apparent to the Romans in this struggle against a maritime power; and it is a high tribute to their energy and skill that, in sixty days after they began the task, a fleet of one hundred and twenty quinqueremes had been built and launched, and the first naval victory in their history won. This was gained near Mylae, by Gaius Duilius.

Quintō annō primī bellī, quod contrā Āfrōs gerēbātur, primum Rōmānī C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus in marī dīmīcāvērunt parātīs nāvibus rōstrātīs, quās Liburnās

3. parātīs: give principal parts of *parō*, *pāreō*, and *pariō*.

nāvibus rōstrātīs: one of the chief elements in the power of the Romans was their ability to borrow from their enemies and improve or adapt to their own needs whatever was likely to be of any service to them. A Carthaginian galley that had been wrecked on the south coast of Italy served the Romans as a model; and while the forest was being converted into a fleet, the soldiers were taught to use the oar by rowing on benches arranged in tiers on the land.

Liburnās (sc. *nāvēs*): the Liburnians were celebrated as bold and skillful sailors, and their ships were remarkable for their swiftness.

2. C., *abbr. for Gāius*, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Duilius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Cn., *abbr. for Gnaeus*, -ī, m., a praenomen.

Asina, -ae, m., a cognomen; esp. Cn. Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul in 260 B.C.

3. parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, pre-

pare, provide, prepare for; obtain.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship; nāvis longa, war vessel.

rōstrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōstrum], furnished with a beak, beaked.

Liburnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Liburnian; nāvēs Liburnae, *light galleys built like those of the Liburnians.* Map I, F, 4.

vocant. Cōsul Cornēlius fraude dēceptus est. Duīlius com-
 5 missō proeliō Carthāginiēnsium ducem vīcit, trīgintā et ūnam
 nāvēs cēpit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium cēpit,
 tria mīlia occīdit. Neque ūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit,
 quod invictī terrā iam etiam marī plūrimum possent.

4. **fraude dēceptus est**: with seventeen vessels he was blocked by the Carthaginian fleet, and his whole squadron was captured without a struggle.

8. **terrā . . . marī**: the locative ablative of these words is found with or without a preposition (compare *in marī*, line 3). The preposition is regularly omitted in the phrase *terrā marīque*.

plūrimum possent, *were most powerful*; why the subjunctive? For the accusative see App. 128; A. 390, c; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; H.-B. 387, III.

4. **fraus, fraudis, f.**, deceit, trickery.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr., [dē+capiō], take in, deceive.

5. **Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj.**, of Carthage; *as subst., m.*, a Carthaginian.

6. **quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj.**, [quattuor+decem], fourteen.

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, tr., sink, overwhelm.

7. **victōria, -ae, f.** [victor], victory.

8. **in-victus, -a, -um, adj.**, unconquered, invincible.

19. REGULUS INVADES AFRICA

Then followed the invasion of Africa under Regulus, in which attempt he was defeated and taken prisoner. Sent to Rome to effect an exchange of prisoners, he advised the senate against this, though he knew that the acceptance of his advice meant for him a return to death by torture.

L. Mānliō Vulsōne M. Atīliō Rēgulō cōsulibus bellum in
 Āfricam trānslātum est. Contrā Hamilcarem, Carthāginiēn-
 sium ducem, in marī pugnātum, victusque est. Nam perditīs

3. **pugnātum (est)**, *they fought*.

victus . . . est: the change of subject is not indicated by expressing the new subject by *is* or *ille* as we should expect.

1. **Mānlius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name.

Vulsō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen.

Atīlius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

2. **Āfrica, -ae, f.**, Africa. *Map I.*
trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,
 take or carry across, transfer.

Hamilcar, -aris, m., a Carthaginian general.

sexāgintā quattuor nāvibus retrō sē recēpit. Rōmānī vīgintī
 duās āmisērunt. Sed cum in Āfricam trānsissent, prīmam 5
 Clypeam, Āfricae cīvitatē, in dēditionem accēpērunt. Cōn-
 sulēs usque ad Carthāginem prōcessērunt, multisque castellīs
 vāstātis Mānlius victor Rōmam rediit et vīgintī septem mīlia
 captīvōrum redūxit, Atilius Rēgulus in Āfricā remānsit. Is
 contrā Āfrōs aciem instrūxit. Contrā trēs Carthāginiēnsium 10
 ducēs dīmican̄s victor fuit, decem et octō mīlia hostium
 cecīdit, quīnque mīlia cum decem et octō elephantīs cēpit,
 septuāgintā quattuor cīvitatēs in fidem accēpit. Tum victī
 Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt, quam cum
 Rēgulus nōllet nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus dare, Āfrī auxilium 15
 ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt. Et duce Xanthippō, quī ā

4. retrō sē recēpit, *he retreated.*

6. in dēditionem accēpērunt, *they granted terms of surrender to.*

7. usque ad, *all the way to (the vicinity of)*; for this use of the preposition see App. 131, a; A. 428, a; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453, 1.

9. Atilius, etc., *while Atilius, etc.*

13. in fidem accēpit, *he took under his protection.*

15. dūrissimīs condiciōnibus: the conditional force of the ablative absolute is made clear by the use of *nisi*.

16. duce Xanthippō, *under the leadership of Xanthippus.*

Note above, three combinations making the ablative absolute; a noun with a participle, two nouns, a noun with an adjective.

4. sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty.
 retrō, *adv.*, backward, to the rear,
 back.

6. Clypea, -ae, *f.*, a town of northern
 Africa. Map I, E, 6.

dēditio, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō], surrender.

7. Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage, a
 city of Africa. Map I, E, 6.

castellum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of castrum*],
 fortress, stronghold; redoubt.

8. victor, -ōris, *m.*, victor; as *adj.*,
 victorious.

9. re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsi, —, *intr.*,
 remain, be left.

13. septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*,
 seventy.

fidēs, -eī, *f.* [fidō], faith, confidence;
 faithfulness; promise; protection.

15. nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, *tr. and*
intr. [ne+volō], not wish, be
 unwilling.

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard; harsh,
 severe, haughty.

16. Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*,
 Lacedaemonian; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*,
 the Lacedaemonians or Spartans.
 Map I, H, 6.

Xanthippus, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan
 general.

Lacedaemoniis missus fuerat, Rōmānōrum dux Rēgulus victus est ultimā perniciē. Nam duo mīlia tantum ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū refūgērunt, quīgentī cum imperātōre Rēgulō captī
20 sunt, trīgintā mīlia occīsa, Rēgulus ipse in catēnās coniectus.

Posteā Carthāginiēnsēs Rēgulum ducem, quem cēperant, petivērunt, ut Rōmam proficīscerētur et pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēret ac permūtātiōnem captīvōrum faceret. Ille Rōmam cum vēnisset, inductus in senātum nihil quasi Rōmānus ēgit
25 dixitque sē ex illā diē, quā in potestātem Āfrōrum vēnisset, Rōmānum esse dēsisse. Itaque et uxōrem ā complexū remōvit

17. Lacedaemoniūs: Greek soldiers frequently entered the service of foreign states as mercenaries. While the strict manner of life of early Sparta was no longer maintained, it was natural that her soldiers should still retain something of the prestige of earlier times and hence should be sought after as auxiliaries.

21. Rēgulum: *ā Rēgulō* would be the regular construction. Cf. *ā Lacedaemoniīs*, l. 16. The *ut* clause takes the place of the second noun.

23. obtinēret, obtain.

24. ēgit, acted. Regulus held that according to the Roman law he had lost his citizenship, since he had been captured in war and thereby made a slave; and that as a result his marriage was annulled. But there was a provision of the law by which a person thus returning after captivity was restored to his former civil standing (*postlīminium*).

25. diē: for gender compare note on *diē*, 16, 60.

26. dēsisse = dēsivisse.

18. perniciēs, -ēī, f. [per+nex], calamity, loss, disaster.

19. re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr., flee back, flee, escape.

quīgentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quīnque+centum], five hundred.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], general, commander-in-chief.

20. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter.

coniciō or coiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [com-+iaciō], throw, cast; put.

23. permūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [permūtō], an exchange.

24. nihil, n. indecl., nothing.

26. dē-sinō, -ere, -sivī or -sī, -situm (pf. inf. dēsisse), intr., cease, stop.

ita-que, conj., and so; accordingly, therefore.

complexus, -ūs, m. [complector], an embrace.

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. and intr., move back, put aside, remove.

et senātui suāsīt, nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim frāctōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; sē tantī nōn esse, ut tot mīlia captīvōrum propter ūnum sē et senem et paucōs, quī ex Rōmānīs captī fuerant, redderentur. Itaque obtinuit, nam 30 Āfrōs pācem petentēs nūllus admīsīt. Ipse Carthāginem rediit, offerentibusque Rōmānīs, ut eum Rōmae tenērent, negāvit sē in eā urbe mānsūrum, in quā, postquam Āfrīs servierat, digni-

27. *illōs enim*, etc., *for (he said) they*, etc. The verb of saying is often omitted when it is easily supplied from the context. Change indirect discourse to direct discourse.

28. *tantī*: for the genitive of value see App. 105; A. 417; B. 203, 3; H. 448; H.-B. 356. It is explained by the following result clause.

29. *et senem*, *an old man at that*.

30. *captī fuerant*: not a part of Regulus's speech. With indirect discourse a subordinate clause is often retained in the indicative when it is parenthetical or explanatory or when the fact stated is to be emphasized. Notice *servierat*, l. 33.

obtinuit: used absolutely, *he prevailed, he gained his request*.

31. *nūllus admīsīt*: *i.e.*, the senate absolutely refused to give the embassy a hearing.

32. *negāvit*: this verb is regularly used instead of *dīcō nōn*.

33. *mānsūrum*: supply *esse*.

Āfrīs: for the dative with *servierat* see App. 115; A. 367; B. 187 II; H. 426 1; H.-B. 362.

27. *suādeō*, -ēre, *suāsī*, *suāsum*, *tr.* and *intr.*, advise, persuade.

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian; *as subst.*, *m.*, a Carthaginian; *Poenī*, the Carthaginians.

fīō, *fieri*, *factus*, *used as pass. of faciō*, be made, be done, become; result, happen.

frangō, -ere, *frēgī*, *frāctum*, *tr.*, break, break down; weaken, wear out.

28. *tot*, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [*cadō*], accident, misfortune, calamity, fate.

29. *paucī*, -ae, -a, *adj.*, few; *as subst.*, *m. pl.*, a few.

31. *ad-mittō*, -ere, -*mīsī*, -*missum*, *tr.*, admit, receive.

32. *offerō*, -ferre, *obtulī*, *oblātum*, *tr.* [*ob+ferō*], offer, present.

negō, -āre, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *tr. and intr.*, say no, deny, refuse.

33. *serviō*, -ire, -*ivī* or -*iī*, -*itum*, *intr.* [*servus*], be a slave or subservient to; submit.

tātem honestī cīvis habēre nōn posset. Regressus igitur ad
35 Āfricam omnibus suppliciīs exstinctus est.

34. honestī: never translate this by the English word "honest."

34. honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs],
honorable, illustrious.

35. supplicium, -ī, *n.* [supplex],
punishment, torture.

regredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [re-+
gradior, walk], go back, come
back, return.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -tīnxī, -tīnctum,
tr. [stinguō, quench], put out;
kill, put to death.

20. THE AEGATES ISLANDS

The decisive event of this war was the battle off the Aegates Islands in 241 B.C.

C. Lutātiō Catulō A. Postumiō Albīnō cōsulibus, annō bellī
Pūnicī vicēsīmō et tertiō Catulō bellum contrā Āfrōs commis-
sum est. Profectus est cum trecentīs nāvibus in Siciliam; Āfrī
contrā ipsum quadringentās parāvērunt. Numquam in marī
5 tantīs cōpiīs pugnātum est. Lutātius Catulus nāvem aeger
ascendit; vulnerātus enim in pugnā superiōre fuerat. Contrā
Lilybaeum, cīvitātem Siciliae, pugnātum est ingentī virtūte
Rōmānōrum. Nam LXIII Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae sunt,
cxxv dēmersae, xxxii mīlia hostium capta, xiii mīlia occīsa,

2. Catulō: dative.

bellum contrā Āfrōs: the Latin usually avoids the use of a prepositional phrase depending on a noun. Usually the phrase is connected with its noun by a participle or a relative clause (as *quod . . . gerēbātur*, 18, 1), or an adjective is used instead. See on *rēs . . . Clūsīna*, 8, 4.

8. Rōmānōrum, (on the part) of the Romans.

1. Lutātius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Catulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

A., *abbr.* for Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a *praenomen*.

Albīnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

2. Pūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Poenus],
Punic, Carthaginian.

4. quadringentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*
[quattuor+centum], four hundred.

numquam, *adv.* [ne + umquam],
never.

5. aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

6. ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsūm,
tr. and intr. [ad+scandō, climb],
mount, ascend; go on board.

7. Lilybaeum, -ī, *n.*, a promontory
and town of western Sicily. Map
II, C, 7.

9. dē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.*,
sink.

XIII = tredecim, *indecl. num. adj.*
[trēs+decem], thirteen.

infinitum aurī, argentī, praedae in potestātem Rōmānōrum 10
redāctum. Ex classe Rōmānā XII nāvēs dēmersae. Pugnātum
est VI Idūs Mārtiās. Statim pācem Carthāginiēnsēs petivērunt
tribūtaque est hīs pāx. Captivī Rōmānōrum, quī tenēbantur
ā Carthāginiēnsibus, redditī sunt. Etiam Carthāginiēnsēs peti-
vērunt, ut redimī eōs captivōs licēret, quōs ex Āfrīs Rōmānī 15
tenēbant. Senātus iussit sine pretiō eōs darī, quī in pūblicā
custōdiā essent; quī autem ā prīvātis tenērentur, ut pretiō
dominīs redditō Carthāginem redīrent atque id pretium ex
fiscō magis quam ā Carthāginiēnsibus solverētur.

The results of the first Punic war were (1) the Romans gained control of all Sicily except the territory of Hiero; (2) Rome became a maritime power and mistress of the sea; (3) Carthage paid in tribute to Rome the whole cost of the war.

10. infinitum, a great amount.

12. VI. Idūs Mārtiās = ante diem sextum Idūs Mārtiās; see App. 300; A. 631; B. 371, 372; H. 754, 755; H.-B. 662-671.

15. licēret: what is the subject?

17. essent: why subjunctive?

ut . . . redīrent: for the regular constr. after iubeō compare darī, l. 16.

10. argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver.

11. redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.*
[red-+agō], drive back; bring;
render.

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet.

XII = duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*
[duo+decem], twelve.

12. Idūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, the
fifteenth day of March, May, July,
and October, the thirteenth of the
other months.

Mārtius, -a, -um, *adj.* [Mārs], of
Mars; of the month of March.

13. tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*
[tribus, a division of the people],
assign, bestow, grant.

15. licet, -ēre, -uit and -itum est,
intr., impers., it is allowed, per-
mitted, one may.

16. pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [popu-
lus], belonging to the state,
public.

17. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs], care,
custody, guard.

19. fiscus, -ī, *m.*, basket, purse;
treasury.

21. THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Carthage had made peace with Rome because her own strength was exhausted, and not because she had recognized the justice of Roman claims. After biding her time for twenty-three years she again took up the struggle in the second Punic war (218-201 B.C.). This was precipitated by Hannibal's attack upon Saguntum, a coast town in southern Spain, which Rome claimed as an ally.

Eodem annō bellum Pūnicum secundum Rōmānīs inlātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quī Saguntum, Hispāniae cīvitātem Rōmānīs amīcam, oppugnāre adgressus est, annum agēns vīcēsimum aetātis, cōpiīs congregātīs CL 5 milium. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Is lēgātōs admittere nōluit. Rōmānī etiā Carthāginem mīserunt, ut mandārētur Hannibalī, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra respōnsa ā Carthā-

1. eodem annō: this was in the year 219 B.C.

Rōmānīs: dative with compound verb.

2. per, through (the action of).

4. annum . . . aetātis, in his twentieth year (lit. passing the twentieth year of his life).

6. admittere: compare *nūllus admīsit*, 19, 31.

7. mīserunt: supply lēgātōs.

ut mandārētur, that instructions should be given; the subject is the following clause.

Hannibalī is the indirect object retained in the passive.

1. in-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātum, *tr.*, bring in; bear, bring; inflict; *w.* bellum, wage.

2. Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, a great Carthaginian general.

Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, a city on the east coast of Spain. Map I, C, 5.

3. Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain (often *pl.* because it was divided into two provinces). Map I, A-C, 4-5.

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly.

adgredior, -ī, -gressus, *tr. and intr.* [ad+gradior], attack.

4. aetās, -ātis, *f.*, time of life, life, age.

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+grex], collect, assemble.

L = quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty.

5. dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, give notice.

6. abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [abs+teneō], keep from, abstain from.

7. mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, commit, intrust, order, command.

8. socius, -ī, *m.*, companion, ally, associate.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.* [respondeō], answer, response.

giniēnsibus data sunt. Saguntīnī intereā famē victī sunt, captique ab Hannibale ultimīs poenīs adficiuntur. Bellum 10 Carthāginiēnsibus indictum est.

Tum P. Cornēlius Scīpiō cum exercitū in Hispāniam pro-
fectus est, Ti. Semprōnius in Siciliam. Hannibal relictō
in Hispāniā frātre Hasdrubale Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Alpēs,
adhūc eā parte inviās, sibi patefēcit. Trāditur ad Italiam 15

9. famē: for the ablative of *famēs* see on 13, 4. The siege lasted eight months.

10. adficiuntur, *were visited with*; historical present. The town was later captured by the Romans and freed from Carthaginian control.

12. P. Cornēlius Scīpiō: see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (3).

14. Alpēs: it is not clear by what route Hannibal crossed the Alps, but it was probably by the pass known as the Little St. Bernard. The crossing was attended with the greatest difficulties. It was late in the year; the higher passes of the Alps were covered with snow, which concealed the trail or made it slippery and dangerous. The Alpine tribes hurled down masses of stone from the heights above his path; the narrow places often had to be cut wider to allow the huge elephants to pass; the men were weakened by cold and hunger and exhausted by the severe toil. The loss of men was frightful. Less than half of the army that had crossed the Pyrenees remained when Hannibal descended into the plains of the Po. The hardships of the march were so great that Hannibal's army was not able to fight for some time.

15. eā parte: for the ablative with preposition omitted see App. 151, b.; A. 429, 1; B. 228, 1, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

trāditur: personal or impersonal?

9. Saguntīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Saguntum.

inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

10. poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ad+faciō], treat, afflict, punish; with *acc. and abl.*, visit with, inflict upon.

12. Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen.

13. Ti., *abbr. for* Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

Semprōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

14. frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.

Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.*, a Carthaginian name.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenaean; as *subst., m.*, the Pyrenees. Map I, B-C, 4.

Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. Map I, D-E, 3-4.

15. inviūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+via], impassable.

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō+faciō], lay open, open, open up.

trā -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns+acc.], give up, surrender; hand down, report.

LXXX mīlia peditum, x mīlia equitum, septem et xxx elephantōs addūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī Hannibalī sē coniūnxērunt. Semprōnius Gracchus cognitō ad Italiam Hannibalis adventū ex Siciiliā exercitum Ariminum trāiēcit.

17. *intereā*: during the crossing and before meeting the Romans.

Hannibalī: see on *sibi*, 16, 18.

18. *Semprōnius Gracchus*: a mistake. It was Tiberius Sempronius Longus.

ad, on the borders of.

cognitō . . . adventū: the Romans had no idea of Hannibal's plans. Upon the declaration of war the senate sent Sempronius Longus to Africa by way of Sicily, and Publius Scipio to Spain. When it was learned that Hannibal had crossed the Pyrenees and had reached the Rhone, Sempronius was recalled from Sicily. Scipio, on his way to his army, which had already reached Spain, landed at Massilia, and learning of Hannibal's movements, but not being able to check him, made haste to return to northern Italy.

19. *Ariminum*: from this place a great military road (*Via Aemilia*) extended up the Po through the heart of Cisalpine Gaul. For the omission of the preposition see App. 131; A. 427, 2; B. 182, 1, *a*; H. 418; H.-B. 450.

16. *pedes*, -itis, *m.* [pēs], foot-soldier; collectively, infantry.

17. *ad-dūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, bring to, induce.

Ligurēs, -um, *m.*, the Ligurians, a people on the northwest coast of Italy. Map II, A-B, 2.

18. *Gracchus*, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

19. *adventus*, -ūs, *m.* [ad+veniō], coming, arrival.

Ariminum, -ī, *n.*, a town of Umbria, on the coast of the Adriatic. Map II, D, 3.

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [trāns+iaciō], transport, bring across; go over, cross.

22. HANNIBAL'S SUCCESSES IN ITALY

Hannibal invaded Italy by way of the Alps, and was met by Roman arms on the Italian side. Then followed the battles of the Ticinus (218 B.C.), the Trebia (218), Lake Trasumenus (217), and Cannae (216), in which the Romans were constantly defeated.

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Hannibalī prīmus occurrit. Commissō proeliō, fugātis suis ipse vulnerātus in castra rediit. Sem-

2. *ipse vulnerātus*: he was saved from death by the bravery of his seventeen-year-old son Publius. This battle was fought on the banks of the Ticinus, a tributary of the Po (see Map II, B, 2).

1. *occurrō*, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō], meet, encounter, oppose.

prōnius Gracchus et ipse cōflīgit apud Trebiam ^{nives} amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Hannibalī multī sē in Italiā dēdidērunt. Inde ad Tusciam veniēns Hannibal Flāminiō cōsulī occurrit. 5 Ipsum Flāminium interēmit; Rōmānōrum xxv mīlia caesa sunt, cēterī diffūgērunt. Missus adversus Hannibalem postea ā Rōmānīs Q. Fabius Maximus. Is eum differendō pugnam ab impetū frēgit, mox inventā occāsione vicit.

Quīngentēsīmō et quadrāgēsīmō annō ā conditā urbe L. 10

3. et ipse: lit., *himself also*, or freely *also*.

4. quoque: see on *quoque*, 6, 2.

5. Flāminiō . . . occurrit: this battle, known as the battle of Lake Trasumenus (see Map II, C, 3), was fought in the following spring.

7. diffūgērunt: note force of the prefix *dis-*, "in the different directions."

8. Q. Fabius Maximus: see Vocabulary, *Fabius* (3). He was chosen dictator after the battle of Trasumenus and inaugurated a plan of campaign, which is named after him the "Fabian policy," and which won for him the nickname *Cūnctātor*, "the Delayer." His plan was to follow and annoy the Carthaginians, cutting off their supplies, but refusing all offers of battle. Although this policy was very unpopular at home he was vindicated in the outcome and earned the title "Savior of Rome."

differendō pugnam, *by putting off* (or *avoiding*) battle. The use of a gerund governing a direct object is not very common in the best Latin prose (except with a neut. pron. or adj.), the gerundive constr. being used instead.

eum . . . ab impetū frēgit, *prevented him from making a vigorous attack* (lit. *checked him from*, etc.).

10. quīngentēsīmō . . . annō: the date is wrong. It was 216, not 214.

3. cōflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flictum, *intr.* [con-+flīgō, strike], contend, fight.

Trebia, -ae, *f.*, a small tributary of the Po: Map II, B, 2.

amnis, -is, *m.*, a river.

4. dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, surrender; devote.

5. inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; after that, next.

Tuscia, -ae, *f.*, Etruria. Map II, C, 3-4.

Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

6. interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [inter+emō], kill.

7. cēterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of, other; *m. pl. as subst.*, the rest, the others.

diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.* [dis-+fugiō], flee in various directions, scatter.

8. differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, *tr. and intr.* [dis-+ferō], postpone, delay; differ.

10. quīngentēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīngentī], five-hundredth.

Aemilius Paulus P. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mit-
tuntur Fabiōque succēdunt, quī abiēns ambō cōsulēs monuit,
ut Hannibalem, callidum et impatientem ducem, nōn aliter
vincerent quam proelium differendō. Vērū, cum impatientiā
15 Varrōnis cōsulis, contrādicente alterō cōsule, id est Aemiliō
Paulō, apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpūliā pugnā-
tum esset, ambō cōsulēs ab Hannibale vincuntur. In eā
pugnā tria mīlia Āfrōrum pereunt; magna pars dē exercitū

12. **abiēns**, *retiring*; the term of his dictatorship had expired.

ambō is inflected like *duo*; see App. 49; A. 134; B. 80; H. 166; H.-B. 131, 2.

13. **ut . . . vincerent**, *that they should conquer*, etc., *i.e.*, that they must conquer by delay, if at all.

14. **proelium differendō**: see on *differendō pugnam*, l. 8.

impatientiā: ablative of cause.

15. **contrādicente . . . cōsule**: ablative absolute with adversative force. Varro, the plebian consul had no military experience; but, as the consuls held supreme command on alternate days, Paulus could only protest against the folly of his colleague in offering battle on unfavorable ground.

16. **pugnātum esset**: the Roman army numbered about 85,000 men including 6,000 cavalry; the Carthaginian about 50,000 men including 10,000 cavalry. Though largely outnumbered, Hannibal easily outmaneuvered the largest army that the Romans had ever gathered on a field of battle, and inflicted the most overwhelming defeat a Roman army ever suffered. "Never perhaps was an army of such size annihilated on the field of battle so completely and with so little loss to its antagonist as was the Roman army at Cannae" (Mommsen). The number of slain is variously estimated, by some as high as 70,000. 10,000 prisoners were taken. Hannibal's entire loss was less than 6,000. The splendid cavalry to which the victory was largely due lost only about 200 men.

11. **Aemilius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Paulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

Terentius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Varrō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen.

12. **ab-eō**, -īre, -īvī and -īī, -itum, *intr.*, go away, retire.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, advise, warn, instruct, urge.

13. **callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**calleō**, be skillful], shrewd, skillful.

impatiēns, -entis, *adj.* [**in-** + **patiēns**], impatient, impetuous.

aliter, *adv.* [**alius**], otherwise, in any other way.

14. **vērū**, *adv.* [**vērus**], truly, certainly; but.

impatientia, -ae, *f.* [**impatiēns**], impatience, impetuosity.

15. **contrā-dicō**, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *intr.*, contradict, oppose, speak against.

16. **vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village.

Cannae, -ārum, *f.*, a small town in Apulia. Map II, E, 4.

Hannibalis sauciātur. Nūllō tamen proeliō Pūnicō bellō Rōmānī gravius acceptī sunt. Periit enim in eō cōsul Aemi- 20
lius Paulus, cōsulārēs aut praetōriī xx, senātōrēs captī aut
occīsī xxx, nōbilēs virī ccc, mīlitum xl mīlia, equitum iii
mīlia et quīgentī. In quibus malīs nēmō tamen Rōmānōrum
pācis mentiōnem habēre dignātus est. Servi, quod numquam
ante, manūmissī et mīlitēs factī sunt. 25

Post eam pugnam multae Italiae civitatēs, quae Rōmānīs
pāruerant, sē ad Hannibalem trānstulērunt. Hannibal Rōmānīs
obtulit, ut captīvōs redimerent, respōsumque est ā senātū eōs
cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī, cum armātī essent, capī potuis-

20. gravius acceptī sunt, *suffered more severely.*

22. nōbilēs virī: men whose ancestors had held high office, as distin-
guished from the cōsulārēs, praetōriī, etc., who had themselves held office.

24. quod (supply *factum est*), *a thing which*; the antecedent is *servī . . . sunt*, hence the neuter singular.

26. multae . . . civitatēs: it was a part of Hannibal's plan to weaken
the Romans by inducing their Italian allies to revolt, as he had their Gallic
allies in his march through southern Gaul. He succeeded in winning over
the Samnites, Apulians, Lucanians, Bruttians, and Capua, the second city
in Italy; but the Latin tribes remained faithful to Rome.

27. sē trānstulērunt, *went over.*

28. ut . . . redimerent, *permission to redeem*, object of *obtulit*; see
App. 228; A. 563; B. 295, 2; H. 565; H.-B. 531, 2.

29. armātī: adjective use of the participle.

19. sauciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*
[saucius], wound, hurt.

21. cōsulāris, -e, *adj.* [cōsul], of a
consul, consular; *as subst., m.*, a
man of consular rank, ex-consul.

aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either
. . . or.

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor], of
a praetor; *as subst., m.*, a man of
praetorian rank, ex-praetor.

23. malum, -ī, *n.* [malus], evil, mis-
fortune, harm.

nēmō, *dat.*, nēminī, *acc.*, nēminem,
m. and f. [ne+homō], nobody, no
one:

24. mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention; men-
tiōnem habēre, make mention.

dignor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [dignus];
deem worthy, accept, deign,
condescend.

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave.

25. manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum, *tr.* [manus+mittō], release,
emancipate.

27. pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, obey,
be subject to.

28. re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōn-
sum, *intr.*, answer, reply.

29. necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ne-
cesse], necessary, urgent.

30 sent. Ille omnēs postea variis suppliciis interfecit et tres modiōs anulōrum aureōrum Carthāginem misit, quōs ex manibus equitum Rōmānōrum, senātōrum et militum detrāxerat.

31. anulōrum aureōrum: signet rings were commonly used among all classes of the Romans, but those of the common people were of iron.

30. varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, different.

ring, signet ring.

31. modius, -ī, *m.* [modus], a measure; peck.

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aurum], of gold, golden.

anulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of* ānus, ring],

32. dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, pull off, take away.

23. THE ROMAN RESPECT FOR AN OATH

The following incident of the days following the battle of Cannae is related by Aulus Gellius, and illustrates the Roman respect for an oath, recalling the story of Regulus as told in 19:

Post proelium Cannēse Hannibal ex captivīs nostrīs ēlēctōs decem Rōmam misit, mandāvitque eis pactusque est, ut, sī populō Rōmānō vidērētur, permūtātiō fieret captivōrum et prō his, quōs alterī plūrēs acciperent, darent argentī pondō libram
5 et sēlibram. Hoc, priusquam proficiscerentur, iūs iūrandum

1. Cannēse: see on *rēs* . . . *Clūsīna*, 8, 4 and on *bellum contrā Afrōs*, 20, 2.

3. vidērētur, *seemed good*; see on *vocārētur*, 9, 11.

4. his . . . acciperent, *whatever number the one side should take in excess of the other*; for the subjunctive, see *vidērētur* above.

5. proficiscerentur: for the subjunctive see App. 236 b; A. 551 b; B. 292; H. 605; H.-B. 507.

iūs iūrandum eōs adēgit: the first accusative is governed by the preposition in *adēgit* and the second one by the verb.

1. Cannēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae.
ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [ex+
legō], pick out, choose; *pf. part.*
ēlēctī, picked (men, etc.).

libra, -ae, *f.*, a balance; *of weight*, a pound.

2. pacīscor, -ī, pactus, *tr. and intr.*, agree, stipulate.

5. sēlibra, -ae, *f.* [sē (= sēmi)+
libra], a half-pound.

4. pondō, *adv.* [*cf.* pondus], by weight, in weight.

prius-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*, an oath.

eōs adēgit, reditūrōs esse in castra Pūnica, sī Rōmānī captīvōs nōn permūtārent.

Veniunt Rōmam decem captīvī. Mandātum Poenī imperātōris in senātū expōnunt. Permūtātiō senātuī nōn placet. Parentēs, cognātī adfinēsque captīvōrum amplexī eōs postlī- 10
miniō in patriam redisse dicēbant, statumque eōrum integrum incolumemque esse, ac, nē ad hostēs redire vellent, ōrābant. Tum octō ex hīs postlīminium iūstum nōn esse sibi respondē-
runt, quoniam iūre iūrاندō vīctī forent, statimque, utī iūrātī erant, ad Hannibalem profectī sunt. Duo reliquī Rōmae 15
mānsērunt solūtōsque sē esse ac liberātōs religiōne dicēbant, quoniam, cum ēgressī castra hostium fuissent, commentīciō

6. (sēsē) reditūrōs esse: the verb of saying is implied in *iūs iūrاندum*.

10. cognātī, adfinēs: distinguish the meanings of these words.

postlīminiō: the *iūs postlīminī* was a legal fiction based on the assumption that during the period of enforced inactivity the captive had never been absent at all. See note on *ēgit*, 19, 24.

14. forent = *essent*; the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse.

16. religiōne, *from their obligation*.

17. ēgressī castra . . . fuissent, *had left the camp*. The use of the accusative with *ēgredior* is not very common in classical Latin.

6. adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ad + agō], urge, compel; *iūs iūrاندum adigere*, bind by oath.

7. per-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, interchange, exchange.

10. parēs, -entis, *m. and f.* [pariō], father or mother, parent.

cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com- + (g)nāscor], related; *as subst., m.*, kinsman, blood-relation.

ad-finis, -e, *adj.*, adjacent to; *as subst., m. and f.*, a connection by marriage, connection.

amplector, -ī, -exus, *tr.* [ambi- + plectō, weave], cling to, embrace.

postlīminium, -ī, *n.* [post + limen, threshold], *a return to one's old condition and privileges*, right of return.

11. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched; whole, uninjured.

12. ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, entreat, beseech.

13. iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs], just, righteous; right, proper.

14. quoniam, *conj.* [quom + iam], since, as.

iūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūrō, swear], sworn, bound by oath.

16. religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, piety; moral obligation, oath.

17. ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [ex + gradior], go out, leave; land, disembark.

commentīcius, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-minīscor, invent], pretended, false.

cōnsiliō regressī eōdem, tamquam ob aliquam fortuitam causam
issent, atque ita rūrsum iniūrātī abissent. Haec eōrum fraudu-
20 lenta calliditās tam esse turpis exīstīmāta est, ut contemptī
vulgō sint cēnsōrēsque eōs postea omnibus ignōminiae notīs
adfēcerint.

Multīs autem in senātū placuit, ut datīs custōdibus ad Han-
nibalem dēdūcerentur, sed ea sententia numerō plūrium, quibus
25 id nōn vidērētur, superāta. Usque adeō tamen invīsī erant, ut
taediō vītae necem sibi cōnscīvissent.

Instead of marching straight upon Rome from Cannae as his generals
advised him to do, Hannibal remained in southern Italy, many nations
of which joined his standard, and spent the winter at Capua.

18. eōdem = *in castra*.

19. issent . . . abissent: for form see App. 84; A. 203; H. 297; H.-B.
194; for mood see on 11, 2.

21. notīs, *marks of disgrace*. In addition to degradation in rank (see on
cēnsor, 15, 6) the offenders were liable to deprivation of the right of voting
and to increased taxation.

24. numerō plūrium: an expression of means, *by the majority*.

25. vidērētur: meaning as in l. 3; subj. in a descriptive clause.

ut . . . necem sibi cōnscīvissent, *that they committed suicide* (lit.
that they decreed death to themselves).

18. eōdem, *adv.* [īdem], to the same
place, thither.

fortuitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fors], ac-
cidental.

19. rūrsum or rūrsum, *adv.* [reversus
pf. part. of revertō], again.

in-iūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsworn,
not bound by oath.

fraudulentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fraus],
deceitful, fraudulent.

20. calliditās, -ātis, *f.* [callidus],
cunning, shrewdness.

tam, *adv.*, so, so far; *correl. w. quam*,
as much, so.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, disgraceful, shame-
ful, dishonorable.

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+
aestimō], consider; suppose, be-
lieve.

21. vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus], commonly,
publicly, universally.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dis-
honor.

nota, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], a mark.

23. custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard,
guardian.

24. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentīō], opin-
ion, decision; proposal.

25. invīsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [invideō],
hated, hateful.

26. taedium, -ī, *n.* [taedet, it wea-
ries], weariness, disgust.

vīta, -ae, *f.*, life; manner of living.

nex, necis, *f.*, death, execution.

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītum, *tr.*
[com-+sciscō, approve], decree;
necem sibi cōnsciscere, commit
suicide.

24. THE BATTLE OF THE METAURUS RIVER: THE BEGINNING OF THE END

Meanwhile, in Spain and Sicily affairs had been more favorable to the Romans, while in Italy Hannibal seemed to have reached the acme of his success at Cannae, and to be now on the decline. In 211 B.C. the Romans besieged Capua, captured it, and took a bloody revenge upon the inhabitants. Hannibal then summoned from Spain his brother Hasdrubal, who, meeting the Romans at the Metaurus river (B.C. 207), was defeated and slain and his army cut to pieces.

Dēspērāns Hannibal Hispāniās contrā Scīpiōnem diūtius posse retinērī, frātre suum Hasdrubalem ad Italiam cum omnibus cōpiis ēvocāvit. Is veniēns eōdem itinere, quō etiam Hannibal vēnerat, ā cōsulibus Ap. Claudiō Nerōne et M. Līviō Salinātōre apud Sēnam, Pīcēnī cīvitātem, in insidiās compositās 5

1. **dēspērāns**: as a verb of emotion this governs indirect discourse.

Scīpiōnem: see Vocabulary, *Scīpiō* (4). This was *Āfricānus Maior*, the most brilliant of all the Scipios, and one of Rome's greatest heroes. He had been in the battle of the Ticinus with his father (see on *ipse vulnerātus*, 22, 2), had escaped from the slaughter of Cannae, and at the age of twenty-four had undertaken the command of the Roman army in Spain. Within four years he had expelled the Carthaginians and had made the Romans undisputed masters of the country.

3. **itinere, quō**: for the ablative see App. 144; A. 429, a; B. 218, 9; H. 476; H.-B. 426.

4. **ā cōsulibus**: construe with *compositās*.

Salinātōre: Livius was made censor a few years later and imposed a tax on salt. From this circumstance he was called in derision *Salinātor*, "the Salter," and the name remained in his family.

5. **insidiās**: the messenger sent to inform Hannibal of Hasdrubal's coming fell into the hands of the Romans. Claudius Nero, with a part of his forces, departed secretly from the neighborhood of Hannibal, joined Livius Salinator, and with his colleague fell upon the Carthaginians on the banks of the Metaurus (see Map II, D, 3), overwhelming them completely.

1. **dē-spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.*, give up hope, despair of.

2. **retineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [re-+teneō], keep back, retain, detain, hold.

3. **ē-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, call forth, summon.

4. **Nerō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen.

Līvius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Salinātor, -ōris, *m.*, a cognomen.

5. **Sēna**, -ae, *f.*, a town on the Umbrian coast. Map II, D, 3.

insidiae, -ārum, *f.*, ambush, stratagem.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, unite; devise, contrive; place; lay away.

incidit. Strēnuē tamen pugnāns occīsus est; ingentēs eius cōpiae captae aut interfectae sunt, magnum pondus aurī atque argentī Rōmam relātum est. Post haec Hannibal diffīdere iam dē bellī coepit ēventū. Rōmānīs ingēns animus accessit;
 10 itaque et ipsī ēvocāvērunt ex Hispāniā P. Cornēlium Scīpiōnem. Is Rōmam cum ingentī glōriā vēnit.

Q. Caeciliō L. Valeriō cōsulibus omnēs cīvitatēs, quae in Bruttiīs ab Hannibale tenēbantur, Rōmānīs sē trādiderunt.

6. **occīsus est**: the first intelligence of the disaster that reached Hannibal was the head of his brother, flung by the Romans into his outposts — an act in barbarous contrast with the magnanimity of the great Carthaginian, who had scrupulously given honorable burial to the Roman commanders Paulus, Gracchus, and Marcellus. When he recognized his brother's features he is said to have exclaimed sadly: "I see thy doom, O Carthage!"

10. **et ipsī**: like Hannibal the Romans called for help from Spain.

12. **L. Valeriō**: see Vocabulary, *Valerius* (3).

6. **incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, intr.** [**in+cadō**], fall in, fall upon, fall; happen.

strēnuē, adv. [**strēnuus**, prompt], strenuously, promptly.

7. **pondus, -eris, n.**, weight, burden.

8. **diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, intr.** [**dis-+fidō**], distrust; lose confidence.

9. **ēventus, -ūs, m.** [**ex+veniō**], outcome, result.

animus, -ī, m., soul, mind; feelings, heart, spirit; disposition, courage.

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., [**ad+cēdō**], draw near, approach; be added, be inspired in.

11. **glōria, -ae, f.**, glory, praise, renown.

12. **Caecilius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name.

25. HANNIBAL RECALLED TO DEFEND AFRICA

This was the last of the war in Italy. In 204 B.C. the Romans under Scipio invaded Africa, and Hannibal was recalled from Italy to protect his own country.

Annō quārtō decimō posteāquam in Italiam Hannibal vēnerat, Scīpiō, quī multa bene in Hispāniā ēgerat, cōsul est factus et

1. **vēnerat**: the past perfect is regularly used with *postquam* (*posteāquam*) in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (here *annō . . . decimō*).

2. **cōsul est factus**: at the age of thirty. The legal age was forty-three.

1. **posteā-quam, conj.**, after.

2. **bene, adv.** [**bonus**], well, suc-

cessfully, highly; *comp.*, **melius**; *sup.*, **optimē**.

in *Āfricam* missus. Cui virō dīvinum quiddam inesse existi-
mābātur, adeō ut putārētur etiam cum nūminibus habēre
sermōnem. Is in *Āfricā* contrā Hannōnem, ducem *Āfrōrum*, 5
pugnat; exercitum eius interficit. Secundō proeliō castra capit
cum quattuor milibus et quīgentis militibus, XI milibus
occisis. Syphācem, Numidiaie rēgem, quī sē *Āfris* coniūxerat,
capit et castra eius invādit. Syphāx cum nōbilissimis Numidis
et infīnitis spoliis Rōmam ā Scīpiōne mittitur. Quā rē auditā 10
omnis ferē Italia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus
redire in *Āfricam* iubētur, quam Scīpiō vāstābat.

3. in *Āfricam* missus: although opposed by the senate he succeeded in securing a sufficient equipment for his difficult task.

dīvinum quiddam: Scipio never undertook any important business without going to the Capitol and sitting for some time alone in communion (as he professed) with the gods. He declared that he had the divine approval in all his acts, and his uniform success naturally deepened the popular belief in his assertion. A man of his ardent and hopeful temperament may well have believed it himself.

4. putārētur: for mood see App. 226; A. 537; B. 284; H. 570; H.-B. 521, 2.

5. Hannōnem: an error on the part of Eutropius. Hanno was the leader of the peace party at Carthage, and the political enemy of the Barca family, to which Hannibal belonged. The two forces which opposed Scipio in Africa were led respectively by Hasdrubal, the son of Gisco, and Syphax, king of Numidia.

11. ipse . . . iubētur: the story is told that Hannibal received the command with grief and rage. According to Livy he exclaimed, "Hannibal has been conquered, but not by the Roman people which he has defeated and routed a hundred times. It will not be Scipio that will exult in the disgrace of my return so much as Hanno, who, having no other means of overthrowing the power of my family, has done it by the ruin of his own country."

3. dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [dīvus, divine], divine, sacred.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, or quiddam, *indef. pron.*; as *adj.*, certain, some; as *subst.*, a certain one, somebody, something.

in-sum, inesse, infui, —, *intr.*, be in; belong to.

4. nūmen, -inis, *n.*, will, divine will; divinity, god.

5. sermō, -ōnis, *m.* [serō], conversation, discourse.

Hannō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Carthaginian leader.

7. XI = ūndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, [ūnus+decem], eleven.

8. Syphāx, -ācis, *m.*, a king of Numidia.

Numidia, -ae, *f.*, a country of northern Africa. Map I, D, 6.

9. Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidians.

11. dē-serō, -ere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, join], abandon, desert.

26. THE BATTLE OF ZAMA: THE END OF THE WAR

Efforts for peace made by the Carthaginians proved unsuccessful, and in 202 B.C. the opposing forces under Scipio and Hannibal met in the final and decisive battle of Zama, in which the army of Carthage was annihilated, and the long struggle ended.

Ita annō septimō decimō ab Hannibale Italia liberāta est. Lēgātī Carthāginiēnsium pācem ā Scīpiōne petivērunt; ab eō ad senātum Rōmam missī sunt. Quadrāgintā et quīque diēbus hīs indūtiae datae sunt, quousque ire Rōmam et regredī pos-

5 sent; et trīgintā mīlia pondō argenti ab hīs accepta sunt. Senātus ex arbitriō Scīpiōnis pācem iussit cum Carthāginiēnsibus fierī. Scīpiō hīs condiciōnibus dedit: nē amplius quam trīgintā nāvēs habērent, ut quīngenta mīlia pondō argenti darent, captivōs et perfugās redderent.

10 Interim Hannibale veniente ad Āfricam pāx turbāta est, multa hostīlia ab Āfrīs facta sunt. Lēgātī tamen eōrum ex urbe venientēs ā Rōmānīs captī sunt, sed iubente Scīpiōne

3. ad senātum Rōmam, *to the senate in (at) Rome*. In such expressions the Latin idiom requires the accusative of end of motion with both nouns where the English idiom would lead us to expect an accusative and a locative construction.

4. possent: anticipatory subjunctive.

5. mīlia: supply *librārum*.

6. ex arbitriō, *at the discretion*; to be taken with *fieri*.

7. hīs condiciōnibus: he also demanded the surrender of the Spanish territory and the islands in the Mediterranean, and the transference of the kingdom of Syphax to his own ally Masinissa. The terms were not severe.

nē . . . habērent: for mood see App. 228; A. 563; B. 295; H.-B. 502, 3.

11. ex urbe: Rome was to the Romans *the* city.

4. indūtiae, -ārum, f., truce, armistice.

quousque, adv., till when, until.

6. arbitrium, -ī, n. [arbiter], judgment, opinion.

7. amplius, n. comp. adj. as adv. [amplus], more; *as subst.*, more, a greater amount.

9. perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugiō, desert], deserter.

10. interim, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile.

turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., disturb, break.

11. hostīlis, -e, adj. [hostis], of an enemy, hostile.

PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS

15

20

.

25

ullā memoriā fuit, cum perītissimī virī cōpiās suās ad bellum
 ēdūcerent. Scīpiō victor recēdit paene ipsō Hannibale captō,
 quī primum cum multīs equitibus, deinde cum vīgintī, postrēmō
 cum quattuor ēvāsit. Inventa in castrīs Hannibalis argentī
 30 pondō vīgintī mīlia, aurī octōgintā, cētera supellectilis cōpiōsa.
 Post id certāmen pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō
 Rōmam rediit, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit atque Āfricānus ex
 eō appellārī coeptus est. Finem accēpit secundum Pūnicum
 bellum post annum nōnum dēcimum, quam coeperat.

27. victor recēdit, *came off victorious.*

30. cētera, *other.*

32. ingentī glōriā triumphāvit: the people wished to place his statue in the senate house, the Rostra, and the Capitol and to make him dictator for life. He refused to accept these honors, however, and being conscious of the dislike and jealousy felt for him by a large number of the senators, he declined to take any active part at all in political affairs for several years.

The results of the second Punic war were that Carthage, the old rival of Rome, became a dependent state and bound herself to pay an annual war tax of two hundred talents for fifty years; that she also pledged herself to wage no war at home or abroad without the consent of Rome; that Rome became undisputed mistress of the sea; that Spain became a Roman province and the Roman power was extended over the native tribes of Africa; and that the Roman sway over Italy was still more firmly established.

33. coeptus est: for the passive form see App. 86, *a*; A. 205, *a*; B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; H.-B. 199, 2.

34. post annum . . . quam coeperat = *annō postquam coeperat*; for the past perfect see on *vēnerat*, 25, 1.

26. perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skillful, familiar with.

27. ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead out.

28. postrēmō, *adv.* [postrēmus], at last, finally.

29. ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *intr.*, go away, escape.

30. supellectilis (*more commonly supellex*), -is, *f.*, furniture, goods, furnishings.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia], rich, abundant.

32. Āfricānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or in Africa, African; as *subst.*, *m.*, a cognomen.

27. THE THIRD PUNIC WAR: DESTRUCTION OF CARTHAGE

Having got Carthage so far within her power, Rome was not content that her rival should ever again enjoy prosperity; and during the next fifty years she was by every means working toward that end which in 157 B.C. Cato began to voice with constant iteration, "Carthage must be destroyed." Upon the flimsy pretext that Carthage had banished some partisans of Masinissa, an ally of Rome, war was again declared, and after a three-years' siege (149-146 B.C.) Carthage was taken and completely destroyed, and Africa became a Roman province.

Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem suscipitur, sexcentēsimō et alterō ab urbe conditā annō, L. Mānliō Cēnsōrīnō et M. Māniliō cōsulibus, annō quīnquāgēsīmō prīmō postquam secundum Pūnicum trānsāctum erat. Hī profectī Carthāginem oppugnāvērunt. Contrā eōs Hasdrubal, dux Carthāgi-
niēnsium dīmīcābat. Famea, dux alius, equitātui Carthāgi-
niēnsium praeerat. Scīpiō tunc, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōs, tribūnus ibi militābat. Huius apud omnēs ingēns metus et

1. **tertium . . . bellum**: the rich Phoenicians, absorbed in commerce, had no desire for war. They tried every method of averting hostilities. But even Carthaginian patience gave way when Roman arrogance demanded that the city of Carthage should be razed to the ground and that the people, leaving the coast, should settle at least ten miles from the sea.

5. **Hasdrubal**: see Vocab., *Hasdrubal* (2).

7. **Scīpiō**: see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (5). This is Scipio Africanus Minor, the younger son of Lucius Aemilius Paulus the conqueror of Macedonia, and grandson of the Aemilius Paulus who fell at Cannae. He had been adopted into the family of the Scipios by the son of the great Africanus. He was a young man of varied ability, being no less remarkable for his literary tastes and love for Greek culture than for his skill in war.

8. **tribūnus** (*mīlitum*): there were six tribunes to each legion, two holding command for two months on alternate days. As a rule, young men were chosen who were of senatorial or equestrian rank.

1. **sexcentēsimus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [sexcentī], six-hundredth.

2. **Cēnsōrīnus**, -ī, *m.*, a *cognomen*.

3. **Mānilius** -ī, *m.*, a *Roman name*.
quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnquāgintā], fiftieth.

4. **trānsigō**, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [trāns+agō], finish, bring to an end.

6. **Famea** -ae, *m.*, *surname of Himilco*, a *Carthaginian general*.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō], *cavalry*.

7. **prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be in command of, be in charge of.

8. **ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place.

militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [mīles], wage war.

metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.

reverentia erat, nam et parātissimus ad dīmīcandum et cōn-
 10 sultissimus habēbātur. Itaque per eum multa ā cōsulibus
 prōsperē gesta sunt, neque quicquam magis vel Hasdrubal vel
 Famea vitābant, quam contrā eam Rōmānōrum partem com-
 mittere, ubi Scīpiō dīmīcāret.

Per idem tempus Masinissa, rēx Numidārum, per annōs sexā-
 15 gintā ferē amīcus populī Rōmānī, annō vitāe nōnāgēsīmō
 septīmō mortuus quadrāgintā quattuor filiīs relictīs Scīpiōnem
 dīvisōrem rēgnī inter filiōs suōs esse iussit.

Cum igitur clārum Scīpiōnis nōmen esset, iuvenis adhūc cōn-

9. cōsultissimus: the tribunes had usually served in at least one cam-
 paign before they were raised to this rank. In Caesar's time owing to
 their military incapacity they were made inferior to the *lēgātus*, and given
 administrative and judicial functions.

10. per eum . . . ā cōsulibus: a good illustration of the difference
 between the accusative with *per* and the ablative of agency. Scipio was
 the only man who showed any real capacity for command. Even the
 crabbed Cato was wont to quote in regard to him the Homeric verse,
 "He only is a living man, the rest are gliding shades."

12. vitābant: irregular plural; see App. 180, *a*; A. 317, *b*; B. 255, 2, *b*;
 H. 392, 5; H.-B. 329, 3. **committere:** supply *proelium*.

13. dīmīcāret: for the mood see on 9, 11.

15. annō . . . mortuus, *dying at the age of ninety-seven.*

16. filiīs relictīs: ablative absolute, equivalent to a coördinate clause.

17. dīvisōrem . . . esse, *to divide.* A noun denoting agency with *esse*
 is often best translated by the corresponding verb in English.

18. iuvenis adhūc: the term is loosely used with reference to one
 between the ages of twenty and forty. Scipio was thirty-seven, six years
 below the legal age for the consulship; but in spite of this and opposition
 on the part of the presiding consul he was elected and intrusted with the
 African war.

9. reverentia, -ae, f. [*revereor, re-
 vere*], awe, reverence.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of
 parō*], prepared, ready.

cōsultus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of
 cōsulō*], skillful, experienced.

11. prōsperē, adv. [*prōsperus, as de-
 sired*], favorably, prosperously.

vel, conj. [*volō*], or; **vel . . . vel,**
 either . . . or.

12. vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., shun.

15. amīcus, -ī, m., friend.

16. morior, -ī, mortuus, intr., die.

17. dīvisor, -ōris, m. [*dīvidō*], one
 who divides, a distributor.

18. iuvenis, -is, adj., young; *as
 subst., m. and f., a young person,
 youth, esp. one between the ages
 of twenty and forty years; comp.,
 iūnior, younger.*

sul est factus et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is eam cēpit ac diruit. Spolia ibi inventa, quae variārum cīvitātum excidiis 20 Carthāgō conlēgerat, et ōrnāmenta urbium cīvitātibus Siciliae, Italiae, Āfricae reddidit, quae sua recognōscēbant. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsīmō annō, quam condita erat, dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen, quod avus eius accēperat, meruit, scīlicet ut propter virtūtem etiam ipse Āfricānus iūnior vocārētur. 25

20. spolia . . . ōrnāmenta: objects of *reddidit*.

22. quae . . . recognōscēbant, *which they recognized (i.e., could identify) as their own.*

Carthāgō . . . dēlēta est: the noble-minded Scipio, it is said, recoiled from the task of destruction, but the senate was inexorable. The work was thoroughly done, and "where the industrious Phoenicians had bustled and trafficked for five hundred years, Roman slaves henceforth pastured the herds of their distant masters" (Mommsen).

23. quam = *postquam*.

24. scīlicet ut, *namely that, or so that.*

25. etiam . . . vocārētur, *he, too, was called Africanus, (that is) the younger.*

20. dī-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, demolish, destroy.

21. ōrnāmentum, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō], adornment, decoration.

22. re-cognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum, *tr.*, recognize, recall.

23. septingentēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [septingentī], seven-hundredth.

24. avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *or mereor, -ērī, -itus, tr.*, deserve, earn, acquire.

28. THE CONQUEST OF GREECE: DESTRUCTION OF CORINTH

But not Carthage alone during all these years was suffering under Roman aggression. One by one pretexts for war had been sought with the different states of Greece, and one by one they had been reduced to Roman dependencies; until at last the destruction of Corinth in the very year in which Carthage was destroyed (146 B.C.) completed the work of the conquest of Greece. In that year Macedonia became a Roman province, whose governor also had general supervision of all the communities of Greece.

Corinthiīs quoque bellum indictum est, nōbilissimae Graeciae

1. Corinthiū, -ōrum, *m.*, Corinthians, *people of Corinth.*

civitātī, propter iniūriam lēgātōrum Rōmānōrum. Hanc Mummius cōsul cēpit et dīruit. Trēs igitur Rōmae simul celeberrimī triumphī fuērunt: Āfricānī ex Āfricā, ante cuius
 5 currum ductus est Hasdrubal, Metellī ex Macedōniā, cuius currum praecessit Andriscus, idem quī et Pseudophilippus, Mummī ex Corinthō, ante quem signa aēnea et pictae tabulae et alia urbis clārissimae ōrnāmenta praelāta sunt.

2. civitātī: in apposition with *Corinthiīs*; see on *Gabiōs civitātem*, 7, 3.

iniūriam: despite the unusual leniency which the Romans had shown in their dealings with the Greeks, the latter displayed a foolish and ungovernable hostility toward their generous foes. In Corinth the Roman envoys were refused a hearing and even the mob in the street was allowed to insult them with impunity.

3. dīruit: the city was leveled to the ground. The glory of Greece had departed, but not her influence. Since the fall of Tarentum in 272 B.C., the Romans had felt the stimulus of her arts and letters, a power which was to grow greater as the Greeks and Romans came into closer relations.

6. idem . . . Pseudophilippus, the same who (was) also the pretended Philip. Andriscus, a fuller, had given out that he was a son of Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, and had succeeded in arousing a revolt among the Macedonian people. For more than a year he defied the Romans, but he was at last defeated and captured by Metellus.

7. signa aēnea: Corinthian bronzes were celebrated as the most beautiful in the world.

3. Mummius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

simul, adv., at the same time, together; as soon as.

4. celebr, -bris, -bre, adj., frequented, thronged; celebrated.

triumphus, -ī, m., triumph.

5. Metellus, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Macedonia, -ae, f., a country lying north of Thessaly. Map I, G-H, 5.

6. prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, tr., go before, precede.

Andriscus, -ī, m., a Persian pre-

tender to the throne of Macedonia.

Pseudophilippus, -ī, m., the pretended Philip.

7. Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, a city of Greece. Map I, H, 5.

aēneūs, -a, -um, adj. [aes], of bronze or copper.

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum, tr., paint; pf. part. as adj., painted, ornamented.

tabula, -ae, f., plank; tablet; tabula picta, a painted tablet, painting, picture.

29. A CENTURY OF CIVIL STRIFE

Rome has now reached the summit of conquest. Other foreign wars there will be, but unimportant in comparison with those which have made Rome mistress not only of Italy, but also of Sicily, Spain, Africa, and Greece. And now the inevitable reaction is to be expected. The people of Rome have not prospered with her prosperity. Vast tracts of newly acquired land have not added to their estate, but have fallen under the control of the ruling nobles; vast numbers of captives have been brought to Rome as slaves only to displace the Roman peasants in all kinds of profitable employment. Now that Roman aggressive wars no longer occupy the interest and activity of the nation, the masses find themselves more and more unable to make an honest living. Hence the immemorial struggle between the masses and the classes breaks out anew, and civil dissensions ensue destined to last a full century. At first it is a struggle of the real champions of the people against the oligarchical senate, and later it is the clashing of rival leaders, each claiming to represent the interests of one or the other side, but in reality seeking to advance his own private ambitions.

Tiberius Gracchus, representing the people as one of their tribunes, attempted to gain relief for them by the passage of agrarian laws which should give the masses their share in the benefits of the public lands. The result of his agitations was that he was mobbed and killed in 133 B.C. by the senatorial party. Twelve years later, the same fate overtook his brother Gaius, who also championed the people against the senate.

30. GAIUS MARIUS

The popular party found its next leader in Gaius Marius. He, by bringing to a successful issue the war with the African prince Jugurtha (111-104 B.C.), a war which had been shamefully mismanaged by the oligarchy, and by annihilating the hordes of Cimbri and Teutons who threatened to overwhelm Italy from the north (102, 101 B.C.), became the first man of the state in popularity, and was repeatedly elected consul. But as a statesman he did not show the same strength and judgment which had made him great as a general. Gross errors of judgment lost him popularity with the people. The senate already hated him. In the civil struggle which followed between the popular party under Marius (88 B.C.) and the senatorial party headed by Sulla, the latter triumphed and Marius was outlawed. The following striking incident is told of his life in exile:

Marius *hostēs persequentēs fugiēns aliquamdiū in palūde*

1. *hostēs*: the forces of Sulla, who had captured the city and compelled Marius to take refuge in flight.

1. *Marius*, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
per-sequor, -ī, -*secūtus*, *tr.*, follow
 after, follow, pursue.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time, for
 a while.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus extractusque, ut erat nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum lōrō Minturnās raptus et in custōdiam coniectus est. Missus est ad eum
 5 occīdendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte dēterrui. Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō gladiō venientem vīdisset: "Tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occīdere?" Quō auditō attonitus ille ac tremēns

2. *ut erat, just as he was.*

nūdō corpore: for the ablative see App. 141; A. 415; B. 224; H. 473, 2; H.-B. 443.

3. Minturnās: accusative of place to which.

4. raptus: supply *est*.

5. servus pūblicus: a slave who was the property of the state.

nātiōne: ablative of respect. The Cimbrian slave would naturally stand in awe of the general who had inflicted such a crushing defeat upon his people.

6. strictō gladiō, *with drawn sword*.

7. -ne: see App. 213 a.

inquit: only the forms of the present indicative singular are in common use.

2. dēlitiscō, -ere, -litui, —, *intr.* [dē+latēscō, hide], hide, lie hidden.

paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat.

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw, pull, or drag out; remove.

3. corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body.

caenum, -ī, *n.*, filth, mire.

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, *tr.* [linō, smear], smear.

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [in+iaciō], throw in or upon, put upon.

collum, -ī, *n.*, the neck.

lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

Minturnae, -ārum, *f.*, a town of southern Latium. Map II, D, 5.

5. Cimber, -brī, *m.*, a Cimbrian; *pl.*, Cimbri, a people from Jutland who invaded Italy. Map I, E, 1.

6. auctōritās, -ātis, *f.* [auctor],

authority, dignity, prestige.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter, prevent.

stringō, -ere, -inxi, -ictum, *tr.*, draw tight; strip off; *w. gladium*, unsheathe.

7. gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.

tū, tui, *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

-ne, *encl. adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, in direct questions it is an untranslatable sign of interrogation; as *conj.*, in indirect questions, whether.

inquam, *intr.*, *defect.*, always placed after one or more words of a quotation, say.

8. audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *tr. and intr.*, dare, venture.

attonitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [attonō, stun], awestruck, amazed.

tremō, -ere, -ui, —, *intr.*, tremble, shudder.

abieciō ferrō fūgit, Marius sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab iīs, quī prius eum occidere voluerant, ē carcere ēmissus est.

9. abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*
[ab+iaciō], throw or cast away,
cast.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
[freq. of clāmō], cry out, shout.

10. carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison, dun-
geon.

11. ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*,
send forth; throw, hurl; let go,
release.

31. SULLA SUPREME IN ROME

Once more, in the absence of Sulla upon his campaign in the east against Mithridates, Marius returned to Rome (86 B.C.) and was again, for the seventh time, elected consul. A bloody proscription of the senatorial party followed, a reign of terror. The first Mithridatic war concluded, Sulla hurried back to Rome (83 B.C.), and completely crushing the Marian party took bloody revenge upon them.

Interim eō tempore Sulla etiam Dardanōs, Scordiscōs, Dalmatās et Maedōs partim vīcit, aliōs in fidem accēpit. Sed cum lēgātī ā rēge Mithridāte, quī pācem petēbant, vēnissent, nōn aliter sē datūrum Sulla esse respondit, nisi rēx relictīs hīs, quae occupāverat, ad rēgnū suū redisset. Postea tamen ad conloquium ambō vēnērunt. Pāx inter eōs ōrdināta est, ut

2. partim . . . aliōs: used here correlatively.

3. Mithridāte: he was a man of remarkable ability and an implacable foe of Rome. He had enlarged the bounds of his kingdom till it extended almost around the Euxine; and in the year 88 B.C. he had overrun the Roman possessions in Asia, putting to death the Italian inhabitants of the country.

nōn aliter . . . nisi, *on no other terms than that.*

6. ut . . . habēret: purpose clause; *ut nōn* is used in a purpose clause instead of *nē*, when the *nōn* negatives a single word (here *habēret*).

1. Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

Dardanī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of
southern Moesia. Map I, G, 4.

Scordisci, -orum, *m.*, a people of
Pannonia. Map I, G, 3.

Dalmatae, -ārum, *m.*, the Dalma-
tians, people of Dalmatia. Map
I, F-G, 4.

2. Maedī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of
western Thrace.

partim, *adv.* [pars], partly; partim
. . . partim, partly . . . partim,
some . . . others.

3. Mithridātēs, -is (*Greek acc. -ēn*),
m., a famous king of Pontus, a
country in Asia Minor.

Sulla ad bellum cīvile festināns ā tergō periculum nōn habēret. Nam dum Sulla in Achaeā atque Asiā Mithridātēn vincit, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōn-
 10 sulibus, bellum in Italiā reparāvērunt et ingressī urbem Rōmam nōbilissimōs ē senātū et cōsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt, multōs prōscripsērunt, ipsius Sullae domō ēversā filiōs et uxōrem ad fugam compulērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex urbe fugi-
 15 Ille in Italiam trāiēcit, bellum cīvile gestūrus adversus Norbānum et Scīpiōnem cōsulēs. Et primō proeliō contrā

8. in Achaeā: Mithridates had tampered with the Greeks of Europe as well as of Ionia, and had been so successful that for a short time the eastern boundary of the Roman possessions was pushed westward as far as the Adriatic.

9. Cinna: the father-in-law of Julius Caesar.

12. prōscripsērunt: the *prōscriptiō* was so called because the names of those included were written out and posted in public places. Those whose names were written on the list were made outlaws and might be killed by any one, slave or free. Their property was confiscated to the state, and even their children and grandchildren were disfranchised and excluded from office.

14. ad Sullam in Graeciam: see on *ad senātum Rōmam*, 26, 3.

15. gestūrus, for the purpose of waging; the future active participle may be used to denote purpose.

Norbānum et Scīpiōnem: see Vocab., *Scīpiō* (6); both were incapable. Sulla defeated Norbanus and then blockaded him at Capua all winter, while, under the pretense of peace negotiations, the soldiers of Scipio were persuaded to desert in a body to Sulla's side.

7. periculum, or periclum, -ī, n., peril, danger.

8. dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until.

Achaea, -ae, f., the province of southern Greece. Map I, H, 6.

Asia, -ae, f., Asia; Asia Minor. Map I, I-J, 4-6.

9. Cinna, -ae, m., a cognomen.

12. prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., proscribe, outlaw.

ē-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sam, tr., overthrow, destroy, ruin.

13. fuga, -ae, f. [fugiō], flight.

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., collect, force, drive.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj. [ūnus + versus], all together, whole, entire, all in a body.

14. sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come to aid, assist.

15. Norbānus, -ī, m., a Roman name.

CNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS

cōs mēnsēs ingentī et fēlicitāte et celeritāte cōnfēcit. Mox
 5 eī dēlātum etiam bellum contrā Mithridātēn et Tigrānēn
 Quō susceptō Mithridātēn in Armeniā Minōre nocturnō proeliō
 vīcit, castra dīripuit, quadrāgintā mīlia eius occīdit, vīgintī
 tantum dē exercitū suō perdidit et duōs centuriōnēs. Mithri-
 dātēs cum uxōre fūgit et duōbus comitibus. Neque multō
 10 post, cum in suōs saeviret, Pharnacis, fili suī, apud mīlitēs
 sēditione ad mortem coāctus venēnum hausit. Hunc finem
 habuit Mithridātēs. Rēgnāvit annis sexāgintā, vixit septuāgintā
 duōbus, contrā Rōmānōs bellum habuit annis quadrāgintā.

4. cōnfēcit: this is the usual word meaning to end a war.

10. in suōs saeviret: Mithridates put to death the accomplices of his son, who had finally revolted against his father and joined the Romans.

Pharnacis: construe with *mīlitēs*.

11. venēnum hausit: the story is sometimes told that he had so inured his constitution to poison that the draught failed to take effect, and he was obliged to call in a soldier to dispatch him with his sword.

12. annis: for the case see on *annis*, 7, 8.

13. quadrāgintā: an exaggeration. Mithridates had spent about twenty-five years at war with the Romans.

4. fēlicitās, -ātis, *f.* [fēlix], good fortune.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* [celer], speed, quickness.

5. Tigrānēs, -is (*Greek acc. -ēn*), *m.*, a king of Armenia.

6. Armenia, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia, divided into Armenia Major and Minor. Map I, J, 4.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small; *comp.*, minor, minus; *sup.*, minimus, -a, -um, least, very small.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], of night, at night.

7. dīripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], tear in pieces, plunder, ravage.

8. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centuria,

company of a hundred], centurion.

9. comes, comitis, *m. and f.*, companion, comrade.

multō, *adv.* [multus], much, far by far.

10. saeviō, -īre, -īī, -ītum, *intr.* [saevus], rage, be furious, be violent.

Pharnacēs, -is, *m.*, son of Mithridates.

11. mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *tr.* [com-+agō], collect; urge, compel, drive.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, *tr.* drink, drink in, take in.

12. vivō, -ere, vixī, vīctum, *intr.* live.

33. THE CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE

The year 63 B.C. was made memorable at Rome by the conspiracy of Catiline during the consulship of Cicero.

M. Tulliō Cicerōne ōrātōre et C. Antōniō cōsulibus, annō ab urbe conditā sexcentēsīmō octōgēsīmō nōnō, L. Sergius Catilīna, nōbilissimī generis vir, sed ingenī prāvissimī, ad dēlendā patriam coniūrāvit cum quibusdam clārīs quidem, sed audācibus virīs. Ā Cicerōne urbe expulsus est. Socii eius 5

1. Cicerōne ōrātōre: Cicero had already made himself famous by his ability as an orator and by his integrity in office. He had first brought himself prominently before the public in the year 70 B.C. by his prosecution of Verres, the dishonest governor of Sicily, and had then risen rapidly from one official honor to another till he reached the consulship in 63 B.C.

3. Catilīna: Catiline was a man of good family who had ruined himself by his spendthrift habits and dissolute living. He had put himself at the head of a large number of young men who were desperate like himself, and had planned to murder the consuls and chief men in authority, and to plunder and burn the city. He had collected weapons in various places, and made every preparation for an armed insurrection, when his plans were revealed to the consul Cicero. The senate acted promptly and clothed the consuls with dictatorial power. Precautions were taken; upon Catiline's entering the senate chamber Cicero eloquently denounced him and exposed the whole plot; the senate rose against him. He hurriedly left the city and, making his way to Etruria, joined the hostile bands collected there under the leadership of his lieutenant, Manlius.

nōbilissimī generis: the descriptive genitive or descriptive ablative does not usually depend upon a proper noun, but upon a generic noun in apposition with the proper noun.

4. quidem, to be sure.

5. socii . . . necātī sunt: some years later Cicero was sent into exile for having put Roman citizens to death without trial. His banishment lasted about a year.

1. Cicerō, -ōnis, m. [cicer, chick-pea], a cognomen.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], orator.

Antōnius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

2. octōgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octōgintā], eightieth.

Sergius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

3. Catilīna, -ae, m., Catiline, a cognomen.

ingenium, -ī, n., disposition, nature.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., vicious, bad.

4. coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [com-+iūrō], league together, conspire.

5. audāx, -ācis, adj., bold, daring.

dēprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōnsule, Catilīna ipse victus proeliō est interfectus.

6. **in carcere**, *in the prison*, that is, in the Tullianum, which is said to have been built by Ancus Marcius.

7. **Catilīna . . . victus**: this battle was fought in northern Etruria in March of 62 B.C.

6. dē-prehendō, -ere, -prehendī, necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nex], to
-prehēnsū, *tr.*, seize, capture. kill, destroy.

34. THE FIRST TRIUMVIRATE: JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL

Pompey returned to Rome in 61 B.C. In the following year a coalition was formed by Pompey, Crassus, who was at that time one of the richest men in Rome, and Julius Caesar, who was then just coming into prominence because of his brilliant military successes in Spain. The object of this triumvirate (as it is called) was to obtain grants of land for Pompey's veterans, to secure official ratification of all his acts in the east, and to raise Caesar to the consulship. Of these three men, Caesar was, by early circumstances and family connections, of the Marian party; Crassus, the devoted friend of Caesar, naturally inclined to him; and Pompey, while having more affiliations with the senate than with the popular party, had present ends to gain which were not in favor with the senate.

Caesar was elected consul in 59 B.C., when, with much bitter opposition of the senate, he secured the passage of Pompey's agrarian law and the ratification of that general's acts in the east. Caesar, at the end of his consulship, secured the government of Gaul for five years.

Annō urbis conditae sexcentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō tertiō C. Iūlius Caesar, quī postea imperāvit, cum L. Bibulō cōnsul est factus. Dēcrēta est eī Gallia et Illyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is

1. **urbis conditae**: a variation from the more common *ab urbe conditā*.
2. **imperāvit**, *held supreme power*.
3. **dēcrēta est**: the verb agrees with the nearer subject; see App. 180, a; A. 317, n; B. 255, 2; H. 392; H.-B. 329, 2.

1. **Iūlius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

2. **Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, a cognomen in the Julian gens; esp. C. Julius Caesar, the famous conqueror and dictator.

Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

3. **Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, the country Gaul; also one of its divisions, Celtic Gaul. Map I, C-D, 2-4.

Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, the country of Illyria. Map II, E-F, 2-3.

legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [legō], a legion.

prīmus vīcit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī appellantur, deinde vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum s prōcessit. Domuit autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est et circuitū patet ad bis et trīciēs centēna mīlia passuum. Bri-

4. Helvētiōs . . . Sēquanī: two separate tribes in Caesar's time. Under the empire they were included in one province.

5. vincendō per bella gravissima, *conquering in hard-fought wars*; *vincendō* is a gerund used somewhat freely as an ablative of manner.

Ōceanum Britannicum, *the English Channel*.

8. circuitū, *in circumference*.

ad bis et trīciēs centēna mīlia passuum, *about 3200 miles*.

ad: *ad* is used adverbially with numerals, denoting an approach to the number, "to the number of," "about," without any influence on the case of the numeral. For the accusative see App. 130; A. 425; B. 181; H. 417; H.-B. 387 I.

centēna: distributives are regularly used with numeral adverbs in expressions of multiplication.

passuum: the *passus*, a pace or double step, measured 4 ft. 10½ inches (5 Roman feet). It was the distance from the point where the foot was raised to the point where the same foot was put down. A Roman mile (1000 paces) = 4854 English feet.

4. Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; as *subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe occupying the country between Mt. Jura, Lake Geneva, the Rhine, and the Rhone. Map IV, H-G, 3.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at this time.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m.*, *pl.*, the Sequanians, an important tribe of eastern Gaul. Map IV, F-G, 3.

5. gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; troublesome, severe; serious.

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, the ocean.

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Britain, British. Map I, C, 1.

6. domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, conquer; destroy.

7. Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone, a

river of Gaul. Map I, D, 3-4.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine. Map I, D-E, 2-3.

8. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō], circuit, compass.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie open, stretch out, extend.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice.

trīciēs, *num. adv.* [trīgintā], thirty times.

centēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [centum], a hundred each, a hundred.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, a step, pace; stride; mille passuum, or passūs, a thousand paces, mile.

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; as *subst.*, *m.*, *pl.*, the people of Britain, Britons.

tannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem
 10 Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, eōsque victōs obsidibus acceptīs
 stipendiāriōs fēcit. Galliae autem tribūtī nōmine annum
 imperāvit stipendium quadringentiēs, Germānōsque trāns Rhē-
 num adgressus immānissimīs proeliīs vīcit. Inter tot successūs
 ter male pugnāvit, apud Arvernōs semel praesēns et absēns in
 15 Germāniā bis; nam lēgātī eius duo, Titūrius et Auruncu-
 leius, per insidiās caesi sunt.

9. nē . . . quidem: the emphatic word stands between *nē* and *quidem*.

10. eōs . . . stipendiāriōs fēcit, *when he had conquered them he took hostages and made them tributary*. This was a mere form, as the Britons paid little or nothing into the Roman treasury. Caesar's operations were confined to the southern part of the island, and it was not until more than a century later that the Romans became masters of the country.

11. tribūtī nōmine, *as tribute*. The ablatives *locō*, *numerō*, and *nōmine* are often used with the genitive with the force of *as*.

12. imperāvit, *levied upon*, with the accusative of the thing levied and the dative of the person levied upon.

quadringentiēs: *sc. centēna mīlia sēstertium* = about \$1,640,000.

13. immānissimīs proeliīs: Caesar crossed the Rhine twice, but neither expedition was marked by any important results. His great battles with the Germans were fought on the Gallic side of the river.

14. absēns: since the battles were fought under his command even when he was not present in person, the defeat may fairly be called his.

10. cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of cognōscō*], known.

obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage.

11. stipendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*stipendium*], tributary; *as subst.*, *m.*, a tributary.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [*tribuō*], a tribute, tax.

12. stipendium, -ī, *n.* [*stips*, gift + *pendō*], a tax, tribute.

quadringentiēs, *num. adv.* [*quadringenti*], four hundred times.

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; *as-subst.*, *m.*, a German; *pl.*, the Germans.

13. immānis, -e, *adj.*, vast; fierce, savage.

successus, -ūs, *m.* [*succēdō*], approach; success.

14. ter, *num. adv.*, thrice, three times.

male, *adv.* [*malus*], badly, ill; unsuccessfully; *comp.*, *peius*; *sup.*, *pessimē*.

Arvernī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Celtic Gaul. Map IV, E, 3-4.

semel, *num. adv.*, once, one time.

praesēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of praesum*], present, in person; aiding.

15. Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany. Map I, E-G, 1-3.

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Aurunculeius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

35. CIVIL WAR BETWEEN POMPEY AND CAESAR

In 53 B.C. occurred the death of Crassus, and in the following year owing to the anarchy that prevailed in Rome because of the conflict of classes, Pompey, who had inclined more and more to the senate, was elected sole consul. He now saw that with Caesar out of the way he himself would be sole ruler in Rome. His program was therefore to deprive Caesar of his army by recalling him from Gaul, and at the same time to prevent him from standing again for the consulship. This program was carried out by the senate through the influence of Pompey.

Caesar, instead of obeying the mandate of the senate to disband his army, crossed the Rubicon, which separated his province from Italy, and marched upon Rome. This meant another civil war, headed by Caesar, who claimed to represent the popular party, on the one side, and by Pompey, for the oligarchical party, on the other. It is clear that each had his own personal ambitions to serve, quite apart from people or senate. As Caesar marched upon the city (49 B.C.) Pompey fled to Greece, whither most of the nobles followed him.

Hinc iam bellum cīvile successit execrandum et lacrimābile, quō praeter calamitatēs, quae in proeliis accidērunt, etiam populi Rōmānī fortūna mūtāta est. Caesar enim rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōsulātum atque ita ut sine dubietāte aliquā eī dēferrētur. Contrādictum est a Mār- 5

2. quō, *by which*.

3. populi Rōmānī . . . mūtāta est: *i.e.*, the Roman government was changed from a republic to an empire.

4. alterum cōsulātum: this had been one of the agreements of the triumvirate; besides, Caesar felt that his life would not be safe in Rome unless he were protected by the security of the consular office.

cōsulātum: it was necessary for his personal safety that he should have the protection of official position.

5. sine dubietāte aliquā, *without any hesitation*.

contrādictum est, *he was opposed*; the verb is impersonal.

1. exsecror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [ex+sa-
cer], curse, execrate; *part.* exse-
crandus, *as adj.*, detestable, de-
plorable.

lacrimābilis, -e, *adj.* [lacrima],
lamentable, mournful.

2. praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*;
as adv., besides; *as prep.*, beyond;
besides, except.

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, misfortune,

calamity, defeat, disaster.

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [ad+
cadō], fall; happen, take place.

3. fortūna, -ae, *f.* [fors], fortune,
fate; condition.

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*,
change, transform.

5. dubietās, -ātis, *f.* [dubius], doubt,
hesitation.

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

cellō cōnsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompeiō, ā Catōne, iussusque dīmissis exercitibus ad urbem redire. Propter quam iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs congregātōs habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompeiō senātusque omnis
 10 atque ūniversa nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Apud Ēpīrum, Macedoniam, Achaeam Pompeiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

6. Catōne: great-grandson of Cato the Censor. He was celebrated for the purity of his life and his devotion to the traditions of the ancient republic; but he was a narrow-minded, fanatical man, too shortsighted to understand the political tendencies of the times and too stubborn, perhaps, to abandon his own position if he had been capable of understanding them. **dīmissis exercitibus:** translate by a coördinate clause.

7. iniūriam, affront.

ab Ariminō: for the preposition see on *ā Tarentō*, 16, 62. It was high treason for a proconsul to cross the borders of his province; so that when Caesar passed over the little river Rubicon, which separated Cisalpine Gaul from Italy, it was, in effect, a declaration of war.

8. milītēs congregātōs habēbat, *had his troops collected*, stronger than *congregāverat*. The perfect participle with *habēō* and *teneō* emphasizes the result of a completed act rather than the performance of the act. This use of *habēō* is an anticipation of the use of "have" as an auxiliary verb.

10. nōbilitās, nobles.

fūgit: singular, to agree with the nearest part of the compound subject.

11. Pompeiō duce, *under the leadership of Pompey.*

6. Catō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen.

36. THE BATTLE OF PHARSALUS

The two armies met in the decisive contest of the war at Pharsalus in Thessaly (48 B.C.), in which Pompey's forces, although greatly outnumbering those of his opponent, were defeated.

Caesar vacuum urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. Inde

1. vacuum: *i. e.*, without defenders.

dictātōrem sē: for two accusatives with a verb of making see App. 126; A. 393; B. 177; H. 410; H.-B. 392. Caesar was appointed dictator by the popular assembly, and only learned the fact after his victory over the Pompeian party in Spain. Upon his return to Rome he held the office about eleven days, and then left for Greece to complete the work of conquest.

1. vacuus, -a, -um, adj [vacō] empty, vacant; destitute.

Hispāniās petiit. Ibi Pompei exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus, L. Āfrāniō, M. Petreiō, M. Varrōne, superāvit. Inde regressus in Graeciam trāsiit, adversum Pompeium dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, 5 ēvāsīt tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompeius sequi nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompeium scire vincere et illō tantum diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde in Thessaliā apud Palaeopharsā-lum prōductis utrimque ingentibus cōpiis dīmīcāvērunt. Pompei aciēs habuit XL mīlia peditum, equitēs in sinistrō cornū 10 sexcentōs, in dextrō quīngentōs, praetereā tōtius orientis auxilia, tōtam nōbilitātem, innumerōs senātōrēs, praetōriōs,

2. petiit, *went to (sought)*.

3. M. Varrōne: see Vocab., *Terentius* (2).

5. primō proeliō: at Dyrrachium. Caesar attempted to besiege Pompey's forces, but, as his lines were of great extent and his army comparatively small, Pompey was able to break through and inflict a serious blow upon him.

6. nocte interveniente, *as night had come on*.

7. nec . . . superārī, *that Pompey did not know how to conquer, and that he himself could have been conquered on that day only*. It was Pompey's one chance and he had lost it.

11. tōtius orientis: Pompey's army included forces from various nations in Asia Minor.

12. auxilia: note difference in meaning in sing. and plural.

2. fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave, daring.

3. Āfrānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Petreibus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

6. inter-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, intervene.

8. Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country of northeastern Greece. Map I, G-H, 5.

Palaeopharsālus, -ī, *f.*, a city of Thessaly, Old Pharsalus. Map I, H, 5.

9. prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead or bring forth, bring; *w.* cōpiās, draw up.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque], on both sides; from each side.

10. sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, left-hand, on the left.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing, flank.

11. sexcentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [sex+centum], six hundred.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right, right-hand, on or to the right; as *subst.*, *f.*, dextra, the right hand.

praeter-eā, *adv.*, besides, furthermore.

oriēns, -entis, *adj.* [pres. part. of orior], rising; as *subst.*, *m.*, the rising sun, east.

12. in-numerus, -a, -um, *adj.*, countless, innumerable.

cōsulārēs et quī magnōrum iam bellōrum victōrēs fuissent.
Caesar in aciē suā habuit peditum nōn integra xxx milia, equitēs
15 mille.

Numquam adhūc Rōmānae cōpiae in ūnum neque maiōrēs
neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtūm terrārum orbem
facile subāctūrae, sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum
tum est ingentī contentiōne, victusque ad postrēmum Pom-
20 peius et castra eius direpta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriam
petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cui tūtor ā senātū datus fuerat prop-
ter iuvenīlem eius aetātem, acciperet auxilia. Quī fortūnam

13. quī . . . fuissent, *men who had been*; descriptive clause.

14. integra, *complete*; we say *quite*.

16. numquam . . . subāctūrae, *never before had larger or more skillfully commanded Roman forces assembled, forces which might easily have subdued the whole world*. The employment of the future active participle here is not according to the best Latin usage. The negatives *neque* . . . *neque* do not destroy the effect of the preceding negative, *numquā*.

18. dūcerentur: a somewhat irregular use of a condition. It is in sense contrary to fact in past time (*had been led*), but the form suggests merely anticipation from a past point of view.

pugnātum est ingentī contentiōne, *the battle was fought with great stubbornness*.

19. victus: supply *est*.

21. ā rēge Aegyptī: *i.e.*, Ptolemaeus. Pompey had been the means of restoring the young king's father to the throne of Egypt, and naturally expected help from the son.

22. quī, *he*.

fortūnam . . . secūtus, *having regard for his own fortunes rather than for friendship*.

17. bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; *comp.*, melior, melius; *sup.*, optimus, -a, -um, best; excellent.
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [com-+veniō], assemble, come to.

18. facile, *adv.* [facilis], easily, readily.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, barbarous; *as subst.*, *m. pl.*, foreigners, barbarians.

19. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle, contest; strife.

20. Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, a city at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great. Map I, J, 7.

21. Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt, the country round about the lower Nile. Map I, J, 7-8.

tūtor, -ōris, *m.* [tueor], guardian.

22. iuvenīlis, -e, *adj.* [iuvenis], youthful, juvenile.

libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte praestāret, quī ā populō antea dēferēbantur, nec senātuī ad sē venientī
 5 adsurgeret aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānīs. Praecipuī fuērunt inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex eō genere Brūtī, quī prīmus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, et C. Cassius et Servīlius Casca. Ergō Caesar, cum
 10 senātūs diē inter cēterōs vēnisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōfossus est.

3. et: coördinate with *nec* and *-que*; omit in translation.

honōrēs, *offices*, the usual term.

5. tyrannica, *like a usurper*. The Greek word *tyrannos*, from which the adjective is derived, means rather one who gains power in an irregular way than one who wields it harshly.

coniūrātum est in eum, *a conspiracy was formed against him*; impersonal.

7. duo Brūtī: Decimus Brutus, who had been one of Caesar's most trusted officers, and Marcus Brutus, the nephew of Cato, who had been the object of Caesar's regard and the recipient of many favors at his hands.

8. prīmus . . . expulerat: see 9, 7.

9. C. Cassius: see Vocabulary, *Cassius* (2).

10. senātūs diē, *on the day (of the meeting) of the senate*.

3. libertās, -ātis, *f.* [līber], liberty, freedom.

voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [volō], will, wish, desire; good-will.

prae-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum, *tr. and intr.*, surpass; show; furnish, give, bestow.

4. antea, *adv.*, before, previously, formerly.

5. ad-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.*, rise, rise out of respect to.

rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēx], royal,

king's; befitting a king, kingly.
 tyrannicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tyrannus], tyrannical, despotic.

7. coniūrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of coniūrō*], conspiring; *m. pl. as subst.*, conspirators.

9. Servīlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
 Casca, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen.

10. cūria, -ae, *f.*, curia; the senate house.

11. cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.* [com-+fodiō], dig up; stab.

38. CAESAR AVENGED AT PHILIPPI

The conspirators, led by Brutus and Cassius, seem to have had no definite plan of action to follow the death of Caesar. But neither senate nor people ratified the act of the "liberators." Antonius, the chief supporter of Caesar, at the funeral of his leader so inflamed the people against the murderers that Brutus and Cassius fled from the city for their lives.

But Antonius, while professedly acting in the interests of the state, was in reality scheming to make himself master in place of Caesar, when the young Octavius, adopted son and heir of Caesar, arrived in Rome, and assumed the rights of his inheritance. He greatly strengthened his position with both senate and people by skillful diplomacy. Antonius on his way to Cisalpine Gaul to assume command of the province which had been given him by the people was opposed by Decimus Brutus, whom the senate had previously placed over that province. By a temporary combination between Brutus and Octavius, who offered his services to the senate, Antonius was defeated at Mutina and compelled to flee. Though Octavius thus had every reason to count Antonius his enemy, he formed with him and Lepidus in 43 B.C. that coalition known as the Second Triumvirate. Antonius and Octavius then crossed over to Greece, where, in the battle of Philippi (42 B.C.), they defeated the forces of Brutus and Cassius.

Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū cōnfūgit ad Lepidum, quī Caesarī magister equitum fuerat et tum mīlitum cōpiās grandēs habēbat, ā quō susceptus est. Mox Lepidō operam dante Caesar pācem cum Antōniō fēcit et quasi vindicātūrus patris suī mortem, ā quō per testāmentum fuerat adoptātus, Rōmam cum 5 exercitū profectus, extorsit ut sibi vicēsimo annō cōsulātus

1. **Lepidum**: he had been one of Caesar's officers and was consul in 46 B.C. He was governor of Gaul and Spain at the time of Caesar's death and was afterward made pontifex maximus. He had then left the city and repaired to Gaul, where Antonius met him.

2. **Caesarī**, *Caesar's* (lit. *for Caesar*); the dative of reference where we might have expected the genitive.

3. **Lepidō operam dante**, *with the assistance of Lepidus*.

4. **vindicātūrus**: see on *gestūrus*, 31, 15.

patris suī: Augustus was the son of Atia, Julius Caesar's niece.

6. **vicēsimo annō**: more than twenty-three years below the legal age.

1. **cōfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus**, *intr.* [com-+fugiō], flee, take refuge, resort.

Lepidus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

2. **grandis, -e, adj.**, great, large.

3. **opera, -ae, f.** [opus], work, aid, assistance; **operam dare**, exert

oneself, give one's attention.

5. **testāmentum, -ī, n.** [testor], a will.

ad-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., choose; adopt.

6. **ex-torqueō, -ēre, -sī, -tum, tr.**, extort, obtain by force.

darētur. Senātum prōscripsit, cum Antōniō ac Lepidō rem pūblicam armīs tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō ōrātor occīsus est multīque aliī nōbilēs.

- 10 Intereā Brūtus et Cassius, interfectorēs Caesaris, ingēns bellum mōvērunt; erant enim per Macedoniam et Orientem multī exercitūs, quōs occupāverant; profectī sunt igitur contrā eōs Caesar Octāviānus Augustus et M. Antōnius, remānserat enim ad dēfendendam Italiam Lepidus. Apud Philippōs,
 15 Macedoniae urbem, contrā eōs pugnāvērunt. Primō proeliō victī sunt Antōnius et Caesar, periit tamen dux nōbilitātis Cassius, secundō Brūtum et infīnitam nōbilitātem, quae cum illīs bellum gesserat, victam interfēcērunt. Ac sic inter eōs dīvisa est rēs pūblica, ut Augustus Hispāniās, Galliās et Ita-
 20 liam tenēret, Antōnius Asiam, Pontum, Orientem. Sed in Italiā

7. **cum Antōniō ac Lepidō:** upon their reconciliation the three divided the government of the world among themselves. They also published a proscription which included nearly two thousand knights and three hundred senators, and confiscated the property of those who were proscribed, for the benefit of their own friends and partisans.

8. **Cicerō . . . est:** it had been agreed that each triumvir should give over to the sword any one of his friends who had earned the ill-will of either of the others. Under this arrangement Cicero, who was the friend of Octavianus, was sacrificed to the hatred of Antonius.

13. **Caesar . . . Augustus:** his original name was Gaius Octavius, but according to custom he had assumed the name of his adoptive father. To this was added as usual the gentile name of his own father in an adjectival form, making his name Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus. The name Augustus was conferred upon him in 27 B.C. by the senate and people as a title of honor.

17. **secundō:** supply *proeliō*.

infīnitam nōbilitātem, *very many of the nobles.*

Brūtum: like Cassius, Brutus was driven to suicide to avoid falling into the hands of his conquerors.

10. **interfector, -ōris, m.** [*interficiō*], slayer, murderer.

13. **Octāviānus, -ī, m.,** a surname of the Emperor Augustus.

Augustus, -ī, m., a cognomen conferred on all the Roman emperors.

14. **Philippī, -ōrum, m.,** a city of Macedonia. Map I, H, 5.

19. **dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -vīsum, tr.,** divide; distribute, allot.

20. **Pontus, -ī, m.,** a country of Asia Minor. Map I, J, 4.

L. Antōnius cōsul bellum cīvile commōvit, frāter eius, quī cum Caesare contrā Brūtum et Cassum dīmīcāverat. Is apud Perusiam, Tusciae cīvitatē, victus et captus est, neque occīsus.

21. L. Antōnius: he and his brother Marcus had planned to unite against Octavianus, but a reconciliation had been effected which was further strengthened by the marriage of Antonius to Octavia, the sister of Octavianus.

23. neque, but not; see on *-que*, 16, 27.

23. Perusia, -ae, f., a city of Etruria. Map II, C, 3.

39. BATTLE OF ACTIUM: END OF CIVIL STRIFE

After this battle the triumvirs divided the empire among themselves. But Lepidus was deposed from his position because of treachery in 36 B.C., and between the two remaining rivals constant quarrels and reconciliations continued, until in 31 B.C. the inevitable clash of ambitions came. The result of the battle of Actium in that year was that Octavianus was left where Caesar had stood after Pharsalus — master of the world.

Hic quoque ingēns bellum cīvile commōvit cōgente uxōre Cleopātrā, rēginā Aegyptī, dum cupiditāte muliebrī optat etiam in urbe rēgnāre. Victus est ab Augustō nāvālī pugnā clārā et inlūstrī apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est, ex quā fūgit in Aegyptum et, dēspērātīs rēbus, cum omnēs ad Augustum trāns- 5

1. **hic:** Marcus Antonius.

2. **dum . . . optat** = a causal clause.

3. **in urbe rēgnāre:** she wished to be queen at Rome also.

4. **quī locus:** see on *quae gēns*, 7, 2.

quā: supply *pugnā*.

fūgit: Cleopatra had fled in her galley during the fight and Antonius had followed her without waiting for the issue of the battle.

2. Cleopātra, -ae, f., the last queen of Egypt.

rēgina, -ae, f. [rēx], queen.

cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus], desire, longing.

muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier], a woman's, womanlike.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., choose; desire, demand, wish for.

3. nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis], naval.

4. inlūstris, -e, adj., distinguished, famous, memorable.

Actium, -ī, n., a promontory and town in Epirus. Map I, G, 5.

irent, ipse sē interēmit. Cleopātra sibi aspidem admisit et venēnō eius exstincta est. Aegyptus per Octāviānum Augustum imperiō Rōmānō adiecta est praepositusque ei C. Cornēlius Gallus. Hunc primum Aegyptus Rōmānum iūdicem habuit.

6. **Cleopātra . . . exstincta est:** after Antonius had again been defeated by Octavianus at Alexandria he heard a false report of Cleopatra's death, and threw himself upon his sword. Cleopatra tried in vain the effect of her charms upon the conqueror. Unwilling to grace his triumph at Rome, she procured an asp, so the story goes, in a basket of figs brought to her by a countryman, and ended her life by its bite.

8. **ei:** dative with a compound verb.

9. **hunc primum . . . iūdicem:** Egypt had, however, submitted to a Roman protectorate ever since 168 B.C.

6. **aspis, -idis, f.,** a viper, asp.

tr., place in command of, set over.

8. **prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,**

9. **Gallus, -ī, m.,** a cognomen.

40. AUGUSTUS EMPEROR

Augustus, warned by the example of Caesar, gradually but surely absorbed every power of the state, until he became in fact — though avoiding the form — an absolute monarch, the first Roman emperor.

Ita bellis tōtō orbe cōfectis Octāviānus Augustus Rōmam rediit, duodecimō annō quam cōsul fuerat. Ex eō rem pūblicam per quadrāgintā et quattuor annōs sōlus obtinuit, ante enim duodecim annis cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat. Ita
5 ab initiō principātūs eius usque ad finem quinquāgintā et sex

2. **quam:** as in 27, 23.

ex eō (supply *annō*): after that.

rem pūblicam . . . obtinuit, administered the affairs of government. Augustus was very careful, however, to avoid the appearance of aiming at regal power. He ruled under the titles of *Imperātor*, or commander of the legions, *Augustus*, a mere honorary title with no invidious associations, and *Prīnceps*, which pointed him out only as the first citizen of a free republican state. He united in his own person the powers of consul, tribune, pontifex maximus, and censor; but he was very careful to leave undisturbed the forms and names of the republican magistracies and assemblies.

5. **initium, -ī, n. [in+eō],** beginning, origin.

principātus, -ūs, m. [prīnceps], chief authority, leadership.

annī fuērunt. Obiit autem septuāgēsīmō sextō annō morte commūnī in oppidō Campāniae Ātellā. Rōmae in campō Mārtiō sepultus est, vir quī nōn immeritō ex maximā parte deō similis est putātus, neque enim facile ūllus eō aut in bellis fēlicior fuit aut in pāce moderātor. Quadrāgintā et 10 quattuor annīs, quibus sōlus gessit imperium, cīvīlissimē vīxit, in cūctōs liberālissimus, in amīcōs fīdissimus, quōs tantīs ēvexit honōribus, ut paene aequāret fastigiō suō.

6. morte commūnī, *a natural death.*

9. deō: dative with the adjective *similis*.

neque enim implies an ellipsis, and (*well he might be so considered*) for *hardly (nec facile) anyone, or and naturally, for, etc.*

eō . . . fēlicior, *more successful than he*; eō is ablative of comparison.

13. paene aequāret (supply eōs), etc., *he raised them almost to the level of his own preëminence.*

6. ob-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr., perish, die.*

7. commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common; ordinary, natural.

Ātella, -ae, *f.*, *a town in Campania. Map II, D, 5.*

campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, field; campus Mārtius, *a plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars. Map III, C, 1-2.*

8. immeritō, *adv.* [immeritus], undeservedly, unjustly.

10. fēlix, -īcis, *adj.*, successful, fortunate, happy.

moderātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [moderor],

self-controlled, temperate.

11. cīvīliter, *adv.* [cīvīlis], in a manner befitting a citizen.

12. cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [coniūctus], all together, all.

liberālis, -e, *adj.* [līber], liberal, generous.

fīdus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fīdō], faithful, loyal.

13. ē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, elevate.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, [aequus], make equal, equalize.

fastigium, -ī, *n.*, roof, pinnacle; height, elevation; rank, dignity.

5
6
7
1. *imperator*
2. *legatus*
3. *centurio*
 licitor

5. *Gaulic warrior*
6. *Gaulic standard bearer*
7. *Gaulic chief*

ROMAN OFFICERS AND GAULS

PART II

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

Among the great generals of the world, there is none who has left a more lasting impression upon the later course of history than Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul. He was born at Rome in 100 or 102 B.C.; it is not possible to determine with certainty which of the two dates is correct. His early life fell in the period of the civil strife between Marius and Sulla, and he became an adherent of the Marian party, later rising to a position of political leadership in this party. He held the offices of quaestor in 68, aedile in 65, and praetor in 62. He also obtained the office of pontifex maximus, thus becoming the formal head of the established religious organization of the state. In the year following his praetorship he went to Spain as governor (propraetor) of the division known as Farther Spain. He was chosen consul for the year 59, having the support of the influential leaders, Pompey and Crassus, with whom he had formed a political alliance — the First Triumvirate. In accordance with the terms of the coalition Caesar was appointed governor of Gaul at the end of his consulship, for the term of five years. This appointment was later extended for another five years. Soon after his arrival in the province he became involved in war with one of the Gallic tribes. This was the beginning of a series of campaigns which continued with only slight intervals for a period of nine years, and which resulted in the whole of Gaul being brought under Roman control.

During Caesar's absence from Rome his political enemies succeeded in organizing strongly the opposition to him, and in winning to their side his former associate, Pompey, who was jealous of the brilliant successes of Caesar. Civil war followed, in which Pompey was defeated and killed. Caesar was made dictator for life, and the foundation for the Roman imperial government was thus laid. But a conspiracy was formed against him by a group of leaders, some of whom were animated by a desire to restore the republican form of government, and he was assassinated in the year 44 B.C.

He was not only a great general, but also a statesman of large ability, and his plans for the reorganization of the government of Rome showed a clear understanding of the conditions and needs of the Roman State. His history of his campaigns in Gaul, from which the following selections are taken, was regarded by the Romans as an historical narrative of unusual merit.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garunna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et

Description of
the divisions
of Gaul and
their inhabit-
ants.

5

[For the convenience of teachers who may wish to vary the work of their classes at times by beginning with the selections from Caesar, notes referring to important points of grammatical usage which have appeared in Part I are repeated in Part II.]

1. *omnis, as a whole.* The word *Gallia* was sometimes applied to the entire region extending from the Rhine to the Pyrenees mountains. Again, it sometimes meant the central part of this larger area, lying between the Garonne river and the country of the Belgians. Caesar uses *omnis* here to indicate that he is employing the word in the first of these two meanings.

est dīvisa: to be translated by the English present tense, *is divided*. *dīvisa* serves to describe the condition of Gaul, and is not here used to form a true perfect passive with *est*.

quārum . . . incolunt: for the sake of clearer English, the verb may be changed to the passive in translation,—*one of which is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc. (lit. *one of which the Belgians inhabit*). -

2. *tertiam quī*: the antecedent of *quī* is the pronoun *ī*, understood, which is in the same construction as *Belgae* and *Aquītānī*. Continue the passive translation,—*the third (is inhabited) by those who are called*, etc.

ipsōrum linguā, *in their own language*; an ablative of means.

3. *Celtae, Gallī*: the predicate nominative may be used after the passive forms of verbs of *calling, naming, appointing*, and the like, as well as after forms of *sum*.

nostrā: supply *linguā*,—*in our language*.

linguā, *in language*; ablative of respect.

4. *inter sē*, *from one another*.

5. *Aquītānīs*: ablative of separation. As may be seen by the map, the country of the Aquitanians was much smaller than the other two divisions of Gaul.

Matrona et Sēquana: the verb (*dīvidit*) used with this compound subject is in the singular number. The two rivers together formed one boundary.

2. *in-colō, -ere, -coluī, —, tr. and intr., dwell in, inhabit; dwell, live.*

Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgians, a nation of northern Gaul. Map IV, D-G, 1-2.

Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., Aquitanian; as subst., m., an Aquitanian; pl., the Aquitanians, Aquitani.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language.

3. *Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celts, a nation of central Gaul. Map IV, B-H, 1-4.*

4. *īnstitutum, -ī, n. [īnstituō], custom, usage.*

5. *Garunna (less correctly, Garumna), -ae, m., the Garonne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.*

Matrona, -ae, m., the Marne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, E-F, 2.

Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē co-

6. *dīvidit*: in translating, supply *eōs* (referring to *Gallōs*) as object. Another *dīvidit* is also to be supplied in translation with *Garunna flūmen* as its subject and *Gallōs* as its object.

hōrum: genitive of the whole.

Belgae: names of tribes of the first declension are masculine.

7. *prōvinciae*: see Vocabulary under *Gallia* (2).

longissimē absunt, are the farthest away.

8. *minimē saepe*: modifies *important*, l. 9, as well as *commeant*,—very seldom (lit. least often), visit them and (hence) very seldom bring to them.

9. *ea quae*, the things which.

ad effēminandōs animōs, to make men unfit for war (lit. to weaken the courage).

10. *Germānīs*: dative with *proximī*. See App. 122; A. 384; B. 192; H. 434; H.-B. 362.

11. *quā dē causā*, for this reason.

12. *virtūte*: ablative of respect.

ferē cotidiānis proeliīs, in almost daily battles; abl. of means or manner.

6. *Sēquana*, -ae, *m.*, the Seine, a river of Gaul. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

7. *propter-eā*, *adv.*, for this reason, therefore; *proptereā quod*, for the reason that, because.

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [*colō*], cultivation, training, civilization.

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.* [*hūmānus*], civilization, refinement.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

8. *mercātor*, -ōris, *m.* [*mercor*], merchant, trader.

saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently.

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*meō*, go], go back and forth; with *ad*, visit.

9. *effēminō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ex+fēmina*], make womanish, enervate, weaken.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *intr.* [*per+teneō*], extend; tend, have to do with.

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*in+portō*], bring in, import.

10. *proximus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of propior*], nearest, next, very near; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, neighbors.

11. *continenter*, *adv.* [*continēns*], continuously, without interruption, continually.

12. *cotidiānus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotī-diē*], daily; ordinary, usual.

- tīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.
- 15 Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem

13. suīs finibus, *from their own country*; ablative of separation.

14. eōs prohibent, *keep them out of*; prohibēre should never be rendered 'prohibit' in translating Caesar.

eōrum, *of the Germans*. It is sometimes necessary to translate a Latin pronoun into English by the noun to which it refers, in order to make the meaning clear.

15. eōrum ūna pars, *of these divisions, the one* (lit. *one part of these*).

quam . . . dictum est, *which, as has (above) been stated, the Gauls occupy*; quam is the object of obtinēre, the subject of which is Gallōs. The subject of dictum est is Gallōs obtinēre. See App. 279, a; A. 459; B. 331; H. 615; H.-B. 589. initium capit ā, *begins at* (lit. *takes its beginning from*).

16. continētur, *it is bounded*.

flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus: *ablatives of means*; supply *et* between Ōceanō and finibus in translating.

17. ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs, *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetians*. It is not necessarily implied that these two tribes were the only ones whose lands bordered on the Rhine. They are probably referred to because their general location would be known to Roman readers.

18. ad septentriōnēs, *toward the north*. •

Belgae oriuntur, *the country of the Belgians begins*. The use of the name of a tribe to denote the country in which the tribe lives is very common.

19. ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus, *at the farthest part of the country of Gaul, i.e., of the country of the Celtae*.

13. contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+tendō], strive for, hasten; fight, contend.

14. prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prō+habēō], restrain, keep, prevent; hinder from.

16. contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [com-+teneō], keep together, keep, restrain, hem in; bound.

17. attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [ad+tangō], touch, reach; border upon, adjoin.

18. vergō, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, be inclined, look toward; slope.

septentriōnēs, -um, *m.* [septem+triōnēs, plowing oxen], the stars of the Great Bear, *which were compared to oxen drawing a wagon, hence the north*.

19. inferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, down, low; *comp.*, inferior, -ius, lower, inferior; *sup.*, infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest, at the foot of, at the bottom of.

partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

The ambitious designs of Orgetorix. He persuades the Helvetians to emigrate.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte

20. **spectant**: keep the English verb in the singular number, as in the translation of *oriuntur* and *pertinent*.

orientem sōlem, *the east*.

22. **est ad**, *lies next to*.

23. **inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs**: *i.e.*, to the northwest.

1. **nōbilissimus**, *the most prominent*.

2. **M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*; ablative absolute. Since the term of the consul was for one year, the Romans regularly indicated the year in which an event occurred by mentioning the names of the consuls for that year.

3. **rēgnī cupiditāte**, *by a desire for* (lit. of) *royal power*; *cupiditāte* may be explained either as an ablative of cause or of means.

coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis, *a league of chiefs* (or of influential men).

4. **cīvitātī persuāsit**, *persuaded his countrymen* (lit. *the state*); *cīvitātī* is a dative depending on *persuāsit*. *See App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426, 2; H.-B. 362.

ut exīrent, *to emigrate*; a substantive clause used as the object of *persuāsit*.

5. **perfacile esse**, (*saying*) *that it was very easy*; indirect discourse, depending on the word of saying implied by the preceding statement.

20. **spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [*freq. of speciō, spy*], look at, observe; face, lie, be situated.

21. **Aquitānia, -ae, f.**, Aquitania, southwestern Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

23. **occāsus, -ūs, m.** [*occidō*], a falling, setting; **occāsus sōlis** and **occāsus**, sunset; the west.

1. **dītissimus, -a, -um, sup. of dīves**, rich.

2. **Orgetorix, -igis, m.**, a chief of the Helvetians.

Messāla, -ae, m., a cognomen; esp.,

Marcus Valerius Messala, consul 61 B.C.

Pisō, -ōnis, m., a cognomen; esp. Marcus Pupius Piso, consul 61 B.C.

3. **coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.** [*coniūrō*], conspiracy, league.

4. **per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr.**, persuade, induce.

5. **ex-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr.**, go out, go or come forth.

per-facilis, -e, adj., very easy.

omnibus praestarent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiū continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā

6. omnibus: dative with a compound of *prae*.

praestarent: subjunctive in a *cum* causal clause.

imperiō potiri, to gain the control. What deponent verbs have their objects in the ablative?

id . . . persuāsit quod, he persuaded them (to do) this more easily because; hōc is an ablative of cause, explained by quod . . . continentur, line 7.

7. loci nātūrā, by the nature of the country; for the case of nātūrā, see note on cupiditāte, line 3.

continentur: the meaning is not the same as in ch. 1, line 16. See the Vocabulary.

8. ūnā ex parte, on one side.

flūmine: ablative of means, as is also monte, line 9, lacū, line 11, and flūmine, line 11.

lātissimō atque altissimō, very wide and deep.

9. agrum, country. alterā ex parte, on a second side.

10. tertiā: supply ex parte; the phrasé is parallel to alterā ex parte.

12. hīs rēbus fiēbat, ut, freely, the result of all this was (lit. from these things it came about that).

vagarentur: subjunctive in a substantive clause used as the subject of fiēbat.

13. finitimis: dative with inferre. See App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376. quā ex parte, and from this fact.

6. potior, -iri, -itus, intr. [potis, able], become master of, get possession of.

7. undique, adv. [unde+que], from all sides, on all sides.

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor], nature, character; appearance, shape.

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, extensive.

altus, -a, -um [pf. part. of alō], high, lofty; deep.

10. Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains. Map IV, G-H, 3.

11. lacus, -ūs, m., lake.

Lemannus, -ī, m. (with or without lacus), Lake Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

12. lātē, adv. [lātus], widely, extensively, far and wide; longē lātēque, far and wide.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [vagus], roam about, roam, wander.

ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque 15 fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Helvetians prepare to emigrate. The conspiracy of Orgetorix.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās

14. hominēs . . . cupidī, (as they were) men fond of engaging in war; bellandī is a genitive of the gerund.

magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, they were greatly dissatisfied (lit. were affected by great unhappiness).

15. prō multitūdine hominum, in proportion to the great number of their people.

glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis, reputation for bravery in war (lit. of war and of bravery).

16. angustōs finēs, a small country.

sē habēre: indirect discourse with arbitrābantur.

17. mīlia: accusative of extent. passuum: genitive of the whole.

1. hīs rēbus adductī, influenced by these circumstances.

2. ea, those things; object of comparāre.

ad proficiscendum pertinērent, were needed in connection with (lit. pertained to) their departure; proficiscendum is a gerund; pertinērent is subjunctive because of the implied indirect discourse. See App. 273; A. 592; B. 323; H. 649, I; H.-B. 535, a.

4. quam maximum numerum, as large a number as possible.

sēmentēs quam maximās facere, to sow as large crops as possible. What is the literal translation of sēmentēs facere?

14. bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [bellum], wage war, fight.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō], desirous, eager, fond.

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō], pain, distress, vexation, grief.

16. fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis], bravery, courage.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [arbiter], decide, think, believe.

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus], length, extent.

17. lātitūdō, -inis, *f.* [lātus], width, extent.

2. per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, disturb, alarm; influence.

3. com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare, secure, obtain.

iūmentum, -ī, *n.* [iungō], a yoke or draft animal, beast of burden.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart.

4. coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [com-+emō], buy up, purchase.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], planting, sowing.

5 facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs
cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficien-
dās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum pro-
fectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgā-
tiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō,
10 Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs
multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus
appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod

5. *suppeteret*, *might be on hand*; subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

6. *ad eās rēs cōficiendās*, *to accomplish these things*; a gerundive phrase.

7. *sibi*, lit. *for themselves*; a dative of reference. The word may be omitted in translation. *dūxērunt*, *they considered*.

in tertium annum, *for the third year*.

8. *lēge*, *by law*; ablative of means.

cōfirmant: in Latin, a present tense is frequently used to refer to a past act, for the sake of making the event appear more vivid to the reader. This is called the Historical Present. It should generally be translated by an English past tense.

dux: predicate nominative; the case use is the same as that of *Celtae* and *Gallī*, ch. 1, line 3.

9. *suscepit*, *took upon himself*. It was necessary that some one be sent to the neighboring tribes to make purchases and to arrange treaties. Orgetorix volunteered to do this.

Casticō: for the dative, see note on *cīvitātī persuāsit*, ch. 2, line 4.

10. *filiō*, *Sēquanō*: both words in apposition with *Casticō*.

11. *annōs*: accusative of duration of time.

senātū: ablative of agent.

populī Rōmānī: modifies *senātū*. The title, "friend," was a form of compliment intended to secure the favor of a foreign ruler.

12. *ut . . . occupāret*: a substantive clause, like *ut . . . exīrent* in ch. 2, line 4. *quod*: relative pronoun referring to *rēgnum*.

5. *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.* [fruor], grain.
suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *intr.*
[sub+petō], be at hand, be in
store, suffice.

6. *cōfirmō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
[com-+firmō], strengthen, estab-
lish; assert, declare.

7. *biennium*, -ī, *n.* [bis+annus],
period of two years, two years.

satis, *indecl. adj.*, enough, sufficient;
as subst., enough; *as adv.*, enough,

sufficiently; rather, very.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [proficīscor], a
setting out, departure.

8. *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.*
[dē+legō], choose, select.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, depute],
embassy.

9. *Casticus*, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the
Sequanians.

10. *Catamantaloedēs*, -is, *m.*, a chief
of the *Sequanians*.

pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque 15
filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī 20

13. Dumnorīgī: in the same construction as *Casticō*, line 9, and *cīvilātī*, ch. 2, line 4.

14. quī: refers to *Dumnorīgī*. eō tempore, at that time.

15. maximē plēbī acceptus erat, was very popular with the common people.

cōnārētur: the same construction as *occupāret*, line 12.

16. perfacile factū esse, was very easy to do; the subject of *esse* is *perficere*, which has the object *cōnāta*; *factū* is a supine. It may be omitted in translation.

illis: refers to the two chiefs, Dumnorix and Casticus.

18. obtentūrus: for the translation of the future active participle, see App. 196; A. 195; B. 115; H. 236; H.-B. 162.

nōn esse dubium, quīn, there was no doubt that; indirect discourse, with a word of saying implied in *probat*.

19. plūrimum possent, were the most powerful.

20. conciliātūrum: supply *esse*. With the forms of the future active and perfect passive infinitives the omission of *esse* is not uncommon.

13. item, *adv.*, also, likewise.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a Haeduan chief, brother of Diviciacus.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, or Haeduans, a powerful Gallic tribe. Map IV, E-F, 3.

Diviciācus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans.

15. acceptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *accipiō*], acceptable, pleasing, popular.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, undertake, attempt.

16. mātirimōnium, -ī, *n.* [*māter*], marriage, matrimony: in mātirimōnium dare, give in marriage.

17. probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, approve of, prove, demonstrate; adopt.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [*cōnor*], attempt, undertaking.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*per+faciō*], accomplish, complete.

18. dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.

quīn, *conj.* [*quī+ne*], but, but that, so that not; after words of doubt or ignorance, that, but that; after words of hindering, from.

20. conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*concilium*], conciliate, win, secure.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*ōrō*], a speech argument, words.

inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

The conspiracy is discovered. Trial and death of Orgetorix.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix
5 ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum

21. *inter sē . . . dant, they bound themselves by a solemn pledge and an oath (lit. exchange a pledge and an oath).*

rēgnō occupātō, when they had seized the royal authority: What is the construction?

22. *tōtius Galliae potiri, to make themselves the masters of all Gaul; potiri which usually has its object in the ablative (as in ch. 2, line 6) here governs a genitive.*

1. *per indicium, through informers (lit. by disclosure).*

2. *mōribus suis: for the case and the form of translation of this phrase, see App. 142, a; A. 418, a; B. 220, 3; H. 475, 3; H.-B. 414.*

causam dicere, to plead his case.

3. *damnātum . . . cremārētur, freely, if he should be condemned, the punishment to be inflicted would be death by fire; damnātum is a participle agreeing with eum understood, which is the object of sequi; the verb oportēbat has as its subject poenam sequi; igni is an ablative; ut cremārētur is a substantive clause, in apposition with poenam.*

4. *causae dictiōnis, for pleading the case; causae is a genitive depending on dictiōnis, and dictiōnis depends on diē.*

5. *ad, about; a common meaning of ad with numerals.*

22. *firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, vigorous, firm.*

23. *spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [spēs], hope, anticipate.*

1. *indiciū, -ī, n. [cf. indicō, reveal], information, disclosure, proof.*

ē-nūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., report, disclose, reveal.

2. *vinculum, -ī, n. [vinciō], a bond, fastening; pl., bonds, chains.*

3. *oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., it is necessary, it is best, ought.*

4. *cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., burn.*

dictiō, -ōnis, f. [dicō], speaking, pleading.

5. *iūdicium, -ī, n. [iūdicō], trial; judgment, decision.*

familia, -ae, f. [famulus], slaves, a household; family.

6. *cliēns, -entis, m., dependent, vassal.*

obaerātus, -a, -um, adj. [ob+aes], in debt; as subst., m., debtor

magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; 10 neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

*The Helvetians
complete their
preparations
for departure.*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum 5 omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunť, ut,

7. nē dīceret: negative clause of purpose.

8. sē ēripuit, *escaped*.

9. armīs, *by (force of) arms*; modifies *exsequī*.

cōnārētur, cōgerent: subjunctives in a descriptive clause of situation.

11. ut: what is the meaning of *ut* when it introduces an indicative?

quīn . . . cōnscīverit, *that he committed suicide*; for the subjunctive, compare App. 229, *d*; A. 558; B. 298; H. 594, II; H.-B. 521, 3, *b*).

1. id: object of *facere*.

2. ut . . . exeant, (*namely*) *to go forth*; a substantive clause, in apposition with *id*.

4. oppida, vicōs, aedificia: objects of *incendunt*.

ad: in the same meaning as in ch. 4, line 5.

5. frūmentum: object of *combūrunť*.

6. portātūrī erant, *they were going to carry*.

7. condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [com-+dūcō], bring together, assemble.

8. ēripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [ex+rapīō], snatch away, take away; rescue.

in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [citō, put in quick motion], urge on, impel; arouse.

9. iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; authority.

ex-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow out; enforce, assert.

10. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister],

magistracy; government; magistrate.

11. suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+speciō, spy], suspicion, distrust.

1. nihilum, -ī, *n.* [nihil], nothing; nihilō minus, none the less.

5. aedificium, -ī, *n.* [aedificō], a building.

incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsum, *tr.*, set fire to, burn.

6. portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry; transport.

combūrō, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēsum molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suis vicisque exustīs, unā cum iīs proficiscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

7. domum: accusative of Place to Which, depending on *reditiōnis*.

spē: ablative absolute. sublātā: from *tollō*. parātiōrēs, better prepared.

ad omnia perīcula subeunda, to face all dangers; gerundive construction.

8. essent: subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

trium mēsum molita cibāria, a three months' supply of ground grain; mēsum is a genitive of measure.

9. domō efferre, to take from home; the subject of *efferre* is *quemque*.

10. utī . . . proficiscantur, to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out along with them; oppidīs is ablative absolute; cōnsiliō is an ablative, depending on *ūsī*. What is the literal translation of these words?

11. Boiōs: the country of Bohemia derives its name from the name of this tribe.

13. receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt, they accept as allies and join to their number; receptōs agrees with *Boiōs*, the object of *adsciscunt*.

7. reditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō], a returning, return.

8. sub-eō, -ire, -iī (-īvī), -itum, *tr.*, go under; take the place of; endure, submit to.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [mola, mill], grind.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus], pertaining to food; *n. pl.* as *subst.*, provisions.

quis-que, quaeque, quidque or quodque, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, each one, every one; as *adj.*, each, every.

9. efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, *tr.* [ex+ferō], bring or carry out, bring; spread abroad.

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. Map IV, G, 3.

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, G-H, 3.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, H, 2.

10. ūtor, -ī, ūsus, *intr.*, use, employ; adopt, observe, exercise.

11. ex-ūrō, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.*, burn up, consume.

unā, *adv.* [ūnus], together, along with, at the same time.

Bōi (Boī), -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful Celtic tribe. Map IV, E, 3.

12. Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Norican, belonging to the Norici.

Nōreia, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Norici.

13. ad-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, approve], take to oneself as allies, admit, receive.

*The two routes.
The Helvetians
determine to
march through
the Roman
Province.*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs

1. **itineribus**: omit in translation. The antecedent of a relative pronoun in Latin is not infrequently thus repeated in the relative clause.

2. **domō**: translated like the same form in ch. 5, line 9.

possent: subjunctive in a relative clause of description (or clause of characteristic).

3. **inter**, etc.: the narrowest point is the modern Pas de l'Écluse.

4. **vix quā**, *where with difficulty*.

dūcerentur, *could be taken*; for the subjunctive, see App. 230, c; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 1; H.-B. 517, 2.

5. **altissimus**: a Latin superlative is sometimes translated by *very* with the positive degree of the adjective or adverb.

prohibēre, *prevent (any one from passing)*.

6. **possent**: in a clause of result.

alterum, *the other*, of the two roads above referred to.

7. **expeditius**, *freer from obstacles*.

8. **pācātī erant**, *had been brought under Roman authority*; this is the regular meaning of *pācāre* in Caesar.

Rhodanus fluit: Caesar's statement that the second of these two routes was the easier turns on the fact that the Rhone was so easily crossed as to afford no serious obstacle, and that the Helvetians looked for no opposition from the Allobroges.

1. **omnīnō**, *adv.* [omnis], entirely, in all, only; *with negatives*, at all.

3. **difficilis**, -e, *adj.* [dis-+facilis], hard, difficult.

4. **quā**, *adv.* [quī], where; by which way.

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one by one, one at a time.

5. **impendeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [in+pendeō], overhang.

per-paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few.

7. **expeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of expediō], unimpeded, free, easy; light-armed.

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic tribe. Map IV, F-G, 4.

8. **nūper**, *adv.*, lately, recently.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [pāx], make peaceful, subdue, pacify.

fluō, -ere, flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow.

nōn-nūllus, or **nōn nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est pro-
 10 ximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns
 ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,
 quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēren-
 tur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire
 paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem
 15 dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs
 erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

9. vadō, *by fording*; ablative of means.

extrēmum oppidum, etc., *the farthest town of the Allobroges is Geneva, and it lies next to the country of the Helvetians.* The modern city of Geneva is built on both sides of the Rhone.

11. sēsē persuāsūrōs existimābant, *they thought that they would persuade.*

12. bonō animō, *in a friendly attitude*; descriptive ablative.

vidērentur: what do the passive forms of *videō* generally mean?

13. vel vī coāctūrōs, *or that they would compel (them) by force*; with *coāctūrōs* (and also with *persuāsūrōs*, line 11) *esse* is understood.

ut paterentur, *to allow*; a substantive clause depending on *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs*.

14. omnibus rēbus comparātis: ablative absolute.

15. dīcunt, *appointed*; historical present.

quā diē: another instance of a repeated antecedent. See note on *itineribus*, line 1. The noun *diēs* is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular; in the plural it is always masculine.

conveniant, *they were to meet*; a relative clause of purpose.

16. a. d. v. Kal. Apr. = ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlis, *the fifth day before the Kalends of April*, the 28th of March.

L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō: for the form of translation and for construction see note on ch. 2, line 2.

9. vadum, -ī, *n.* ford, shoal.

10. Genava, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Allobroges, modern Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

12. nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

13. vīs, *acc. vim.*, *abl. vī*, *f.*, force, violence; great number; *pl.*, vīrēs, -ium, strength.

14. patior, -ī, passus, *tr.*, endure, permit, allow.

15. rīpa, -ae, *f.*, the bank of a river.

16. V = quintus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fifth.

Kalendae, -ārum, *f.*, the first day of the month, the Kalends.

Apr., *abbr. for Aprīlis*, -e, *adj.* [aperiō], of April, April.

Gabinius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C.

Caesar hastens into Gaul and delays the Helvetians by pretexts.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat 5 (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent, sibi esse in animō sine 10 ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod

1. Caesarī . . . esset, *when it had been reported to Caesar; id* is explained by the indirect discourse, eōs . . . cōnārī.

3. urbe: meaning Rome.

quam maximis potest itineribus, *by as long marches as possible*. Compare the translation of *quam maximum numerum*, in the note on ch. 3, line 4.

4. ad Genavam, *in the neighborhood of Geneva*. If Caesar had wished to say "arrived at Geneva" he would have omitted *ad*.

prōvinciae tōtī imperat, *he levied on the whole province*.

5. quam maximum potest numerum: see note on line 3 of this chapter.

6. Galliā ulteriōre: the region commonly known as "the Province" and also independent Gaul were included under this name. *Gallia citerior* lay south of the Alps and extended some distance south of the Po.

legiō ūna: this was the tenth legion.

7. ad Genavam, *at Geneva*. Notice the difference between this phrase here and in line 4.

8. certiōrēs factī sunt, *were informed*. lēgātōs, *as envoys*.

10. quī dicerent, *who were to say; a relative clause of purpose*.

sibi esse in animō, *that they intended; sibi* is dative of possession.

11. per prōvinciam: apparently, they intended to march south along the east side of the Rhone, and then recross and turn toward the west.

2. mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [mātūrus], make ripe; make haste, hasten.

4. ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther, beyond, ulterior.

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, arrive, reach, come.

8. certus, -a, -um [pf. part. of cernō], certain; exact, trustworthy.

9. Nammeius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetians.

Verucloetius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetians.

prīnceps, -ipis, *adj.* [prīmus+capiō], first, foremost; *as subst., m.*, leader, chief.

11. maleficiū, -ī, *n.* [maleficus, wicked], harm, mischief.

aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut eius voluntāte id sibi
facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium
cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et
15 sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque homi-
nēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris
faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.
Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs im-
perāverat, convenīrent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberan-
20 dum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

12. *rogāre*, (and) *that they asked*; infinitive in indirect discourse, depend-
ing on *dicerent*, like *esse*, line 10.

ut liceat, *that it be permitted*; a substantive clause, object of *rogāre*.

voluntāte, *with his consent*; ablative of attendant circumstance.

13. *memoriā tenēbat*, *remembered*; followed by indirect discourse.

14. *occīsum*: supply *esse* (also with *pulsum* and *missum*).

15. *sub iugum*: for a description of the 'yoke' here referred to, see note
on *sub iugum mīsit*, page 72.

concēdendum (*esse*), *that the request ought to be granted*.

hominēs: subject of *temperātūrōs* (*esse*).

16. *animō*: descriptive ablative; what English preposition is generally
used in translating this class of ablatives? See App. 141; A. 415; B. 224, 1;
H. 473, 2; H.-B. 443.

17. *faciundī* = *faciendī*.

18. *posset*: in a clause of purpose.

dum . . . convenīrent, *until the soldiers should assemble*; *convenīrent* is
an anticipatory subjunctive.

19. *diem sē sūmptūrum*, *that he would take time* (lit. *a day*).

20. *ad Id. Apr.* (*ad Idūs Aprīlis*) *on the Ides of April*, April 13th.

reverterentur, *they should return*; a command in indirect discourse.
Caesar said *revertiminī* (imperative), *return*.

12. *rogō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,
ask, request; ask for, beg,
implore.

15. *concēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,
tr. and intr. [com-+cēdō], yield;
concede, permit, grant.

16. *inimicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+
amicus], unfriendly, hostile; *as*
subst., m., an enemy (*personal*,
or not in war).

facultās, -ātis, *f.* [facilis], oppor-
tunity, power; supply.

17. *temperō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*

[tempus], restrain one's self, re-
frain.

18. *spatium*, -ī, *n.*, space, interval;
period of time, time.

inter-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,
intr., intervene; pass; occur.

19. *dēliberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,
deliberate, consider.

20. *sūmō*, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,
tr. [sub+emō], take, assume; un-
dertake.

quis, quae (qua), *quid*, *indef. pron.*,
anybody, anyone, anything, any.

PAS DE L'ECLUSE

*Caesar fortifies
the left bank of
the Rhone and
prevents the
Helvetians
from crossing.*

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ē lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē
 10 mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvin-
 ciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit.
 Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complū-
 ribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis
 erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere
 15 possent, cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis
 repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā

9. negat sē posse, *he said that he could not.*

10. mōre et exemplō, *in accordance with the usage and precedent.*

iter, *a right of way.* ūllī: indirect object of dare.

11. vim facere, *to employ force.*

prohibītūrum (esse): supply sē as subject.

12. eā spē dēiectī, *disappointed in that hope; spē is ablative of separation.*

14. sī . . . cōnātī, *tried (to see) if they could break through; cōnātī is a participle, agreeing with Helvētiī, as is also repulsī, line 16. It is best translated by an English indicative, as above. Supply the conjunction "but" to connect with the translation of dēstitērunt.*

16. hōc cōnātū, *from this attempt.*

1. ūna via, *only the road.* Sēquanīs invītīs: for construction and form of translation see note on sē invītō ch. 8, line 7.

2. hīs cum, etc.: order for translation, *cum nōn possent persuādere hīs. suā sponte, through their own influence.*

10. exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent.

12. dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [dē+iaciō], throw down; cast down, disappoint; drive.

ratis, -is, f., raft, boat.

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), adj., several, many, a great many.

14. nōn-numquam or nōn numquam, adv., sometimes, at times.

interdiū, adv. [inter+diēs], in the daytime, by day.

noctū, adv. [nox], by night.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,

tr. and intr., break through, force one's way.

15. mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō], fortifications, intrenchments.

concursus, -ūs, m. [concurrō], running together; attack, onset.

16. re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum, tr., drive back, repel.

cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor], attempt, undertaking.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, intr., stop, desist; desist from, abandon.

2. angustiae, -ārum, f. [angustus], narrowness, narrow place, defile.

sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Hæduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

The Helvetians obtain permission to march through the country of the Sequanians.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis filiam in māttrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī nūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum

4. eō dēprecātōre, *with him as mediator*; ablative absolute.

5. grātiā et largitiōne, *because of his popularity and generosity.*

plūrimum poterat, *was very influential.*

8. cupiditāte rēgnī: for translation of this phrase see note on ch. 2, line 3.

novīs rēbus, *a revolution*; dative, depending on *studēbat*. See note on cīvitātī, ch. 2, line 4. quam plūrimās, *as many as possible.*

9. suō beneficiō obstrictās, *under obligation because of his favors* (lit. *bound by his kindness*).

10. ut . . . patiantur, *permission for the Helvetians to pass through their country.*

11. utī inter sēsē dent, *that they exchange*; a substantive clause, object of *perficit*.

12. nē . . . prohibeant, *that they will not prevent*; a purpose clause.

itinere, *from the journey.*

1. Helvētiīs esse in animō, *that the Helvetians intended*; the same form of phrase as *sibi esse in animō*, ch. 7, line 10.

3. spontis, sponte, *gen. and abl. sing. from an obsolete nom. spōns*, f. [cf. *spondeō*], of one's own accord, voluntarily; suā sponte, of one's own accord.

4. dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.* [dēprecor], mediator, intercessor.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [in+patrō, effect], obtain (*by request*), accomplish; gain one's request.

5. grātiā, -ae, *f.* [grātus], favor, gratitude; friendship; influence. largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior], giving freely, liberality.

8. studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager, desire, wish.

9. beneficium, -ī, *n.* [bene+faciō], benefit, favor, kindness.

ob-stringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.*, bind, place under obligations.

Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī
 nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prō-
 5 *Caesar brings up reinforcements to oppose their passage.* vinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perī-
 culō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,
 populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque
 frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī,
 quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam
 magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit
 10 et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit

3. quae cīvitās, a state (or tribe) which. The Roman province included the territory inhabited by a number of different Gallic tribes which had submitted to Rome.

4. id: subject of *fieret*; we should expect *sī* to stand first in the sentence. One or more words of a subordinate clause sometimes precede the conjunction.

magnō . . . futūrum, that it would be a very dangerous thing for the province (lit. would be with great danger); prōvinciae is a genitive; perīculō is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

6. locīs: dative depending on *finitimōs* (neighbors to).

7. eī mūnitiōnī T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit, placed Titus Labienus, the lieutenant, in command of the fortification; mūnitiōnī is a dative, depending on a compound of *prae*. Observe that in addition to the dative, an accusative (here *T. Labiēnum*) may be used with a compound if the uncompounded verb is transitive.

9. magnīs itineribus, by forced marches; ablative of manner.

10. trēs: object of *ēdūcit*.

2. Santonī, -ōrum, or -um, *m.*, a people between the Loire and Garonne. Map IV, C-D, 4.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Tolosa, modern Toulouse. Map IV, D, 5.

4. intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr. and intr.* [inter+legō], perceive; understand, comprehend.

5. bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellicus], warlike, fierce.

6. patēns, -entis, *adj.* [pateō], open, exposed, unprotected.

7. frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum], pertaining to grain; fertile; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions.

8. Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Titus Atius Labienus, Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [prae+faciō], place over, place in command of.

9. cōnscribō, -ere, -īpsī, -īptum, *tr.* [com-+scribō], enroll, levy, enlist.

10. Aquileia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name. Map II, D, 1.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [hiems], winter, pass the winter.

hibernus, -a, -um, *adj.* [hiems], of winter, winter; hiberna, -ōrum, (sc. castra), winter-quarters.

et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs 15 Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Helvetians devastate the country of the Haeduan. Gallic tribes seek aid from Caesar.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omni 5

11. quā proximum iter erat, by the most direct route (lit. where the nearest road was.)

13. itinere: translated like the same word in ch. 9, line 12.

14. complūribus . . . pulsīs: order for translation, *hīs pulsīs complūribus proeliīs*. Of these ablatives, *hīs pulsīs* is an ablative absolute, and *proeliīs* is an ablative of means.

15. citeriōris prōvinciae: commonly called Nearer Gaul, or Cisalpine Gaul. See note on ch. 7, line 6.

4. sē suaque, themselves and their possessions.

possent: subjunctive in a cum causal clause.

5. rogātum: a supine, expressing purpose. For translation, see App. 295; A. 509; B. 340, 1; H. 633; H.-B. 618.

auxilium: object of rogātum. The supine of a transitive verb, like any other of its forms, may govern an object.

ita sē . . . meritōs esse, they had at all times deserved such treatment from the Roman people (lit. had so deserved); indirect discourse, depending on a word of saying implied by rogātum.

12. Ceutronēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

13. Caturīgēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

14. Ocelum, -ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul. Map IV, G, 4.

15. citerior, -ius, comp. adj. [citer, on this side], on this side, nearer;

Gallia Citerior, Cisalpine Gaul.

16. Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

17. Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe west of the Rhone, about modern Lyons. Map IV, E-F, 4.

2. trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [trāns+dūcō], lead across or over, bring over.

tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessarij et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, 10 sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus

6. ut . . . dēbuerint: a clause of result.

7. agrī vāstārī: supply *nōn dēbuerint* (also with *liberī abdūcī*),—*that their lands ought not to have been laid waste*.

9. certiōrem faciunt, *informed*; the same phrase as in ch. 7, line 8.

10. dēpopulātis: the perfect participle of a deponent verb is sometimes used with passive meaning.

nōn facile . . . prohibēre, *had difficulty in defending their towns against the violence of the enemy* (lit. *were not easily keeping the violence of the enemy from their towns*).

12. fugā, *in flight*; the ablative may be regarded as expressing either means or manner.

13. sibi . . . reliquī, *that they had nothing left but the bare ground*; *reliquī* is a genitive depending on *nihil*. The Helvetians had swept away in their march the crops and herds of the unfortunate tribes which lay in their path, leaving only desolation.

14. nōn exspectandum sibi, *that he ought not to wait*; *sibi* is a dative of agent.

dum, *until*; introducing an anticipatory subjunctive.

6. cōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō], sight, presence.

7. servitūs, -ūtis, *f.* [servus], slavery, servitude.

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away, take away.

8. ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, take by storm, capture.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [dē+habeō], owe, be under obligation; ought, must.

Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. Map IV, F, 3-4.

9. cōsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sanguineus, of blood], of

the same blood, related; *as subst.*, *m.*, kinsman, relative.

10. dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, lay waste, ravage; *pf. part. with pass. force*, ravaged.

11. possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possidō], possession, occupation; property.

12. dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, point out, show; state.

13. solum, -ī, *n.*, the bottom, ground; earth, soil.

14. ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, wait for, await, wait to see.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [status], set up; place; resolve; decide.

fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent. 15

*Caesar destroys
the rear guard
of the Helve-
tians as they
cross the Saône.*

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduō-
rum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrē-
dibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem
fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus
iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior 5
factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen
trādūxisse, quārtam vērō partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam
esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus
ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.
Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs adgressus magnam partem 10

15. fortūnīs cōnsūptīs: ablative absolute.

1. flūmen est Arar, *there is a river (called) the Saône.*

2. incrēdibilī lēnitāte, *of an exceedingly sluggish current*; ablative of description.

3. oculīs iūdicārī nōn possit, *one cannot judge by the eye* (lit. *it cannot be judged*); a clause of result.

4. fluat: subjunctive in an indirect question.

ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs, *by means of rafts and boats fastened together.*

6. trēs . . . trādūxisse, *that the Helvetians had already led three fourths of their number across that river*; partēs and flūmen are objects of trādūxisse, the former depending on the verb element of the compound and the latter on the prepositional element; cōpiae usually means *troops* or *forces*, but here it refers to the whole body of the migrating Helvetians.

7. reliquam esse, *still remained* (lit. *was remaining*). Supply a conjunction to connect the two clauses of the indirect discourse.

8. dē tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch.*

15. cōsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-
tum, *tr.* [com-+sūmō], consume,
destroy; use up, spend.

1. Arar, -aris, *m.*, a tributary of the
Rhône, the modern Saône. Map
IV, F-G, 3-4.

2. in-crēdibilis, -e, *adj.* [crēdibilis,
believable], incredible, extraordi-
nary.

3. lēnitās, -ātis, *f.* [lēnis], smooth-
ness, gentleness.

uter, utra, utrum, *interrog. pron.*,
which of the two? which?

4. iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
[iūdex], judge, think, consider.

linter, lintris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

7. citrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*
[citer, on this side], on this side of.

8. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a
watching, watch.

10. impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf.
part. of impediō], hindered, im-
peded; difficult, impassable.

in-opināns, -antis, *adj.* [opinor,
think], unawares.

eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoria, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum subiugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvītātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est,

11. sēsē fugae mandārunt, *took to flight*; *mandārunt* is a contracted form of *mandāvērunt*.

in proximās silvās: we should expect the ablative with *in* here, as the phrase seems to denote Place Where. But with the verb *abdō* the Romans commonly used the accusative, as if to express the idea of going to a place for the purpose of concealment.

12. Tigurīnus: a predicate nominative, like *Celtae* and *Galli*, ch. 1, line 3, and *dux*, ch. 3, line 8.

14. domō: with what words is Place from Which expressed by the ablative without a preposition?

exisset: subjunctive in a descriptive clause of situation.

17. quae . . . persolvit: order for translation, *ea pars cīvītātis Helvētiae quae intulerat insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō princeps*, etc. The antecedent of the relative is put in the relative clause, and is represented in the main clause by the demonstrative, *ea*. Note the force of *per-* in *persolvit*.

populō: dative with *intulerat*, in the same construction as *fīnitimīs*, ch. 2, line 13.

19. ultus est: perfect of *ulcīscor*.

11. concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [com-+caedō], cut down, cut to pieces, kill.

12. silva, -ae, *f.*, woods, forest. ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, withdraw; conceal, hide.

pāgus, -ī, *m.*, a district, canton.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* belonging to the Tigurini; *m.*, *pl.* as *subst.*, the Tigurini. *Map IV, G, 3.*

16. si-ve, or seu, *conj.*, or if, or; seu . . . seu or sive . . . sive,

either . . . or, whether . . . or.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [in-+mortālis], immortal.

17. insignis, -e, *adj.* [in+signum], marked, memorable, conspicuous.

18. per-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay in full, pay.

19. solum, *adv.* [sōlus], only, merely; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus, *tr.*, take vengeance on, punish, avenge.

quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī 20
eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

*Caesar crosses
the Saône.
The Helvetians
sue for peace.*

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvē-
tiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faci-
endum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi
repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx
aegerrimē cōfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē 5
fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis
Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum
fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmā-

20. quod . . . interfēcerant, *because the Tigurini had killed Lucius Piso, the lieutenant, grandfather of Lucius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law, in the same battle in which (they had killed) Cassius.*

2. ut . . . posset: a clause of purpose; cōpiās is the object of cōsequī, which depends on posset. We should expect ut to stand before reliquās.

pontem faciendum cūrat, *he caused a bridge to be made.* See App. 285, b; A. 500, 4; B. 337, 7, 2); H. 622; H.-B. 612, III.

Ararī: this word, like a few other *i*-stem proper nouns, usually has the ablative ending in -ī, and the accusative in -im.

4. repentīnō eius adventū, *by his sudden arrival*; ablative of cause.

cum . . . intellegerent, *when they realized.* id: object of fēcisse.

diēbus: ablative of Time within Which.

5. aegerrimē, *with the greatest difficulty.*

ut flūmen trānsirent, *(that is) the crossing of the river*; substantive clause explaining id.

7. bellō Cassiānō: ablative of Time When. This was the war referred to in ch. 7, line 13 and ch. 12, line 14. The defeat of Cassius occurred in the year 107 B.C.

8. cum Caesare ēgit, *addressed Caesar.* The remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. Therefore all main verbs which expressed statements in the direct form of Divico's speech will be represented by infinitives, all verbs which expressed commands and exhortations by subjunctives, and all verbs in subordinate clauses by subjunctives.

2. cōsequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.* [com-+sequor], follow after, follow up, follow, overtake; gain.

3. cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [cūra], care for, take care, provide, cause to be done.

4. repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected.

XX = vīgintī, twenty.

5. aegrē, *adv.* [aeger], with difficulty, scarcely; aegrē ferre, feel distress at, be annoyed at.

7. Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a chief of the Helvetians.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Cassius], of or with Cassius.

nus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi
 10 futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse volu-
 isset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et vete-
 ris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristināe virtūtis Helvēti-
 ōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,
 quī flūmen trānsissent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē
 15 ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs
 dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse, ut

9. itūrōs . . . Helvētiōs, *the Helvetians would go into that region and there remain*; esse is understood with itūrōs and futūrōs.

10. eōs cōstituisset atque esse voluisset, *should establish them and should wish them to remain*. In the direct discourse, these past perfect subjunctives would be future perfect indicatives.

11. bellō persequī, *in forcing war upon them* (lit. *to follow them up with war*); bellō is ablative of means.

reminiscerētur, *he should remember, or let him remember*; a command in indirect discourse.

12. incōmodī, virtūtis: genitives depending on reminiscerētur. See App. 107; A. 350; B. 206; H. 454; H.-B. 350.

13. quod, *as to the fact that*. iī: subject of possent.

14. suis, *to their comrades*.

nē . . . dēspiceret, *he should not (or let him not) on that account take great credit for his own valor or scorn them (the Helvetians)*; a negative command in indirect discourse.

16. sē ita ā patribus, etc., *freely, their fathers and ancestors had taught them to fight courageously rather than to rely on treachery or ambushade, lit., they had so learned from their fathers*. Divico implies that Caesar's surprise attack on the Tigurini was an act which was unworthy of a spirit of fair fighting, and that the Romans were displaying a cowardly attitude by such methods of warfare.

11. sīn, conj. [sī+ne), if however, but if.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., persist, persevere.

reminiscor, -ī, —, intr., recall, remember.

12. incommodum, -ī, n. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, loss, harm; disaster.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former, preceding, previous.

13. imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus], suddenly, without warning.

ad-orior, -irī, -ortus, tr., fall upon, attack, assail.

15. magnopere (magnō opere), adv., greatly, exceedingly.

16. dēspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. and intr. [dē+speciō, spy], look down upon, scorn, despise.

discō, -ere, didici, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught.

magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

20

Caesar offers terms to the Helvetians, which they refuse.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīi commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile 5

18. nē committeret, *he should not cause*; the same construction as *dēspiceret*, line 16 of this chapter.

19. nōmen caperet, *to become celebrated*. Such places as Thermopylae, Waterloo, and Gettysburg would be little known but for the fact that they were the scenes of important battles. Divico suggests that the location of the Helvetian and Roman armies may become famous as the scene of a great Roman defeat.

1. hīs: masculine, referring to the envoys.

eō . . . darī, freely, *his determination was all the stronger*, i.e., to compel the Helvetians to accept such terms as the Romans saw fit to impose; eō is ablative of cause, explained by the *quod* clause which follows; dubitātiōnis is genitive of the whole depending on minus.

3. atque . . . accidissent, *and he felt deeper indignation from the fact that this misfortune had happened to the Roman people undeservedly* (lit. *the less they had happened in accordance with the deserts of the Roman people, the more he felt resentment*); eō and quō are ablatives of degree of difference.

5. quī . . . fuisset, *if they had been aware of any unjust act*. Observe that the English usage requires the translation of quī by a plural because it refers to the collective noun *populus*; sibi is a dative of reference, with cōnsciū, and is to be omitted in translation.

fuisse: in the direct form, *fuit*.

17. dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, artifice, trickery.

nītor, -ī, nīxus or nīsus, *intr.*, rely upon; strive, endeavor.

18. cōsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.* [com-+sistō], stand, halt, make a stand, take position; consist in.

19. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [inter+necō], extermination, annihilation.

20. prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, make known, hand down; betray.

2. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō], doubt, uncertainty.

3. com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, remind one of, speak of, state.

4. meritum, -ī, *n.* [meritus], a merit, desert, benefit.

5. cōnsciū, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sciō], conscious; aware.

cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptās-
 10 sent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexās-
 sent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam

6. eō, *for this reason*, explained by *quod . . . intellegeret neque putāret. commissum ā sē, that they had done anything*; the verb is impersonal.

7. timēret, *should fear*. Occasionally the subjunctive conveys the idea of obligation.

timendum (esse): supply *sibi*,—*that they ought to fear*.

quod sī, *but if*.

8. contumēliae: for case see note on *incommodī*, ch. 13, line 12.

vellet: the subject probably refers to Caesar.

num: a negative answer is implied by the use of this interrogative particle,—*he could not forget* (lit. *lay aside the memory*), *could he?*

9. iniūriārum: depending on *memoriam*, line 11.

quod, (*namely*) *that*; the *quod* clauses are in apposition with *iniūriārum*. In place of *et* after *Haeduōs* and *Ambarrōs*, *quod* is repeated for rhetorical effect. The last two occurrences may be omitted in translation.

eō invītō, *against his* (Caesar's) *will*; it is however possible that *eō* may refer to *populus Rōmānus*.

temptāsēnt: contracted form of *temptāvissent*.

10. Allobrogas: a few third declension nouns, especially names of peoples, have the Greek accusative plural ending *-as* instead of the regular *-ēs*.

11. posse: a rhetorical question in indirect discourse may have its verb in the infinitive. Such a question is equivalent to a statement in vivid form, and so follows the usage of the quoted statement.

quod, *the fact that*; the two clauses which follow are subjects of *pertinēre*.

victōriā: ablative of cause.

6. caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, *tr. and intr.*, beware, be on one's guard.

7. timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, dread; be anxious.

8. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, outrage, injury.

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus, *tr. and intr.*, forget, disregard.

num, *interrog. adv.*; with a direct question to which an answer in the negative is expected, often best

untranslated; not so . . . is it? with indirect question, whether.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, new, fresh, recent.

9. temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tendō], make trial of, attempt.

10. vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of vehō], harass, overrun.

11. dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, lay down, lay aside, put away; give up.

insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs 15 interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: 20

12. iniūriās tulisse, *had inflicted injuries*; indirect discourse depending on *admīrārentur*.

13. eōdem pertinēre, *tended to the same result*. Their boastful attitude and their self-satisfaction merely added to the account which they would have to settle.

cōnsuēsse: contracted form of *cōnsuēvisse*; the subject is *deōs*.

14. quō . . . doleant, *in order that men might suffer more keenly from a change of circumstances*, or better, represent *hominēs* by the pronoun *they*, and translate the noun in place of the pronoun *hīs*, line 15.

15. quōs . . . velint: translate after *hīs*.

secundiōrēs rēs, *a high degree of success*; *rēs secundae* means "prosperity." Caesar is ascribing to the gods a sort of malicious delight in intensifying the suffering of those whom they punish by the contrast between the unusual success in life which is granted them for a little while, and the ruin of their hopes which follows.

16. concēdere: depending on *cōnsuēsse*, which may be represented by an adverb,—*the gods usually grant*. **cum**, *although*.

18. factūrōs: supply *eōs* as subject,—*that they would do*; the object is *ea*.

sī Haeduīs: supply *satisfaciant*, parallel to the use of the word in the clause beginning *sī Allobrogibus*, line 19.

12. glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [glōria], glory in, boast of.

impūne, adv. [impūnis, unpunished], unpunished, with impunity.

13. cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, intr. [com-+suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *in the pf. tenses*, be accustomed or wont.

14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [commūtō], a change, turn.

15. doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr.,

grieve, be sorry, suffer; be grieved, be afflicted.

16. inter-dum, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū], of long duration, long.

impūnitās, -ātis, f. [impūnis, unpunished], freedom from punishment, impunity.

19. satis-faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, intr., give satisfaction to, apologize, make amends.

Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

*Caesar follows
the Helvetians.
His cavalry are
defeated.*

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, 5 quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tan-

21. utī . . . cōsuērint, *that they were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them*; cōsuērint is a contracted form of cōsuēverint, perfect subjunctive.

4. coāctum habēbat: the English past perfect, *had collected*, may be used to translate this phrase. But to the Roman the phrase meant *had (at hand), having been collected*; coāctum agrees with equitātum.

5. quī videant: a relative clause of purpose.

quās . . . faciant, *in what direction the enemy were marching*; an indirect question.

quī, *these*. A relative pronoun which refers to an antecedent in a preceding clause is translated by a demonstrative or a personal pronoun.

cupidius, *too eagerly*. A comparative adjective or adverb is frequently translated by a phrase with *too* or *rather*.

6. novissimum agmen, *the rear line*.

7. dē nostrīs, *of our men*. The ablative with *dē* or *ex* is sometimes employed instead of the genitive of the whole.

8. quō proeliō sublātī, *elated by this battle*.

equitibus: ablative of means.

23. testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go away, withdraw.

4. prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send forward or in advance.

5. cupidē, *adv.* [cupidus], eagerly.

6. agmen, -inis, *n.* [agō], a marching army or column; army, line;

in agmine, on the march.

in-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr. and intr.*, follow up, pursue.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius], of another, of others; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable.

7. cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intr.*, fall; fall dead, be slain.

tam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere
nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere 10
coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habē-
bat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis populātiōnibusque prohibēre.
Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium
agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus
passuum interesset. 15

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent
pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia
sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn

10. nōn numquam, *at times or from time to time.*

novissimō . . . lacessere, *to harass our men by attacks (lit. by battle) from their rear line; agmine is ablative of means; proeliō may be classified either as means or manner.*

11. satis habēbat, *considered that it was sufficient.*

12. rapīnis, populātiōnibus: *ablatives of separation.*

13. diēs: *accusative of duration; circiter is an adverb.*

14. primum: *supply agmen. quīnis aut sēnis, five or six miles each day.*

1. Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *demanding of the Haeduan the grain; flāgitāre is an historical infinitive. See App. 281; A. 463; B. 335; H. 610; H.-B. 595. Some words of demanding, like flāgitāre, take two objects, one naming the thing demanded, the other naming the person on whom the demand is made.*

3. sub septentriōnibus, *toward the north. Caesar is writing from the point of view of Italy. posita est, is situated.*

9. prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*,
drive forward, put to flight, rout.

audācter, *adv.* [audāx], boldly,
bravely, fiercely.

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*,
stand, remain; hold out, hold firm.

10. lacessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, *tr.*,
harass, provoke, attack.

12. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns],
presence, the present; in prae-
sentiā, for the present.

rapīna, -ae, *f.* [rapiō], robbery, pillage.

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor], rav-
aging, pillaging.

13. circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*

[circus]; *as adv.*, about, nearly; *as prep.*, near, about.

XV = quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*
[quīque+decem], fifteen.

14. sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*
[sex], six each.

15. inter-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*,
be between, intervene; be present;
impers., interest, it concerns, it is
important.

1. cotīdiē, *adv.* [quot+diēs], every
day, daily.

2. flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, de-
mand.

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather,
cold; *pl.*, cold.

modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem
 5 *The Haeduan fail to furnish Caesar supplies. Caesar complains to their leaders.* satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō,
 quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā
 ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverte-
 rant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere
 Haeduī; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius
 10 dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus
 mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum mag-

4. nē . . . suppetēbat, *there was not a sufficiently large supply even of forage.* A word standing between nē and quidem is emphasized.

5. frūmentō: ablative depending on ūtī.

6. flūmine: ablative of route.

nāvibus: denotes the means used in conveying the grain.

proptereā: translate with quod after poterat,—for the reason that.

8. ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat, *and he did not wish to cease following (lit. to withdraw from) them.*

diem . . . Haeduī, *the Haeduan put him off day after day*; dūcere is used like flāgitāre in line 2 of this chapter; dīcere in line 9 is another example of the same construction.

9. cōferri, comportārī, adesse, *that it was being collected, that it was being brought, that it was at hand*; referring to the grain.

diūtius: for the translation of the comparative, see note on cupidius, ch. 15, line 1.

10. dūcī: in the same meaning as in line 8.

diē: omit in translation; a repeated antecedent, like itineribus, ch. 6, line 5.

11. oportēret, *it would be necessary*; the word would be future in direct discourse.

4. modo, *adv.* [modus], only, merely; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also or even.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mature; early.

pābulum, -ī, *n.*, fodder, pasture, forage.

6. sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, bring up, transport.

9. cōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [com-+ferō], bring together, collect; sē cōferre, betake one's self, go, withdraw.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, bring together, collect.

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be at, near, or by, be at hand, be present.

10. in-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr.*, press on, approach, be at hand.

11. mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, *tr.*, measure, deal out, distribute.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+vocō], call together, call, summon.

nam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque 15 ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit.

Liscus lays the blame on the party of Dum-norix, which is hostile to the Romans.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magis-

12. Dīviciācō, Liscō: in apposition with *prīncipibus*. When a noun in the singular is thus used to denote one of the group referred to by the word which it explains, it is sometimes said to be in partitive apposition.

13. magistrātūī: dative with a compound of *prae*.

15. cum . . . possit, *when grain could not be purchased or taken from the fields*.

16. tempore, hostibus: ablatives absolute.

17. sublevētur: Caesar is here quoting the reason which he gave for his censure of the Haeduan leaders, and therefore uses the subjunctive. See App. 244; A. 540; B. 286, 1; H, 588, II; H.-B. 535, 2, a.

2. esse nōn nullōs, *that there were some*.

3. plūrimum valeat, *was very powerful*.

4. plūs possint: see phrases under *possum* in Vocabulary.

12. Liscus, -ī, m., *chief magistrate of the Haeduan*s.

13. vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, *the chief magistrate of the Haeduan*s.

15. accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ad+causa], *accuse, blame, censure*.

emō, -ere, emī, emptum, tr., *buy, purchase*.

16. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope], *near; as subst., m. and f., a relative, kinsman*.

17. sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *lift up, help, support*.

praesertim, adv., *especially, particularly*.

18. prex, precis, f., *prayer, request, entreaty*.

1. dēmum, adv. [dē], *at length, at last*.

2. taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. and intr., *be silent, keep silent*.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., *set forth, explain, state, represent; display*.

4. valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr., *be strong, be powerful, have strength, have weight or influence*.

prīvātīm, adv. [prīvātus], *privately, individually*.

5 'trātūs. Hōs sēdiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem
dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre,
sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam
Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Hel-
vētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs
10 libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque
in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn
posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī

5. hōs: subject of *dēterrēre*.

6. nē frūmentum cōferant, *from collecting the grain*. A clause with the subjunctive is used after words of hindrance, etc.

praestāre, (*they said*) *it would be better*. The main body of the indirect discourse gives the statement of Liscus, and is introduced by *prōpōnit*. But the words *praestāre . . . ēreptūrī* (line 10) give the statements which Liscus ascribes to those of the Haeduans who opposed helping the Romans, and depend upon an understood word of saying implied by *dēterrēre*.

7. iam nōn, *no longer*.

prīncipātum: in a later part of the narrative, Caesar tells of the rivalry between the Haeduans and the Sequani for leadership among the nations of Gaul.

8. neque dubitāre quīn, *and they did not doubt that*. Words and phrases of doubt, if modified by a negative, take a dependent clause introduced by *quīn*, with its verb in the subjunctive.

9. Haeduīs: a dative, but translated *from the Haeduans*. This use of the dative with words of taking away is sometimes called the "dative of separation."

10. sint ēreptūrī, *would take away*; the first periphrastic conjugation. See note on *obtentūrus*, ch. 3, line 18.

quaeque, *and the things which*; *quae* is a relative pronoun, with an antecedent, *ea*, understood.

11. hōs . . . coërcērī: change to active in translation,—*he could not restrain them*.

12. quīn etiam, quod ēnūntiārīt, *and furthermore, as to the fact that he had disclosed*; for the *quod* clause, see note on ch. 13, line 13; *ēnūntiārīt* is a perfect subjunctive, contracted from *ēnūntiāverīt*.

5. sēdiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēdiō], rebellious, seditious.

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+probus, good], bad, shameless, wicked, disloyal.

8. per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear; endure, submit to; an-
nounce, report.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [dubius], doubt; hesitate, delay.

enūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

*The influence
of Dumnorix.
His treachery
to the Romans.*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dixerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem 5 sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō

13. quantō: modifies *periculō*.

14. quam diū, *as long as*.

1. hāc ōrātiōne, *by this statement*; to be taken with *dēsīgnārī*.

3. plūribus praesentibus, *while so many were present*; ablative absolute.

4. dīmittit: supply a conjunction between this word and *retinet*.

quaerit ex sōlō ea, *he questioned him when alone about these things*.

5. dīcit liberius: in spite of the fact that Liscus was the official head of the state he was apparently afraid to oppose Dumnorix openly.

6. ipsum . . . grātiā, *that it was indeed Dumnorix, (a man) of the greatest daring, of great influence among the common people on account of his generosity*; *audāciā* and *grātiā* are ablatives of description; *magnā* is separated from the noun which it modifies by two prepositional phrases which also modify *grātiā*.

8. annōs: accusative of Duration of Time.

9. portōria, vectīgālia: objects of *habēre*.

parvō pretiō, *for a small price*.

2. dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out, mean, designate.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, perceive, realize, know; observe.

3. iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of iaciō*], throw about; discuss, consider; charge.

celeriter, *adv.* [*celer*], quickly, rapidly, speedily.

4. concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, assembly, council.

5. conventus, -ūs, *m.* [*conveniō*], assembly, meeting.

liberē, *adv.* [*liber*], freely, without restraint.

6. sēcrētō, *adv.* [*sēcrētus*, separated], separately, apart, privately, secretly.

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; reasonable, right.

7. liberālitās, -ātis, *f.* [*liberālis*], generosity, liberality.

9. portōrium, -ī, *n.* [*portus*], import or export tax, duty.

vectīgālis, -ālis, *n.* [*vectīgālis*], tax, revenue, tribute.

- 10 redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī
 audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et
 facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum nu-
 merum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre,
 neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter
 15 posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus
 hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex

10. **redēpta habēre**, *had bought up*; the participle *redēpta* agrees with the objects of *habēre*. The construction is the same as *coāctum habēbat*, ch. 15, line 4. The taxes in ancient times were usually collected, not by government officials, but by private individuals or by corporations who obtained the contract by bidding. The highest bidder, that is, the one who offered to pay the highest sum to the government, would naturally be awarded the contract. But Dumnorix offered low bids, and obtained the contracts through intimidation.

illō licente, *when he bid*; ablative absolute.

11. **et . . . et**: correlatives.

12. **ad largiendum**, *for lavish giving*. Dumnorix maintained his popularity among the lower class by making presents and doing favors.

comparāsse: contracted form of *comparāvisse*.

numerus: object of *alere* and *habēre*.

13. **suō sūmptū**, *at his own expense*; ablative of means.

14. **domī**: locative case.

15. **causā**: this ablative form, meaning *for the sake of*, always follows the genitive which depends upon it.

mātrem conlocāsse, *had arranged a marriage for his mother*.

10. **liceor**, -ērī, **licitus**, *intr.*, bid (*at an auction*).

11. **familiāris**, -e, *adj.* [**familia**], pertaining to the household, private; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate.

augeō, -ēre, **auxī**, **auctum**, *tr.*, increase, augment.

12. **largior**, -irī, -ītus, *tr.* [**largus**, abundant], give freely, give generously, bestow.

13. **sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [**sūmō**], expense, cost.

alō, -ere, **aluī**, **altum** (**alitur**),

tr., nourish, support; increase.

14. **largiter**, *adv.* [**largus**, abundant], abundantly, much; **largiter posse**, have great influence.

15. **potentia**, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**], power, might; influence.

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.

Biturīgēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of central Gaul. Map IV, D-E, 3.

16. **conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**com-**+**locō**, place], place, arrange.

Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātrem et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et 20 Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

17. uxōrem habēre: his wife was the daughter of Orgetorix. Her marriage to Dumnorix is referred to in ch. 3, line 16.

sorōrem ex mātrem et propinquās suās, his half-sister and the women of his kindred.

18. nūptum conlocāsse: translate like *conlocāsse* above; *nūptum* is a supine.

cupere, wished well to. **Helvētiis:** dative with *favēre* and *cupere*.

19. ōdisse: this word, like *meminī*, has only the tenses of the perfect system. The perfect is used as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

suō nōmine, on his own account. His opposition to the Romans had been first explained (ch. 17, lines 6-10) as arising from fear that the Haeduan state would be deprived of influence through the development of Roman power. Caesar here points out that in addition to this patriotic motive there were personal considerations which weighed strongly with Dumnorix.

20. eōrum adventū, by their coming. **dēminūta:** supply *sit*.

22. sī quid, if anything. The forms of *quis* are used as indefinites after *sī nisi, nē,* and *num*.

summam in spem venīre, he was coming to hold the highest hopes. This idiom should be carefully learned.

23. imperiō populī Rōmānī, under the authority of the Roman people; ablative of attendant circumstance.

24. grātiā is the object of *dē* and is modified by *eā*.

17. soror, -ōris, f., sister.

18. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*, veil oneself, be married, marry (*of the woman only*).

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, intr., be favorable or friendly to, favor.

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, tr., wish, desire, be eager; wish well to.

19. adfinitās, -ātis, f. [adfīnis], relationship by marriage, alliance; relationship.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, tr., defect., hate.

20. dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., lessen, diminish, impair.

21. antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante], old, belonging to former times.

- 25 Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar plans to punish Dumnorix. He summons Diviciacus to an interview.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo
5 iniussū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam īnscentibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābatur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitatē

25. in quaerendō, *on investigating*; gerund.

quod . . . esset factum, *as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry battle had occurred a few days before*. This was described in chapter 15, lines 5-7.

26. diēbus: ablative of degree of difference, used with the adverb *ante*. See App. 148; A. 414; B. 223; H. 479; H.-B. 424.

initium factum (esse): indirect discourse depending on *reperiēbat*.

27. equitātuī: why dative?

28. auxiliō Caesarī, *as additional forces for Caesar*; auxiliō is a dative of purpose, Caesarī is a dative of reference.

2. certissimae rēs accēderent, quod, *the most definite facts were added, (namely) that*; the clauses which follow, introduced by *quod*, are substantive clauses in apposition with rēs; their verbs are in the subjunctive by attraction because they depend closely upon accēderent of the cum causal clause.

3. obsidēs . . . cūrāset, *had brought about an exchange of hostages between them*.

5. iniussū suō et cīvitatīs, *without his order or that of the state*.

īnscentibus ipsīs, *without their knowledge*; ablative absolute.

6. satis esse causae, *that there was sufficient reason*; causae is genitive of the whole.

7. in eum animadverteret, *should punish him*; animadvertere with a direct object means *observe*, with *in* and the accusative it means *punish*.

25. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, [eques], of cavalry, cavalry.

29. per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.

5. iniussū, *abl. of iniussus*, -ūs, *m.* [in-+iussus, order], without command or order.

in-sciēns, -entis, *adj.*, unaware, ignorant.

7. animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [animum advertō], turn the mind to, give attention to, observe; with *in* and accusative, punish.

animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rebus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, 10 temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium 15 rerum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et

8. his . . . repugnābat, *to all these facts there was opposed one consideration, (namely); rebus is a dative with repugnābat. See note on civitatī, ch. 2, line 4.*

9. quod . . . cognōverat: a clause of the same kind as the quod clauses in line 2. Diviciāci: modifies studium.

in populum Rōmānum, *toward the Roman people.*

11. nē . . . offenderet, *that he would offend Diviciacus by the punishment of Dumnorix; a clause of fear. The Latin expression meaning offend the mind of Diviciacus is put more briefly in English. It is necessary for the sake of clearness to translate the pronoun eius by the noun Dumnorix, for which it stands.*

12. priusquam cōnārētur, *before he should attempt or before attempting; cōnārētur is an anticipatory subjunctive.*

14. per, *by means of.* Diviciacus had been in Rome, but he did not understand Latin.

15. cui . . . habēbat, *in whom he had the fullest confidence in all matters; cui is a dative depending on fidem habere, which is equivalent to cōfīdere.*

17. ipsō praesente, *when Diviciacus was present; ablative absolute. For the translation of the pronoun, compare the note on line 11.*

8. re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, oppose, resist.

9. studium, -ī, *n.* [studeō], eagerness, enthusiasm; good-will, devotion; desire.

10. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ex+grex], extraordinary, remarkable; unusual.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus], justice, uprightness.

11. temperantia, -ae, *f.* [tempe-

rāns], moderation, self-control.

12. vereor, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, fear, dread.

13. interpretēs, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter.

14. Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

16. conloquor, -ī, -locūtus, *intr.* [com-+loquor], talk (with), confer.

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [moneō+faciō], remind.

ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit
atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō
20 causā cognitā statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

*Diviciacus
intercedes for
his brother.
Caesar yields,
but decides to
watch Dum-
norix.*

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem
complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in
frātre statuaret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, neque
quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, prop-
5 tereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā
Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē

18. *apud sē dīxerit*, had stated before him (Caesar); *dīxerit* is subjunctive in an indirect question, as is also *sint dicta* in line 17.

19. *ut . . . statuāt*, that he (Caesar) might, after investigating the case himself, decide regarding Dumnorix without giving offense to Diviciacus.

2. *nē . . . statuaret*, that he would not decide upon too severe measures (lit. upon anything too severe); the use of *quid* as an indefinite is explained in the note on ch. 18, line 22. The clause is a substantive clause, used as the object of *obsecrāre*.

3. *sē*: subject of *scīre*. The indirect discourse depends on a word of saying implied in *obsecrāre*.

neque . . . capere, and no one felt more regret over this situation than he did.

4. *dolōris*: genitive of the whole depending on *plūs*.

5. *cum . . . posset*: the full expression of the thought (from an English point of view) would require another *posset* supplied after *Galliā* as the verb of which *ipse* is the subject, then *et* to connect the two clauses, and another *cum* to introduce the *posset* of line 6, of which *ille* is the subject. *ipse* refers to Diviciacus, *ille* to Dumnorix.

grātiā plūrimū (*posset*), had great popularity and influence (lit. was very influential through popularity).

6. *minimum posset*, had very little influence.

per sē crēvisset, he (Dumnorix) had gained influence (lit. increased) through him. The prominence of Diviciacus in the state naturally gave a certain amount of prestige to his family, and the younger brother profited by this in his efforts to gain a personal following.

18. *sēparātīm*, adv. [*sēparō*], apart, separately.

19. *hortor*, -ārī, -ātus, tr., encourage, urge.

offensiō, -ōnis, f. [*offendō*], a giving offense, offense.

2. *complector*, -ī, -plexus, tr. [*com-+plector*, embrace], embrace.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*ob+sacrō*], implore, entreat.

6. *adulēscēntia*, -ae, f. [*adulēscēns*], youth.

crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae 10 apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et rei 15 pūblīcae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus

7. quibus opibus ac nervīs, *these resources of power* (lit. and power); ablatives with ūteretur.

ad minuendam grātiā, *to diminish his influence*; gerundive construction.

9. quod, *but* or *now*.

10. eī: dative with accidisset. gravius, *too severe*.

11. apud eum: the pronoun refers to Caesar.

suā voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

12. factum: supply esse.

utī . . . āverterentur: substantive clause, subject of futūrum (esse). Translate freely, *that he would lose favor throughout all Gaul*.

13. haec cum peteret, *when he made this request*. Observe that cum is not a preposition. The ablative, verbīs, may be regarded either as means or manner.

14. finem ōrandī faciāt, *that he make an end to his plea*; the clause is used without a conjunction, as the object of rogat. See App. 228, a; A. 565, a; B. 295, 8; H. 565, 4; H.-B. 502, 3. ōrandī is a gerund.

15. tantī . . . esse, *that his good will was of so much importance to him* (Caesar); freely, *that he valued his good will so highly*; tantī is a genitive of indefinite value. rei pūblīcae: genitive.

16. voluntātī, *at his request*; dative depending on condōnet.

7. crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *intr.*, increase, grow, thrive, prosper.

ops, opis, *f.* (without *nom.* or *dat. sing.*), aid; power; *pl.*, power, influence, resources.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, energy, power, strength.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* and *intr.*, lessen, diminish.

9. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō], love.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter], of a brother, brother's, brothers'.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō], opinion, judgment.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, crowd; the rabble.

13. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

flēō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, *tr.* and *intr.*, weep, lament.

14. prēndō (prehendō), -ere, prēndī, prēnsūm, *tr.*, grasp, seize.

cōsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort.

condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre[m] adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitas querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sus-
 20 piciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans to surprise the Helvetians.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent, mīsīt. Renūntiātum est
 5 facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō

17. condōnet: in a clause of result.

18. reprehendat: in an indirect question; so also *intellegat* and *querātur*.

19. ut . . . vītet: substantive clause, object of *monet*.

in reliquum tempus, for the future.

20. Dīviciācō, out of regard for Diviciacus; dative of reference.

21. Dumnorīgī, over Dumnorix; the same case use as Dīviciācō.

agat, loquātur: the same construction as *reprehendat* in line 18.

2. sub monte, at the foot of a mountain.

3. quālis (esset) in circuitū ascēsus, what was the character of the ascent from all sides; the indirect question is object of *cognōscerent*.

4. quī cognōscerent, to find out; a relative clause of purpose.

5. facilem esse: the subject of the infinitive is *ascēsum* understood.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see note on ch. 12, line 8.

lēgātum prō praetōre, lieutenant with pretorian power; that is, in the absence of the commanding general he would have complete control of the military (and probably of the civil) affairs of any region under his charge.

17. condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+dōnō], give up, forgive, pardon.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [ad+ha-beō], summon, invite; employ.

18. re-prehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēsum, *tr.*, draw back; blame, censure.

19. queror, -ī, questus, *tr. and intr.*, complain; complain of, find fault with.

20. praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *tr.*, go by, pass by; *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *as subst.*, the past.

21. loquor, -ī, locūtus, *tr. and intr.*, say, speak, talk.

2. cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [com-+sīdō, sit], sit down, halt; encamp; settle.

4. ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō], a way up, ascending, ascent, approach.

praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur 10 et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

Caesar's plan fails through the mistake of Considius.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem 5 a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis

7. quid . . . sit, *what his plan was*; consilii is a genitive of the whole.

8. eodem . . . contendit, *hastened toward the enemy by the same road by which they had gone*; itinere and quo are ablatives of route. Notice that the English interchanges the place of the noun hostes and the pronoun eos in translation.

10. qui . . . habebatur, *who was considered to be thoroughly familiar with military affairs*; the adjective peritus takes a dependent genitive. Since Considius blundered in carrying out his orders, Caesar thinks it necessary to explain in a somewhat apologetic manner why he had supposed him to be capable.

11. M. Crassi: supply exercitu.

1. prima luce, *at daybreak*.

cum: introduces teneretur, abesset, and cognitus esset. Supply and in translation after teneretur. summus mons, *the top of the mountain*.

3. neque, aut . . . aut Labieni, *and (when) neither his approach nor that of Labienus*.

5. equo . . . accurrit, *came galloping up to him*. Supply et in translation after accurrit.

6. id: object of cognovisse.

6. praetor, -oris, m. [*for praeitor from prae-eo, go before*], general, praetor.

10. Considius, -i, m., Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers*.

1. lux, lucis, f., light, daylight; prima luce, *at daybreak*.

5. equus, -i, m., horse.

accurrō, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō], run to, hasten to.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallia], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic.

armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi
 10 ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod
 15 nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

8. *subdūcit, instruit*: another example of the omission of a conjunction. This usage of employing words in a sentence in the same construction without a connective is called *asyndeton*.

ut . . . praeceptum, as he had been instructed; the verb is impersonal. *eī* is its indirect object, and the subject is the clause *nē . . . committeret*.

9. *nē . . . committeret*, not to begin battle.

10. *vīsae essent*: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse. See App. 273; A. 592; B. 323; H. 649, I; H.-B. 536, a.

11. *fieret*: subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

12. *proeliō*, from battle. *multō diē*, late in the day.

13, 14. *et . . . et . . . et*: correlatives. The first should be omitted in translation.

14. *Cōnsidium . . . renūntiāvisse*, that Considius had become panic-stricken and had reported to him something that he had not seen in place of what he had seen. He had actually seen the Roman force under the command of Labienus, but had mistaken their standards and arms for Gallic emblems and equipment.

15. *prō vīsō*: literally for the thing seen.

quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, at the distance at which he had been accustomed (to follow them), that is, five or six miles in their rear; *intervāllō* is an ablative of degree of difference. *cōnsuērat* is a contracted form of *cōnsuēverat*.

16. *mīlia*: accusative of extent.

7. *insigne*, -is, *n.*, mark, signal; decoration.

8. *collis*, -is, *m.*, a height, hill.

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, draw or lead up, withdraw, remove.

10. *prope*, *prep.* with *acc.* and *adv.*;

as *prep.*, near, near to; as *adv.*, near, nearly, about.

12. *dēnique*, *adv.*, at last, finally.

14. *timor*, -ōris, *m.* [timeō], fear, alarm.

16. *inter-vāllum*, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.

*Caesar marches
for Bibracte.
The pursued
become the
pursuers.*

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum
supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportē-
ret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē
maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII
aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāns, iter ab 5
Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs
L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur.
Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē
exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locis occupātis
proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā 10

1. **postrīdiē eius diēi**, *on the next day*; the genitive used with the adverb *postrīdiē* (and *prīdiē*) is not translated.

2. **cum . . . oportēret**, *before the time when it would be necessary to serve out rations* (lit. *measure out grain*) *to the soldiers*. Occasionally, as here, the anticipatory subjunctive is used with *cum*.

3. **Bibracte**: with names of cities, the ablative with a preposition is used to denote the point from which distance is measured.

4. **nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII**, *not more than eighteen miles*.

5. **rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum** (*esse*), *that he ought to make provision for* (lit. *look out for*) *grain supplies*.

6. **Bibracte**, *to Bibracte*; accusative of Place to Which. The nominative, accusative, and ablative forms of this word are the same.

8. **seu quod**, *either for the reason that*.

9. **exīstimārent, cōnfīderent**: for these subjunctives, see App. 244, 273; A. 592, 3; B. 286, a; H. 649, I; H.-B. 535, 2, a.

eō magis, quod, *and the more so because*.

10. **commīsissent**: subjunctive by attraction. The clause *quod . . . commīsissent* is not parallel in construction to *quod . . . exīstimārent* and *quod . . . cōnfīderent*. **sive eō, quod**, *or for the reason that*.

rē frūmentāriā: ablative of separation.

1. **postrīdiē**, *adv.* [*locative posteri+diē*], *next day*; **postrīdiē eius diēi**, *the next or following day*.

bīduum, -ī, n. [*bis+diēs*], *period of two days, two days*.

2. **super-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, intr.**, *be left, survive*.

3. **Bibracte, -is, n.**, *a city of the Haedui*. Map IV, E-F., 3.

4. **XVIII = duo-dē-vigintī, indecl.**

num. adj., *eighteen*.

5. **prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum**, *tr. and intr.* [*prō+speciō, spy*], *look forward; observe; look out for*.

6. **fugitīvus, -a, -um, adj.** [*fugiō*], *fleeing, fugitive; as subst., m., runaway slave*.

7. **decuriō, -ōnis, m.** [*decem*], *decursion, a cavalry officer*.

9. **prīdiē, adv.**, *on the day before*.

interclūdī posse cōfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac laccessere coepērunt.

*Preparations
for the battle.*

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterā-
5 nārū; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocāvit, ita utī suprā sē tōtum montem hominibus complēret; impedīmenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab hīs, quī in
superiōre aciē cōstiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omni-
10 bus suis carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt;

11. posse: supply *Rōmānōs* as subject.

12. ā novissimō agmine, *in the rear*.

1. id animum advertit: the phrase *animum advertere*, meaning *to observe*, takes an object (here *id*) like a simple verb form.

2. collem: see Plan, p. 182.

3. quī sustinēret: a relative clause of purpose.

in colle mediō, *half way up the hillside*.

4. triplicem aciem: this order, which was the order commonly employed by Caesar in battle formation, was an arrangement of three lines of maniples (groups roughly corresponding to companies in a regiment), so that the second and third lines could relieve the first. The ranks in a maniple were about eight or ten men deep. See *aciēs*, Vocabulary.

8. cōferri, mūniri: these infinitives, with their subjects, depend upon *iussit*. eum: refers to *locum*.

11. interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [inter+claudō], cut off, shut off, block.

cōfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *intr.* [com-+fīdō], be confident, believe, trust.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, change.

1. ad-vertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, *tr.*, turn or direct toward; animum advertere, observe, notice.

4. triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, triple.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus], old, veteran.

8. sarcina, -ae, *f.*, baggage, pack, load.

9. mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *tr.* [moenia], fortify, defend.

10. impedīmentum, -ī, *n.* [impediō], a hindrance; *pl.*, baggage of an army.

ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

The battle.

*The Helvetians
are forced
to retire.*

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere

11. cōfertissimā aciē, *in a very compact array.*

equitātū, phalange: ablatives absolute.

12. sub . . . successērunt, *advanced close to our first line; sub and the compound successērunt are used because the Helvetians were coming up from the lower level. The verb means literally come up under.*

1. suō: supply equō remōtō; an ablative absolute, parallel to remōtis equīs. omnium: modifies equīs. Only the officers are meant.

3. tolleret, *take away; purpose.*

6. Gallis . . . impedimentō, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the battle (lit. for battle); impedimentō is dative of purpose.*

7. quod, *that; the clause quod . . . poterant is the subject of erat.*

8. conligātis: as the Gauls advanced in close array with overlapping shields, sometimes two shields would be pierced by a single javelin.

sē: omit in translation. The Latin verb *inflexere* requires an object, but the English verb which is most naturally used as its equivalent in translation is intransitive. ēvellere: depends on poterant.

11. cōfertus, -a, -um, *adj. [pf. part. of cōferciō, press close], crowded, closely crowded.*

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr. [re-+iaciō], throw back, drive back.*

phalanx, -ngis, *f., phalanx.*

3. cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. [com-+hortor], encourage, address.*

4. pilum, -ī, *n., javelin.*

5. perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr. [per+frangō], break through.*

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr. [dis-+iaciō], rout, scatter.*

dē-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr., draw off, draw; unsheathe.*

7. scūtum, -ī, *n., shield.*

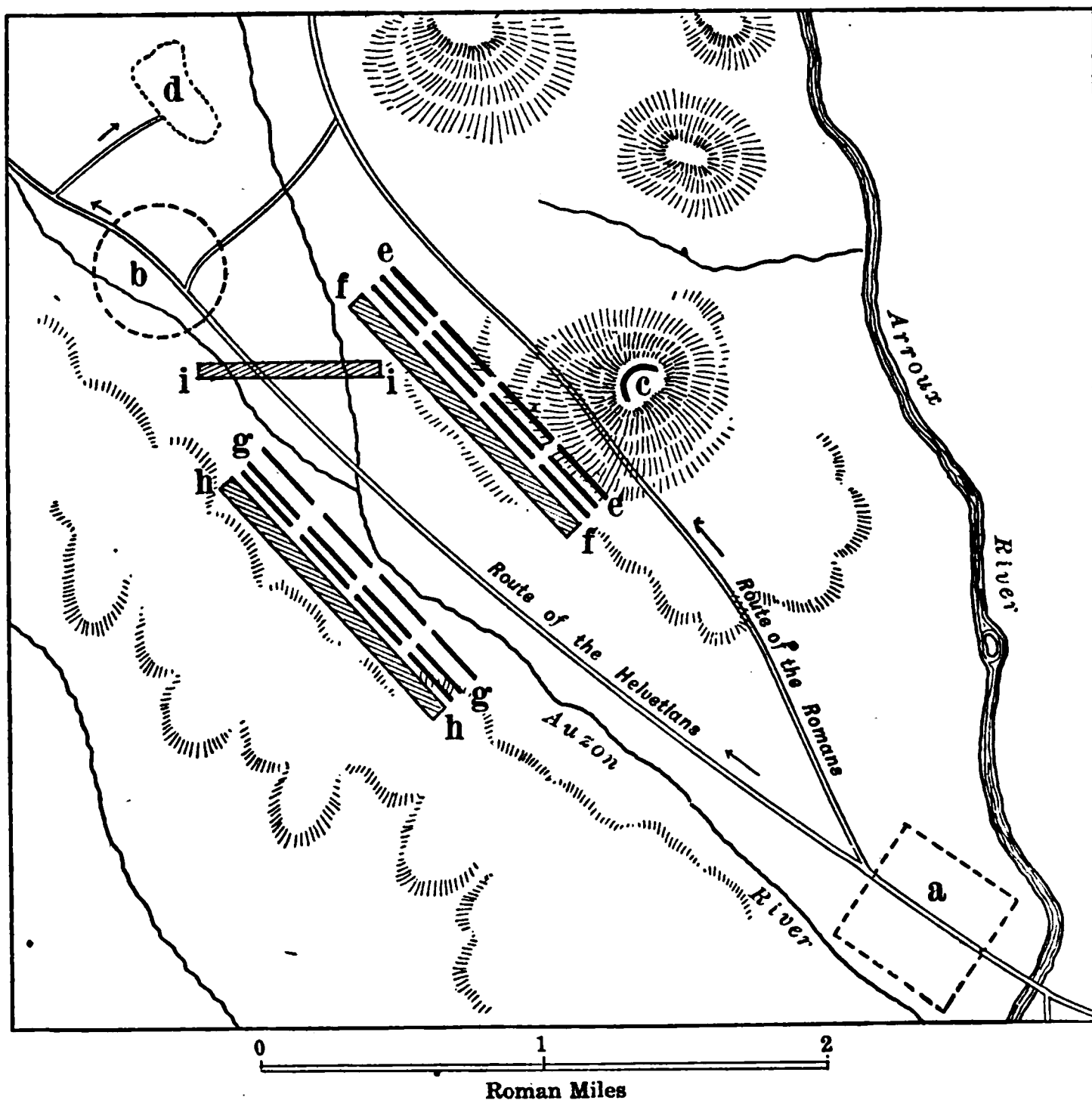
ictus, -ūs, *m. [icō], a stroke, blow.*

trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr., pierce through, transfix.*

8. conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. [com-+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together.*

in-flectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr., bend down, bend.*

ē-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck or pull out.*



THE BATTLE WITH THE HELVETIANS

- a. Camp of the Romans on the morning of the battle.
- b. Camp of the Helvetians on the morning of the battle.
- c. Roman intrenchments and baggage.
- d. Helvetian baggage.
- ee. Roman lines in first battle.
- ff. Helvetian lines in first battle.
- gg. Roman lines in second battle.
- hh. Helvetian lines in second battle.
- ii. Boii and Tulingi.

neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit- 10
tere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, 15
ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī signa

9. *satis commodē, effectively.*

10. *multī*: subject of *praeoptārent*, made emphatic by position. We should expect *ut* to precede. The clause expresses result.

iactātō brachiō, after jerking their arms about, in trying to pull their shields loose from the shields of their fellow soldiers to which they had been fastened by the Roman javelins. *manū ēmittere*, to let go of.

11. *nūdō corpore*, with their bodies unprotected.

12. *referre*: depends on *coepērunt*.

13. *captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs*, when they had reached the mountain and when our men were advancing; ablatives absolute.

15. *agmen claudēbant*: see Vocabulary.

16. *ex itinere*: that is, they began the attack without halting to rearrange their forces. For position of the two armies at this stage of the battle, see Plan.

ab latere apertō, on the unprotected side; this was the right, since the shield was carried on the left arm and protected the left side of the body.

adgressī, having attacked.

circumvenīre: depends upon *coepērunt*, supplied from *coepērunt* of line 18.

18. *signa bipertitō intulērunt*, advanced in two divisions.

9. *commodē*, *adv.* [commodus], conveniently, easily; efficiently, well.

10. *bracchium*, -ī, *n.*, forearm, arm. *prae-optō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, choose, prefer.

11. *tandem*, *adv.*, at length, finally. *dēfessus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *dēfetīscor*, grow tired], exhausted, worn out.

12. *sub-sum*, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be under; be near or close at hand.

13. *eō*, *adv.* [is], to that place, there.

15. *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausum*, *tr.*, shut, close; shut in.

16. *latus*, -eris, *n.*, side, flank. *apertus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *aperiō*], uncovered, exposed, open.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, surround, outflank.

17. *cōspicor*, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, get sight of, see.

18. *red-integrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.

bipertitō intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac
20 submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a stubborn resistance the Helvetians are routed. Caesar pursues them.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pug-
nātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum im-
petūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in mon-
tem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs
5 sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad
vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.
Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,
propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre
in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs
10 raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulne-

19. victīs ac submōtīs, *the defeated and dislodged (portion of the enemy);* dative with *resisteret*. These were the Helvetians who had at first given way.

20. venientēs, *those who were coming up*; the Tulingi and Boii.

1. ancipitī proeliō: ablative of manner. The battle was "double" in that there were two fronts, one the line on which the Tulingi and Boii were attacking, the other that on which the Helvetians were rallying, after their retreat.

pugnātum est, *they fought*; the Latin verb is impersonal.

3. alterī . . . alterī, *the one party . . . the other party*; the first *alterī* refers to the Helvetians, the second to the Tulingi and Boii.

5. proeliō: ablative of time. cum, *although*.

6. pugnātum sit: see note on *pugnātum est*, line 1 of this chapter.

āversum hostem, *a fleeing enemy*.

7. ad multam noctem, *till late in the night*.

ad impedimenta, *about the baggage*.

8. prō vāllō, *as a rampart*.

19. bipertitō, *adv.* [bis+partior], in two parts or divisions, in two ways.

20. sub-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, dislodge, drive back.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *intr.*, resist, withstand, oppose.

1. anceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [an=ambi+caput], with two sides or fronts, double.

ācriter, *adv.* [ācer], sharply, fiercely, vigorously; *comp.*, ācrius, *sup.*, ācerrimē.

5. hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.

6. vesper, -erī (-eris), *m.*, evening; sub vesperum, toward evening.

8. vāllum, -ī, *n.* [vāllus], earthworks, intrenchments, rampart.

10. raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon.

matarā, -ae, *f.*, javelin, pike.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, a light javelin or dart, used by the Gauls.

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [sub+iaciō], hurl under; cast, throw.

rābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et 15 propter sepultūram occisorum nostri eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

*The Helvetians
surrender. Six
thousand
attempt to
escape.*

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīserunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent

20

11. diū cum: translate *diū* within the *cum* clause.

impedimentis castrisque: ablative with *potior*.

12. ē filiis: translate like a genitive of the whole.

14. eā tōtā nocte, *through that entire night*; this idea of time is usually expressed by the accusative.

15. cum . . . potuissent: a *cum* causal clause.

17. nē . . . iuvārent: a substantive clause, giving the substance of Caesar's messages.

18. iūvissent, *should help*; in the direct discourse the tense would be future perfect.

sē . . . habitūrum, *he would regard them as deserving the same treatment as the Helvetians*.

2. quī cum, *when they*.

3. convēnissent: this verb is usually intransitive, but it is here used with transitive meaning. ad pedēs, *at his feet*.

14. Lingonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of the Vosges Mountains. Map IV, F, 2.

16. sepultūra, -ae, *f.* [sepeliō], burial.

17. littera, -ae, *f.*, a letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, writing, letter, dispatch.

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger; message, news.

18. nē-ve or neu, *conj.*, and not, nor, and not to, and that . . . not.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, *tr.*, aid, help.

19. trīduum, -ī, *n.* [trēs+diēs], period of three days, three days.

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr. and intr.*, send between; interrupt; let pass, allow to elapse.

1. inopia, -ae, *f.* [inops], want, scarcity, lack; poverty.

3. prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [prō+iaciō], throw away, abandon; throw down, cast.

suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō
 5 locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset,
 pārūrunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma,
 servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur
 et cōferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī, quī Verbi-
 genus appellātur, sive timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppli-
 10 ciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multi-
 tudine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō
 ignōrārī posse existimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum
 ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs,
 utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,

4. *flentēs*, with tears. What form of the verb is *flentēs*?

eōs: subject of *exspectāre*.

7. *perfūgissent*: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

conquīruntur: for the tense, see App. 234, a; A. 556; B. 293, 1; H. 604, 1; H.-B. 559.

9. *timōre . . . adficerentur*, panic-stricken for fear that they would be subjected to punishment when their arms had been given up.

12. *existimārent*: Caesar is not giving this reason on his own authority, but is implying that it was the thought of the Helvetians. See note on ch. 16, line 17. *primā nocte*, at nightfall.

1. *quod*, this; object of *rescit*.

quōrum, etc.: order for translation, *imperāvit hīs per finēs quōrum* (or *per quōrum finēs*) *ierant*.

2. *utī conquīrerent et redūcerent*: subjunctive clause, object of *imperāvit*. Translate by English infinitives.

sibi: a dative of reference; it may be omitted in translation.

vellent: implied indirect discourse.

4. *suppliciter*, *adv.* [supplex], as a suppliant; humbly.

7. *per-fugiō*, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee for refuge, desert.

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [com-+quaerō], search out, collect.

8. *Verbigenus*, -ī, *m.*, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians.

11. *dēditīcius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō], that has surrendered, surren-

dered; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, prisoners of war, captives.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum *tr.* [freq. of *occulō*, hide], hide, conceal.

12. *ignōrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant of or unacquainted with.

1. *re-sciscō*, -ere, -scivī, -scītum, *tr.* [sciscō, approve], find out, learn.

2. *pūrgō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pūrus+agō], excuse, exonerate.

Punishment of the fugitives. The rest of the Helvetians are sent back to their own country.

imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, La- 5 tobrīgōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 10 eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs petentibus

3. reductōs . . . habuit, *when they had been brought back, he treated them as enemies*, that is he either put them to death or sold them as slaves. Probably the latter fate would be the lot of the greater number.

4. reliquōs omnēs in dēditionem accēpit, *he granted terms of surrender to all the rest*. A literal translation of the phrase *in dēditionem accipere* makes impossible English.

7. omnibus frūgibus āmissis: render by a clause with *since*, and translate after *tolerārent*. domī: case?

quō famem tolerārent, *with which to keep off starvation* (lit. *with which they could keep off starvation*); a descriptive clause expressing possibility.

8. ut iīs cōpiam facerent, *to furnish them a supply*.

10. eā maximē ratiōne, *for this reason especially*; ratiōne is explained by *quod . . . nōluit*.

11. nē . . . trānsīrent: a negative clause of purpose.

13. in Helvētiōrum finēs: the ability of the Helvetians to hold their own against the Germans in war had helped to keep the latter in check. Caesar had reason to fear that with this barrier removed the Germans would establish themselves in the fertile Swiss valleys and would in time come to be the dominant power in Gaul.

14. Galliae: dative.

Boiōs: object of *conlocārent*.

6. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence, from which.

7. frūx, frūgis, *f.* (*generally pl.*), fruit, produce; grain, crops.

8. tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, bear up under, endure; sustain.

10. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ratus], reckoning; plan, method, way; reason, ground.

11. vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied, lie waste.

12. bonitās, -ātis, *f.* [bonus], goodness, fertility.

- 15 Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque postea in parem iūris libertātisque condiōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

*The number
of the Helve-
tians and
their allies.*

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item
5 sēparātim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitem Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii.
10 Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

15. Haeduīs: either an ablative absolute or a dative with *concessit*. virtūte: ablative of description. erant: the subject refers to *Boiōs*.

16. conlocārent: subjunctive in a substantive clause which may be regarded as the object either of *concessit* or of *petentibus*. It is really felt with both. quibus, *them*; referring to the Boii.

quōsque . . . recēpērunt, *and placed them on an equality of privileges and freedom with themselves* (lit. *the same condition of privilege and freedom as they were*).

2. litterīs Graecīs cōfectae, *made out in Greek characters*; the Gauls had become acquainted with the Greek alphabet through traders. The city of Marseilles was originally a Greek settlement, and traders from there reached many parts of Gaul. relātae: *sunt* is understood.

3. ratiō, *an account*. quī: an interrogative adjective, with *numerus*.

4. exisset: subjunctive in an indirect question.

possent: subjunctive in a descriptive relative clause.

6. capitem: omit in translation; literally *heads*, as we speak of so many head of cattle.

8. possent: the same construction as *possent* in line 4.

10. cēnsū habitō, *when an enumeration was made*.

17. pār, *paris*, *adj.*, equal, similar.

2. Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

3. nōminātim, *adv.* [nōminō], by name.

5. quot, *indecl. adj.; rel.*, as many as, as; *interrog.*, how many?

puer, -i, *m.*, boy, child; ā pueris, from childhood.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

6. summa, -ae, *f.* [summus], the top; sum total, aggregate; general management.

30-54. Ambassadors now came from many Gallic states to congratulate the victor and look after their own interests. Caesar, they thought, was the man to help them. With Gallic emotion they disclosed their troubles. Two factions, they said, had rent the peace of Gaul for many years, one headed by the Haedui, the other by the Arverni. The latter and their allies, the Sequani, in an evil hour had called upon the Germans for aid. The Germans had come, had put down the Haedui, and finding the Gallic lands to their liking, had continued to come in ever-increasing numbers. Now the tyranny of Ariovistus, their king, had grown unbearable. Would Caesar aid the Gauls? Caesar would; he asked no better opportunity.

An embassy was at once sent to the German king to ask a conference. Ariovistus replied haughtily; Caesar sent an ultimatum; Ariovistus must bring no more Germans into Gaul; he must give back his hostages and leave the Haedui unmolested. Ariovistus replied more haughtily; he had conquered the Gauls, and would act as he pleased. If the Romans wanted to fight, said he, let them try it; they would soon learn the prowess of the valorous Germans. Complaints kept coming in from the harassed Gauls; Caesar saw that war was inevitable. Preventing a mutiny which threatened to arise among his men, on account of their fear of the German warriors, he marched toward the army of Ariovistus, which was advancing southward from the Rhine. The German king now demanded a conference in his turn. Caesar acceded, but negotiations were abruptly broken off by the seizure and detention of two Roman envoys. Nothing was left but a resort to arms.

After some maneuvering, a bloody conflict took place, in which the Germans were totally routed. Caesar's envoys were rescued; Ariovistus, however, escaped across the Rhine. The result was decisive. The hordes of the Suebi, hurrying to enter Gaul, turned back disheartened from the river. Another campaign was finished; a second blow had been struck for Rome. Caesar led his army into winter quarters, and himself went south to Cisalpine Gaul, to hold the proconsular courts for the winter.

BOOK II

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs adferēbantur litterisque
The Belgae form a "conspiracy" against the Romans. item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam
 5 tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā
 populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter
 sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verēren-
 tur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;

1. *cum* esset: a descriptive clause of situation. Occasionally, as here, *cum* introducing a clause of this kind is best translated *while*.

Galliā: for the different senses in which this word is used, see Vocabulary.

ita utī: in place of the more usual *ut*. Notice that the indicative follows.

suprā: at the close of Book I. The duties of the proconsul were judicial as well as military, and Caesar usually devoted his winters to holding the proconsular courts.

dēmōnstrāvimus: Caesar speaks of himself as general in the third person; when he refers to himself as the author of the Commentaries he uses the first person, usually employing the plural in the latter case.

2. litterisque . . . fiēbat, and he was informed from time to time by letters from Labienus; the imperfect is used to denote repeated action.

3. quam: the antecedent is Belgās, but the pronoun is attracted into the gender and number of the pred. noun *partem*;—*who, as we had said, constitute the third part of Gaul*.

5. coniūrāre . . . dare: indirect discourse after *certior fiēbat*. Caesar uses the words *cōspīrāre* and *coniūrāre*, for every attempt of the Gauls to defend their freedom against the Romans.

inter sē dare, were giving to one another, were exchanging; *inter* is used with reflexive pronouns to express the reciprocal idea, "each other," "one another."

6. hās esse causās: continuation of indirect discourse. Two reasons are given, (1) *primum quod verērentur nē . . . addūcerētur* and (2) *deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs . . . sollicitārentur*. These *nōn nūllī* consist of three classes, (1) *partim quī*, l. 8, (2) *partim quī*, l. 11, and (3) *nōn nūllīs*, l. 12.

verērentur: in a subordinate cl. in ind. discourse; so *sollicitārentur*, l. 8.

7. nē, that. pācātā: see on Bk. I, ch. 6, 8. Galliā: *i.e.*, Celtic Gaul. ad eōs: *i.e.*, Belgās; *ad sē* would be more regular.

2. crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, repeated, numerous, frequent.
 rŭmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, rumor.

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum, *tr.*, bring to, carry to, present; cause.

deinde, quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē 10 ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur; quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant. 15

*Caesar
marches
against them.*

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā

8. partim (sc. ab eīs) quī . . . partim quī, *some of whom* (lit. *partly by those who*) . . . *others of whom*. Note the change to the indicative. Caesar passes from a statement of rumors to the statement of facts within his own knowledge.

9. ut . . . ita, *as before . . . so now*.

10. hiemāre . . . molestē ferēbant, *resented it that . . . should winter*; the infinitive is in indirect discourse with *molestē ferēbant*.

11. mōbilitāte . . . levitāte: ablatives of cause.

novīs imperiīs, *a new form of government*; for case see note on Bk. I, ch. 9, 8.

12. ab nōn nūllis: supply *sollicitābantur*. There were two political parties in Gaul, one of which, the "popular" or Romanizing party, was opposed to the concentration of power in the hands of a few of the stronger chiefs, and was inclined to look to Rome for help in the struggle; the other, the so-called "patriotic" party, was bitterly hostile to the presence of the foreigners, and was strong in its allegiance to various chiefs or heads of clans. The Haedui were the leaders of the popular side, and the Arverni and the Sequani of the patriotic party.

13. ad . . . hominēs, *for hiring mercenaries*.

14. rēgna: there was no hereditary monarchy in Gaul, but the stronger chiefs often assumed unlimited powers.

imperiō nostrō, *under our sovereignty*; abl. of attendant circumstance.

1. duās: the XIIIth and XIVth.

2. inītā aestāte: abl. abs., *at the beginning of summer*.

9. versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of vertō], turn; *pass. as deponent*, live, dwell, remain, be, be occupied, be busy.

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī, —, *intr.* [veterāscō, grow old], grow old, become established, gain a foothold.

molestē, *adv.* [molestus], with trouble or difficulty; molestē

ferre, be annoyed or vexed (at).

11. mōbilitās, -ātis, *f.* [mōbilis], movableness, activity; changeableness.

levitās, -ātis, *f.* [levis], lightness; restlessness, fickleness.

2. in-eō, -īre, -iī and -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, go into, enter upon; begin; *w.* cōsilium, form.

aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum
mīsīt. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad
5 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs,
quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōs-
cant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter
omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum
condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit, quīn ad
10 eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet
diēbusque circiter xv ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. in ulteriōrem Galliam: depends on *dēdūceret*.

quī dēdūceret: a relative clause of purpose, to be translated after the main clause.

4. cum primum . . . inciperet, as soon as, etc. The usual construction with *cum primum* is the indicative, but the clause is here made a descriptive clause of situation.

pābuli: grass and other food for the animals of the baggage train and for the cavalry horses.

ad exercitum vēnit: at Vesontio (Map IV, F, 3). Caesar now had eight legions, which with his auxiliaries made a force of about 60,000 men.

5. dat negōtium, he employs. What is it literally?

6. utī . . . cognōscant . . . certiōrem faciant, to find out . . . to inform; substantive clauses in apposition with *negōtium*.

7. certiōrem: for constr. see App. 126; A. 393, note; B. 177, 2; H. 410; H.-B. 392. The corresponding passive constr. is given in ch. 1, 3.

cōstanter: i.e., their accounts all agreed.

8. manūs: small bodies of troops, which made up the *exercitus*.

9. (sibi) dubitandum nōn . . . quīn . . . proficīscerētur, that he ought not to hesitate to set out (lit. but that he should set out). With *dubitō* meaning "hesitate" Caesar uses the complementary infinitive, except when the verb, as in this instance, is in the passive periphrastic form (future passive participle with *esse*).

dubitandum (esse): impersonal.

11. ad finēs: about 145 miles northwest of Vesontio.

3. Pedius, -ī, m., a Roman name, esp. Quintus Pedius, Caesar's grand-nephew and legate.

4. incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [in+capiō], begin.

5. negōtium, -ī, n. [nec+ōtium], business, undertaking; negōtium

dare, to assign a task.

7. cōstanter, adv. [cōstāns, firm], uniformly, consistently.

9. vērō, adv. [vērus], postpositive, in truth, indeed; however, but, even.

10. prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, tr., see beforehand, foresee, provide.

*The Remi
surrender to
Caesar.*

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium
opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex
Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs
cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque
potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs 5
Belgīs cōsensisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,
parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs
recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs
Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,

1. eō: depends on *vēnisset*.

omnium opīniōne, *than any one anticipated* (lit. *than the expectation of all*);
for case see App. 139; A. 406; B. 217; H. 471; H.-B. 416.

2. Rēmī: after his defeat of Ariovistus, Caesar gave the Remi a large
part of the territory of the Sequani, and as a result of his support their
power had increased until they were second only to the Haedui.

Galliae (sc. *Cellicae*): dative, depending on *proximī*.

ex Belgīs: translate like a genitive of the whole; see on Bk. I, ch. 15, 7.

4. sē suaque omnia, *themselves and all their possessions*; object of *per-
mittere*. The subject *sē* is omitted to avoid a repetition of the word.

in fidem atque potestātem . . . permittere, *put . . . under the protec-
tion and sovereignty*.

5. neque sē, etc., *and that they had not*, etc.

7. parātōs may govern the infinitive, as here, or *ad* with the gerund or
gerundive construction.

imperāta facere, *to obey his orders* (lit. *to do the things commanded*).

oppidīs: the ablative denotes both place and means.

8. recipere: supply *eōs*, i.e., *Rōmānōs*.

frūmentō: *frūmentum* in the plural is regularly used of grain in the field,
“crops”; in the singular it refers to grain as food, “harvested grain.”

cēteris . . . rēbus, *with everything else*.

9. cis: i.e., the Gallic side.

1. imprōvisus, -a, -um, *adj.* [im-+
prōvisus, foreseen], unforeseen;
dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly, with-
out warning.

2. opīniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opīnor, think],
way of thinking, belief, opinion;
expectation.

Rēmī, -ī, *m.*, one of the Remi; *pl.*,
the Remi, a Belgic tribe. *Map*
IV, E-F, 2.

3. Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi.

Andebrogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the
Remi.

5. per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
tr., let go, permit, intrust.

6. cōsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsū,
intr. [com-+sentiō], agree, com-
bine, conspire.

7. imperātum, -ī, *n.* [pf. part. of im-
perō], an order, command.

9. cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.

- 10 sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.

*The origin of
the Belgae
and their
forces.*

4. Cum ab iīs quaereret quae civitatēs quantaque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse

10. sēsē: omit in translation. While the Latin verb *coniungere* requires an object, the English verb, which is here most naturally used to translate it, does not.

tantum esse furōrem, *such was the insane folly*; the Remi wish to assure Caesar that they regard the Belgian league as facing certain defeat and disaster, and so have tried to prevent their friends from joining it.

11. nē . . . quidem: the emphatic word stands between these two adverbs. Suessiōnēs: object of dēterrere.

12. iūre . . . lēgibus, *rights . . . laws*. imperium: in war.

13. magistrātum: in peace.

cum ipsīs: *i.e.*, cum Rēmīs, more emphatic than sēcum.

habeant: supply et quī before ūnum in line 12.

potuerint: the verb of the result clause introduced by ut.

14. quīn . . . cōsentīrent, *from conspiring*; for mood see App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 295, 3; H. 596, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

1. iīs: the envoys of the Remi.

quae . . . possent, *what states were in arms and how large they were and what was their military strength*; quantaessent refers to the extent of territory occupied, while quid possent refers more specifically to the number of soldiers available for war.

2. sic reperiēbat, *he obtained the following information*. What literally? The imperfect, indicating repeated action, is used because he gained his information at various times; compare fīēbat, ch. 1, 3. This word, taken up again by Rēmī dīcēbant, l. 10, governs the ind. dis. to the end of the chapter.

3. Germānīs: for case see App. 135; A. 403, a, n. 1; B. 215, 2; H. 469, 1; H.-B. 413, b; ab is sometimes used with this abl. to denote remote origin.

Rhēnum: depends on trāns in trāductōs.

10. furor, -ōris, *m.* [furō], rage, frenzy, madness.

11. Suessiōnēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons. Map IV, E, 2.

3. plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj.*

[plērus, very many], very many, the greater part or most of.

4. antīquitus, *adv.* [antīquus], from early times, long ago.

fertilitās, -ātis, *f.* [fertilis], fertility, productiveness.

Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse sōlōsque esse, quī 5
 patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs
 Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī,
 utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque
 spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē
 habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propinquitā- 10
 tibus adfīnitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multi-
 tūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus

5. **Gallōs**: object of *expulisse*, which has the same subject as the other infinitives of the passage through *esse*.

6. **memoriā**, in the time.

Galliā vexātā: the Cimbri and the Teutons, German tribes from the shores of the Baltic, moving southward through Europe, had overrun Celtic Gaul, and were driven out only after a most determined resistance and great suffering on the part of the Gallic towns. They defeated several Roman armies, and were a constant menace to the safety of Rome itself till they were at last overthrown by Marius in the decisive battles of Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and Vercellae (101).

7. **ingredi prohibuerint**, prevented from entering. The subjunctive with *quōminus*, which might have been expected with a verb of hindering, is never used by Caesar with *prohibere*; for the mood of *prohibuerint*, see on *possent*, Bk. I, ch. 6, 2.

quā ex rē, and so (lit. from which circumstance). A monosyllabic preposition is often thus placed between an adj. or pronoun and its substantive.

fieri utī, the result was that; the subject of *fieri* is *utī sūmerent*.

8. **memoriā**: abl. of cause; contrast the meaning of this word in l. 6.

9. **spīritūs . . . sūmerent**, assumed great haughtiness; compare English "put on airs." The pres. subj. would stand in direct discourse.

omnia . . . habēre explōrāta, they had complete information; see on Bk. I, ch. 15, 4.

10. **propinquitātibus . . . coniūctī**, closely connected by ties of blood and by intermarriage.

11. **quisque**: supply *lēgātus*, i.e., each delegate to the council.

12. **pollicitus sit**: an indirect question.

6. **Teutonī, -ōrum (-um)**, *m.*, the Teutons, a people from northern Germany.

9. **spīritus, -ūs, m.** [*spīrō*], breath, life; airs, pride.

10. **explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, investigate, examine, find out.

propinquitās, -ātis, f. [*propinquus*], nearness, proximity; relationship, kinship.

sit, cognoverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere
 15 armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia LX, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum
 20 regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nervīōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv mīlia

13. **plūrimum . . . valēre** (= *plūrimum posse*), *were the strongest*. For the accusative see App. 128; A. 390, c; B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; H.-B. 387, III.

virtūte . . . auctoritāte . . . numerō: ablatives of specification.

15. **armāta mīlia** = *armātōrum mīlia*, so also *ēlēcta* (sc. *mīlia*).

pollicitōs: supply *esse*.

16. **suōs**: refers to the Remi.

18. **Dīviciācum**: not to be confused with the Haeduan of the same name who was mentioned in Bk. I.

19. **cum . . . tum**, *not only . . . but also*.

20. **Britanniae**: probably only that part of the island nearest to Gaul. This is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman writer.

22. **habēre**: supply *Suessiōnēs*.

24. **maximē ferī**: *ferus* has no comparative or superlative form.

longissimē . . . absint: *i.e.*, from the Province; it explains *ferī*. In Book I the Belgae are described as the bravest people in Gaul because they are farthest from the civilizing influences of the Province. The Nervii were one of the northernmost tribes of the Belgae.

13. **Bellovacī, -ōrum, m.**, a Belgic tribe about modern Beauvais. Map IV, D-E, 2.

16. **postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, ask, demand, ask for.

17. **ferāx, -ācis, adj.** [ferō], fertile.

20. **regiō, -ōnis, f.** [regō], direction, region, country; situation.

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain. Map IV, A-D, 1.

21. **Galba, -ae, m.**, a king of the Suessiones.

prūdentia, -ae, f. [prūdēns], discretion, prudence.

23. **totidem, indecl. adj.**, just as many, the same number.

Nervī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe between the Sambre and Scheldt. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.

24. **ferus, -a, -um, adj.**, fierce, cruel.

Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs 25
vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem,
Atuatucōs xviii mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs,
Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī
ad xl mīlia.

*Caesar
encamps on
the river
Aisne.*

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrā-
tione prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre
prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit.
Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse
Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantō 5

27. Condrūsōs, etc.: subjects of *pollicērī* understood, the construction depending on *arbitrārī* of the next line.

28. quī . . . appellantur: a remark of Caesar, not a part of the report of the Remi; hence the indicative.

arbitrārī: supply sē (= Rēmōs) as subject.

1. liberāliter . . . prōsecūtus, *addressing them with kindly words.*

2. senātum: Caesar uses a Roman term to designate the Gallic council.

3. obsidēs: hostages were usually the chief men of a state or their children. They might be tortured or put to death if their tribe failed to keep its agreements.

4. ad diem, *on the appointed day.*

5. quantō opere . . . intersit, *how greatly it concerned.* The subject of the verb is *manūs* . . . *distinērī.*

25. Atrebās, -ātis, *m.*, an Atrebatian; Atrebātēs, -um, a Belgic tribe. Map IV, E, 1.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe about modern Amiens. Map IV, D-E, 1-2.

Morinī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of modern Picardy. Map IV, E, 1.

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. Map IV, F-G, 1.

26. Caletī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), *m.*, a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

Veliocassēs, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe on the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of modern Picardy. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.

27. Atuatucī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutons. Map IV, F, 1.

XVIII = ūndēvigintī, indecl. num. adj. [ūnus+dē+vigintī], nineteen.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe about modern Condroz. Map IV, F, 1.

Eburōnēs, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Rhine. Map IV, F-G, 1.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. Map IV, G, 1.

28. Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. Map IV, F, 1.

1. liberāliter, adv. [liberālis], graciously; generously.

5. doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *tr.*, teach, inform, show.

opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium
 distinēri nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōflīgendum
 sit. Id fieri posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum
 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datīs
 10 mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās
 in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire vīdit neque iam longē
 abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit,
 flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exer-
 citum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs
 15 et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum
 quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs
 reliquīsque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum supportārī

6. rei publicae: *i.e.*, the Roman state; for case see App. 110; A. 355, *a*;
 B. 210, 211; H. 449; H.-B. 345.

communis: *i.e.*, of the Romans and Haedui.

7. nē cōflīgendum sit, *that they* (the Romans and their allies) *might not*
be compelled to fight.

9. intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint: future perfects in direct discourse.

11. neque . . . cognōvit, *and after he had learned from the scouts whom he*
had sent and from the Remi that they (the forces of the Belgians) *were now*
not far distant.

13. flūmen . . . exercitum: see note on Bk. I, ch. 12, 6. The corre-
 sponding passive construction is given in ch. 4, 3, 4.

in extrēmīs . . . finibus, *in the most remote part of the territory, i.e., most*
remote from the Province.

14. ibi: near the modern Berry-au-Bac, on the north side of the Aisne.
 Traces of the work were discovered by the engineers of Napoleon III. in
 1862. See Plan. quae rēs, *this measure.*

15. et . . . et: correlatives; omit the first *et* in translation.

post . . . reddēbat, *made his rear* (lit. [*those places*] *which were behind*
him) *safe from the enemy.*

16. commeātūs . . . ut . . . possent efficiēbat: a simpler order would
 be *efficiēbat ut commeātūs . . . possent*; for mood of *possent* see App. 229, *a*;
 A. 568; B. 297; H. 571, 3; H.-B. 521, 3.

7. distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
tr. [dis-+teneō], hold apart, keep
 apart.

9. intrō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,
tr. [intrō, within], lead into;
 introduce.

13. Axona, -ae, *m.*, a river of Belgic

Gaul, the Aisne. Map IV, E-F, 2.

16. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō,
 go and come], communication;
 supplies, provisions.

17. supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
 [sub+portō], bring up, convey to,
 furnish.

possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum XII 20 vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

Bibrax, being attacked by the Belgae, appeals to Caesar for aid.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine 5 hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci coeptī

19. in alterā parte, *on the other side, i.e., the south.* By thus guarding both ends of the bridge, Caesar was sure of a safe passage for supplies, and a means of escape in case of defeat.

20. pedum XII: to be taken with *vāllō*; a descriptive genitive expressing measure.

21. duodēvigintī pedum: *i.e., in width, measured at the top, the most important dimension.*

1. nōmine: ablative of respect. We should say *a town called Bibrax.*

2. ex itinere, (*immediately*) *from the march, i.e., without stopping to make the usual preparations for an assault.*

3. aegrē: emphatic, *only with difficulty.*

4. sustentātum est: translate by the personal construction

eadem . . . haec: (is) the same as (that) of the Belgae and is as follows; atque is used with words of likeness and unlikeness with the meaning of "as" or "than."

5. circumiectā multitūdine, etc.: translate by a coördinate clause, *when a great number of men have been stationed round the whole of the fortifications and, etc.*

6. coeptī sunt: see App. 86, a; A. 205, a; B. 133, 1; H. 299, 1; H.-B. 199, 2.

18. efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex+faciō], make out; make, accomplish, finish; bring about render.

19. Sabīnus, -ī, *m., cognomen of the legate Quintus Titurius*

20. cohors, -rtis, *f., cohort, the tenth part of a legion.*

2. Bibrax, -ctis, *f., a town of the Remi. Map IV, E, 2.*

4. sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*

and intr. [freq. of sustineō], sustain, withstand; hold out.

5. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō], a storming, besieging, attack.

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [circum+iaciō], hurl around, place around.

6. moenia, -ium, *n., city walls, walls.*

lapis, -idis, *m., stone.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, *tr., throw, hurl.*

sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō
 10 cōsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

*Caesar compels
 the Belgae to
 raise the siege.*

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas

7. dēfēnsōribus: ablative of separation.

testūdine factā, *making a testudo*; for illud. see Vocabulary.

8. tum, *on this occasion*. The description of a siege above given is general; Caesar now applies it to the particular siege of Bibrax.

9. cum . . . multitūdō . . . conicerent: a causal clause. The verb is plural by a construction according to sense; see App. 179, a; A. 317, d; B. 254, 4; H. 389; H.-B. 331.

10. cōsistendī . . . nūllī, *it was not possible for any one to stand*; nūllī is a dative of possession. Caesar regularly uses this form for the dative of nēmō.

cōsistendī: genitive of the gerund, depending on potestās.

11. nōbilitāte . . . grātiā: see on Bk. I, ch. 7, 16.

12. oppidō: what is the reason for the case?

lēgātī: predicate appositive,—as envoys.

13. nūntiōs . . . mittit . . . nōn posse, *sends a message (saying) that he can not*.

1. eō: to Bibrax. dē, *immediately after*.

ducibus: predicate appositive,—as guides; so also nūntiī.

2. nūntiī: for construction, see note on lēgātī, ch. 6, 12.

Crētas: the word is here used like an adjective; Numidās is not to be taken with sagittāriōs.

7. nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nūdus], to strip, uncover; deprive of.

testūdō, -inis, *f.* [testa], tortoise; shed; testudo, covered column.

porta, -ae, *f.*, a gate, city gate.

8. sub-ruō, -ere, -uī, -utum, *tr.*, undermine, dig under.

13. subsidium, -ī, *n.* [sub+sedeō], reserve, assistance; reënforcement.

14. sub-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, *tr.*, send up, send to one's assistance.

2. Crētēs, -um, *m.*, Cretans. Map IV, H-I, 6.

4

4

4

0

0

1. *funditor*
2. *levis armaturae milites*
3. *legionarii*
4. *signiferi*

5. *ducinator*
6. *tubicen*
7. *vexillum*
8. *aquila*

ROMAN SOLDIERS

sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī 5 oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs

3. subsidiō oppidānīs: freely, *to help the townspeople*; *subsidiō* is a dative of purpose, and *oppidānīs* is a dative of reference.

4. quōrum adventū, *upon their arrival*; like the English expression, the abl. denotes time and cause. *et . . . et*, *on the one hand . . . on the other*.

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, *along with the hope of (making a successful) defense*.

studium prōpugnandī, *an eagerness to take the offensive*. The forces under Iccius, who had scarcely been able to maintain the defense of the town from within the walls, were so encouraged by the arrival of the reënforcements that they were eager to sally out and attack the besiegers.

5. accessit . . . discessit, *was aroused in . . . abandoned*, contrasted (lit. *came to . . . departed from*). *Rēmīs* depends upon *accessit* and *hostibus* upon *discessit*; *hostibus* is a dative of reference.

potiundī oppidī: only verbs that govern the accusative have the gerundive construction; *potior*, *ūtor*, etc., are only apparent exceptions, because they governed accusatives in early Latin.

7. dēpopulātī . . . incēnsīs, *after ravaging the fields and burning the villages*, etc. Remember that the Latin has no perfect active participle. The perf. participle of a deponent is, however, regularly active in meaning (as here *morātī* and *dēpopulātī*). With other verbs the abl. abs. with the verb in the passive (here *vicīs . . . incēnsīs*), or a clause, must be used.

vicīs: unprotected groups of dwellings.

aedificiūs: isolated dwellings, farmhouses.

quō = *ad quae* (i. e. *vicōs aedificiaque*).

8. cōpiīs: with the ablative of accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is sometimes omitted in military expressions if the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

• **3. sagittārius, -ī, m.** [sagitta], bowman, archer.

funditor, -ōris, m. [funda], slinger.

Baleāris, -e, adj., Balearic, of the Balearic isles. *Map I, C-D, 5*.

oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town; as *subst., m. pl.*, townspeople.

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō], defense.

5. prō-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., sally; fight for.

6. paulisper, adv. [paulum], a short time, a little while.

moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], *tr. and intr.*, delay, wait; retard, hinder.

8. ad-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, tr. and intr., go to, approach, reach; apply to; attack, assail; visit.

contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum VIII in lātitudinem patēbant.

The armies are encamped facing each other. Description of Caesar's defenses.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex

9. **milibus**: abl. of measure of difference, depending on ā, "off," "away," which is used adverbially.

minus: for the construction used with this word, see App. 139, b; A. 407, c; B. 217, 3; H. 471, 4; H.-B. 416, d.

castra posuērunt: see Plan.

11. **milibus**: ablative of comparison.

2. **opiniōnem virtūtis**, *their reputation for valor*; *virtūtis* is an objective genitive.

proeliō, *decisive battle*; ablative of separation.

4. **quid . . . posset . . . perīclitābātur**, *he tested in cavalry battles what the courage of the enemy was and what our men dared to do.; how lit?* Compare *quid in bellō possent*, ch. 4, 2. *virtūte* is an abl. of specification.

5. **ubi . . . intellēxit**: the narrative may be made clearer in English by omitting *ubi* and translating the clause as coördinate with *perīclitābātur*, supplying *and*;—*he tested . . . and he found (intellēxit)*.

6. **locō . . . idōneō**: the ablative absolute is causal, but it is best translated by a main clause, with *quod . . . poterat . . . habēbat . . . redibat* dependent upon it;—*the place in front of the camp was naturally suitable and advantageous for drawing up a line of battle because, etc.*

7. **ex plānitie ēditus**, *rising above the plain, about 80 feet.*

10. **fūmus**, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [signum+faciō], show, indicate.

1. **primō**, *adv.* [primus], at the beginning, at first; first.

2. **eximius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [eximō], superior, remarkable.

3. **super-sedeō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -ses-

sum, *intr.*, refrain or desist from.

5. **perīclitor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [perīculum], try, test.

6. **opportūnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+portus], convenient, opportune.

7. **idōneus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, adapted, fit.

paululum, *adv.* [paululus, very little], a very little, somewhat.

— Romans
A. Roman Camp
B. B. Castella

— Belgae
C. Castellum and Bridge
D. Position of Titurus

BATTLE ON THE AIGNE

plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum loci aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastigātus paulūtim 10 ad plānitiam redībat, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum cccc et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pignantēs suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō, 15

8. *tantum . . . quantum*, over only as much space as.

adversus: adjective, in front, i.e., facing the enemy.

in lātitudinem: from the camp southwestward toward the junction of the Aisne and Miette.

9. *loci*: genitive of the whole with *quantum*, the object of *occupāre*; it is to be translated with *tantum*, however.

ex utrāque parte, on both sides.

10. *lateris dēiectūs*, steep slopes (lit. slopes of the side).

in frontem expresses the same direction that has already been expressed by *in lātitudinem*.

11. *redībat*, came down.

ab utrōque, etc.: the main clause of the Latin sentence begins at this point. Make a separate English sentence.

trānsversam fossam: i.e., at right angles to the ridge; see Plan.

12. *ad . . . fossās*, at the ends of the ditches; see Plan. This was done to protect his flank and rear from attack.

13. *tormenta*: see Vocabulary.

14. *instrūxisset* stands for a fut. pf. in the unattracted form.

quod . . . poterant: parenthetical.

tantum multitūdine: compare *quid . . . virtūte*, line 4.

15. *pignantēs suōs*, his (soldiers) while fighting.

8. *plānitiēs*, -ēī, *f.* [plānus], level ground, a plain.

ēditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *ēdō*], elevated.

10. *dēiectus*, -ūs, *m.* [dēiciō], slope, descent.

frōns, *frontis*, *f.*, the brow, forehead; front.

lēniter, *adv.* [lēnis], gently, gradually, moderately.

fastigātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of

fastigō, make pointed], inclined, sloping.

paulūtim, *adv.* [paulum], little by little, gradually.

11. *trāns-versus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, across, transverse, at right angles.

12. *ob-dūcō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead forward or toward; extend.

13. *tormentum*, -ī, *n.* [torqueō], an engine for hurling missiles; pl., artillery; torment, torture.

duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās vi legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgae attempt to cross the river.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trāseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur, parātī in armīs erant.
- 5 Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trāseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum
- 10 cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent

16. duābus legiōnibus: the XIIIth and XIVth; see ch. 2, 1, 2.

17. sī . . . esset, *if they should be needed anywhere*, lit. *if it should be necessary (for them to be led) anywhere*.

18. legiōnēs . . . cōstituit: see Plan.

19. ēductās: translate in the active,—*led out and*.

1. palūs: the marshy ground along the Mienne.

nostrum: supply *exercitum*.

2. sī, etc., *in case our men should cross or to see if*, etc.

3. sī . . . fieret, *if they should begin to cross*; how literally?

4. ut . . . adgrederentur depends on parātī . . . erant,—*stood ready in order to*, etc. impedītōs: *i.e.*, by the crossing of the swamp.

5. inter, (*in the space*) *between*.

6. secundiōre . . . nostrīs, *and when the cavalry battle had resulted favorably for our men*; ablative absolute suggesting cause; nostrīs is dative.

9. ibi vadīs repertīs: just below the confluence of the two streams.

10. eō cōnsiliō ut, etc., *with the design of storming*, etc.

sī possent . . . sī . . . potuissent, *if possible . . . if not*; how literally? *potuissent* represents a future perfect in the direct form of the thought which Caesar ascribes to the Belgians, while *possent* represents a future.

11. castellum: see on *in alterā parte*, ch. 5, 19.

17. quō, *adv.* [quī]; *interrog.*, whither? where? *rel.*, whither, where; *indef.*, anywhere.

6. neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [ne+

uter], neither; *pl.*, neither side or party.

7. prōtinus, *adv.* [prō+tenus], next, then; at once, immediately.

pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

They are repulsed and determine to return to their homes.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pugnandī 10

13. populārentur . . . prohibērent: in the same constr. as *expugnārent*.

2. levis armātūrae Numidās, the Numidian light infantry; how literally? *armātūrae* is a descriptive genitive.

3. ponte: abl. of route.

4. eō locō: at the fords.

hostēs . . . interfēcērunt: *nostrī* is the subject of the entire period. Translate *impeditōs* and *cōnantēs* as relative clauses, and *adgressī* and *circumventōs* as main verbs.

5. per, over.

7. equitātū: Caesar uses the abl. of this word to denote either means or agency. Which is it here?

9. spem sē fefellisse, *that they were deceived in their hope* (lit. *that their hope had deceived them*); observe carefully the principal parts of *fallō*.

10. neque nostrōs . . . prōgredi = *et nostrōs nōn prōgredi* (*vīdērunt*).

in locum inīquiōrem, *into a less favorable position* than they then occupied, i.e., *in palūdem*. Cf. the beginning of ch. 9.

12. inter-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scis-sum, *tr.*, tear or break down, cut off.

13. ego, meī, *pers. pron.*, I, I myself.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor], use, control; management; service, advantage, practice, skill, experience; occasion, need.

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight, small.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō], armor, equipment.

9. fallō, -ere, fefellī, —, *tr. and intr.*, deceive, disappoint.

10. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus], uneven, steep; unequal, unfair; unfavorable.

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [prō+gradior], go forward, advance, proceed.

causā vidērent, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīre, ut
 15 potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium
 20 ferrent nōn poterat.

11. *ipsōs*: i.e., the enemy. The Gauls, who were accustomed to short predatory expeditions, had not learned the necessity of attending to their supplies; and on this account they were often compelled to abandon their undertakings.

12. *esse*: the subject is *quemque . . . revertī*.

13. *quōrum in finēs*, into whose territory; the antecedent of *quōrum* is *eōs*, line 14.

15. *potius . . . finibus*, in their own territory rather than in foreign territory.

dēcertārent, should fight a decisive battle, or, should fight it out.

16. *cum*, in addition to.

17. *haec quoque ratiō*, this further consideration; the adverb *quoque* emphasizes the word immediately preceding. The fact to which *haec ratiō* refers is contrasted with *reliquīs causīs*.

quod: for translation when introducing a substantive clause, see App. 248; A. 572; B. 299; H. 588, 3; H.-B. 552.

Dīviciācum . . . adpropinquāre: according to the instructions of Caesar, as given in ch. 5, 4-9; *finibus* is dative with *adpropinquāre*, not because of the *ad* in composition, but because the verb expresses the idea of nearness, which when expressed by an adjective requires a dative.

19. *hīs . . . poterat*, these (i.e., the Bellovaci) could not be persuaded to remain longer and refrain from rendering assistance to their fellow-countrymen (lit. it could not be made agreeable to them).

11. *dēficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [dē+faciō], be wanting, fail, be insufficient; revolt; desert.

15. *potius*, *comp. adv.* [potis, able], rather, preferably.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [certō, fight], fight to the

end, fight out, fight, contend.

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus], of or belonging to the home, home; one's own.

18. *ad-propinquō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [propinquō, approach], approach.

The Romans pursue them and inflict heavy losses.

11. Eā rē cōstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per 5 speculātōrēs cognitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. 10

1. **secundā vigiliā**: from sunset to sunrise the Romans reckoned four watches, two before midnight and two after. The length of a watch would of course vary with the time of the year.

2. **ēgressī . . . fēcērunt** = *ēgressī sunt . . . et . . . fēcērunt*.

nūllō . . . imperiō, with no definite order or leadership; ablative absolute denoting manner, explained by the causal cl. *cum . . . properāret*.

3. **sibi quisque**: the Latin frequently groups pronouns together, especially when they are of different kinds.

4. **fēcērunt ut**, etc., *made their departure seem*, etc.; for the use of the *ut* clause see on *commeātūs*, ch. 5, 16.

5. **fugae**: may be either a genitive or a dative.

hāc rē . . . cognitā: translate by a clause with *although*.

6. **speculātōrēs**: see Vocabulary. **veritus**, *fearing*.

discēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.

7. **castrīs**: for case see on *oppidīs*, 3, 7.

9. **novissimum agmen**, the rear, lit. the newest (i.e., the last) part of the line of march. *Extrēmō agmine* of l. 13 refers to the last files of the rear-guard.

morārētur: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

his: why dative?

2. **strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [*strepō*, make noise], a confused noise, noise.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [*tumeō*, swell], uproar, confusion; disturbance.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, a row, rank of soldiers; order, arrangement; rank.

4. **properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*properus*, quick], hasten, hurry.

6. **speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [*speculor*, spy], spy, scout.

7. **perspiciō**, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [*per+speciō*, spy], perceive, see; observe, ascertain; examine, inspect.

10. **Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, cognomen of one of Caesar's legates, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum
 15 nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfecerunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub
 20 occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

11. cum legiōnibus: observe that the preposition is not omitted here, because the modifier is a numeral.

13. fugientium, in their flight.

conciderunt: distinguish carefully between the forms of *concīdō* and of *concidō*.

cum . . . cōsisterent, since those in the extreme rear, whom our men had overtaken, made a stand. The resistance of the scattered bands along the rear line could accomplish little against the Roman legionaries.

14. quōs refers to *agmine* as *hīs*, 1, 9, does to *equitātum* (= *equitēs*).

15. priōrēs (*hostēs*), etc.: this clause, though having the same constr. as the preceding, marks a contrast between the van and the rear guard of the Belgians. Translate, *while those in front*, etc.

16. vidērentur . . . continērentur: for mood see App. 274; A. 593; B. 324; H. 652; H.-B. 539.

17. exaudītō . . . ordinibus, with their ranks thrown into confusion from the shouting which they heard; the first of these ablatives absolute conveys an idea of time and cause, and is subordinate to the second.

in fugā . . . pōnerent, sought safety in flight.

19. quantum . . . spatium, as the length of the day allowed.

20. sequi dēstitērunt, they desisted from the pursuit; *dēsistō* is frequently used with a complementary infinitive.

11. sub-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, tr. and intr., follow on, follow.

14. fortiter, adv. [fortis], bravely.

15. prior, prius, comp. adj., former, first; superior; as *subst., m. pl.*, those in advance.

17. ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., hear, discern.

clāmōr, -ōris, m. [clāmō], an outcry, shouting; clamor, din.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., disturb, throw into confusion.

*The Suessiones,
defiant at first,
soon surrender.*

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē
hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs
Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et
magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex
itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse
audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs
dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītis, vineās
agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit.
Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum
proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs,
aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum,

1. diēi: genitive depending on *postrīdiē*; the phrase = "on that day's next day."

priusquam . . . reciperent, *before . . . should recover*; the subjunctive is anticipatory.

2. in finēs: Caesar had accomplished his design of breaking up the allied forces, and could now subdue the various tribes one at a time.

4. magnō itinere, *by a forced march*, from 25 to 30 miles. An ordinary day's march was from about 15 to 17 miles.

ex itinere: see on *ex itinere*, ch. 6, 2.

5. vacuum . . . esse, *was without defenders*; dēfēnsōribus is an ablative of separation.

6. lātitudinem fossae: the Romans attempted to fill up the ditch and, by employing the *testūdō*, to break down the gates and scale the walls.

paucīs dēfendentibus = an adversative clause, *although there were only a few defenders*.

7. vineās: see Vocabulary.

8. agere, *to move up, to advance*.

quaeque = *et (ea) quae*; see Vocab., *oppugnātiō*, for a description of siege operations. ūsuī erant, *were necessary*; ūsuī is a dative of purpose.

11. aggere iactō, *after an earthwork had been constructed*.

turribus: see Vocabulary.

magnitudine, celeritāte: ablatives of cause, depending on *permōtī*.

4. Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the *Suessiones*, modern Soissons. Map IV, E, 2.

7. vinea, -ae, *f.*, a shed for the defense of a besieging party.

11. agger, -eris, *m.* [ad+gerō], ma-

terials for making a mound or earthwork; mound, rampart, earthwork.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus], greatness, size, extent.

quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

*Caesar marches
against the
Bellovaci, who
offer to
surrender.*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessi-
ōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē
5 suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque
ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum v
abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Cae-
sarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem
ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs
10 contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi

12. quae . . . audierant, *such as Gauls had neither seen nor heard of before.*

14. petentibus Rēmīs: abl. abs., *at the request of the Remi, to whom they were related by ties of blood; see ch. 3, 11.*

ut cōservārentur depends on *petentibus*.

impetrant: used absolutely, as often, — *they obtain their wish.*

1. obsidibus, *as hostages.*

primīs, *the leading men; see on ch. 5, 3.*

3. in dēditionem . . . accipit: see on Bk. I, ch. 28, 4. He took them as a conquered people under his protection.

4. in Bellovacōs, *into the country of the Bellovaci; the name of the people instead of that of their country, as often in Caesar.*

cum . . . contulissent, *when they had gathered in the town of Bratuspantium with all their possessions.*

6. mīlia: accusative of extent.

7. maiōrēs nātū, *the old men; nātū is an ablative of respect.*

8. vōce significāre, *to make known by their words (or cries).*

in . . . fidem . . . venīre, *gave themselves up to his protection and submitted to his authority.*

10. ad oppidum accessisset, *had approached the town; observe the difference between the tense of the two verbs in the cum clause.*

14. cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+servō], save, spare; protect.

5. Bratuspantium, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovaci. Map IV, E, 2.

7. nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor], only in *abl. sing.*, birth, age.

8. tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend, hold out.

pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus

pleads for them.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitatīs Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs 5 indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsilī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmētiā ac 10

11. puerī, children.

passīs: study the principal parts of *pandō* and *patior*; the sense will make it possible to decide from which verb a doubtful participle comes.

mōre: for the ablative see on Bk. I, ch. 4, 2.

1. prō hīs, in behalf of these, i.e., the Bellovaci.

2. eum: Caesar.

3. facit verba, spoke as follows; introducing indirect discourse.

in fidē, etc., had enjoyed the confidence and friendship. They were clients of the Haedui.

4. impulsōs: participle; sc. eōs as subject of *dēfēcisse* and *intulisse*.

ab suis principibus: like Diviciacus the Haeduan (see Bk. I, 17), these leaders were doubtless more concerned over the menace to their personal power than over the national peril. See Caesar's statement in ch. 1, lines 12-15 with reference to this class of "patriots."

5. redāctōs perferre, had been reduced and were enduring.

omnēs, all sorts of.

7. quī: supply as antecedent eōs, the subject of *profūgissee*.

8. cīvitatī: why dative?

9. petere: the subject is *Bellovacōs* and *Haeduōs*.

10. ut . . . ūtātur, to exercise. suā, his well known.

11. *pandō*, -ere, *pandī*, *passum*, *tr.*, spread, stretch out; *passīs manibus*, with outstretched hands.

1. *discessus*, -ūs, *m.* [*discēdō*], departure.

4. *impellō*, -ere, -*pulī*, -*pulsum*, *tr.* [*in+pellō*], drive or urge on, in-

cite, impel, arouse, instigate.

6. *indignitās*, -ātis, *f.* [*indignus*], outrage, disgrace.

9. *pro-fugiō*, -ere, -*fūgī*, -*fugitūrus*, *intr.*, flee, escape.

10. *clēmētia*, -ae, *f.* [*clēmēns*, mild], mercy, clemency.

mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

Caesar
receives their
surrender
and that of
the Ambiani.
The customs
of the Nervii.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvītās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat,
5 DC obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil

11. in eōs (not in sē), toward them, referring to the more distant subject *Bellovacōs*.

quod sī fēcerit, if he should do this; Diviciacus's words were quod sī fēceris, "if you shall have done this."

12. amplificātūrum: supply *eum* (i.e., *Caesarem*) as subject.

quōrum . . . cōsuērint, freely, upon whose assistance and resources they always relied whenever any war broke out. What is it literally? The ablatives denote means. The direct form would be sī qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt.

1. honōris . . . causā, out of respect for; depending on the infinitives. Dīviciācī: objective genitive.

2. in fidem receptūrum (sc. *esse*), would take under his protection.

3. magnā . . . auctōritāte: descriptive ablative in the predicate.

4. multitūdine: ablative of respect.

7. finēs: the order of words in this sentence, in which the object precedes the subject, serves to give prominence to the subject. The Nervii were especially important in the narrative which was to follow.

8. sic reperiēbat: see on ch. 4, 2.

9. nūllum . . . nihil: emphasized by their position.

esse . . . mercātōribus: traders had; mercātōribus is dative of possession. The Greek and Roman traders carried on a rather extensive commerce throughout Gaul and parts of Germany, and along the coast of Britain. See on Bk. I, ch. 29, 2.

nihil . . . rērum, they do not permit any wine or anything else.

11. mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tamed], gentleness, compassion.

12. amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*

[amplus+faciō], extend, increase.

7. mora, -ae, *f.*, delay.

9. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō], access, approach; way of approach.

patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, 10
quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existi-
mārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre
atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent
patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque
lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs. 15

*The Nervii,
encamped on
the Sambre,
are ready
for battle.*

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīdium iter fēcisset,
inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis
nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id
flūmen omnēs Nervīōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmā-
nōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs 5
suis (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam
experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Atuātucōrum cōpiās atque

10. vīnī, rērum: genitives of the whole, depending on *nihil*.

11. relanguēscere . . . virtūtem, freely, *the warlike spirit was weakened and courage was diminished*.

12. magnae . . . virtūtis is equivalent to an adj. and is therefore connected with *ferōs* by *-que*.

13. dēdidissent . . . prōiēcissent: these would be subjunctive in the direct form; see App. 245; A. 535, *e*; B. 283, 3; H. 592; H.-B. 523.

14. patriam, *inherited from their ancestors*.

(eōs) cōfirmāre, etc., *they asserted that they would*, etc.

1. trīdium: accusative of duration of time.

3. amplius does not influence the construction of *mīlia*; see on *minus*, ch. 7, 9.

6. hīs utrīsque, *these two tribes*. According to the report given by the Remi (ch. 4) the combined force, together with the Atuātuci, would amount to about 90,000.

7. ab iīs, *i.e.*, the Nervii.

10. vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.* [lūxus, excess],
luxury, high living.

11. re-languēscō, -ere, -guī, —,
intr., grow faint or weak.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*,
send back, throw back; relax,
weaken.

12. increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
[freq. of increpō], taunt, blame.

13. incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
[in+causa], bring a charge
against, complain of, upbraid.

14. patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a
father, father's; ancestral.

2. Sabis, -is, *m.*, a tributary of the
Meuse, the modern Sambre. Map
IV, E-F, 1.

7. experior, -īrī, -pertus, *tr.*, make
trial of, try.

esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam
inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs
10 exercitui aditus nōn esset.

*They plan a
surprise.*

17. His rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriō-
nēsque praemittit, quī locum castris idōneum dēligant.
Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem
secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvīs
5 cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris nostrī
exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs
dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum
numerus intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma
legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium
10 abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque

8. quīque, *and those who, i.e.,* the old men and children; the antecedent of *quī* is an understood *eōs*, object of *coniēcisse*, coordinate with *mulierēs*.
per, on account of.

9. *eum locum . . . quō (= ad or in quem), etc., a place to which an army had no access.*

2. *locum . . . idōneum*: where fuel and water were abundant. High ground was chosen, if possible.

dēligant: see on *quī dēdūceret*, ch. 2, 3.

3. *ex . . . Belgīs, etc.*: equivalent to a genitive of the whole, depending on *complūrēs*. *ex hīs*, line 4, is similarly used with *quīdam*.

5. *diērum, etc.*: of this group of genitives, *diērum* may be regarded as a loosely used genitive of description modifying *itineris*, which is also modified by the subjective genitive *exercitūs*; *itineris* is a genitive of connection modifying *cōsuētūdine*.

cōsuētūdine itineris, the usual order of march; see Introduction §22 for the arrangement of the army on the march.

7. *inter . . . legiōnēs, between every two legions.*

impedimentōrum . . . numerum, a large amount of baggage, i.e., a long train of baggage; *numerus* is used because the baggage animals are thought of.

8. *neque . . . negōtī, and it would be no trouble.*

9. *castra, camping ground. spatium*: accusative of extent of space.

10. *sub sarcinīs: i.e., while they were yet burdened with their heavy packs. See Vocabulary, sarcina. adorīrī*: subject of *esse*, l. 8.

dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuuābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs) quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī 15 causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs

11. *futūrum ut . . . audērent* = *ausūrās esse. futūrum esse ut* or *fore ut* with the present or imperfect subjunctive is often used for the future infinitive, active or passive. This construction is necessary when the verb has no supine stem.

12. *adiuvābat . . . quod*, freely, *the advice of those who brought this report was reēnforced by the fact that*; the subject of *adiuvābat* is *quod . . . effēcerant*. In translating, make the ablative absolute *arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs* coordinate with *effēcerant*;—*had slashed (or notched) and bent down young trees*.

13. *cum . . . possent*, *since they had no strength in cavalry*; for construction compare *quid . . . virtūte posset*, ch. 8, 4.

14. *eī reī* = *equitātū*.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, freely, *their whole strength is in their infantry*.

15. *quō facilius*, *that they might the more easily, the more easily to*; for the mood see App. 225, a, 2; A. 531, a; B. 282, 1, a; H. 568, 7; H.-B. 502, 2, b.

17. *crēbrisque . . . interiectīs*, *and when the branches had grown out thick from the sides and briars and brambles had been planted among them*.

18. *instar mūrī*, *like a wall*; *instar* is in apposition with *mūnīmentum*. Such hedges are said to have hampered military operations in this region at the beginning of the European war in 1914.

12. *ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr.*, help, assist, support.

14. *quisquis, quicquid, indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs], on foot; *pedestrēs cōpiae*, infantry.

15. *praedor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr. [praeda]*, plunder, pillage.

16. *impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [in+pēs]*, entangle, hamper, interfere with; prevent; delay, detain.

arbor, -oris, f., tree.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender, young.

incidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [in+caedō], cut into, notch.

17. *rāmus, -ī, m.*, branch, twig.

ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, intr., be born from, spring or sprout up.

rubus, -ī, m., bramble.

18. *sentēs, -ium, m.*, thorns, thorn-bushes, briars.

instar, n., indecl., likeness; *with gen.*, like, in the manner of.

saepēs, -is, f. [saepiō], hedge.

mūnimentum praeberent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē
 20 perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī
 impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervīi existi-
 māvērunt.

*Description of
 the battle
 ground.*

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī
 castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter
 dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat.
 Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic
 5 et contrārius, passūs circiter cc īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre
 parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā
 eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō

19. quō = *in quod*, i.e., *mūnimentum*.

1. locī: on the heights of Neuf-Mesnil, on the north or left bank of the
 Sambre.

locum: another example of a repeated antecedent; omit in translation.

2. ab . . . dēclīvis, *descending evenly from the summit*.

4. parī acclīvitāte, *with an equal upward slope*; *acclīvitās* is used of a slope
 from bottom to top, *dēclīvitās* of a slope from top to bottom.

collis: Hautmont, on the south or right bank.

adversus (adj.) . . . contrārius, *(with its slope) facing this hill and
 opposite to it*.

5. passūs . . . CC: modifying *apertus*. The hill was bare of trees
 (*apertus*) at its base (*īnfimus* = *ab īnfimā parte*) for 200 paces from the
 river's edge.

ab superiōre parte, *on the summit*; the Latin frequently employs the
 ablative denoting the point of view from which something may be regarded,
 instead of the ablative of place.

6. nōn . . . perspicī posset, *one could not see*.

19. mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō],
 fortifications, defense.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prae+
 habeō], offer, furnish, afford.

21. omittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *tr.*
 [ob+mittō], let go, neglect, omit.

2. aequālīter, *adv.* [aequālis], equal-
 ly, uniformly, evenly.

3. dēclīvis, -e, *adj.* [dē+clīvus],
 sloping downward, descending.

4. acclīvitās, -ātis, *f.* [acclīvis], an
 ascent, upward slope.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, *intr.*, be born or
 produced; rise.

5. contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā],
 opposite, contrary, parallel.

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva], of a
 wood or forest, wooded.

intrōrsus, *adv.* [intrō, within+ver-
 sus], inside, within.

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of
 occulō, cover], covered, con-
 cealed; as *subst.*, *n.*, in occultō, in
 concealment.

secundum flūmen paucae statiónēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The attack is sudden and the surprise complete.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedī- 5 menta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus ex 10 silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam

8. vidēbantur: a true passive, not "seemed."

9. pedum trium: a descriptive genitive in the predicate.

1. subsequēbātur: the descriptive impf. is continued from the preceding chapter.

2. ratiō ōrdōque, *plan and arrangement*; the verb with these nominatives is in the singular because the compound subject is thought of as expressing two phases of one idea, *i.e.*, "organization" (of the line of march).

aliter, etc., *was different from what the Belgae, etc.* For the force of *ac* (*atque*) see on *eadem . . . haec*, ch. 6, 4.

4. cōsuētūdine suā, *according to his custom*. The usual order, when not close to the enemy, had been correctly reported to the Nervii, ch. 17, 7, 8.

5. expeditās, *in light marching order, i.e.*, without their packs, so that in case of a sudden attack they could fight unhindered.

6. inde = *post impedīmenta*.

duae legiōnēs: the XIIIth and XIVth. According to his usual practice, Caesar put his recruits in the place of least danger.

7. agmen claudēbant, *brought up the rear*.

praesidiō erant, *served as a guard*; *praesidiō* is a dative of purpose.

10. cum: see on ch. 1, 1.

silvās refers to the different parts of the forest to which the enemy fled, *silvā* to the forest as a whole.

11. neque = *et nōn*. longius: modifies *insequī*.

8. secundum, *prep. with acc.* [secundus], by, along.

statiō, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], sentry, guard, outpost.

9. trānsgrēdior, -ī, -gressus, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+gradior], step across, pass over, cross.

10. identidem, *adv.*, again and again.

quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs
 insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs vi, quae primae vēnerant,
 opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedī-
 15 menta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa
 sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ut
 intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sē cōn-
 firmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque
 in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātis,
 20 incrēdibilī celeritātē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō

12. quem ad finem = *ad eum finem ad quem*.

porrēcta, *extended*, is little more than a repetition of the idea of *pertinēbant*, and need not be translated. cēdentēs: supply *illōs*.

14. opere, *the works*, the rampart and ditch with which every Roman camp was surrounded.

dīmēnsō: the perfect participle of deponent verbs may be used passively.

prima impedimenta, *the head of the baggage train*. The imprudence of Caesar in not keeping a part of the six legions under arms when the enemy was so near proved very costly, and almost fatal in its consequences.

15. abditī, like *porrēcta*, line 12, is a repetition of the thought of the verb, and need not be translated.

16. tempus, in apposition with *ubi . . . vīsa sunt*, is attracted into the relative clause. Translate the clause, *the time which had been agreed upon for*, etc. (lit. *which time of beginning battle had been agreed upon*).

committendī proelī: a genitive (usually translated with "for") is sometimes used as a modifier of a word denoting time, to name an event which takes place at the time specified. This usage may be regarded as an extension of the idea of the possessive genitive.

ut . . . cōstituerant, *just as they had formed*, etc., *i.e.*, without changing their formation.

17. ipsī . . . cōfirmāverant, *they had mutually resolved*. Caesar lays stress on the unusual forethought and system displayed in the attack of the barbarians, as it justifies to some extent the completeness of the surprise and confusion of his soldiers, and reflects additional credit on the final triumph of Roman discipline and courage.

12. porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.*
 [por = prō + regō], reach, extend.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, give
 way, retreat, yield.

14. dī-mētior, -īrī, -mēnsus, *tr.*,
 measure out, measure.

15. lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie
 hidden, lurk, be concealed.

18. prō-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*,
 fly or rush forth.

19. prō-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,
 drive in confusion, dislodge, re-
 pulse.

20. dē-currō, -ere, -cucurrī or -currī,
 -cursum, *tr. and intr.*, run down,
 hurry off.

tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

*Caesar's hands
are full, but
the well
disciplined
soldiers know
what to do.*

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda; vexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, 5 militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī

22. adversō colle, *up the hill*; ablative of route (lit. *by way of the hill facing them*).

1. Caesarī, etc., *Caesar had to do everything*, etc.; dative of agent.

2. vexillum prōpōnendum (*erat*); with the future passive participle in the clauses following, *erat* or *erant* is to be supplied. A red flag was raised at the general's tent as a signal of an approaching battle.

3. signum . . . dandum, *the signal had to be given*, to form ranks.

4. quī, *those who*; supply as antecedent *ī*, the subject of *arcessendī* (*erant*).

paulō longius, *some distance away* (lit. *a little too far*).

aggeris: here the *material for building the rampart*, timber, sod, etc.

6. signum, *the signal* (for the attack).

8. hīs difficultātibus subsidiō: dative of reference and dative of purpose; translate, *helpful in these difficulties*.

scientia atque ūsus, *theoretical and practical knowledge*, together making the first of the *duae rēs*.

9. quid . . . oportēret: indirect question, depending on *praescribere* and *docērī*.

2. vexillum, -ī, n. [*dim. of vēlum*], banner.

3. concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [*com-+currō*], run or rush together, encounter; hasten; assemble.

3. tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.

5. arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for.

7. brevitās, -ātis, f. [*brevis*], short-

ness, short stature.

incursus, -ūs, m. [*incurrō*, run into], rush, dash, onset.

8. difficultās, -ātis, f. [*difficilis*], difficulty, trouble.

scientia, -ae, f. [*sciēns*], knowledge, skill.

9. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train], trained, experienced.

10 oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab
aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus
singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs vetuerat.
Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam
Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur
15 administrābant.

*Caesar
inspects his
lines. The
time is short.*

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs milītēs, quam partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvenit. Milītēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis
5 memoriā retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum

10. ipsī sibi: the Latin connects the forms of *ipse* with the subject rather than with the oblique cases.

sibi praescribere, *decide for themselves*, depending on *poterant*.

11. et quod, *and the fact that*, introducing the second of the *duae res*.

singulīs . . . lēgātōs, *the several lieutenants from their respective legions*. It was not until a later time that the *lēgātī* were permanently assigned to particular legions.

12. nisi mūnītis castrīs, *unless (i.e., until) the camp had been fortified*.

13. nihil: = an emphatic *nōn*.

14. quae vidēbantur, *what seemed best*.

1. necessāriīs . . . imperātis, *after giving the necessary orders*.

ad . . . milītēs: depends on *dēcucurrit*.

2. quam . . . obtulit, *to the part which happened to be near* (lit. *which chance brought in his way*).

3. ad . . . decimam: Caesar's favorite and most famous legion. It was stationed on the left wing.

nōn . . . quam (sc. *hāc*, i.e., *ōrātiōne*) utī, *without making a longer speech than to urge that*.

6. sustinērent: repeat *utī* from l. 4.

quod . . . aberant gives the reason for *signum dedit*.

7. quam quō, *than (the distance) to which*.

posset: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 6; H.-B. 521, 2, c.

10. prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, scriptum, *tr.*, order, direct, prescribe.

15. ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ministrō, serve], manage, attend to, carry out, do.

2. fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; *abl.* forte as *adv.*, by chance, perhaps, accidentally.

3. dē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come down, go or come to, reach.

dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostium-
que tam parātus ad dimicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere
in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec
cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

*The nature of
the ground adds
to Caesar's
difficulties.*

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra
et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō
atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae

8. in alteram partem: i.e., to the right wing. What legions were stationed here?

9. pugnantibus occurrit, *he finds them (already) fighting*; *occurrō* is a compound of *ob* and takes a dependent dative.

temporis, etc., freely, *the time was so short*.

10. insignia, *decorations*, especially crests and plumes worn to distinguish the soldier's rank, and possibly the legion to which he belonged.

11. galeās: for *illus*. see Vocab. On the march the helmet was suspended on the breast or back, and the soldier went bareheaded. When working at the intrenchments, he laid his armor aside.

scūtis: abl. of separation. They were protected on the march by a leather covering; for *illus*. see Vocabulary.

12. tempus dēfuerit, *time was lacking*; for the tense see App. 204, a (last part); A. 485,c; B. 268, 6; H. 550; H.-B. 478.

quam . . . in partem, *to whatever place*.

13. quaeque, *and whatever*.

prīma: an adjective modifying *signa*, but to be translated by an English adverb. *signa*, *standards* of the maniples. *ad haec*, *by these*.

14. suis: supply *signis*.

1. ut: *as*. nātūra et necessitās: supply a verb from *postulābat* of line 3.

2. rei . . . ōrdō, *rules of military science*.

3. cum . . . impedirētur gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . neque . . . neque . . . poterant*.

dīversae, *separated*, further explained by *aliae . . . parte*,—*some in one place, others in another*.

9. exiguitās, -ātis, *f.* [exiguus], scantiness, shortness.

11. accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, arrange, adjust, put on.

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet, usually of leather strengthened with brass.

12. tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō], covering.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —, *intr.*, be wanting, fail.

3. dī-versus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite, different; opposed, separate.

aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs,
 5 ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur,
 neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque, quid in quāque parte
 opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia adminis-
 trārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae
 quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The Roman
 left and centre
 rout their op-
 ponents. The
 Nervii advance
 on the right.*

23. Legiōnis viiii et x militēs, ut in sinistrā parte
 aciēī cōstiterant, pilīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine
 exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam
 hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre
 5 in flūmen compulērunt et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs mag-

4. **hostibus**: for the dative, see App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426, 1; H.-B. 362.

5. **ante**: ch. 17, 15-20.

6. **certa**, *definitely, i.e.*, at definite places, with definite instructions.

subsidia, *reserves*, subject of an understood *poterant* which has *conlocārī* as its complementary infinitive. Similarly *poterat* is understood with *prōvidērī*, the subject being the indirect question, *quid . . . esset*.

7. **opus esset**, *was necessary*.

ab ūnō: naturally Caesar could not personally direct the battle front, as it was over two miles in length.

8. **in tantā . . . inīquitāte**, *in such an unfavorable situation*.

1. **VIII et X**: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. **pilīs ēmissīs**: this was the usual method of beginning an engagement; cf. Bk. I, ch. 25, 4.

cursū . . . compulērunt, *quickly drove the Atrebates, who were exhausted and breathless from running and disabled by wounds, from the higher ground into the river—for that division (of the Roman forces) had chanced to meet these*.

4. **ea pars**: the left wing of the Romans.

5. **cōnantēs**, *as they were attempting*.

4. **dēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, dense.

5. **prōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō], view, prospect.

8. **inīquitās**, -ātis, *f.* [inīquus], unevenness, unfairness, unfavorableness.

2. **lassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [lassus], weariness, exhaustion.

3. **exanimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [exanimus, breathless], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; *pf. part.*, **exanimātus**, breathless, exhausted.

4. **ob-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come in the way, meet; fall to the lot of, be allotted; be revealed.

A. Roman Camp
B. Belgian Camp
C. Nervii

D. Viromandui
E. Atrebatæ
F. Roman Baggage

BATTLE ON THE SAMBRE

nam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legionēs, XI et VIII, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex loco superiore in 10
ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis ferē castris a fronte et a sinistra parte nudatis, cum in dextro cornu legio XII et non magnō ab eā intervallō VII constitisset, omnēs Nervii confertissimō agmine duce Boduognatō, quī summam imperi

6. *impeditam*: explained by *transire conantes*.

ipsi: i.e., *legionis . . . militēs*, l. 1.

transire: the regular construction after *dubitare* when it means "to hesitate"; see on ch. 2, 9.

7. *in locum iniquum*: i.e., up the hill on which the Belgian camp stood.

8. *resistentes hostes*: accusative.

9. *diversae*, separated from the others.

XI et VIII: where were these legions stationed?

10. *ex loco superiore*: to be construed with *profligatis*.

11. *ipsis*, very.

ripis: only the left (Roman) bank is meant, the plural being used to denote various points along the river.

proeliabantur: the impf. is used because the fight was still going on when the following event took place.

castris . . . nudatis: translate by a clause with *while*. As a result of the advance of the four legions, as just described, the camp was left exposed except on the right wing, where the XIIth and VIIth were. The Nervii took advantage of the situation. To the number of 60,000 they advanced in two divisions, and while one division engaged the two legions by an attack on the right flank (*apertō latere*) the other advanced between the Roman right and center to the camp on the top of the hill. See Plan.

12. *cum . . . constitisset*: a causal clause.

non magnō . . . intervallō, at no great distance.

14. *summam imperi*, the chief command.

9. *profligō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr*
overthrow, put to flight.

10. *congridior*, -ī, -gressus, *intr.*
[com-+gradior], meet, encounter,
contend.

11. *proelior*, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [proe-

lium], join battle, fight.

at (ast), *conj.* with stronger adversative force than *autem* or *sed*, but, yet.

14. *Boduognātus*, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Nervii.

- 15 tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*They capture
the Roman
camp. Flight
of the Treveri.*

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipere, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē man-

15. apertō latere: the right side, not protected by the shield.

16. summum . . . locum, *the height on which the camp stood.*

1. levis armātūrae, *light armed.*

2. quī cum iīs . . . quōs: *quī* refers to *peditēs*, *iīs* to *equitēs*, and *quōs* to both.

peditēs: these are the slingers and archers mentioned in ch. 19, 8.

ūnā: adverb; omit in translation.

quōs . . . *dixeram*, and *who*, as *I* had said, were routed by the enemy's first attack, described in ch. 19, line 14, ff.

4. *adversīs* . . . *occurrēbant*, *met the enemy face to face*; for the case of *adversīs* see on *pugnantibus*, ch. 21, 9. Caesar's cavalry and light armed foot soldiers, who had been defeated and dispersed in the skirmish on the right bank, recrossed the river, and returning to the camp, entered it from the left as the Nervii poured in from the right.

5. *ab decumānā portā*: in this case the rear gate was on the highest point of the hill (*summō iugō*), and offered a good view of the battle.

6. *nostrōs*: the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.

victōrēs, *as victors.*

7. *cum respexissent et vīdissent*, *on looking back and seeing.*

8. *versārī*: translate as if *esse*; the Latin word, however, suggests action and cannot here be rendered exactly by any one English word.

5. *cālō*, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp follower.

decumānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*decimus*], decuman; *decumāna porta*, the rear gate or main entrance near which the tenth cohort of each legion was stationed.

7. *respiciō*, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr. and intr.* [*re-+speciō*, look], look back, look at; regard.

8. *praeceps*, -cipitis, *adj.* [*prae+caput*], head foremost, headlong; steep.

dābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedimentis veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti 10 ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxili causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissi- 15 pātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

9. eōrum quī: the slowly moving baggage train, whose appearance had been the signal for beginning the battle (see ch. 19, 14-19) was only now arriving on the scene, while the XIIIth and XIVth legions, which served as the rear guard, were still some distance from the camp.

10. aliū . . . partem, some in one direction, and others in another, or in every direction; compare *aliae* . . . parte, ch. 22, 3, 4.

11. ferēbantur, fled (lit. were carried away). The imperfects of this chapter describe the side events taking place simultaneously during the main action of the battle. In the following sentence Caesar returns to the story of the main action, hence the perfects.

equitēs Trēverī . . . cum . . . vīdissent . . . contendērunt is the framework of the sentence.

14. paene . . . tenērī, were almost completely surrounded; this phrase is of the same nature as *habeō* with the past participle; see note on *coāctum habēbat*, Bk. I, ch. 15, 4.

15. dispersōs dissipātōsque: i.e., completely disorganized.

16. dēspērātīs: Caesar uses this verb transitively only in the abl. abs. construction; otherwise he makes it govern the abl. with *dē* or the dative.

18. civitātī, to their people.

Caesar now resumes the narrative of his own movements, broken off in ch. 21, 9. The events described in the intervening chapters occurred while Caesar was hurrying from the left to the right wing.

10. fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [fremō, roar], confused noise, uproar.

11. Trēverī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people about modern Treves. Map IV, F-H, 2.

12. singulāris, -e, *adj.* [singulī],

singular, unusual, remarkable.

15. dispergō, -ere, -persī, -persum, *tr.* [dis-+spargō], scatter; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, scattered, dispersed.

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, scatter, disperse.

The Romans are "in a tight place." Caesar takes a hand in the battle and checks the attack.

25. Caesar ab x legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum conlātis xii legiōnis cōfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis
 5 omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab
 10 novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs

1. Caesar . . . possent (l. 17): this is a fine example of the Latin period, in which the circumstances leading up to the action of the main verb *prōcessit*, l. 15, are first introduced by participles, ablatives absolute, etc. The introductory part of the sentence is *Caesar . . . profectus, ubi . . . vīdit . . . vīdit . . . quod . . . posset*. The vigor of the Latin would be but feebly expressed in English if we attempted to retain the sentence structure in translating. The complex sentence should be broken up into shorter ones, as for example: (1) *Caesar . . . profectus est*, (2) *ibi vīdit suōs . . . urgērī . . . impedimentō*, (3) *occīsī erant . . . interfectus erat . . . āmissum erat . . . aut vulnerātī aut occīsī erant*, (4) *reliquī erant tardiōrēs et nōn nullī . . . excēdebant ac tēla vītābant*, (5) *hōstes (autem) neque . . . intermittēbant et . . . instābant*, (6) *rēs erat in angustō* (omit *vīdit*) *neque . . . erat subsidium*.

2. signis . . . conlātis, because the standards of the maniples had become concentrated in one place.

3. sibi . . . impedimentō, were a hindrance to one another.

5. signō āmissō: the loss of the standard was a great disgrace.

8. multīs gravibusque: when a noun is modified by a form of *multus* and also by a descriptive adjective, the Latin regularly joins the two adjectives by a conjunction—which, however, must be omitted in translation.

9. tardiōrēs, somewhat dispirited.

ab novissimis, in the rear ranks.

10. dēsertō locō, leaving their posts.

vītāre: i.e., were getting out of range of the javelins.

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohörtor], exhortation, encouragement.

2. urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, tr., press on, press hard.

5. signifer, -ī, m. [signum+ferō], standard-bearer.

7. prīmipīlus, -ī, m. [prīmus+pīlus],

the first or chief centurion.

Sextius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Baculus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

9. tardus, -a, -um, adj., tardy, slow.

10. excēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., go out or away, withdraw, retire.

neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs 15 cohortātus, milites signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūtī possent. Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est. 20

Labienus, a mile off, sees the danger and saves the day.

26. Caesar cum VII legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstitit, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum

11. neque . . . et: correlative.

12. vīdit is a mere repetition of *vīdit*, l. 4.

13. scūtō . . . dētractō: introduce the main statement by *in this crisis he seized*, etc.

14. militi, *from a soldier*; for case see on Bk. I, ch. 17, 9.

16. signa . . . laxāre, *to advance and to open out the ranks*. This would give the soldiers greater freedom of movement.

17. spē . . . animō, *hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed*.

19. etiam . . . rēbus, *even in the utmost personal danger*.

1. iūxtā: *i.e.*, next to the XIIth legion.

2. tribūnōs . . . coniungerent, *directed the military tribunes to have the legions draw together gradually*; for the use of sēsē see on sēsē ch. 3, 10.

4. conversa signa . . . inferrent, *to face about and advance*, etc. The "facing about" applies only to the VIIth legion, which was now stationed behind the XIIth, facing in the opposite direction in order to meet the attack of that division of the Nervii which had gone around the right Roman flank.

16. manipulus, -ī, *m.* [manus+pleō, fill], a handful of hay about a pole, anciently used as a standard; a company of two centuries, manipule.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [laxus, loose], extend, open; relax.

19. nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nāvus, busy], do zealously; operam

nāvāre, to act vigorously, do one's best.

20. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little; a little while.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus], retard, hinder, check.

1. iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near, near by, by the side of.

- 5 aliis alii subsidium ferrent, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste
circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepē-
runt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō
agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū
incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et T.
10 Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs
in nostris castris gererentur, cōspicātus, x legiōnem subsidiō
nostris misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in
locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et
imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi
15 reliquī fēcērunt.

*The tenth
legion to the
rescue. After
desperate re-
sistance, the
Nervii are
routed.*

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō
est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī
prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxi proelium redintegrārent,
cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs

5. aliis . . . ferrent, *afforded protection to each other*, by rendering an attack upon the rear impossible. āversī, *in the rear*.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, *quickenened their pace on receiving the news of the battle*.

9. summō colle: this was the site of the Roman camp; see on *ab decumānā portā*, ch. 24, 5.

T. Labiēnus: in ch. 23, 1-8 it was related how Labienus, with the IXth and Xth legions, had routed the Atrebates. He then took the enemy's intrenchments on the hill of Hautmont, which was over forty feet higher than the Roman camp. From here he saw his general's peril and sent his best legion to the rescue.

11. gererentur: in an indirect question.

12. quī: the soldiers of the Xth legion; for translation see on *quī*, Bk. I, ch. 15, 5.

quō . . . esset, *in what a situation matters were*.

14. versārētur, *were involved*; the Latin verb is singular to agree with the last part of the compound subject, but English usage requires a plural verb with a subject of this kind.

nihil . . . reliquī fēcērunt, *made all possible haste* (lit. *left nothing undone in the way of speed*). The Latin likes to separate the genitive of the whole and the governing word.

2. etiam quī, *even those who*.

3. scūtīs: the ablative is used with *innītor* and *nītor*.

3. prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [-cumbō, recline], lean over, fall prostrate, fall, sink.

in-nītor, -ī, -nīxus, *intr.*, lean upon, support oneself upon.

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* unarmed.

armātis occurrerent, equitēs vērō ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte 5
dēlērent, omnibus in locis pugnandī studiō sē legiōnāriis
militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis
tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent,
proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus
pugnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī super- 10
essent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta
remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs
iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere
altissimās rīpās, subire inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex
difficillimis animī magnitūdō redēgerat. 15

5. *occurrerent*: in the result clause introduced by *ut*, coördinate with *redintegrārent*, as is also *praeferrent*.

vērō, *even*; used in a climax.

6. *sē praeferrent*, *tried to surpass*.

7. *in extrēmā spē salūtis*, *even though their hope of success was almost gone* (lit. *at the end of their hope of safety*).

9. *iacentibus insisterent*, *stood upon their prostrate bodies*; *iacentibus* is dative.

10. *hīs dēiectis*, *when these (i.e., proximī) were struck down*.

(iī) *quī superessent*, *the survivors*; sc. *ut* with *conicerent* and *remitterent*.

11. *ut*, *as*.

12. *ut iūdicārī dēbēret*, *so that one must admit*.

nōn nēquiquam, *not without prospect of success*; to be taken with *ausōs esse*.

14. *quae*, *exploits which*.

facilia: predicate adjective.

ex difficillimis, *though naturally very difficult* (lit. *from having been very difficult*).

15. *redēgerat*: = *reddiderat*, a rare meaning. The usual meaning, "reduce," will be found in the next chapter.

5. *turpitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [turpis], disgrace.

6. *legiōnārius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō], of or pertaining to a legion, legionary.

9. *in-sistō*, -ere, -stitī, —, *tr. and intr.*, stand upon, keep one's footing.

10. *coacervō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+acervō, heap up], heap or mass together, pile up.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō], dead body, corpse.

11. *tumulus*, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell], a mound, hill.

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], interrupt, cut off; take away.

12. *nēquiquam*, *adv.* [nē+old abl. of quisquam], in vain, to no purpose.

14. *facilis*, -e, *adj.*, easy, without difficulty.

*The survivors
surrender and
are kindly
treated.*

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōservāvit suisque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*The Atuatuci
prepare for
resistance.
Their origin*

29. Atuatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis.

2. **ac**, and even; *ac* is often thus used to add a stronger expression.

redāctō: see on *redēgerat*, ch. 27, l. 15.

3. **aestuāria**: swamps connected with the sea and partly flooded at high tide.

5. **nihil impedītum** (sc. *esse*), *there was no obstacle* (lit. *nothing hindered*).

victīs, the vanquished. **nihil tūtum**, no safety.

6. **omnium**: depends on *cōnsensū*.

8. **vix ad D**: this account must have been exaggerated, for three years later they were in revolt against the Romans, and in 52 B.C. they sent 5000 men to Vercingetorix.

9. **possent** would be subj. in the direct form; why?

10. **ūsus** (sc. *esse*), to have shown. **vidērētur**: a true passive, be seen.

11. **ūtī**, to keep, retain possession of.

12. **ut . . . prohibērent**, to refrain from doing them any injury or harm and also to restrain their dependents. Even the small tribes might feel that they could now safely attack the remnant of the Nervii.

1. **suprā**: see ch. 16, 7. **cum**: see on *cum esset*, ch. 1, 1.

2. **auxiliō Nervii**: for constr. see on *subsidiō oppidānīs*, ch. 7, 3.

hāc pugnā . . . revertērunt, learned of this battle and immediately (ex itinere) returned home. Literally?

3. **aestuārium**, -ī, *n.* [aestus], low marsh-land, tidal swamp, marsh.

10. **miser**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, unfortunate.

supplex, -icis, *adj.*, suppliant; as *subst.*, *m.*, a suppliant.

misericordia, -ae, *f.* [misericors, merciful], mercy, clemency.

A. Roman Agger
B. Turris Ambulatoria
C. Vallum and Fossæ

D. D. Roman Line of Contravallation with Castello
E. Roman Camp
F. Old Wall

SIDE OF THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCK

oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum
ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus 5
in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā
ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius
pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō
mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs
in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque 10
prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam
facerent, iīs impedimentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn
poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiae ac praesidiō
vi mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum

4. **oppidum**: probably the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Sambre (*Sabis*) and the Maas or Meuse (*Mosa*); see Plan. Others place it further down the Meuse; see Map IV, F, 1.

5. **quod cum**, *although this* or *while this*; the adversative *cum* as well as *cum* in a descriptive clause of situation may occasionally be translated *while*. **ex omnibus . . . partibus**, *on all (the other) sides*.

8. **pedum**: genitive of measure depending on *aditus*; *amplius* does not affect the construction.

9. **tum . . . conlocābant** emphasizes, in contrast to the preceding past perfects, what the Atuatucae were then doing, hence the imperfect.

ponderis: genitive of description.

11. **iter**: see on *Galliā vexātā*, ch. 4, 6.

12. **agere ac portāre**: the *impedimenta* included cattle as well as portable effects.

13. **citrā**: on the left (west) side.

custōdiae: guards who had the immediate care of the baggage.

praesidiō: a garrison to protect the place; *praesidiō* and *custōdiae* are datives of purpose.

14. **ūnā**, *with them, i.e., the custōdia*.

eōrum, *of the others*, their countrymen who had invaded Italy and the Province.

5. **ēgregiē**, *adv.* [ēgregius], excellently, admirably.

6. **rūpēs**, -is, *f.* [rumpō], rock, cliff.

7. **acclīvis**, -e, *adj.* [ad+clīvus], sloping upward, rising, ascending.

8. **duplex**, -icis, *adj.* [duo+plicō, fold], twofold, double.

9. **saxum**, -ī, *n.*, a rock.

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened, pointed.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, a beam, timber, log.

11. **prō-gnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, born, descended.

14. **obitus**, -ūs, *m.* [obeō], destruction, overthrow.

15 multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

"Pride goeth
before de-
struction."

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv mīlium crēbrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sēsē con-
5 tinēbant. Ubi, vineis āctis aggere exstrūctō, turrim procul cōstituī vidērunt, primum inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur:

16. inlātum (sc. sibi bellum) dēfenderent, waged defensive war (lit. warded off war waged against them).

cōnsēnsū eōrum (fīnitimōrum) omnium depends on dēlēgerant.

17. hunc . . . locum: not merely the oppidum of l. 4, but the surrounding country between the Meuse and the Sambre.

domiciliō: why dative?

1. ac resumes the narrative interrupted in l. 10 of chapter 29.

primō adventū exercitūs, immediately after the arrival of our army; primō is an adjective.

3. pedum XII: i.e., in height. in circuitū: see Plan, d.

4. mīlium: sc. passuum.

oppidō: for case see on oppidīs, ch. 3, 7.

5. vineis . . . exstrūctō: the first abl. abs. is subordinate to the second, but both may be translated as coördinate with cōstituī.

6. inridēre and increpitāre are historical infinitives.

7. ā tantō spatiō, so far off; for case see on mīlibus, ch. 7, 9.

instituerētur: for mood see App., 244; A. 540; B. 286; H. 588, II; H.-B. 535, 2, b.

15. ex-agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., stir up; disturb, harass.

17. domicilium, -ī, n. [domus], home, dwelling.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run out], sally, sortie.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus], little; slight, insignificant.

4. circum-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., fortify around, fortify, protect.

5. ex-struō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, tr. [struō, heap up], heap up, erect, construct.

procul, adv., at a distance, distant, far, at some distance.

6. in-rideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, tr. and intr., laugh at, ridicule; jeer.

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [māchinor, devise], a mechanical device, machine.

3. *testudo*
4. *onger*
THE FORMING OF A DESIGNED CITY

1. *curria undulata*
2. *testudo aridaria*

quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) 10 tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōfīderent?

*They propose
surrender, but
beg to retain
their arms.*

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā 5 celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī

8. *quibusnam manibus, with what hands, pray?* The sarcasm is increased by the contrast between *tanta*, l. 7, *tantō*, l. 7, *tantulae*, l. 9, and *tantī*, l. 11.

vīribus: what is the nominative singular of this word? What the nominative plural?

praesertim, etc., *especially (as they were) men of such short stature.*

9. *plērumque*: neuter accusative used as an adverb.

10. *contemptuī est*, *is an object of contempt*; *contemptuī* is a dative of purpose.

11. *in mūrō . . . cōfīderent*: for the subj. see App. 268, 1; A. 586; B. 315, 1; H. 642; H-B. 537. The Gauls had no knowledge of movable towers, but only knew of such as were built upon walls, so they naturally believed that this one, too, was to be placed on the wall.

1. *vērō*, *however*.

movērī: supply *turrim* as subject.

2. *speciē*, *spectacle*.

4. *locūtī* governs the indirect discourse through *possent*; the rest of the sentence is governed by *dixērunt*.

5. *quī . . . possent*: relative causal clause.

8. *quis-nam, quaenam, quidnam*, *interrog. pron.*, who or what then? pray who or what?

9. *tantulus, -a, -um, adj.* [*dim. of tantus*], so small or little, so trifling.

statūra, -ae, f. [*stō*], stature.

plērumque, adv. [*plērusque*, most], for the most part, commonly, frequently.

prae, prep. with abl., before; in comparison with.

10. *contemptus, -ūs, m.* [*contemnō*],

contempt, an object of contempt.

11. *onus, -eris, n.*, load, burden; weight.

2. *in-ūsitātus, -a, -um, adj.* [*ūsitātus*, wonted], unusual, strange, startling.

speciēs, -iēi, f. [*speciō*, spy], a sight, shape, form.

4. *modus, -ī, m.*, measure, limit, amount; way, manner; kind, sort,

6. *prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr.*, move forward, advance.

permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Atuatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret.
 10 Sibi omnes ferre finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consueissent.

*Caesar
receives their
surrender, but
demands
their arms.*

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditiois nullam esse conditionem nisi

7. unum, only one favor.

petere, "to make a request," is more exactly defined by deprecari, "to beg a person not to do something"; tr. the two verbs, they earnestly begged for. pro, in accordance with, i.e., as was to be expected from.

8. sua: meaning as in ch. 14, 10.

audirent, they were (constantly) hearing of; audimus in the direct discourse.

9. ne . . . despoliaret: a substantive clause explaining unum.

armis: ablative of separation.

11. a quibus, from them. traditis armis = si arma tradidissent.

sibi praestare, that it was better for them; praestare is similarly used in Bk. I, ch. 17, 6.

12. in eum casum, to such an extremity.

13. per cruciatum denotes manner and = cum cruciatu.

1. consuetudine sua, according to his custom.

2. merito eorum: equivalent to a causal cl.,—because they deserved it.

3. aries: for illus. see Vocabulary.

attigisset . . . dedidissent: fut. pf. in the direct form.

4. nisi armis traditis: abl. abs.; cf. nisi munitis castris, ch. 20, 12.

7. de-precor, -ari, -atus, tr. and intr., beg off, beseech; plead for.

9. de-spolio, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., plunder, despoil, deprive.

10. in-video, -ere, -vidi, -visum, tr. and intr., be envious of, grudge.

12. qui-vis, quaevis, quidvis (adj., quodvis), indef. pron., who or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any.

13. cruciatus, -us, m. [crucio, crucify], crucifying, torture, torment.

14. dominor, -ari, -atus, intr. [dominus], to be master, exercise authority, rule.

3. aries, -ietis, m., ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head.

armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviiis fēcisset, factūrum 5
 finitimisque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī
 iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē quae impe-
 rārentur, facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multitudīne dē
 mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope
 summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinē acervī armōrum adae- 10
 quārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est,
 cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce
 sunt ūsī.

*A desperate
 attempt to es-
 cape by night
 and a dread-
 ful punishment.*

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque
 ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā
 militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut

5. in Nerviiis, in the case of the Nervii.

6. nē . . . inferrent, not to inflict any injury, etc.; quam is an indefinite pronoun.

7. rē, decision, answer.

imperārentur: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; quae is a relative with an antecedent understood.

8. facere: the ambassadors, returning to Caesar, reported that their people had accepted his terms and were already obeying his commands. This accounts for the pres. inf. when we might have expected the future factūrōs esse.

multitudīne . . . iactā . . . parte . . . cēlātā: translate in the active voice, after they (the Atuatici) had, etc.

9. ante oppidum: we are told in ch. 29, 6-9 that the wall and ditch were about 200 feet in length.

sic . . . adaequārent, so that the piles of weapons were almost on a level with the highest point of the wall and the earthworks.

10. mūrī: the wall of the oppidum and the agger, which had been extended up to the edge of the ditch in front of the oppidum, formed the sides of a deep trench into which the weapons were thrown.

12. portīs patefactīs = portās patefēcērunt et.

pāce sunt ūsī, they remained peaceable.

1. sub vesperum, toward evening.

2. quam: see on nē inferrent, ch. 32, 6 (last part).

3. ante initō . . . cōsiliō, according to a pre-arranged plan; how literally?

10. acervus, -ī, m., heap.

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and
 intr., equal; make level with or

equal to; keep up with.

12. cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., hide.
 conceal.

intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditionē factā nostrōs praesidia
 5 dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligētius servātūrōs crēdiderant,
 partim cum iīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim
 scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut
 temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā
 vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus
 10 vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcē-
 runt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus signifi-
 cātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnā-
 tumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā
 spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla
 15 iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsis-

4. dēditionē factā, *after the surrender.*

praesidia, *outposts* stationed in the *castella* (cf. ch. 30, 4) guarding the line of circumvallation.

7. scūtīs depends on *cum*.

vīminibus: ablative of means or material, depending on *intextīs* (supply *scūtīs*). Translate, *woven from osiers*. subitō, *hurriedly*.

9. quā, *where*; the feminine form of this adv. is to be explained by supplying a word like *viā*, *parte*, or *regiōne*.

mūnitiōnēs: the line of circumvallation, which was higher than the ground at the foot of the plateau on which the *oppidum* was situated.

11. ignibus, *signal fires*.

12. ex . . . castellīs: construe with *concursum est*.

concursum est, pugnātum est: translate by personal verbs in the active voice.

13. ā virīs fortibus pugnārī dēbuit, *freely, as one should have expected brave men to fight*.

14. inīquō: because of the *ascēsus*, l. 9; for the omission of the prep. with *locō* see App. 151, b; A. 429, 1; B. 228, b; H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

turribus: *i.e., castellīs*.

15. iacerent: in a relative clause of description.

5. in-diligenter, *adv.*, carelessly, heedlessly.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, watch, keep, save; keep guard.

7. cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, pliant twig, with, osier.

in-textō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.*

[texō, weave], weave together.

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.

9. arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep, difficult, lofty.

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērumpō], sortie, sally.

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō], signal, sign.

teret. Occisis ad hominum milibus IIII, reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi, refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vēdidit. Ab iis, qui ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium LIII.

20

*The maritime
states are
subdued by
Crassus.*

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne unā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redactās.

16. *ad*: for meaning see on Bk. I, ch. 4, 5. When thus used it does not influence the case of the numeral.

18. *dēfenderet*, *made a defense*.

sectionem: not merely the property of the Atuatuci, but the people themselves, who were sold as slaves.

20. *milium*: as a predicate.

2. *Coriosolitas*: for the ending *-as*, see on Bk. I, ch. 14, 10.

3. *quae*: the relative is attracted to agree with *civitātēs*; translate *tribes which*.

Many of these ancient names are retained in a modified form in the modern ones.

17. *refringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum*, *tr.* [re-+frangō], break in or open, break.

18. *intrō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum*, *tr.*, let go in, send into, admit.

sectiō, -ōnis, f. [secō], a cutting, parcelling out; booty, spoil.

19. *vēndō, -ere, -didī, —, tr.* [vē-num, sale+dō], sell, sell at auction.

2. *Venetī, -ōrum, m.*, a Gallic tribe of Britanny, near modern Vannes. *Map IV, B, 3.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a people of Normandy. *Map IV, C, 2.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Britanny. *Map IV, B, 2.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., a tribe of Brit-

tany near Corseult. Map IV, B, 2.

3. *Esuvī, -ōrum, m.*, a Gallic people living near modern Essey. *Map IV, C-D, 2.*

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people having several branches: (1) Aulerci Brannovices, *Map IV, F, 3*; (2) Aulerci Cenomani, *Map IV, D, 2*; (3) Aulerci Eburovices, *Map IV, D, 2*, and perhaps (4) Aulerci Diablintes, *Map IV, C, 2.*

Redonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe living near modern Rennes. *Map IV, C, 2-3.*

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare], of the sea, sea-; maritime, on the sea coast.

5. *diciō, -ōnis, f.* [dicō], dominion, sway.

Arrival of
embassies.
Caesar's
departure.
Winter-
quarters.
Thanksgiving.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta
huius bellī ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est, utī ab
iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent,
lēgātiōnēs ad Caesarem mitterentur, quae sē obsidēs
5 datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs
Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā
aestāte ad sē reverti iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs
quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat,
legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est; ob
10 eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xv supplicātiō dēcrēta
est, quod ante id tempus accidit nullī.

1. his . . . gestīs: abl. abs. denoting the cause or means of *omnī Galliā pācātā*.

pācātā: for other references to the "Roman peace," see on Bk. I, ch. 6, 8 and Bk. II, ch. 1, 7.

2. ad . . . perlāta est, *was spread abroad among the barbarians*, referring both to the Germans and the Gauls.

opiniō, *impression*.

3. nātiōnibus: only the Ubii, as Caesar himself says in Bk. IV, ch. 16.

incolerent: subjunctive by attraction. What kind of clause is the *ut* clause on which it depends?

6. Illyricum belonged to Caesar's province.

7. in Carnutēs: construe with *dēductīs*.

8. quaeque = *et eās . . . quae*.

10. ex litterīs, *in consequence of the dispatches*.

supplicātiō: a public thanksgiving to the gods, decreed by the senate in honor of a victory.

11. quod, (*an honor*) *which*.

accidit nullī: the length of the *supplicātiō* was supposed to be determined by the value of the victory. The usual time was from three to five days, though one of twelve days had been decreed in honor of Pompey's victory over Mithridates. The verb *accidō* is more commonly used of an unforeseen or unfavorable event, *contingō* being regularly used of good fortune.

7. Carnutēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe between the Seine and Loire, near modern Chartres. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

Andēs, -ium, *m.*, a people of Anjou Map IV, C, 3.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Touraine. Map IV, D, 3.

10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*supplicō*, kneel], public prayer in times of calamity or rejoicing; thanksgiving.

BOOK III

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, 5 quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērānt, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque 10 datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus

Galba prepares to winter in Octodurus.

1. Galbam: afterwards one of the assassins of Caesar. He was the great-grandfather of the Emperor Galba.

3. -que: see on *duplicāvit*, etc., page 56.

quī . . . pertinent: i.e., whose country extends; see on in *Bellovacōs*, Bk. II, 13, 4.

5. causa . . . quod, the reason for sending him was, that; the substantive quod clause is here used as a predicate.

iter: subject of *patefierī*.

6. quō: refers to *itinere*.

portōriis: import and export duties, collected by the natives on goods passing through their country.

7. opus esse: see on Bk. II, 22, 7

8. arbitrārētur: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

9. Galba . . . cōstituit: translate all the ablatives abs. by active forms; the first and second as subordinate clauses, and the third, fourth and fifth (which give the result of the first and second) as principal clauses:—*After Galba . . . they sent . . . (and so) he determined*, etc.

castellis, fortified villages.

10. eōrum: the tribes mentioned in ll. 2, 3.

1. Ser., abbr. for Servius.

2. Nantuātēs, -ium, m., a Gallic tribe on the Loire about Nantes. Map IV, G, 3-4.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 3-4.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m., a people living

about modern Sitten. Map IV, G-H, 3.

7. patefiō, -fierī, -factus sum, [pass. of patefaciō], be made open, be opened.

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj., several, some.

conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus
 15 undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

*The Alpine
 tribes revolt.
 The reasons.*

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque, quī impendē-
 5 rent, ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, detractīs cohortibus duābus

13. quī vīcus, *this village.*

14. nōn . . . plānitiē: abl. abs., *with a small plain adjacent.*

15. continētur, *is hemmed in.* hic: supply vīcus.

flūmine, *by a river, the Drance.*

16. vacuum ab . . . relictam, *left unoccupied by (lit. left free from).*

17. vāllō fossāque: for illud. see Vocab., vāllum.

1. diēs: nominative. hibernōrum, *in winter quarters.*

trānsissent, *had passed.*

2. eō = *in hiberna.*

3. quam . . . concesserat: an explanatory statement of the author, and not a part of the ind. dis., hence the indicative.

6. aliquot dē causīs: these are explained in *primum quod*, l. 7, . . . *tum etiam quod*, l. 10, . . . *Accedēbat quod*, l. 13.

ut . . . caperent: this clause explains *id*.

8. neque eam plēnissimam, *and that, too, not complete.*

detractīs . . . absentibus: the ablatives absolute explain why the legion was not *plēnissima*. This legion had also lost heavily in the battle with the Nervii, as told in Bk. II, 25.

13. Octodūrus, -ī, *m.*, a town of the Veragri, modern Martigny. Map IV, G, 3.

14. vallēs (-is), -is, *f.*, valley.

17. attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [ad+tribuō], allot to, assign make over.

6. re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [novō, make new], renew.

7. opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], crush, overpower, destroy.

8. plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full; complete; filled.

et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum 10 etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae 15 possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

The legions in peril. They decide to hold their ground.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō, 5

9. *singillātim*, *individually*, as opposed to the detachments.

11. *propter inīquitātem locī* belongs with *impetum sustinērī*.

cum, *when*. *ipsī*: *i.e.*, *Gallī*.

13. *accēdēbat quod*, *an additional reason was that*; the *quod* clause is the subject of *accēdēbat*.

14. *liberōs abstractōs* (*esse*): infinitive and its subject acc. with a verb of emotion (*dolēbant*).

obsidum nōmine, *as hostages*.

17. *prōvinciae*: not genitive.

sibi . . . habēbant, *they had persuaded themselves*.

persuāsum: neuter, agreeing with the infinitive clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere*.

1. *opus hibernōrum* includes marking off the ground for the camp, erecting huts, etc.

2. *mūnitiōnēs* refers to the wall and rampart; see ch. 1, 17.

3. *neque . . . prōvisum*, *and he had not made sufficient provision*, etc.

5. *cōnsiliō*: the council of war was composed of tribunes, centurions of the first rank, and cavalry officers, making from fifteen to twenty men.

9. *singillātim*, *adv.* [*singulī*], singly, one by one.

10. *paucitās*, *-ātis*, *f.* [*paucus*], scarcity, small number.

14. *abs-trahō*, *-ere*, *-trāxī*, *-tractum*, *tr.*, drag away, carry away.

15. *perpetuus*, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, continuous, perpetual, permanent.

16. *culmen*, *-inis*, *n.*, top, summit, ridge.

2. *plēnē*, *adv.* [*plēnus*], fully, entirely.

sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum
 repentīnī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia
 ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspice-
 rentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī
 10 interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn
 nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs
 ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent, ad
 salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc
 reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum
 15 experīrī et castra dēfendere.

*The assault
 upon the
 Roman camp.*

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās
 cōstituissent, conlocandīs atque administrandīs
 tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcur-

6. quō in cōnsiliō: for translation of relative see note on *quī vīcus*,
 ch. 1, 13.

cum . . . accidisset, since such a perilous situation had suddenly developed
 contrary to expectation; periculī is genitive of the whole.

8. complēta, filled, covered; predicate with cōspicerentur.

9. neque . . . neque, and neither . . . nor; the first neque serves both
 as a connective and a correlative.

venīrī: impersonal; sc. posset from the following possent. Translate, and
 neither could aid reach them.

10. dēspērātā salūte: translate as a main clause; for construction see on
 dēspērātīs, Bk. II, 24, 16.

11. eius modī, of this sort, to this effect, a descriptive genitive.

13. maiōrī partī placuit, the majority thought it best.

hōc reservātō . . . cōnsiliō = hoc cōsilium . . . reservāre et.

14. ad extrēmum cāsum, for a last resort.

1. brevī spatiō interiectō . . . ut, after an interval so short that.

vix is placed first for emphasis.

2. conlocandīs atque administrandīs, for arranging and carrying out
 these measures; the dative in the gerundive construction is rare. The
 genitive or the accusative with ad would be more common.

3. signō datō, at the signal.

dēcurrere . . . conicere: historical infinitives; so also prōpugnāre, l. 5,
 mittere, l. 6, occurrere, l. 7, ferre and superārī, l. 8.

6. exquirō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum,
 tr. [ex+quaerō], search out, in-
 quire, investigate.

14. re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
 keep back, reserve.

1. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief.

rere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum 5 ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī sī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, 10 ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstitērat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

*A long contest.
Baculus sug-
gests a sally.*

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pug-
nārētur ac nōn solum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs

5. integrīs vīribus: ablative absolute, *as long as*, etc.

6. ex locō superiōre: *i.e.*, *ex vāllō*. This, of course, was higher than the plain into which the enemy had descended.

7. premī: what are the principal parts of *premō*?

vidēbātur . . . excēdēbant: descriptive imperfects.

occurrere: in a hostile sense, *they rushed up*, to oppose the enemy.

8. hōc superārī, *in this they were at a disadvantage*, explained by *quod* . . . succēdēbant.

diūturnitāte: ablative of cause, with *dēfessī*.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ablative with *aliī*; contrast the construction of the same words in l. 5.

10. quārum rērum . . . nihil, *while nothing of the sort*, see on *nihil* . . . reliquī, etc., Bk. II, 26, 14.

11. nōn modo = *nōn modo nōn*,—*not only was the opportunity not given*, etc. The second *nōn* is omitted only when a negative follows (as here *nē* . . . *quidem*) and then only when the predicate is common to both clauses.

dēfessō, sauciō: datives depending on *dabātur*.

12. suī recipiendī: meaning as in Bk. II, 12, 2; for constr. see App. 291, a; A. 504, c; B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; H.-B. 614.

1. hōrīs: why ablative? The Romans counted twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, the length of the hour varying with the length of the day at different seasons of the year.

cum . . . pugnārētur: translate by a past perfect, *when the battle had been going on*.

4. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy Gallic javelin.

5. frūstrā, *adv.*, vainly, in vain;

without effect.

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded, injured.

dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque
 5 esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfēc-
 tum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque
 ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum
 10 auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex-labōre reficerent,

3. languidiōribus . . . nostrīs: abl. abs. denoting cause.

4. vāllum scindere: *i.e.*, to tear out the palisades in order to make a breach.

fossās, *the ditch* in several places; see on *rīpīs*, Bk. II, 23, 11.

5. ad extrēmum . . . cāsum, *to the last extremity*.

6. quem . . . dīximus: see Bk. II, 25, 8.

7. Volusēnus: "the only tribune of whom Caesar makes honorable mention." He appears again in Books IV and V, and was a commander of cavalry in the Civil War.

8. cōsili magnī et virtūtis, *of great resourcefulness and bravery*.

9. docent, *told him*.

sī . . . experirentur: the clause is somewhat loosely used to explain *spem*.

11. certiōrēs facit, *he informs them (of his will that), he orders them*, governing *intermitterent* and the other subjunctives which follow, which would be in the imperative in direct discourse.

12. tēla . . . exciperent: *i.e.*, they were merely to protect themselves against the missiles of the enemy.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, spiritless, faint.

4. scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy.

6. pīlus, -ī, *m.*, a maniple of the triarii, who formed the third line of the Roman legion; primī pīlī centuriō, the centurion of the first maniple, chief centurion.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Nervii, Nervian.

7. Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Volu-

senus Quadratus, *a tribune of Caesar's army*.

12. tantum-modo, *adv.*, only, merely.

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ex+capiō], take up, catch, capture; intercept, withstand; meet, receive.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, exertion, labor, hardship.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [re+faciō], renew, refresh, repair.

post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The tables are turned and the Gauls routed. Galba returns to the Province.

6. Quod iussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs intercipiunt 5 et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā, reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō 10 proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmentī inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiis incēnsis, in prōvinciam

13. post: an adverb.

1. quod iussī sunt, *as* (lit. *what*) *they were commanded*.

2. portis: ablative of route.

cognōscendī: depending on *facultātem*.

3. suī colligendī, *of rallying*; for the construction see on *suī recipiendī*, ch. 4, 12.

4. in spem . . . vēnerant: see on Bk. I, 18, 22.

5. circumventōs intercipiunt, *outflank and cut off*.

6. ex . . . mīlibus depends on *tertiā parte*.

amplius . . . plūs: neither affects the construction.

quem . . . cōstābat, *the number of barbarians who were known to have taken part in the attack on the camp*. Literally?

10. armis . . . exūtis, *stripped of their arms, i.e., compelled to throw away their arms in flight*; *exūtis* agrees with *cōpiis*; *armis* is an ablative of separation.

11. saepius, *too often*.

12. aliis . . . viderat, (*but*) *saw that he had met a different state of affairs*.

13. ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr., burst forth, rush out, sally*.

7. cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr. [com-+stō], stand firm; agree; cōnstat, it is known, it is ascer-*

tained, it is evident.

10. exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr., draw or strip off, strip, despoil; lay aside*.

12. meminī, -isse, *tr., defect., remember*.

15 reverti contendit ac, nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

*A prospect
of peace
rudely
shattered.*

7. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque
5 nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione VII proximus Oceanum in Andibus hiemabat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas
10 civitates frumenti causam dimisit; quo in numero est T. Terra-

15. prohibente, offering resistance.

16. incolumem: translate by an adverb.

17. hiemavit: the campaign was therefore a complete failure. This is the only instance where one of Caesar's legions wintered in the Province.

The events related in chapters 1-6 occurred in the winter of 57-56 B.C. The campaign of the year 56 begins here.

1. omnibus de causis . . . existimaret, had every reason to believe. Translate the following ablatives absolute as causal clauses.

2. superatis Belgis: see Bk. II, 1-33.

3. expulsis Germanis: see p. 189.

4. inita hieme: see on *inita aestate*, Bk. II, 2, 2.

5. subitum: translate by an adverb.

7. adulescens: added to distinguish him from his father the triumvir and his elder brother who was quaestor in Caesar's army.

proximus Oceanum: for case see App. 122, b; A. 432, a; B. 141, 3; H. 435, 2; H.-B. 380, b.

9. praefectos: Roman officers in command of auxiliary forces furnished by allies.

10. quo in numero = *quorum in numero*.

15. de-moror, -ari, -atus, tr. and intr., delay, retard; hinder.

4. hiems, hiemis, f., winter, winter season; storm.

5. subitus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

6. coerior, -iri, -ortus, intr. [com-+orior], arise, spring up, break out.

7. adulescens, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of *adollescō*], young; as subst., m., youth, young man.

9. praefectus, -i, m. [praeficiō], commander, captain of cavalry.

10. Terrasidius, -i, m., a Roman name; esp. Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune.

sidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Veneti
take the lead
in seizing the
Roman "am-
bassadors."*

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī, 5 paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sili atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōn- 10

1. huius . . . cīvitātis: *i.e.*, the last named tribe, the Veneti.

2. omnis . . . maritimae: genitive of the whole depending on *amplissima*.

regiōnum eārum modifies *ōrae*.

4. atque ūsū: see on *scientia atque ūsus*, Bk. II, 20, 8.

5. in magnō impetū, etc., freely, in the vast sweep of stormy and open sea, with its few scattered ports.

7. ūtī, to sail.

vectīgālēs: pred. appositive with *omnēs*, which is the object of *habent*. Other coast tribes were compelled to use the harbors of the Veneti, and to pay toll for the privilege. The commerce of the maritime Gauls extended from Ireland to Spain.

ab hīs fit . . . retinendī, these began by detaining. The Veneti set the example of detaining the Roman *lēgātī* by seizing Silius and Velanius.

10. ut . . . cōnsilia: this is a characteristic of the Gauls of which Caesar often speaks; cf. Bk. II, 1, 11.

11. Trebius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune.

12. Velānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Velanius, a military tribune.

Silius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Titus Silius, a military tribune.

1. amplius, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, of large extent; renowned, splendid, noted.

2. ōra, -ae, *f.*, coast, shore.

4. nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [nāvis+agō], set sail, sail.

nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta], naval, nautical.

6. portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port.

7. vectīgālis, -e, *adj.* [vectīgal], tributary.

9. recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, win back, recover.

silia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitatēs sollicitant, ut in eā libertāte
 15 quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Preparations for the war. The advantage is with the Veneti. 9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī
 5 iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquae-

11. eādem dē causā: *i.e., quod . . . existimābant*, ll. 8, 9.

12. inter sē coniūrant, *they made a solemn agreement*; the chiefs were given authority to act on behalf of the different tribes.

13. commūnī cōnsiliō, *in accordance with the general plan, i.e., by common consent*.

eundem . . . lātūrōs, *they would all share the same fate*.

14. ut . . . permanēre . . . mālint, *to choose to continue . . . rather than*.

18. sī velit . . . remittat: in the direct form, *sī vīs . . . remitte*.

2. aberat longius, *was too far away, i.e., to take command in person*. Where was he? See text of ch. 7, 4.

nāvēs longās, *war-ships*, in contrast to the *nāvēs onerāriae*, which were made shorter and broader.

4. institui, *to be procured*.

5. cum primum . . . potuit, *as soon as the time of the year permitted*. He probably joined the army early in May. For mood of *potuit* see App. 237; B. 287, 1; H.-B. 557, a.

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exeō], exit; result, end, outcome.

16. mālō, mālle, mālui, —, *tr.* [magis+volō], prefer, choose.

3. Liger, -eris, *m.*, the river Loire. Map IV, C-F, 3-4.

4. rēmex, -igis, *m.* [rēmus+agō], rower, oarsman.

nauta, -ae, *m.* [=nāvita, from nāvis], sailor.

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.* [gubernō, steer], helmsman, pilot.

que item civitatēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudine 10 periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs 15 propter inopiam frūmentī diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōn-

7. **simul**: the words that follow, through *coniectōs*, form a semi-parenthetical addition to *cognitō adventū*. The Veneti were stirred to activity not only by Caesar's arrival, but also by the realization of the extent of their offense.

8. **quantum . . . admīsissent**, *how great an outrage they had committed*, indirect question, explained by *lēgātōs . . . coniectōs (esse)* which likewise depends on *intellegēbant*.

lēgātōs: they were not ambassadors in the strict sense. They were Caesar's lieutenants, collecting supplies for the army; see ch. 7, 8-10.

quod nōmen, *a name which*; the expression is condensed. What Caesar means is "a name whose bearers had always been sacred and inviolate."

9. **ad** = *apud*.

10. **retentōs et coniectōs**, *freely, in arresting and throwing in chains*.

12. **instituunt**: with the infinitive, this verb means "to make preparations," "to begin."

hōc . . . quod, *with the greater hope (of success) because*; *hōc* is an ablative of measure of difference, with which the idea of cause also came to be associated.

multum: adverbial accusative, expressing degree.

13. **nātūrā**: for case see App. 143, *a*; A. 431; B. 219, 1; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 437.

pedestria itinera, *approaches by land*.

esse concīsa . . . impedītam, *were intersected . . . was difficult*.

aestuāriīs: see on Bk. II, 28, 3.

15. **neque** = *et nōn*. The negative belongs only to *posse*.

8. **facinus**, -oris, *n.* [faciō], misdeed, outrage, crime.

9. **sānctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of sanciō], sacred, inviolable.

in-violātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unharmed, inviolate.

14. **in-scientia**, -ae, *f.*, lack of knowledge, ignorance.

fīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen
 sē plūrimum nāvibus posse; Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem
 habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent,
 20 vada, portūs, īsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem
 in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō
 perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs, oppida mūniunt, frūmenta
 ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem
 primum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt
 25 cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs,
 Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia
 ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

17. iam, even.

ut: adversative, *although*; for the mood of *acciderent* see App. 247;
 A. 527, a; B. 308; H. 586, II; H.-B. 532, 2, b.

18. posse . . . habēre . . . nōvisse: supply some word like *sciēbant*
 from the context.

Rōmānōs, etc., *while the Romans*, etc., adversative asyndeton.

facultātem = *cōpiam*.

20. nōvisse: for the perfect with pres. force see App. 193, I, a; A. 476;
 B. 262; H. 538, 4; H.-B. 487.

longē aliam . . . atque, *far different from what it was*; for this use of
atque see on *eadem* . . . *haec*, Bk. II, 6, 4.

21. conclūsō marī, *inland sea*, such as the Mediterranean.

22. hīs . . . cōnsiliīs, *after forming these plans*. The plans are men-
 tioned in lines 10-12; the following lines (12-22) give the grounds for their
 hope of success in carrying them out.

23. cōstābat: for the translation, see on *quem* . . . *cōstābat*, ch. 6, 6.

24. primum: an adverb.

20. insula, -ae, f., island.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, tr., learn,
 become acquainted with; pf.
 tense, have learned and hence
 know.

21. conclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr.
 [com-+claudō], shut up, close;
 conclūsum mare, an inland sea.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., vast, immense.

23. Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of
 the Veneti. Map IV, B, 3.

25. Lexoviī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe
 southwest of the Seine, about modern
 Lisieux. Map IV, C-D, 2.

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe
 about modern Nantes. Map IV,
 C, 3.

26. Ambiliatī, -ōrum, m., a people of
 Picardy. Map IV, C, 3.

Diablintēs, -um, m., probably a
 division of the Aulerci. Map IV,
 C, 2.

*Caesar's reasons
for undertaking
the war.
His plan.*

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās
suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad
id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum
Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs
obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs, nē hāc parte 5
neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque
cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad
bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs
nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, prius-
quam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius 10
distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

*He distributes
his forces.*

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs,
quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū
mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque

2. multa, many considerations, explained by iniūria, rebelliō, dēfectiō, coniūrātiō, and the clause nē . . . arbitrārentur.

3. iniūria . . . Rōmānōrum, the wrong done by detaining, etc.

equitum: i.e., praefectī tribūnīque mīlitum of ch. 7, 9, who were of equestrian rank.

5. in primīs, etc., and especially, etc., the strongest reason of all.
nē, the fear that.

hāc . . . neglēctā: ablative absolute, equivalent to a conditional clause.

7. novīs . . . studēre, desired a change of government.

9. nātūrā, by nature, ablative of cause.

ōdisse: see App. 86; A. 205; B. 133; H. 299, 2; H.-B. 199, 1.

10. cōspīrārent: i.e., with the Veneti.

partiendum sibi, that he ought to divide; construction of sibi?

2. flūminī: for a different construction with proximus see on ch. 7, 7.

3. adeat, contineat, prohibeat: volitive subjunctives in substantive clauses; ut might have been used to connect them with mandat; translate by infinitives.

4. rebelliō, -ōnis, f. [rebellis, revolted], a renewal of war, revolt.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f. [dēficiō], desertion, revolt.

6. neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [nec+legō], disregard, neglect, not heed.

8. mōbiliter, adv. [mōbilis], rapidly, easily.

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq. of exciō], arouse, rouse; excite, incite.

10. cōspīrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [com-+spīrō], breathe together; agree together, combine, conspire.

partior, -īri, -ītus, tr. [pars], divide, distribute.

11. dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., assign, apportion, distribute.

in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessitī
 5 dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, pro-
 hibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō
 numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs
 nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs
 coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus
 10 tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam
 manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscētem classī
 Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquīsque
 pācātis regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum
 possit, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs
 15 contendit.

*Situations of
the towns of
the Veneti.*

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita
 in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiisque neque pedibus

4. in officiō contineat, *hold them to their allegiance.* auxiliō: dative.

6. legiōnāriīs: Roman legionary soldiers, in contrast to *equitātūs*, which consisted only of foreign allies.

7. ex hīs nātiōnibus: *i.e.*, of Aquitania.

8. Galliam: *i.e.*, Celtic Gaul, as often.

10. quī eam (= *eārum cīvitatū*) . . . cūret, *to see that these forces should be kept separate, i.e.*, from those of the Veneti. For the gerundive see note on *pontem*, etc., Bk. I, 13, 2.

11. D. Brūtum: see Vocab., *Brūtus* (3).

classī: the fleet which had just been built; see ch. 9, 1-5.

14. pedestribus cōpiīs: of the eight legions, three were now stationed in *Aremorica* (see Map IV, B-D, 2), twelve cohorts were in Aquitania, two legions and eight cohorts were with Caesar, and one legion was with the fleet.

1. eius modī ferē, *usually such.* sitūs: translate as a singular.
 posita, *since they were located.*

2. extrēmīs, *the ends of.*

pedibus, *on foot, i.e.*, on the land side; ablative of means, as is also *nāvibus*, line 4.

4. officium, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], *allegiance, duty; obedience.*

11. D., *abbr. for Decimus*, -ī, *m.*, *a praenomen.*

12. Pictonēs, -um, *m.*, *a Gallic tribe south of the Loire. Map IV, C-D, 3.*

1. situs, -ūs, *m.*, *situation, site, position.*

2. lingula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of lingua*], *tongue of land, a small peninsula.*

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.* [prōmineō], *headland, promontory.*

aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē 5 oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, omnia sua dēportābant sēque in proxima 10

3. cum . . . incitāvisset, *when the tide had rushed in from the deep*. The high tide inundated the low land lying between the *oppida* and the mainland, and cut off all communication.

5. adflīctārentur, *would be damaged* if they should be caught in the shallows at ebb tide.

utrāque rē: *i.e.*, by the danger attending an attack by land at flood tide, and an attack by sea at the ebb. Of course a combined attack by land and sea was out of the question.

7. operis, *siege works*; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

superātī . . . coeperant, *had been put at a disadvantage . . . and had begun*. extrūsō marī, *when the sea had been shut out*.

8. hīs (*i.e.*, *aggere ac mōlibus*) . . . adaequātīs, *when these had been raised to a level with*. moenibus: dative.

The Romans, working when the tide was low, extended two parallel dikes along the tongue of land from the mainland to the town. During the construction of the works, the space between the dikes was covered with water at high tide; but when their labor was nearly finished, the soldiers waited for the ebb and rushed the work to completion before the tide turned, thus securing a permanent dry connection with the mainland. The ends of the dikes nearest the town were then built up to serve as *aggerēs*. When the Romans had thus completed their preparations for attack, the Veneti brought up their ships to the opposite side of the town, and embarking with all their possessions, sailed to another stronghold.

fortūnīs suīs, *freely, of a successful defense*, dative; the abl. with *dē* is more common with *dēspērō*.

9. cuius rei = *quārum* (*nāvium*).

10. facultātem, as in ch. 9, 18.

3. aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging tide.

5. adflīctō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of adflīgō*], damage, injure, shatter; wreck.

6. quandō, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

7. ex-trūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *tr.*

[trūdō, shove], thrust out, shut out.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dam, dike.

9. ad-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr. and intr.*, drive to, land, bring up.

10. dē-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry away, remove.

oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci
dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciē-
bant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestatibus dētinēbantur, summa-
que erat vāstō atque apertō mari, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac
15 prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

*Description of
their ships.*

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum
factae armataeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāni-
ōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum
aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item
5 puppēs ad magnitudinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommo-
dātae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumē-

11. **oppida**: the pl. is used because the act was often repeated; hence also the imperfects *dēportābant*, etc.

12. **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

13. **summa**: modifies *difficultās*.

14. **rārīs . . . portibus**, since the harbors were widely scattered and, in fact, there were almost none at all.

1. **namque . . . erant**, (but navigation was less dangerous to the Veneti) for; *namque* implies an ellipsis, that is, the omission of something which the writer has in mind but which he does not fully express.

3. **nostrārum nāvium**: supply *carīnae*.

4. **excipere**, to withstand.

ērēctae: used as a predicate adjective, modifying *puppēs* as well as *prōrae*; *erant* is to be supplied with the nominatives throughout this passage.

6. **tōtae**, entirely.

ex rōbore: for constr. see App. 136; A. 403; H. 467; H.-B. 406, 4.

quamvis (acc. of *quīvis*) . . . **contumēliam**, any violence and rough treatment whatever.

11. **opportunitās, -ātis, f.** [opportūnus], favorable position, advantage.

13. **dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr.** [dē+teneō], keep back, delay.

14. **rārus, -a, -um, adj.**, scattered, far apart, here and there, few.

1. **nam-que, conj.**, for, for in fact, inasmuch as.

2. **carīna, -ae, f.**, hull, bottom of a ship.

aliquantō, adv. [aliquantus], in some degree, somewhat, considerably.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., level, flat.

3. **dēcessus, -ūs, m.** [dēcēdō], departure of tide, ebb or fall.

4. **prōra, -ae, f.**, the bow of a ship, prow.

ad-modum, adv., very, very much, quite.

ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr. [ex+regō], lift, raise; *pf. part. as adj.*, standing upright, high.

5. **puppis, -is, f.**, stern of a ship.

flūctus, -ūs, m. [fluō], wave.

accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of accommodō*], adapted, fit.

6. **rōbur, -oris, n.**, oak, oak-timber.

liam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōfixa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs 10 inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī con-

7. *trānstra*, *cross-beams*, on which the deck rested, not "benches" for the rowers, the usual meaning. The Veneti had no oarsmen.

pedālibus . . . *trabibus*, *made of beams a foot in thickness*.

8. *digitī pollicis crassitūdine*, *of the thickness of a thumb*, descriptive ablative.

9. *pellēs*, *raw hides*. *prō*, *(were used) instead of*.

alūtae . . . *cōfectae*, *leather tanned thin*, instead of the canvas sails used by the Romans.

11. *eō quod* . . . *quod*, *for this reason, which is more probable, that*.

13. *tanta* . . . *nāvium* = *tantī oneris nāvēs*; cf. *tantī oneris turrim*, Bk. II, 30, 11.

regī . . . *posse*, *could not very easily be managed with sails*.

vēlīs . . . *commodē* belongs with both infinitives.

14. *nostrae classī*, etc., *the encounter of our fleet was of such a nature that it had the advantage*, etc.

7. *trānstrum*, -ī, *n.*, a cross-beam or timber; bench for rowers.

pedālis, -e, *adj.* [pēs], of a foot in thickness or diameter.

8. *cōfigō*, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *tr.* [com-+fīgō], fasten together, fasten.

clāvus, -ī, *m.* [claudō], nail, spike.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ferrum], of iron, iron.

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; toe; inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb; *digitus pollex*, the thumb.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [crassus, thick], thickness.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.

9. *fūnis*, -is, *m.*, cable, rope.

re-vinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, *tr.*, fasten, bind.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, veil; awning, sail.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, tanned leather, leather.

10. *tenuiter*, *adv.* [tenuis], thinly, slightly.

linum, -ī, *n.*, flax, linen, canvas.

12. *ventus*, -ī, *m.*, wind.

13. *regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctum*, *tr.*, rule, guide, control.

14. *congressus*, -ūs, *m.* [congre-dior], a meeting, encounter, conflict.

15 gressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret,
 reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra
 et accommodātiōra. Neque enim iīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre
 poterant (tanta in iīs erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem
 facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē
 20 cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat, ut cum sē ventō dedissent,
 et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius
 et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum
 omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

15. pulsū rēmōrum, *in the fact that it was propelled by oars.*

16. prō, *in view of.*

17. iīs = *hīs nāvibus* of l. 14; for case see note on *civitātī persuāsit*, Bk. I, 2, 4.

rōstrō: ablative of means.

18. neque . . . tēlum adigēbātur, *nor could a javelin be thrown.*

19. minus commodē (= *nōn facile*) . . . continēbantur: part of the tactics of Roman sea fighting was to row alongside the enemy's ship, fasten the two vessels together by a stout iron hook, and then attack in hand to hand combat. The fact that the sides of the boats of the Veneti were so high made this method of fighting almost impossible.

20. accēdēbat ut, *there was the additional advantage that.*

sē ventō dedissent, *ran before the wind.*

21. ferrent: observe that the imperfects are introduced by *ut* and the past perfects by *cum*. In translating, omit the *et* before *tempestātem*.

cōsisterent, *ran aground.*

22. quārum rērum . . . cāsus, *all these contingencies.*

23. nāvibus: a dative of agent. Caesar is thinking of the crews of the boats, and so uses a construction which would naturally be used to refer only to persons.

15. pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō], a stroke, beat; pulsus rēmōrum, rowing.

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar.

16. aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted.

17. rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.*, injure, do harm.

18. firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [firmus], strength, solidity.

20. cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook, fastening.

21. tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus], safely, securely.

22. cōtēs, -is, *f.*, sharp rock, reef.

23. ex-timēscō, -ere, -timuī, —, *tr.* and *intr.* [timēscō, fear], be afraid; fear greatly, dread.

The first naval battle on the Atlantic. Roman ingenuity again triumphant.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX 5 nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtac, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō 10 enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs

1. **Caesar ubi**: in translating expressions of this type, when the subordinate verb and the main verb refer to the same subject, the noun should usually be translated in the subordinate clause.

2. **sūmī**, *was being spent*.

neque . . . neque: see on *neque . . . neque*, ch. 3, 9.

3. **neque . . . posse**, *nor could they be damaged*; why is the infinitive *nocērī* impersonal?

4. **quae . . . vīsa est**, *as soon as this arrived and was seen by the enemy*.

6. **omnī . . . ōrnātissimae**, *thoroughly provided with every kind of equipment, including arms, tackling etc.*

7. **nostrīs**: supply *nāvibus*. **neque**, etc., *but it was not clear to Brutus*.

10. **quid agerent**: the direct form would be *quid agāmus*? "what shall we do?" For the deliberative question see App. 210, 263; A. 444; B. 277; H. 559, 4; H.-B. 503.

11. **nocērī nōn posse**, *that no damage could be done (to the enemy's boats)*.

turribus . . . excitātīs, *even though towers were erected*.

12. **hās . . . superābat**: in this case the *turrēs* were merely platforms on the decks of the Roman vessels, which could not be built to any considerable height.

14. **missa**, *those thrown*. **gravius acciderent**, *struck with greater force*.

ūna . . . rēs, *only one measure was of great service*. In reality this device saved the day for the Roman fleet.

3. **reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum**, *tr. [re-+premō], keep back, check, restrain*.

6. **ōrnātus, -a, -um**, *adj. [pf. part. of ōrnō], furnished, fitted out, well equipped*.

15 praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum
20 omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs

15. **praeparāta**: participle equivalent to a relative clause.

16. **nōn absimilī fōrmā**, etc., *of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks*; *fōrmā* is ablative of description; a dative, *fōrmae*, is understood before *mūrālium*.

mūrālium falcium: somewhat resembling the hooks used by fire companies in pulling down walls; for *illus.* see Vocab., *falx*.

hīs: ablative of means, with *comprehēnsī adductīque*.

17. **comprehēnsī . . . erant . . . praerumpēbantur**: both tenses of the indicative denote repeated action in past time. The past perfect is used because the action of the *cum* clause ("whenever," etc.) preceded that of the main clause. For the mood see App. 241, *b*; A. 548; B. 288, 3; H. 601, 4; H.-B. 579.

18. **adductī**: *i.e.*, toward the Roman ships.

nāvigio rēmīs incitātō, *the boats were rowed swiftly away and*, etc.

20. **nāvibus**: a dative of reference, to be translated like a genitive.

15. **prae-parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare beforehand, provide.

falx, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle, hook.

in-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [*serō*, entwine], thrust into, insert.

ad-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fasten to, attach.

16. **longurius**, -ī, *m.* [*longus*], a long pole.

ab-similis, -e, *adj.*, unlike.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape; appearance, beauty.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [*mūrus*], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrālis falx**, a wall-hook.

17. **antenna**, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, pole, mast.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, fasten, make fast.

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, *tr.*, seize, catch; arrest.

18. **nāvigium**, -ī, *n.* [*nāvigō*], a vessel, ship, boat.

prae-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.*, break off, tear away.

19. **abscidō**, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [*abs+caedō*], cut off, tear away.

necessāriō, *adv.* [*necessārius*], unavoidably, necessarily.

concidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *intr.* [*com-+cadō*], collapse; fall, fall dead.

20. **armāmenta**, -ōrum, *n.* [*armō*], implements, *esp.* tackle or rigging of a ship.

facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque ōmnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, 25 unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

An attempted flight prevented by a calm. A complete victory.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperīrētur auxili- 5 um, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae

23. superābant: intransitive, equivalent to *superiōrēs erant*.

in cōnspectū: Caesar, with his land force, was encamped on the heights of St. Gildas.

24. paulō fortius: of unusual bravery; paulō is an ablative of measure of difference.

26. unde = ē quibus.

1. singulās: supply *nāvēs hostium*.

2. bīnae ac ternae nāvēs, our vessels by twos and threes.

circumsteterant, had assailed; for mode, see on ch. 14, 17.

4. quod fierī, that this was taking place.

5. eī rei, for this situation, referring to *mīlitēs . . . contendēbant*.

6. contendērunt: the perfect denotes a single act, as opposed to *contendēbant*, expressing continued endeavor.

7. quō = in quam. ferēbat, was blowing.

malacia (sc. ventī) ac tranquillitās (sc. maris), calm of the wind and sea. The prevailing winds of this region at this season are east and northeast, the only ones which would allow the enemy to reach port readily. When the winds blow in the morning, a dead calm usually comes on about noon, which is just what happened in this battle.

25. factum, -ī, n. [faciō], deed, act.

26. dēspectus, -ūs, m. [dēspiciō], a view, outlook.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter], three each or apiece; three by three.

3. trāscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, tr. and intr. [trāns+scandō,

climb], climb across or over into, board.

7. malacia, -ae, f., a calm at sea.

8. tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquillus, calm], stillness; calmness of mind or weather.

ex-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, intr., stand forth, appear; ensue.

quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna;
 10 nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae
 ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenīrent, cum
 ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

*The Veneti sur-
 render and pay
 a heavy penalty.*

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque
 ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis
 iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid
 cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod
 5 ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī
 neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida
 dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdi-
 dērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō
 diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōn-
 10 servārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā
 vēndidit.

9. ad . . . cōficiendum: colloquial, like our "to finish up the business"
 but translate, *for making the victory complete.*

10. singulās, *one after another.*

11. interventū: ablative denoting time and cause.

pervenīrent: note the different forces of *per* in *perpaucae* and *pervenīrent*.

cum . . . pugnārētur, *since the battle continued*, explains *noctis interventū*.

12. hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M.

2. cum . . . tum (l. 4): correlative, *not only . . . but also.*

3. etiam, *and in addition.* graviōris aetātis, *of more advanced age.*

in quibus . . . fuit, *who possessed.*

4. nāvium quod . . . fuerat, *whatever ships they had anywhere.*

5. quibus, *i.e., iuventūte et nāvibus.*

6. quō . . . reciperent . . . quem ad modum . . . dēfenderent, *any place in which they could take refuge* (lit. "whither they could," etc.) . . . *any means by which they could defend their towns.*

8. eō gravius . . . quō, *the more severely . . . so that.*

10. sub corōnā, *as slaves* (lit. *under the crown*). As in the case of animals intended for sacrifice, so in early times prisoners of war about to be sold as slaves were crowned with garlands.

10. cōsector, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sector, *freq. of sequor*, follow eagerly], follow eagerly, pursue, chase, hunt down.

11. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [interveniō],

intervention, interposition.

5. ubique, *adv.*, in any place, everywhere.

10. corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, wreath, garland.

*Sabinus
advances into
the country
of the Venelli,
but acts on
the defensive.*

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvī-
tātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum coēgerat; atque 5
hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō
interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt
sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaue praetereā multi-
tūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque
convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab 10
agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō
omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā
eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs
cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus
in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum 15

4. *ac, and also.*

summam imperī, the chief command, as in Bk. II, 23, 14.

6. *hīs paucīs diēbus:* after the arrival of Sabinus, just mentioned.

Aulercī, etc.: observe that only two tribes are named in this line.

7. *auctōrēs . . . nōlēbant, were unwilling to sanction the war; the subject is supplied from senātū.*

9. *perditōrum, desperate.*

10. *quōs:* the antecedent is an understood *hominum* (or *eōrum*).

12. *omnibus rēbus, in every respect. cum: adversative, while contrā, opposite.*

13. *duōrum, only two.*

spatiō: a loose use of the ablative of measure of difference.

14. *potestātem faceret, offered him an opportunity.*

iam, finally, even, so also in l. 17.

hostibus . . . venīret, came to be an object of contempt to the enemy; a clause of result.

3. *Viridovīx, -īcis, m., a chief of the Venelli.*

6. *Eburovīcēs, -um, m., a division of the Aulerci. Map IV, D, 2.*

7. *auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō], originator, instigator, author; cause.*

11. *cultūra, -ae, f. [colō], cultivation; agrī cultūra, agriculture.*

sē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call aside, call away, withdraw.

15. *contemptiō, -ōnis, f. [contemnō], disdain, contempt.*

vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdīne hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi
20 aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn existimābat.

*By a stratagem
he induces the
enemy to attack
his camp.*

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēligit, Gallum, ex
iīs, quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs
praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat,
5 et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit,
timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā
Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse quīn proximā
nocte Sabinus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem
auxilī ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi audītum est,
10 conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam

16. nōn nihil, *not a little*, adverbial accusative.

tantam . . . praebuit, *inspired such a belief* (on the part of the enemy) *in his fear*.

18. id refers to castrīs . . . tenēbat, l. 12.

eā dē causā, quod, *for the reason that*; sometimes the forms of the demonstrative *is* are equivalent to the definite article.

19. eō . . . tenēret, *in the absence of the commander-in-chief*.

20. lēgātō: dative of agent, with dīmīcandum (*esse*).

1. cōfirmātā, *strengthened*.

3. auxiliī causā, *as auxiliaries*.

5. quid . . . ēdocet, *explained what he wished him to do*.

prō perfugā, *as a deserter*.

6. quibus . . . premātur, like abesse, depends on docet.

7. neque longius, etc., *and that not later than the next night Sabinus would lead out, etc.*, lit. *and it was no further distant* (i.e., no longer time intervened), etc. The quīn cl. is an extension of the construction described in App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 298; H. 594, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

10. negōtī . . . gerendī, *freely, of making a successful attack*.

16. carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, *tr.*,
pluck; pick; carp at, censure.

4. praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize.
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pollicitor, pro-
mise], a promise, offer.

5. ē-doceō, -ēre, -cuī, -ctum, *tr.*,

inform in detail, explain.

8. clam, *adv.*, secretly.

10. conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*
and *intr.* [com-+clāmō], cry out
together, cry out loudly, exclaim,
shout.

nōn esse; ad cāstra irī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius 15 Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab iīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt. 20

The assault is repulsed. A sally and pursuit. Only a few escape.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque per-

11. irī oportēre: supply a conjunction, *but*, to connect with the preceding, and translate by the personal construction.

12. superiōrum diērum, *during the preceding days*; for the double gen. cf. *eōrum diērum*, etc., Bk. II, 17, 5.

14. spēs . . . bellī, *the hope (of a fortunate outcome) of the war with the Veneti*; the gen. is objective. They had probably heard of Caesar's failures as told in ch. 14, 1-4, but they had not yet learned the results of the war.

et quod, *and the fact that*; the presents *volunt* and *crēdunt* are not historical presents, but are used because the clause states a general fact. English uses the present in the same way.

15. prius . . . quam . . . sit concessum, *until they had given their consent*; the subjunctive is anticipatory.

18. ut explōrātā victōriā: abl. abs., *as if the victory were already assured*.

19. compleant: why subjunctive?

2. passūs mīlle: acc. of extent with *acclīvis*; cf. *passūs . . . apertus*, Bk. II, 18, 5.

3. quam . . . spatī, *as little time as possible*.

4. darētur: purpose.

exanimātīque: *-que* adds the results of what precedes, "and so," etc.

12. cūctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor], delay, hesitation.

13. cōfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōfirmō], assurance, evidence.

14. Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Veneti.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns], willingly,

with pleasure.

18. laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful, glad, rejoicing.

sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, twig, fagot.

virgulta, -ōrum, *n.*, sprouts, brushwood.

2. hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither.

5 vērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fieri iubet. Factum est opportūnitate loci, hostium īnsientiā ac dēfatigatiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem
10 nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlites nostrī cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus
15 cīvitatēque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae,

5. cupientibus, as they eagerly desired; dative.

6. onera: the brush and other material with which they intended to fill the Roman trenches.

8. hostium īnsientiā: opposed to mīlitum . . . exercitātiōne.

10. ac, but.

12. equitēs: subject of reliquērunt.

15. Titūriō: i.e., Sabīnō; the nōmen is used in place of the cognōmen.

nam ut, etc., freely, for while the Gauls are by disposition very ready to begin a war, they lack firmness of character and a resolute spirit to face disasters. Literally?

1. P. Crassus: see ch. 11, 6-9.

cum . . . pervēnisset: translate as an independent clause, beginning the second clause at cum intellexeret;—Crassus arrived . . . and, since he understood . . . he thought.

2. ut ante dictum: in Book I, 1.

8. dēfatigatiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō], weariness, exhaustion.

9. exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [exercitō, practice frequently], exercise, practice.

10. vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr., turn; tergum vertere, flee.

16. alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., eager,

active, ready.

prōptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of prōmō, bring out], evident; ready; quick, prompt.

17. mollis, -e, adj., soft, delicate; yielding; inconstant.

mēns, mentis, f., mind, thought; purpose, resolution; feelings.

*Crassus makes
careful prepara-
tion for the war.
A cavalry
skirmish with
the Sotiates.*

cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. 5 Mānlius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, 10 nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō, Sotiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās 15 in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. **paucis ante annis**: this was twenty-two years before.

5. **L. Mānlius**, governor of the province, was defeated in Spain by one of the quaestors of Sertorius, and during his retreat was ambushed in Aquitania.

7. **nōn mediocrem**, *unusual*.

9. **Tolōsā . . . Narbōne**: construe with *ēvocātīs*.

10. **cīvitatēs**, *cities*; the towns usually exercised authority over a certain extent of the adjacent territory.

finitimae agrees with *cīvitatēs*, and governs the dat. *regiōnibus*.

11. **ēvocātīs**: these were veterans, mostly petty officers, who had served their terms of enlistment. They were often invited in special emergencies to reënter the service, with extra pay and privileges.

12. **equitātūque**: sc. *coāctō*.

13. **quō plūrimum valēbant**, *in which they were very strong*.

14. **primum**: an adverb.

4. **Praecōninus**, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate.

6. **prō-cōnsul**, -is, *m.*, the governor of a province, proconsul.

7. **mediocris**, -e, *adj.* [medius], ordinary, moderate.

dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], care, diligence.

9. **Tolōsa**, -ae, *f.*, a town on the Garonne, modern Toulouse. Map IV, D, 5.

Carcasō, -ōnis, *f.*, a town of the Province, modern Carcassonne. Map IV, E, 5.

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.*, a town of the Province, modern Narbonne. Map IV, E, 5.

11. **Sotiātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the most powerful people of Aquitania. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

16. **convallis**, -is, *f.* [com-+vallis], valley, defile.

*A defeat, a
siege, and a
surrender.*

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiātēs
superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquī-
tāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine
imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscntulō duce efficere
5 possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs
terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō, Crassus
ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus
fortiter resistantibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne
temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius
10 reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multīs
locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt) ubi dīligentiā nos-
trōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad
Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat, petunt.
Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

2. victōriūs: the adjective *frētus* takes a dependent ablative expressing a figurative idea of place (*on*).

3. quid . . . possent: indirect question, subject of *perspicī*.

4. imperātōre, *commander-in chief*, i.e., Caesar.

adulēscntulō, *freely, scarcely more than a boy*.

5. cuperent: coördinate with *putārent*; supply *et* in translation before *nostrī*, of line 3.

7. ex itinere: see on *ex itinere*, Bk. II, 6, 2.

8. aliās . . . aliās: as in Bk. II, 29, 15, 16. Translate the ablatives absolute as main clauses, and begin a new sentence with *ubi*,—*but when*, etc.

9. cuniculīs: subterranean passages by which the Gauls attempted to undermine the Roman *agger*.

11. aerāriae sectūraeque, *copper mines and quarries*. Traces of these ancient mines have been found.

dīligentiā: abl. of cause.

14. faciunt, *they do so*.

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying up-
on, confiding in.

4. adulēscntulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of*
adulēscēns], a very young man,
a mere boy.

9. cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, rabbit-burrow;
tunnel, mine.

11. aerāria, -ae, *f.* [*aerārius*, of
copper], copper mine.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [*secō*], a cutting;
mine, quarry.

12. prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
intr. [*prō+faciō*], make progress,
accomplish.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrorum intentis animis, *An unsuccessful attempt to escape.* aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iīs fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, si 5 quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma 10 milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūteretur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

1. in eam rem . . . animis, while the attention of all our men was directed toward this matter.

2. aliā ex parte belongs with ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, l. 9. The main cl. is Adiatunnus . . . cum DC dēvōtīs . . . ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus . . . repulsus . . . impetrāvit, a part of which is repeated in cum hīs Adiatunnus, l. 9, on account of the long parenthesis quōrum, l. 4, . . . recūsāret.

3. soldūriōs: keep the word in translating.

4. condiciō, terms of service.

ut belongs with fruantur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant.

commodis: abl. with fruantur.

5. si quid . . . accidat, if anything happens, i.e., if any disaster happens; a common form of expression in English also.

6. unā ferant, share.

sibi . . . cōnsciscant: compare the same phrase in Bk. I, 4, 11.

7. neque . . . quisquam = et nēmō; quisquam is in the emphatic position. hominum memoriā, within the memory of man.

9. recūsāret: for mood see App. 230; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591, 1; H.-B. 521, 1.

12. tamen, nevertheless, i.e., in spite of his attempt to escape.

1. in-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, tr., extend, direct; pf. part. as adj., intent, absorbed.

2. Adiatunnus, -ī, m., a leader of the Sotiates.

3. soldūrii, -ōrum, m., vassals, retainers.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr., devote, consecrate; pf. part. dē-

vōtus as subst., a sworn follower.

4. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus], an advantage, privilege.

5. fruor, -ī, fructus, intr., enjoy, have the benefit of.

9. recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causa], refuse, decline.

11. vehementer, adv. [vehemens, violent], violently, powerfully.

Enemies that fight according to Roman tactics.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum yērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dīmīttēre, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum alacritāte et magnā hominum
10 multītūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei mīlītāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōnsuetūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus

3. oppidum: subject of *expugnātum* (esse).

et nātūrā . . . mūnītum, *protected both by the nature of its location and by artificial means*, by a wall and probably a moat: The efforts of Crassus to take the town by assault were unsuccessful, as stated in ch. 21, lines 7, 8.

4. quibus . . . ventum erat, *after* (lit. *within which*) *he arrived there*.

7. citeriōris Hispāniae: *Hispānia Tarracōnēnsis*, extending from the Pyrenees to the Ebro.

8. Aquītāniae: for case, see on *fīnitimae*, ch. 20, 10.

9. adventū: see on *quōrum adventū*, Bk. II, 7, 4.

10. ducēs, *as leaders*.

11. ūnā cum . . . fuerant, *had served under*.

Sertōriō: he had formerly been a lawyer and orator. He won his first laurels against the Cimbri. As a supporter of Marius, he had gone to Spain in 82 B. C., and, putting himself at the head of the revolting Lusitani, began a destructive warfare against the Romans that continued until his assassination in 72.

omnēs annōs, *continuously, i.e., during all the years of his military career in Spain*.

-que, *and therefore*; compare *exanimātique*, ch. 19, 4.

13. loca capere, *to choose suitable positions for encampment*.

2. Vocātēs, -ium, m., *an Aquitanian people south of the Garonne. Map IV, C-D, 4.*

Tarusātēs, -ium, m., *a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania, neighbors of the Vocates. Map IV, C, 4-5.*

5. quōque versus, *adv., in every direction*.

9. alacritās, -ātis, f. [*alacer*], *eagerness, readiness*.

11. Sertōrius, -ī, m., *a Roman name; esp. Quintus Sertorius, a partisan of Marius.*

nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadver-
tit suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem 15
et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, et
ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque
sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūnc-
tandum exīstimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōn-
silium dēlātā ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem 20
pugnae cōstituit.

*They adopt
the "Fabian
policy" and
Crassus
decides to attack
their camp.*

24. Prīmā lūce, prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī
aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs,
quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent, exspectābat. Illī,
etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam
paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmīcātūrōs exīstimābant, 5
tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs commeātū inter-

14. *quod, this, explained by the following infinitives, or it may be regarded as a mere connective, therefore. (Compare quod sī.)*

15. *dīdūcī, could be divided.*

18. *in diēs, daily, from day to day.*

*nōn cūncandum (=dubitandum) . . . dēcertāret: see on (sibi) dubi-
tandum nōn, etc., Bk. II, 2, 9.*

19. *ad . . . dēlātā, brought before the council of war.*

20. *idem sentīre, held the same opinion.*

21. *pugnae: dative.*

1. *duplicī . . . institūtā (=instrūctā): Crassus's scanty force would have presented too small a front if it had been drawn up in the usual triplex aciēs.*

2. *auxiliīs . . . coniectīs (=conlocātīs): they were usually placed on the wings, but Crassus, knowing he must depend on his legionaries, stationed the auxiliary troops in the centre, in order to give them the support of the legionaries, and to prevent the possibility of their running away.*

6. *tūtius, a still safer course, predicate adjective with esse, which has the infinitive potīrī as its subject.*

obsessīs . . . interclūsō: the first ablative absolute, denoting means, is subordinate to the second. Translate both in the active voice, as coördinate with potīrī.

15. *dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., separate, divide.*

18. *cūncor, -ārī, -ātus, intr., delay,*

hesitate.

4. *et-sī, conj., even if, although, though.*

clūsō sine vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs infirmiorēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant.
 10 Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā, Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra irētur,
 15 cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

*The attack.
 The rear gate
 is not well
 defended.*

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, ad pugnam lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs

7. sine vulnere, *without bloodshed.*

8. in agmine: *i.e.*, not in battle array.

9. cōgitābant, *planned.*

11. suā refers to the subject *hostēs*.

12. opīniōne timōris: caused by their *cūctātiō*; for translation see on *tantum . . . praebuit*, ch. 17, 16.

14. exspectārī . . . nōn oportēre (= *dubitandum nōn esse*) quīn, *that they should not hesitate to attack* (lit. *go to*), etc.

15. omnibus cupientibus: abl. abs., *to the delight of all.*

ad . . . castra: this is the only instance in the Gallic war in which the Romans made an attack on a fortified camp.

1. multīs . . . coniectīs: abl. abs., *by a shower of javelins.*

2. mūnitiōnibus: the towers and breastworks on the *vāllum*.

3. quibus: *cōfīdō* takes sometimes the dative and sometimes the ablative, but usually the dative to refer to persons.

4. lapidibus tēlīs . . . comportandīs: gerundive construction, expressing means.

9. in-firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not strong, weak, feeble.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*com- + agitō*], consider thoroughly, reflect, ponder, think, intend, plan.

3. dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,

tr., drive from, ward off.

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [*auxilium*], auxiliary; *m. pl. as subst.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

4. sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ministrō, serve*], furnish, supply, give.

et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinio- 5
nem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac
nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn
frūstrā acciderēt, equitēs circumitis hostium castris Crassō
renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā
castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre. 10

*The camp is
captured and
the enemy
flee. The
usual pursuit
and slaughter.*

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut
magnis praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suos excitārent,
quid fieri vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum,
ēductis iis cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictæ
intritæ ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē 5
ex hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque
ad pugnam intentis celeriter ad eas quās diximus mūnitiōnēs
pervēnērunt atque his prōrutis prius in hostium castris cōn-
stitērunt, quam plānē ab his vidēri aut, quid rei gereretur,
cognōsci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī 10
redintegrātis vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere

5. *ad aggerem*: the Romans constructed a sloping mound leading up to the high earthworks of the Gauls; *ad* here means *for*, not *to*.

6. *cōstanter . . . timidē*, *stubbornly and fearlessly*.

9. *ab*, *on the side of*, a common use.

decumānā portā: the camp was built *cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī*; compare ch. 23, 12.

4. *ēductis*: translate as a principal clause.

relictæ gives the reason for *intritæ . . . erant*.

5. *longiōre*, *roundabout*.

8. *prius . . . quam*: when this word is separated, as here, it should be translated in the position in which *quam* stands in the sentence.

9. *vidēri*: supply *possent* from the following *posset*.

quid . . . gereretur, *what was going on*; subject of *posset*.

10. *nostrī*: *i.e.*, the Romans who were attacking the front of the camp.

11. *quod*, *a thing which*, referring to *redintegrātis vīribus*.

accidere cōnsuēvit, *usually happens*; for tense of *cōnsuēvit* see on *nōvisse*, ch. 9, 20.

5. *caespes*, -itis, *m.* [caedō], sod, turf.

7. *timidē*, *adv.* [timidus], timidly, with fear.

8. *circum-eō*, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, go around, march around.

5. *in-trītus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, not exhausted, unwearied.

8. *prō-ruō*, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, tear or pull down, demolish.

9. *plānē*, *adv.* [plānus], plainly, clearly, distinctly.

cōnsuēvit, ācrius pugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circum-
ventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et
fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs
15 campīs cōsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā
Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā,
multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

*The surrender
of the Aquitani.*

27. Hāc audītā pugnā, maxima pars Aquitāniae
sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō
in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs,
Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garunnī, Sibusātēs, Co-
5 cosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae quod
hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

13. per, over.

14. apertissimīs campīs, over quite open, level ground, which greatly
aided the pursuit.

15. quae: neuter, with *mīlium* as antecedent. English usage requires
a masculine because of the thought of "men" with "thousand."

16. relictā: translate as a main verb in the active voice, with *equitātus*
as subject, and make a separate sentence of *multā . . . recēpit*.

17. multā nocte, late at night.

2. quō in numerō: see on quō in numerō, ch. 7, 10.

5. paucae . . . nātiōnēs, only a few tribes, the most remote.

tempore: see on quibus, ch. 25, 3.

16. Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of
northern Spain. Map IV, A-B, 5.

2. ultrō, adv., to or on the farther
side; of one's own accord;
actually.

3. Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., an Aquita-
nian tribe about modern Tarbes.
Map IV, C, 5.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m., an Aquita-
nian people in modern La Bigorre.
Map IV, C-D, 5.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian
tribe about modern Pau. Map
IV, C, 5.

4. Elusātēs, -um, m., an Aquita-

nian tribe about modern Eauze.
Map IV, D, 5.

Gatēs, -um, m., a tribe south of the
Garonne. Map IV, D, 4-5.

Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central
Aquitania. Map IV, D, 5.

Garunnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe living
about the sources of the Garonne.
Map IV, D, 5.

Sibusātēs, -um, m., a tribe living
near the Pyrenees, about modern
Saubusse. Map IV, C, 5.

Cocosātēs, -um, m., a tribe of north-
western Aquitania. Map IV,
C, 4.

*Caesar advances
against the
Morini and
Menapii.
They retreat
into the forests.*

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope
exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā
pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs
essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce
mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exer- 5
citum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere
coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs, quae
proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque
silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt.
Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque 10
mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs
in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt
et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt
eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius
impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt. 15

2. exācta . . . erat, *was at an end.*

omnī . . . pācātā: *adversative, while all the rest of the Gauls had been subdued.*

4. essent: *for mood see note on ch. 22, 9.*

5. eō = *in Morinōs Menapiōsque.*

exercitum: *the army with which Caesar had made the campaign against the Veneti was now reduced to three legions and eight cohorts, as he had detached several divisions under the command of his lieutenants, as narrated in ch. 11.*

6. quī, *but they.*

longē aliā . . . ac, *by a plan very different from; see on longē aliam . . . atque, ch. 9, 20.*

8. proeliō contendissent. *had fought in open battle.*

10. initium, *edge.*

12. in opere = *in castrīs mūniendīs.*

14. longius . . . locīs, *too far, over rather unfavorable ground.*

8. continēns, -entis, *adj. [pres. part. of contineō], continuous, extensive; as subst., f., mainland, continent.*

12. ē-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr., fly or rush forth.*

15. dē-perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr., destroy utterly, lose.*

Caesar attempts to hew his way through the forests, but storms prevent.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et
 5 prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius
 10 sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīs reliquīsque item cīvitatibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs conlocāvit.

1. *reliquīs . . . diēbus*, in the days immediately following; *deinceps* denotes an uninterrupted series, "without intermission."

silvās caedere: that is, to cut a road through the forest.

2. *inermibus . . . militibus*: abl. abs., while the soldiers, etc.

4. *conversam ad hostem*, (with the tops) turned toward the enemy.

5. *prō vāllō*, as a breastwork.

6. *cōfectō*, cleared (lit. completed).

7. *ipsī*, (while the enemy) themselves, as opposed to their beasts and baggage.

9. *continuātiōne imbrium*, on account of the continuous rain storms.

10. *sub pellibus*: the tents of the summer camp were made of leather. In winter quarters the soldiers lived in huts.

11. *vicīs aedificiīsque*: see on *vicīs* and *aedificiīs*, Bk. II, 7, 7.

13. *in hibernīs conlocāvit*: the forces which had been under Sabinus and Crassus are of course included.

1. *deinceps*, *adv.* [dein+caput], one after another, successively; without intermission; next.

2. *imprūdēns*, -entis, *adj.* [in-+prūdēns], not foreseeing, off one's guard.

4. *māteria*, -am, and *māteriēs*, -em, *f.* [māter] (only in nom. and acc.

sing.), material, timber.

6. *pecus*, *pecoris*, *n.*, cattle, flock, herd.

9. *continuātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [continuō, connect], continuance, series, succession.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rain, hard rain, storm.

BOOK IV

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trāns-
German tribes cross into Gaul. Customs of the Suebi. iērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs 5 annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quot- annīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; 10 hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent.

1. quī fuit, etc.: we should say "which was in the year of the consul- ship," etc.

Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō: Pompey, Crassus, and Caesar had made an agreement by which they planned to unite their political influence and to control the affairs of Rome for their own benefit. This combination was known as the First Triumvirate. In the year to which Caesar here refers, 55 B.C., the two triumvirs who had been elected consuls used their influence to obtain for Caesar an extension of his control of Gaul for five years longer. His first appointment, which had been for a period of five years, would have ended the next year.

2. Germānī, a tribe of Germans.

4. quō = *in quod*.

5. causa trānseundī, etc.: see on Bk. III, 1, 5.

trānseundī: give all the case forms of the gerund of the verb *eō*.

6. bellō: to be taken with *exagitātī*.

8. pāgōs: in Caesar, *pāgus* means a subdivision of a Gallic or a German state; not the country, but its inhabitants.

ex quibus, etc., *from each of which they call out a thousand men every year*.

10. alunt: by agriculture.

11. rūsus refers to the repetition of the act, while *in vicem* refers to the change of persons.

annō post, *the following year*. illī, *while the former*.

2. Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe beyond the Rhine, below Cologne. Map IV, F-G, 1.

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe living east of the Usipetes. Map IV, G-H, 1.

5. Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful people of central Germany. Map IV, H-I, 2.

8. quot-annīs, *adv.*, annually.

11. vicis, *f.*, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; *in vicem*, in turn, alternately.

Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum
 15 frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs
 20 efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs

12. ratiō atque ūsus bellī, *military training*.

13. prīvātī: *i.e.*, belonging to individuals.

sēparātī (sc. *ab agrō commūnī*): all the land was held as the property of the state. At this time the Germans were in a state of transition from the nomadic life to an agricultural, settled condition.

longius: *diūtius* is the more usual word to denote time.

14. annō = ūnō annō. The number ūnus is not used in expressions of time or place unless emphatic.

15. frūmentō: ablative of means, similar in character to the ablative used with ūtor, fruor, etc.

maximam partem, *for the most part*; adverbial accusative expressing degree.

pecore: the eating of flesh almost exclusively was to the Romans a sign of barbarism. The agriculture of the Germans was very primitive, and their crops were small.

16. sunt, *are (engaged)*.

quae rēs, *this practice*, subject of alit and efficit.

17. ā puerīs, *from childhood*.

18. officiō . . . adsuēfactī, *trained to (lit. by) no obedience or discipline*; for the ablative see App. 143, a; B. 218, 7; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 431.

19. immānī . . . magnitūdine hominēs efficit, *makes them men of giant stature*; magnitūdine is an ablative of description used predicatively with hominēs.

20. in eam . . . addūxērunt, *they have carried their training to such a point*.

locīs frigidissimīs: ablative absolute,—*though their country is very*

13. sē-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, separate; *pf. part. as adj.*, separated, marked off, separate.

15. lāc, lactis, *n.*, milk.

16. vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor], hunting.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.

18. disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discipulus, learner], instruction, training, discipline.

adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [adsuētus+faciō], accustom.

frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

Their commerce with other tribes. Their cavalry tactics.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt 5

cold. It is probable that the climate, both of Gaul and Germany, has become milder since Caesar's time, as a result of clearing away the forests and draining the swamps.

21. neque: correl. with *et*.

vestītūs: genitive, depending on *quicquam*.

22. aperta = *nūda*.

1. mercātōribus est: see on *esse . . . mercātōribus*, Bk. II, 15, 9.

magis eō ut . . . quam quō (= *quam eō quod*), rather in order that . . . than (on this account) because.

(*ea*) quae . . . cēperint depends on vēndant, which stands in a relative clause of description denoting possibility and depends on habeant; cēperint is subjunctive by attraction. Translate, *that they may have buyers for their booty*.

3. dēsiderent: the subjunctive is regularly used to express a reason which may exist in another's mind, but which is rejected by the writer.

quīn etiam nōn ūtuntur, *in fact, they do not even use*; the phrase *quīn etiam* introduces an addition to a preceding statement, suggesting that the fact or idea stated has a wider application than the reader might have expected.

4. iūmentīs' here = *equīs*. Why ablative? quaeque = *et quae*.

5. pretiō: ablative of price.

quae sunt . . . efficiunt, *by daily training they render those (horses) which are bred in their own country capable of enduring the hardest labor, though they are small and ill-formed*; labōris is a genitive of description used in the predicate.

21. frigidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frigus], cold.

vestītus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō], clothing.

23. lavō, -āre (-ere), lāvī, lautum (lōtum), *tr.*, wash, moisten; *pass.*, be washed, bathe.

3. dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,

desire, miss.

4. dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight or take pleasure in.

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impendō, weigh out*], expensive, high, great.

apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitā-
 tiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis
 saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque
 eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter,
 10 cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quic-
 quam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūtī. Itaque ad
 quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire
 audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod
 eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmi-
 15 nārī arbitrantur.

*Their neigh-
 bors the Ubii.*

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam
 lātissimē ā suis fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sig-
 nificārī magnum numerum cīvitatū suam vim sustinēre nōn
 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum c
 5 agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubīi,

8. pedibus, *on foot*; ablative of manner.

10. cum ūsus est, *whenever it is necessary*.

neque . . . habētur quam, etc., *according to their standard, nothing is considered more unmanly than to use, etc.*

12. quamvis paucī, *however few (they may be)*.

13. vīnum, etc.: compare a similar description of the Nervii, who were partly German, Bk. II, 15, 9-12.

14. ad labōrem . . . effēminārī, *that men are made too weak and too effeminate to endure vigorous exertions*.

1. pūblicē, *for the state*. quam . . . agrōs: subject of esse.

4. ā Suēbīs: *i.e., ā Suēbōrum fīnibus*. The extent of 'waste land' is certainly exaggerated. mīlia: accusative of extent.

5. ad . . . succēdunt, *come close to, not attingunt, "border on," because of the vacant land that intervenes*.

6. dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [dē+fōrma], ill-shaped, unsightly, ugly.

9. vestigium, -ī, *n.* [vestigō], foot-step, step, footprint; trace, spot, place.

11. iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars], unskilled; shiftless, unmanly.

ephippium, -ī, *n.*, a horse-cloth, saddle.

12. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.*

[ephippium], caparisoned; using saddles.

14. re-mollēscō, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [mollēscō, become soft], grow soft; be enervated or weakened.

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory; a title to praise, merit.

5. Ubīi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ubii, a German tribe on the east bank of the Rhine, near Cologne. Map IV, G-H, 1-2.

quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs 10 saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tenciteri surprise the Gauls and cross the Rhine.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tenciterī, quōs suprā diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī 5 ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum dispositīs

6. fuit: emphatic position;—*was, i.e., used to be.*

ut . . . Germānōrum, according to the capacity of the Germans, i.e., as far as the Germans are capable of prosperity.

7. eiusdem generis: i.e., *Germānōrum.*

8. hūmāniōrēs, *more civilized.*

10. mōribus: for case compare *officiō*, ch. 1, 18.

cum: determine its force from *tamen.*

11. saepe expertī, *in spite of many attempts.*

13. redēgērunt: see on *redēgerat*, Bk. II, 27, 15.

1. causā, *situation.*

3. ad extrēmum = *postrēmō*; to be taken with *pervēnērunt.*

8. cis: i.e., the western side; so *citrā*, l. 18.

dispositīs praesidiīs, *by means of guards stationed at different (dis-) points.*

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of flōreō*], flourishing, prospering.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [*capiō*], taking; capacity.

7. quam-quam, *conj.*, although.

8. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*homō*], human; civilized, refined.

9. ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*double freq. of veniō*], keep com-

ing, be wont to come, resort.

11. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*amplus*], importance, consequence.

gravitās, -ātis, *f.* [*gravis*], weight; power, dignity, importance.

13. humilis, -e, *adj.* [*humus*], on the ground, low, humble.

4. triennium, -ī, *n.* [*trēs+annus*], a period of three years, three years.

praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti
 10 cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam
 trānsire propter custodiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in
 suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̄ simulāvērunt et trīdui viam prōgressi
 rūsus revertērunt atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū
 cōfectō, insciōs inopinantēsq̄ Menapiōs oppressērunt, qui dē
 15 Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū
 trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis
 nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum
 quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque,
 omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis sē
 20 eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

*The fickle
 character of
 the Gauls.*

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmi-
 tātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis
 capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his
 committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētū-

9. prohibēbant: conative imperfect,—*tried to prevent*.

10. vī contendere, *to force a passage*.

12. viam: for case see App. 130; A. 425; B. 181; H. 417; H.-B. 387, I.

13. equitātū: see on *equitātū*, Bk. II, 10, 7.

19. partem: accusative of duration of time.

20. cōpiis, *supplies*, which the Menapii had in store.

3. mōbilēs: Caesar often mentions the weakness of purpose shown by the Gauls, and their restless desire for change; compare Bk. II, 1, 11 and Bk. III, 10, 7, 8. This characteristic was indeed one of the great factors in their downfall.

nihil his committendum (*esse*), *that no confidence should be placed in them*.

4. est . . . cōsuētūdinis, *it is a Gallic custom*; for the genitive see App. 103; A. 343, c; B. 198, 3; H. 439; H.-B. 340.

12. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō], seat; settlement; abode.

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [similis], make like, imitate; pretend.

14. in-scius, -a, -um, *adj.* [scius, knowing], not knowing, ignorant, unaware.

16. re-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [migrō, move], *intr.*, move or go back, return.

1. infirmitās, -ātis, *f.* [infirmus], weakness, inconstancy.

3. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō], changeable, inconstant, hasty.

dinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōsistere cōgant et, quid 5
 quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant
 et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex
 regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūntiāre
 cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs
 saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre 10
 necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad
 voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

*The restless
 Gauls seek help
 from the Ger-
 mans. Caesar
 determines to
 attack the
 latter.*

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī
 bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad
 exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae
 fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit: missās lēgā-

5. utī . . . cōgant etc.: the clauses with the verbs *cōgant*, *quaerant*, *circumsistat*, and *cōgat*, are in apposition with *hoc*.

7. mercātōrēs: object of *circumsistat*.

circumsistat is connected with *cōgat* by *-que* in *quibusque*.

9. hīs rēbus, *such information*.

10. quōrum . . . necesse est, *which they are immediately compelled to regret*; for the cases of *quōrum* and *eōs* see App. 109; A. 354, *b*; B. 209; H. 457; H.-B. 352; *vestigiō* is used in a literal sense in ch. 2, 9.

11. serviant, *are guided by* (lit. *are slaves to*); *rūmōribus* is a dative.

ad voluntātem . . . *respondeant*, *freely, answer them with tales which are made up to satisfy them* (lit. *shaped to their wish*) i.e., to escape the persistent questioning of the crowd, the traders invent such stories as will gratify them most easily; *ficta* is a participle, used as a noun, object of *respondeant*.

2. occurreret, *become involved in*. Literally?

3. ea . . . facta (*esse*), *that those things had happened which he had suspected would happen*.

4. fore: future infinitive of *sum*, here used instead of *futūra esse*, with *quae* as its subject. These happenings are mentioned in *missās* (*esse*), etc.

5. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via], a traveler.

8. prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, relate, report.

9. auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō], hearing, hearsay, rumor.

10. paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *tr.*, *impers.*, with *acc. of person and gen. of thing*, it makes (one) repent of, one repents of, one is sorry for or regrets.

11. necesse, *indecl. adj.*, unavoidable-

able, necessary.

in-certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, indefinite; doubtful; untrustworthy.

12. fingō, -ere, finxi, fictum, *tr.*, form, invent, imagine; *pf. part. as adj.*, pretended, false.

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus], early, speedily.

4. suspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [cf. suspiciō, look up], suspect.

5 tiōnēs ab nōn nūllis cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs
utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore
parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et
in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum
clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs, Caesar
10 ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit eōrumque
animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō, bellum
cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

*The Germans
send ambassa-
dors to Caesar
with a boastful
message.*

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēc-
tīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse
Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum
diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit
5 ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre,
neque tamen recūsāre, sī laccessantur, quīn armīs contendant,
quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicum-

6. ab Rhēnō discēderent: *i.e.*, advance farther into Gaul.

omnia . . . parāta depends on a verb of saying implied in *invitātōs*.
postulāssent represents a future perfect in the direct form.

ab sē: the pronoun refers to the Gauls.

8. quī: *i.e.*, *Condrūsī*.

9. clientēs: the weaker Gallic tribes often attached themselves to a
stronger one for the sake of protection.

prīncipibus: they were not officials, but men who had gained a promi-
nent position by personal influence.

10. eōrum . . . animīs = *eīs*, a common circumlocution in Latin.

12. cōstituit, *expressed his determination*. Of course he had resolved
upon war before the council met.

1. equitibus . . . dēlēctīs: as the result of the levy upon the Gauls,
ch. 6, 11, Caesar had a cavalry force of about 5,000 men.

3. quibus: *sc. locīs*.

4. iter: see on *viam*, ch. 4, 12.

5. Germānōs . . . inferre . . . recūsāre, *that the Germans were not beginning
a war on the Roman people, but they would not refuse etc.*; *neque* = *sed nōn*.

6. quīn . . . contendant, *to fight*; for mood see App. 228, c; A. 558; B. 298;
H. 595, 2; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

7. trādita: not a part of the predicate.

quicumque = *omnibus* (dat. with *resistere*) *quī*.

10. dis-simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
tr. and intr., disguise, dissemble.

11. per-mulceō, -ēre, -mulsī, -mul-
sum, tr., appease, conciliate.

que bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse sē invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant 10 vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar, in
reply, demands
their with-
drawal from
Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: sibi nūllam cum iīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdini 5 sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

8. haec, etc., *this, however, they would say*; supply sē as subject of dīcere and posse (l. 10).

9. invītōs: distinguish between *invītus* and *invītātus*.

grātiā = *amīcitiam*.

10. vel . . . vel: used to indicate the free choice of the Romans in the matter. Note the derivation of *vel*.

attribuant, patiantur: for imperatives in the direct form.

12. concēdere, *were inferior to*.

13. reliquum . . . nēminem, *no one else in the world*. The boastful tone of the Germans' speech is like that of other speeches of the barbarians reported by Caesar.

1. quae visum est, *what seemed best*; sc. respondēre to govern quae.

2. exitus, *conclusion, substance*.

3. vērū, *right*.

4. quī: supply eōs as antecedent.

neque . . . vacāre agrōs, *and there were no unoccupied lands in Gaul* (lit. *no lands were lying vacant*).

6. licēre: translate by a personal verb.

8. hoc: *i.e., ut eōs suīs finibus recipiant*.

9. ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ex+iaciō], drive out, expel, cast up.

10. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor], useful, serviceable.

11. possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por=prō+sīdō, settle], take possession of, occupy, seize.

4. tueor, -ērī, tūtus, *tr.*, look at, watch over; defend, protect.

*The Germans
plead for delay.*

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et, rē dēlībērātā, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat
5 enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

*Description of
the Meuse and
the Rhine.*

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus īnsulamque efficit Batāvōrum, in Ōceanum īfluit neque longius ab Ōceanō mīlibus passuum

2. *post diem tertium*: i.e., two days later, as the Romans would include both the first and last days in counting.

3. *sē*: the comparative adverb *propius* frequently governs the accusative.

castra movēret: as the Romans fortified a camp at the end of each day's march, *castra movēre* is here equivalent to *prōgredi*.

4. *ab sē . . . posse*, he could grant; how literally?

6. *trāns Mosam*: i.e., on the west side of the river.

7. *equitēs*: the German cavalry was far superior to the Gallic, that of the Tencteri being famous even in the time of Tacitus, 150 years later.

1. *ex monte . . . quī*, from that part of the Vosges mountains which.

2. *parte*, branch.

3. *quae . . . efficit*, which is called the Waal, and which forms the island.

Vacalus: the modern Waal is in fact the main (south) branch of the Rhine, carrying more than two-thirds of the water.

6. *frūmentor*, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [frūmentum], get grain, forage.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. Map IV, F, 1.

Mosa, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas, a river of Belgic Gaul. Map IV, F, 1-2.

8. *inter-pōnō*, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place or put between, insert, interpose; cause, occasion.

1. *prō-fluō*, -ere, -flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow forth, issue, rise.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges Mountains, west of the Rhine. Map IV, G, 2-3.

3. *Vacalus*, -ī, *m.*, the Waal, a branch of the Rhine near its mouth. Map IV, F, 1.

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe living about the mouths of the Rhine. Map IV, F, 1.

LXXX in Rhēnum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, 5
 quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium,
 Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticōrum, Tribocōrum,
 Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in
 plūrēs diffluit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis,
 quarum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōibus incolitur, 10
 ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existi-
 mantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Further nego-
 tiations. A
 truce is
 declared.*

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII
 milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī
 revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere, nē
 longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent,

5. ex Lepontiis, in the country of the Lepontii.

6. spatiō, course.

Nantuātium, etc.; the list of tribes is not complete and is incorrect in including the Nantuates.

8. citātus fertur, flows rapidly.

9. multis . . . effectis: translate in the active voice; making, etc.; for the -que see on Bk. II, 25, 8.

11. ex quibus sunt quī, among whom are those who. The relative clause is descriptive, and in the classic Latin of Caesar's period a subjunctive would have been expected. This chapter and also a number of other passages which deal with geography or natural history (e.g., Bk. I, 1, 15-23, Bk. V, 12-14, Bk. VI, 25-28), were probably not written by Caesar, but are interpolations, the work of some unknown writer of a much later time.

piscibus: see on frūmentō, ch. 1, 15.

12. capitibus, mouths. The more usual meaning, as applied to rivers, is "sources."

3. congressī: sc. cum eō; the word is more often used to denote a hostile meeting.

5. Lepontiī, -ōrum, m., an Alpine tribe. Map IV, H, 3.

7. Mediomaticī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people about modern Metz. Map IV, F-G, 2.

Tribocī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the neighborhood of modern Strasburg. Map IV, G-H, 2.

8. citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of

citō, put in quick motion], rapid, in a rapid course.

9. diffluō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr. [dis-+fluō], flow in different directions, branch.

11. piscis, -is, m., a fish, used collectively, fish.

ōvum, -ī, n., egg.

avis, -is, f., bird.

5 petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī agmen antecessissent, prae-
mitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret
in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi
iūre iūrاندō fidem fēcisset, eā condiōne, quae ā Caesare
ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi
10 trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre
arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī
abessent, reverterentur; tamen sē nōn longius mīlibus passuum
III aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē
quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōs-
15 ceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū ante-
cesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent
et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū
propius accessisset.

5. praemitteret: used here without an object; translate *send word ahead*.

6. potestātem faceret = *permitteret*.

7. quōrum . . . fēcisset, *and if their leading men and senate would give them sworn assurance (of safety)*; the verb is singular, to agree with the nearer part of the compound subject.

8. eā condiōne: the terms given in ch. 8, 6, 7, which were regarded as still open for their consideration.

10. daret would be *dā* in the direct form.

eōdem . . . pertinēre, *had the same purpose* (lit. *tended to the same point*) as the proposal made in ch. 9. It is further explained by *ut . . . reverterentur*.

13. hūc: *i.e.*, to the place where he should encamp for the night.

14. quam frequentissimī: this expression is thought by some to be an indication of Caesar's design to seize the envoys next day.

convenīrent: for mood cf. *daret*, l. 10.

ut cognōsceret, *in order that (after investigation) he might come to a decision*.

16. nūntiārent nē, *give orders not to*.

proeliō: abl. of means.

17. sustinērent: *i.e.*, they were merely to defend themselves.

10. illō, *adv.* [ille], thither, there.

13. aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aquor, fetch water], getting water.

14. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [pf. part. of postulō], demand, request.

17. quo-ad, *adv.*, as far as, till, until.

*A treacherous
attack and a
brave deed.*

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōn-
spexērunt, quōrum erat v mīlium numerus, cum ipsi
nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī
causā erant trāns Mosam profectī nōndum redierant, nihil
timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare 5
discesserant atque is diēs indūtīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū
factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistantibus,
cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossisque equīs
complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt
atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, 10
quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō
ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX, in hīs vir fortis-
simus Pīsō Aquītānus amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in
cīvitāte suā rēgnū obtinuerat, amicus ā senātū nostrō appel-
lātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, 15
illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad
potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus
acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat,
procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque
interfectus est. 20

1. ubi primum, *as soon as*.

2. quōrum depends on *numerus*, to which also belongs the descriptive
gen. *V mīlium*.

cum: adversative.

4. nihil . . . nostrīs, *while our men were not anticipating any danger*.

6. indūtīs: dat. of purpose.

8. subfossīs, etc., *stabbing our horses underneath and (so) dismounting
a number of our men*.

10. ita perterritōs ēgērunt, *drove them before them in such a panic*.

prius . . . quam: see on Bk. III, 26, 8.

12. in, *among*.

14. rēgnū: see on *rēgna*, Bk. II, 1, 14.

15. cum . . . ferret: translate by a main clause coördinate with *ēripuit*,
supplying *and* to connect the two clauses.

19. incitātō equō, *at full speed*.

8. sub-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, stab or pierce underneath.

Caesar arrests
the ambassa-
dors and deter-
mines to repay
treachery with
treachery.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs
audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrā-
bātur ab iīs, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā
pāce ultrō bellum intulissent; expectāre vērō, dum
5 hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae
dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte,
quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent
cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capiēda nihil spatī
dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum
10 lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō nē quem diem pugnae
praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius
diēi māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī fre-
quentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs,
ad eum in castra vērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandī suī

1. neque iam, *no longer*; repeat *iam* with the second *neque*.

4. ultrō here = *sine causā*.

expectāre: subject of *esse*, with *summae dēmentiae* (*the height of folly*)
as the predicate genitive of description.

5. equitātusque reverterētur, *freely, by the return of the cavalry*, added
to explain the preceding clause.

6. infirmitāte: see on *mōbilēs*, 5, 3.

7. auctōritātis: genitive of the whole, modifying *quantum*, which is the
object of *essent cōnsecūtī*.

8. quibus . . . exīstimābat gives the result of what precedes.

nihil spatī, *no time*.

9. cōsiliō . . . nē . . . praetermitteret, *his design not to*, etc.

10. quaestōre: the quaestor occasionally acted as a commanding officer
of a legion; for his regular duties see Vocabulary.

pugnae: for the case see on *committendī proelī*, Bk. II, 19, 16.

11. quod, (*namely*) *that*.

13. omnibus . . . adhibitīs explains *frequentēs*.

14. simul . . . simul: omit the first of these correlatives and translate
the second, *and at the same time*. pūrgandī suī: see on Bk. III, 4, 12.

6. dē-mentia, -ae, *f.* [dēmēns],
madness, infatuation, folly.

10. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō],
quaestor.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*
[commūnis], make common, com-
municate, share; add. connect.

11. praeter-mittō, -ere, -misi,
-missum, *tr.*, send or let go by;
let pass, overlook.

12. māne, *adv.*, early in the morn-
ing, in the morning, early.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō], simula-
tion, pretense, deceit.

causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium 15
 prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs
 fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs
 retinērī iussit; ipse ōmnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,
 quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen
 subsequī iussit. 20

*The Germans
 offer little
 resistance.
 Butchery of
 the women and
 children.*

14. Aciē triplici īstitutā et celeriter viii mīlium
 itinere cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit
 quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī
 omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs
 nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma 5
 capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur cōpiāsne adversus hostem

15. contrā atque, *contrary to what.*

16. ut . . . dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent, *to gain their request in regard to a truce by (again) deceiving (him).*

sī quid possent, *if possible; how literally?*

17. quōs . . . oblātōs (esse): *translate in the active,—that they had fallen into his hands.* For the constr. compare *liberōs abstractōs (esse)*, Bk. III, 2, 14.

illōs is not necessary after *quōs*, except as a contrast to *ipse*.

Cato bitterly attacked Caesar in the senate for violating the law of nations, and demanded that he should be handed over to the Germans as a reparation for the crime committed against them. Caesar had, however, reason to doubt the good faith of the Germans, and he was in no position to run any risks in dealing with an army of 100,000 men, when even a reverse might have aroused the Gauls to revolt.

3. quid agerētur, *what was going on.*

4. omnibus rēbus: *explained by the two ablatives following.*

5. suōrum: *i.e., prīncipum et maiōrum nātū.*

cōsili habendī, *for taking counsel*; observe that with the singular noun *cōsili* the gerundive is used, while the plural *arma* is made the object of the gerund. This basis of choice between gerund and gerundive construction is frequently observed, especially in the genitive, but it is not an invariable rule.

6. perturbantur, etc., *did not know, in the confusion, whether it was better . . . or, . . . or, etc. (lit. are confused as to whether, etc).* For the particles see App. 214; A. 335; B. 162, 4; H. 380; H.-B. 234.

17. gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *intr.*, rejoice, be delighted, be glad.

dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō
 10 locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium com-
 misērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equi-
 15 tātum mīsīt.

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interficī
 vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque mīlitāribus
 relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōn-
 fluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā
 5. dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē
 in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī
 flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs,
 perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium
 numerus capitem cccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpē-
 10 runt. Caesar iīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestā-

10. quī = *īlī quī*.

1. Germānī: *i.e.*, those who were fighting in the camp.

clāmōre: of the women and children who were being killed by the pursuing cavalry.

3. sē ēiēcērunt, *rushed*.

4. Rhēnī: Caesar seems to mean the Waal (*Vacalus*); see on *Vacalus*, ch. 10, 3.

reliquā fugā, *further flight*.

7. oppressī, *overwhelmed*.

ad ūnum incolumēs, *without the loss of a single man*.

8. ex: (*immediately*) after, or more freely, *freed from*.

9. capitem depends on *mīlium*.

7. an, conj., introducing the second part of a double question, or.

9. in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr., break into, storm.

14. passim, adv. [*passus*], hither and thither, in every direction.

3. cōfluēns, -entis, m. [*pres. part. of cōfluō*], a flowing together, confluence.

6. praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*praeceps*], throw headlong, throw.

tem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar libertātem concessit.

Caesar's reasons for crossing the Rhine. The Sugambri are insolent, and the Ubii offer assistance.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprà commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniuñxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent, eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns

11. *supplicia cruciātūsque*: the figure hendiadys, in which two words connected by a conjunction are used instead of a modified noun. Translate, *death by torture*. *Gallōrum*, at the hands of the Gauls.

3. *illa*, the following. *iūstissima*, most valid.

5. *suis . . . rēbus*, for their own security. Notice that *timeō* is here used with a dative of reference, and without a direct object.

cum intellexerent, when they should realize.

6. *trānsīre*: complementary to *posse* and *audēre*.

accessit . . . quod: see on *accēdēbat quod*, Bk. III, 2, 13.

9. *proeliō*: dative.

12. *eōs*: object of *dēderent*.

13. *dēderent*: occasionally, as here, Caesar uses the subjunctive without *ut* after *postulō*. Compare note on Bk. III, 11, 3.

14. *aequum*, fair; supply *esse*.

15. *suī . . . imperī aut potestātis*: pred. genitive of possession with *esse*,—should belong to his military or civil power.

esse: the subjunctive, either with or without *ut* (as in line 13), is the commoner construction after *postulō*.

1. *Germānicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus], of or pertaining to the Germans, German.

10. *Sugambrī*, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. Map IV, G, 1.

15. *cūr*, *adv.*, why? wherefore?

Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī
 20 pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad praesēns auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī
 25 tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

*Description of
the bridge
across the
Rhine.*

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvi, Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibūs trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī

16. (cūr) postulāret, *why should he demand?*

Observe that *cūr . . . quicquam . . . postulāret* is in thought equivalent to *eum postulāre nōn dēbēre*; hence *quicquam* is used instead of *aliquid*, *quisquam* being used in sentences which are negative in force.

19. occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae, *affairs of state.*

20. trānsportāret: parallel in construction to *ferret*.

21. reliquī temporis, *for the future.*

22. opīniōnem, *reputation.*

eius exercitūs would be *tuī exercitūs* in the direct form.

23. Ariovistō pulsō, *as the result of Ariovistus's defeat*, as told in Bk. I. See page 189.

ad, *among*.

1. causīs: see ch. 16, 1-11. Caesar probably reckoned also on the effect that such an exploit would produce at Rome.

3. tūtum: because the enemy could easily have hindered his passage into Germany, and perhaps have cut off his retreat in case of defeat.

neque . . . dignitātis esse, *it was not consistent with his own dignity*, etc., for case see on *suī imperī*, etc., ch. 16, 15.

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns+Rhēnus], *beyond or across the Rhine; m. pl. as subst., the people across the Rhine.*

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō], *business, affair; occupation.*

20. trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, *carry across or over, transport, bring over.*

23. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, *a German king defeated in Gaul by Caesar in 58 B.C.*

summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudi- 5
nem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi
contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīsti-
mābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipe-
dālia paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis
intervallō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi- 10
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat festūcisque adēgerat,
nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac
fastigātē ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item

5. **summa**: pred. adj. with *prōpōnēbātur*, presented itself as very great.

lātitudinem . . . flūminis: the bridge was built probably somewhere in the neighborhood of Bonn, where the width of the stream is about 1400 feet, and the depth about 16 feet.

6. **id . . . contendendum** (*esse*), that he ought to make the effort; how literally?

8. **ratiōnem**, plan.

tigna bīna sēsquipedālia, (*unhewn*) timbers, in pairs, a foot and a half thick. See Plan, aa.

9. **dīmēnsa ad**, measured according to, i.e., they were made shorter or longer as the varying depth of the stream demanded.

10. **intervallō . . . iungēbat**, he joined together (by wooden cross-pieces; see Plan gg) at a distance of two feet.

māchinātiōnibus: probably floats or boats joined together, by means of which the timbers were put in position, with the proper inclination, preparatory to being driven firmly in by pile drivers (*festūcīs . . . adēgerat*).

11. **dēfixerat . . . statuēbat**: for mood and tense see on *comprehēnsi . . . erant . . . praerumpēbantur*, Bk. III, 14, 17.

12. **sublicae modō** (abl. of *modus*), like a pile.

dērēctē ad perpendiculum, vertically.

13. **ut . . . prōcumberent**, so as to slope in the direction of the current.

6. **rapiditās**, -ātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness.

8. **tignum**, -ī, *n.*, log, beam, timber.
sēsqui-pedālis, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, (one and a) half+pedālis, of a foot], of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch.

11. **immittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [in+mittō], send or let into, send in; let down.

dē-fixō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fix or fasten down, drive in.

festūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver.

12. **sublica**, -ae, *f.*, a pile, stake.
dērēctē, *adv.* [dērēctus], straight, directly, exactly.

perpendiculum, -ī, *n.* [perpendō, weigh carefully], plummet, plumb line.

prōnē, *adv.* [prōnus], in an inclined position, sloping downward.

13. **fastigātē**, *adv.* [fastigātus], sloping, in a sloping direction.

contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum
 15 quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum
 flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus
 trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat,
 binīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus
 disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs tanta erat operis
 20 firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē

14. contrāria duo (*tigna*): a similar pair of timbers was driven into the river bed opposite to these (*iīs . . . contrāria*), forty feet down stream (*ab inferiōre parte*), but sloping against the current (*contrā . . . conversa*).

intervāllō . . . quadrāgēnum (= *quadrāgēnōrum*): probably measured along the river bed or at the surface of the water. The width of the road-way need not have been over 25 or 30 feet.

16. haec utraque: these two (opposite) pairs of piles were held apart by two-foot beams (see Plan, *bb*) let in from above (*īnsuper . . . immissīs*), exactly fitting into the space (cf. l. 10) between the two piles that formed each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*).

17. quantum, etc.: refers to *bipedālibus*; cf. l. 10, *intervāllō pedum duōrum*.

18. binīs . . . parte, by a pair of fastenings on each side of the *tigna*, at each end of the beams. Cross-pieces of wood or iron were driven through horizontally, two on each side of the *tigna* (see Plan, *cc*), making eight in all. The meaning is not quite clear. Another explanation is that cross-bars of wood (four in all) were placed in the upper and inner acute angles formed by the *tigna* and the *trabs*, and in the opposite outer and lower angles, the two lower bars serving as cross-pieces on which the *trabs* rested. The opposite *fībulae* at each end of the *trabs* were probably fastened together by bolts or ropes. **quibus** refers to *haec utraque* (*tigna*) of l. 16.

19. disclūsīs, held apart by the horizontal beam.

in . . . revīnctīs, braced in opposite directions by the *fībulae*.

20. ea = *tālis*.

rērum nātūra, arrangement of (the various parts of) the structure.

quō maior . . . incitāvisset = *quō maior vīs aquae esset quae sē incitāvisset*.

15. quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [*quadrāgintā*], forty each, forty.

16. in-super, adv., above, on the top, from above.

bipedālis, -e, adj. [*bis+pedālis*, of a foot], of two feet, two feet in thickness.

17. iūnctūra. -ae, f. [*iungō*], a join-

ing, joint, fastening.

distō, -āre, —, —, intr. [*dis-+stō*], stand apart, be apart, or separated, be distant.

18. fībula, -ae, f., a fastening, brace; pin.

19. disclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr. [*dis-+claudō*], hold or keep apart, separate.

ENGINE THE SEA ENGINE & REEFED
CAYMAN'S BRIDGE OVER THE BRIDGE



incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item 25 suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

*The Romans
cross the Rhine.
The Sugambri
flee.*

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat compor-
tārī omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar,
ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō,

Caesar thus describes the construction of the wooden trestles, but does not state how many were required to complete the length of the bridge. Probably from fifty to sixty were necessary. These trestles (*haec*) were then joined together (*contexēbantur*) by timbers laid on the cross-beams, in the direction of the length of the bridge (*dērēctā māteriā*). See Plan, *dd*.

22. longuriis: these were laid at right angles with the *māteria*.

23. nihilō sētius: *i.e.*, although the structure seemed strong enough.

sublicae, etc.: on the lower side of the bridge piles were driven in, sloping up stream, and were joined one to each trestle to serve as a buttress (*prō ariete*). See Plan, *ee*. et: correlative with *et*, l. 25; omit in translating.

24. quae . . . exciperent, to resist.

25. et aliae (*sublicae*): supply *agēbantur*.

26. mediocrī spatiō, at (*lit. by*) a slight distance from the bridge, and probably not joined to it. See Plan, *ff*.

27. immissae: *i.e.*, against the bridge.

his dēfēnsōribus (= *dēfendentibus*): *abl. abs.*, with these to defend it.

28. neu . . . nocērent, and that they might not, etc.

1. diēbus x quibus, within ten days after; cf. quibus . . . ventum erat, Bk. III, 23, 4.

coepta erat: why passive? Cf. *coepti sunt*, Bk. II, 6, 6.

3. ad . . . pontis: *i.e.*, on both banks.

21. artē, *adv.* [artus, shut up], closely, tightly.

in-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ligō, bind], tie or bind on, attach, fasten.

dērēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of dērigō*, lay straight], direct, straight.

22. contexō, -ere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [com-+texō, weave], bind

together, interweave, connect.

crātis, -is, *f.*, wicker-work.

cōnsternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.* [com-+sternō], strew over, cover, thatch.

23. sētius, *comp. adv.*, less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less.

24. oblīquē, *adv.* [oblīquus], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

26. truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk; body.

in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus
 5 cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīci-
 tiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī
 iubēt. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus
 est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque
 Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suis excesserant suaque
 10 omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

*Caesar ravages
 their territory
 and, returning
 to the Ubii,
 learns that the
 Suebi are plan-
 ning resistance.
 He returns
 5 into Gaul.*

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus,
 omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentisque
 succīsīs, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque hīs auxi-
 lium suum pollicitus, sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec
 ab iīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explorā-
 tōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō,
 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,
 liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs
 quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc
 10 esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obti-
 nērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibīdem

6. liberāliter, *with kindly words*; compare use of *liberāliter*, Bk. II, 5, 1.

7. ex . . . coeptus est: subordinate to *fugā comparātā*, which may be translated by a rel. cl., *who had prepared for flight*.

8. hortantibus iīs, *by the advice of those*; what construction?

quōs . . . habēbant: the cavalry mentioned in ch. 16, 7-11.

10. sōlitūdinem ac silvās = *sōlitūdinem silvārum*. Translate, *had fled into the solitude of the forests and hidden themselves*.

2. frūmentis: see on *frūmentō*, Bk. II, 3, 8.

4. premerentur: subj. in implied indirect discourse after *pollicitus*; it represents a future of the direct form.

6. fierī, *was being built*. They did not wait for its completion.

conciliō habitō: translate as a clause coördinate with *dīmīsisse*.

7. utī . . . convenīrent, *urging that*, etc.; the clause gives the content of the orders which the messengers brought.

9. hunc . . . ferē, *for this meeting-place a point about the middle of . . . had been chosen*.

10. ex-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,
 carry out or away.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [sōlus], solitude;
 wilderness.

3. succidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.*
 [sub+caedō], cut down, fell.

11. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place, on
 this occasion.

dēcertāre cōstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōfectīs, quārum rērum causā exercitum trādūcere cōstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII 15 trāns Rhēnum cōsūptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar deter-
mines to visit
Britain. He
seeks infor-
mation from
traders, but
learns little.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus 5 annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs

14. *ut . . . ut . . . ut*, namely *that*, etc. The *ut* clauses explain *omnibus rēbus*. *iniceret*, arouse, inspire; why is *Germānīs* dative?

15. *obsidiōne*, from oppression.

16. *satis*: subject of *prōfectum* (*esse*).

17. *prōfectum*: not from *proficīscor*.

1. *exiguā . . . reliquā*: abl. abs., to be translated as an adversative clause coördinate with *etsī . . . sunt hiemēs*.

4. *omnibus . . . bellīs*: this reason seems scarcely sufficient. Such aid is mentioned but once (Bk. III, 9, 26, 27), though perhaps it is implied in Bk. II, 14, 7-9. A better reason is implied in *perspexisset*, etc., for this expedition was merely a reconnoissance. The expedition of the following year was part of a larger plan to extend the glory of Roman arms and to bring new regions under Roman sway.

hostibus: indirect object of *subministrāta*.

6. *dēficeret* = *nōn satis esset*.

magnō . . . fore, it would be of great advantage to him.

7. *adīset*: Caesar's thought was *mihi ūsuī erit, sī . . . adierō*.

perspexisset, he should become thoroughly (*per*) acquainted with.

8. *Gallīs . . . incognita*: this statement is not quite accurate. The coast tribes, at least, had some knowledge of Britain.

15. *obsidiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō], a siege; oppression.

16. *ūtilitās*, -ātis, *f.* [ūtilis], usefulness, advantage.

erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatōrēs illō
 10 adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram mariti-
 mam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliam, nōtum est.
 Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus, neque quanta esset
 insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent,
 neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur
 15 neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī
 portūs, reperire poterat.

*He sends
 Volusenus to
 obtain infor-
 mation. Ne-
 gotiations with
 the Britons.*

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum
 faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum
 nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātis
 omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur.
 5 Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde
 erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique
 ex finitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum
 bellum fēcerāt, classem iubet convenire. Interim cōsiliō
 eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complū-
 10 ribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī pollice-

9. neque enim quisquam, *for no one*. illō: adverb.

10. hīs = *mercatoribus*.

12. vocātis . . . mercatoribus: adversative.

neque quanta, etc.: the indirect questions depend on *reperire*.

15. ad . . . multitūdinem: see App. 122, *a*; A. 385, *a*; B. 192, note; H. 435, 1; H.-B. 364, 6. idōneī: not a predicate adjective.

1. ad . . . cognōscenda: construe with *praemittit*.

periculum faceret = *experirētur*, to which the word *periculum* is related in derivation. Compare *expertī*, ch. 3, 11.

2. idōneum . . . Volusēnum = *C. Volusēnum, quem idōneum (a suitable man) esse arbitrābatur*. See on *Volusēnus*, Bk. III, 5, 7.

4. omnibus rēbus: mentioned in ch. 20, 7, 8.

5. inde = *ex Morinīs*, i.e., from the modern Boulogne.

7. quam: the antecedent is *classem* in line 8.

ad Veneticum bellum: see Bk. III, 9.

9. temere, *adv.*, without reason, rashly.

11. nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of nōscō*], known, familiar, well-

known.

6. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [*trāiciō*], a crossing or passing over, crossing, passage.

antur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs unā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem 15 esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitatēs hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbarīs 20 committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

The Morini submit. Preparations for crossing.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō

11. dare: instead of *sē datūrōs*, to emphasize the immediate and certain fulfillment of the promises.

12. liberāliter pollicitus, *making liberal promises*.

14. Atrebātibus superātis: in the battle at the Sambre, Bk. II, 23.

ibi: *i.e.*, among the Atrebates.

15. cōsilium, *discretion*.

quem . . . arbitrābātur: Commius disappointed this trust by heading a revolt against Caesar in 52 B.C.

16. in hīs regiōnibus: *i.e.*, in Galliā.

magnī habēbātur, *was highly regarded*; for the genitive see App. 105; A. 417; B. 203, 3; H. 448; H.-B. 356.

17. imperat: these orders are expressed in the subjunctives *adeat*, etc., as in ch. 16, 13, and Bk. III, 5, 11, 12.

18. fidem sequantur, *put themselves under the protection*.

sē: *i.e.*, Caesar.

20. quantum . . . potuit, *so far as opportunity could be given to one, or as far as was possible for one*, qualifying the preceding abl. abs.

quī . . . audēret: a relative clause of description.

3. dē superiōris, etc., *for their attitude in the past*, explained by *quod* . . . *fēcissent*; see Bk. III, 28.

11. ob-temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [temperō, be moderate], comply with; obey.

13. Commius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the

Atrebates.

15. fidēlis, -e, *adj.* [fidēs], trustworthy, faithful, reliable, loyal, trusty.

excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis
 5 imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae impe-
 rāset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē
 accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere
 volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem
 habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae
 10 antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum
 imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus
 circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trāspor-
 tandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum
 habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc
 15 accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus
 passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum

4. **hominēs**: in apposition with the unexpressed subject of *fēcissent*. Translate, *being men*, etc.

cōnsuētūdinis: *i.e.*, of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily surrendered to the Romans.

5. **ea quae imperāset**, *his commands*; in direct discourse, *ea quae imperāveris*.

6. **satis**, *very*.

9. **hās . . . antepōnendās**, freely, *that these quite unimportant matters ought not to be given attention instead of the expedition to Britain*; for the case of *Britanniae*, see App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

12. **duās**: the VIIth and the Xth.

13. **quod . . . nāvium . . . habēbat**: object of *distribuit*; cf. *nāvium quod*, Bk. III, 16, 4.

14. **hūc accēdēbant**, *in addition to these there were*.

15. **ā milibus . . . VIII**, *at a distance of eight miles*; the abl. expresses measure of difference. The boats were at Ambleteuse, eight miles west of Boulogne.

16. **quōminus possent**, *so that they could not*; for the mood of *possent* see App. 228, c; A. 558, b; B. 295, 3; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 3, b.

4. **excūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+causa], excuse, justify, apologize for.

5. **imperītus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+perītus], inexperienced, ignorant.

6. **opportūnē**, *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, at the right time.

10. **ante-pōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place before, regard of more importance, prefer.

12. **onerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], fitted for burdens, transport; (*sc. nāvis*) a transport-ship, freight-ship.

venire possent; hās equitibus tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Tituriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum 20 eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

The passage.

23. His cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britan- 5 niam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, 10

1. his cōstitūtīs rēbus, *after these arrangements.*

2. tertiā . . . vigiliā: about midnight of August 26.

solvit, *set sail*, lit. *loosed* (the boats from their moorings).

3. ulteriōrem portum: see ch. 22, 15-17 and note.

4. cum . . . esset administrātum: perhaps best taken as an adversative clause loosely used; translate, *when they had proceeded to carry out these orders, though a little too slowly.*

tardius: *i.e.*, too slowly to take advantage of the favoring winds that carried Caesar to Britain. A change of wind kept them in port for three days.

5. hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M. This was off the coast of Kent near Dover, about 28 miles from Boulogne.

6. expositās: predicate to cōpiās armātās.

7. haec, *such*.

ita . . . continēbātur, *freely, so narrow was the seashore below the cliffs* (lit. *so closely was the sea bordered by the cliffs*).

9. ad ēgrediendum (*ex nāvibus*), *for disembarking*.

10. dum, *until*.

20. Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

1. nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nānctus), *tr.*, obtain; meet with, find.

3. cōnscendō, -ere, -endī, -ēnsum, *tr.* [com-+scandō, climb], climb,

mount; go on board, embark on.

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus], slowly.

8. lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.

9. nē-quāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means.

ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribū-
nisque mīlitum convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et
quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei mīlītāris ratiō
maximēque ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut cum celerem atque
15 instabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs
ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et aestum
ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris,
circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac
plānō lītore nāvēs cōstituit.

*The enemy
attempts to
prevent a
landing.*

24. At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō,
praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque
genere in proeliis ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis
subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās
5 causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem
nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem ignōtis locis,

11. in ancoris exspectāvit, *he lay waiting at anchor.*

13. ut rei, etc., *as the rules of war and especially as naval operations demand, inasmuch as they have (to do with) rapid and irregular movements.*

14. postulārent: subjunctive by attraction.

15. ad nūtum . . . administrārentur: translate immediately after *monuit*, on which it depends; *ut* is unexpressed.

ad tempus, *on the moment.*

16. ventum . . . secundum: which, with the tide, would carry them northeast.

18. apertō . . . lītore: not far from Deal.

19. cōstituit, *anchored.*

2. praemissō: translate as a verb in the active voice, coördinate with *prohibēbant*.

quō . . . genere, *a kind of troops which.*

4. ēgredi: see on *ingredi prohibuerint*, Bk. II, 4, 7.

6. in altō, *in deep water.*

mīlitibus . . . dēsiliendum, *the soldiers had to leap down*; mīlitibus is dative of agent. locis . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, speedy, sudden.

15. in-stabilis, -e, *adj.* [stabilis, steady], unsteady.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement, motion; *political* movement, up-
rising.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod, sign, command.

2. essedārius, -ī, *m.* [essedum], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, chariot-warrior.

6. ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+(g)-nōtus], unknown, unfamiliar.

impeditis manibus magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimīs locis 10 audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque huius omninō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērant ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōrior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpellī ac 5 submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit.

While the Romans are hesitating a standard bearer brings matters to a crisis.

7. pressis agrees with *militibus*;—burdened as they were.

8. cōsistendum, get a foothold.

9. cum illi, while the enemy. paulum, only a little.

11. insuēfactōs, trained, to this mode of attack.

12. generis: for case see App. 106, a; A. 349, a; B. 204, 1; H. 451, 1; H.-B. 354.

13. nōn . . . ūtēbantur, did not skow.

quō refers both to *alacritāte* and *studiō*, but agrees with the nearer antecedent.

2. speciēs, appearance (cf. Eng. "looks").

inūsitiōrior, quite unfamiliar. The large trading vessels that visited Britain were different in shape from those of the Romans, and had no oars. The Britons themselves used small wicker boats covered with skins.

mōtus . . . expeditior, which were more easily managed (lit. whose motion was less encumbered for management).

3. rēmīs incitārī, to be rowed rapidly forward; how literally?

4. ad latus . . . cōstituī, should be stationed near the unprotected flank of the enemy, i.e., the right side.

5. fundis: for illud. see Vocabulary.

6. iussit, gave orders that. quae rēs, a measure which.

9. āridus, -a, -um, adj. [āreō, dry up], dry; as subst., n., dry land.

11. insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj. [in-

suēscō, grow accustomed+faciō], accustomed, well-trained.

5. funda, -ae, f., a sling.

sagitta, -ae, f., an arrow.

Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsītātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cūctantibus, 10 maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, “Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī 15 prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

*The Britons
are defeated.
Caesar feels
the absence of
his cavalry.*

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius

9. pedem rettulērunt: a standing expression for an orderly retreat.

10. quī, *the man who*. aquilam: for illud. see Vocabulary.

11. ea rēs, *this undertaking*.

13. certē, *at any rate*.

14. praestiterō: the future perfect shows that the act is to follow immediately and is therefore regarded as practically completed.

sē . . . prōiēcit = *dēsiluit*.

16. cohortātī inter sē, *encouraging one another*; see on *inter sē dare*, Bk. II, 1, 5.

17. ex proximīs, etc., *when the soldiers from the nearest ships, etc.*

2. ōrdinēs servāre, *to keep in line*.

3. signa subsequī: *i.e.*, to keep their places in their own maniples.

alius . . . nāvī, *men from different ships*; lit. *one from one ship, another from another*.

7. figūra, -ae, *f.* [fīgō], form, shape, figure.

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle; standard of the legion.

11. ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, call to witness, invoke, call upon.

ē-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out, result, happen.

12. commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [com-+mīles], fellow-soldier, comrade.

13. certē, *adv.* [certus], certainly, at least, at all events, assuredly.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [mē], my, mine, my own, of mine.

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus], steadily, firmly.

aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, 5 ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circum-sistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs 10 labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam 15 Caesarī dēfuit.

*The Britons
make excuses
and offer to
surrender.*

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs, quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius

4. quibuscumque, etc., gathered about whatever standards they happened upon; compare the similar situation in Bk. II, 21, 12-14.

5. nōtīs . . . vadīs: abl. abs. denoting cause.

6. singulārēs = singulōs.

7. plūrēs . . . circum-sistēbant, large bands surrounded small groups

8. aliī, while others.

9. scaphās: small messenger boats belonging to the warships.

10. speculātōria nāvigia: light swift-sailing vessels used in reconnoitering. They were painted green to escape observation, and the sailors were clad in green for the same reason.

iussit, etc.: note change in tense. The perfect denotes a single act; the past perfect and imperfect are to be explained as in Bk. III, 14, 17.

quōs: the antecedent is hīs.

12. simul = simul atque.

13. neque, but . . . not. longius, very far.

14. cursum . . . capere, to hold their course and reach the island.

15. hoc ūnum, etc., in this alone did Caesar's usual good fortune fail him.

1. sē . . . recēpērunt: meaning as in Bk. II, 12, 1, 2.

4. ad-gregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [gregō, collect in a flock], gather, assemble; join.

9. scapha, -ae, f., small boat, skiff.

10. speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [speculātor], scouting, spying.

5 Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in
 Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad
 eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant
 atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et
 in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et
 10 propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar
 questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem
 ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprū-
 dentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim
 dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis
 15 diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs in agrōs remigrāre
 iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenire et sē cīvitatēsque
 suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

*The ships
 carrying the
 cavalry are
 driven out of
 their course.*

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quār-
 tum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII,
 dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs
 sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum

5. suprā: in ch. 21, 13.

7. modō, in the character (of).

10. imprudentiam, ignorance of the rights of envoys.

ut ignōscerētur (sc. sibi ā Caesare), that they might be pardonēd; see App. 115, d; A. 372; B. 187, II, b; H. 426, 3; H.-B. 364, 2.

11. questus: translate as a main verb, supplying but to connect with dīxit. ultrō, of their own accord.

lēgātis missis: see ch. 21, 10.

12. ignōscere: supply sē as subject.

14. arcessitam, when they had, etc.

15. in agrōs, to their farms, to resume their usual occupations.

1. post diem quārtum, quam = quārtō diē postquam.

4. sustulerant, had taken on board.

superiōre portū: Ambleteuse, called *ulterior portus*, ch. 23, 3.

solvērunt, sailed, with nāvēs as subject, used absolutely. Contrast solvit (sc. nāvēs as object, ch. 23, 2).

9. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt.

10. imprudentia, -ae, f. [imprūdēns], want of forethought, ignorance, indiscretion.

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, tr. and intr. [in-+(g)nōscō], overlook; pardon, forgive.

14. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus], far off, distant, remote.

17. commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+mandō], intrust, commend, surrender.

4. lēnis, -e, adj., smooth, gentle, mild.

adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta 5
tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset,
sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad
inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum,
magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis
cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum 10
prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

*A storm
shatters the
Roman fleet.*

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī
diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōn-
suēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et
longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus com-
plēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās 5
adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut

7. ad . . . insulae: *i.e.*, to the southwest coast.

8. propius: with acc., as in ch. 9, 3.

9. dēicerentur, *were driven*; a stronger word than *dēferrentur*.

tamen belongs with *ancoris iactis*, which may be translated by a principal clause; *nevertheless* (in spite of the storm) *they cast anchor, but since the boats (quae) began to fill*, etc. Since the boats were fastened at anchor they could not rise with the waves, and the billows dashing over the sides began to fill them.

10. adversā nocte, *in the face of the night*, lit. *with the night against them*.

1. eādem nocte: according to astronomical calculation, the night of Aug. 30.

quī diēs efficere cōsuēvit, *a time which always causes*; *diēs* is here the astronomical day, *i.e.*, the period of 24 hours, within which full moon occurred.

2. maritimōs aestūs: the spring tides, which rise to the height of 19 feet at Dover, and 25 feet at Boulogne.

3. nostris . . . incognitum: because this phenomenon did not occur in the Mediterranean, though Caesar had had experience with the tides in the war with the Veneti; see Bk. III, 12, 3.

4. subdūxerat: the standing word for beaching ships, especially for the winter. This was done by means of rollers, pulleys, and ropes. The transports were not beached.

6. adflīctābat: as in Bk. III, 12, 5.

administrandī: used absolutely, *of managing* the ships.

11. prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; *usually pass.*, move forward, go forward, advance, proceed, sail.

1. lūna, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* lūceō, be light], the moon.

5. dē-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, bind, fasten, moor.

auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, 10 tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

*The Britons
"conspire" to
renew hos-
tilities.*

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem militum ex cas- 5 trōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,

7. **complūribus . . . frāctīs** (*dashed to pieces*): translate as a causal cl. coördinate with *reliquae . . . inūtilēs*.

8. **fūnibus . . . āmissīs**, *after the loss of*, etc.

9. **id quod**: when the antecedent of the rel. is a clause (here *magna . . . facta est*) *id quod* is commonly used, though *quod* alone is sometimes found (e.g. Bk. II, 35, 11; Bk. III, 12, 3).

10. **tōtius exercitūs facta est**, *spread through the whole army*; *exercitūs* is an objective genitive.

neque . . . et . . . et, *on the one hand there were no other boats*, etc. . . . *on the other*, etc. . . . *then too*, etc.

11. **possent**: supply the subject from *exercitūs*.

12. **omnibus cōstābat**: translate as in Bk. III, 14, 9, where the subject is an indirect question. What is the subject here?

13. **in hiemem**, *for the winter*.

2. **convēnerant**: see ch 27, 16.

3. **conlocūtī**: tr. as coördinate with the main verb *dūxērunt*, l. 7.

4. **Rōmānīs deesse**, *that the Romans lacked*.

5. **cognōscerent**: repeat the conjunction *cum* in translating.

hōc: see on *hōc . . . quod*, Bk. III, 9, 12.

etiam with the comparative has an intensive force, *still*.

7. **auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [auxilium], give aid, help, assist.

10. **perturbātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [perturbō],

disturbance, alarm, confusion.

11. **re-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* carry back, convey back.

optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō comme-
ātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod, hīs
superātis aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem postea bellī inferendī
causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque, rūsus 10
coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex
agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

*Caesar's fore-
sight. The
fleet is
repaired.*

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognō-
verat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex
eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod
accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia com-
parābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōn- 5
ferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā
atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbātur et quae ad eās rēs
erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum
summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis,
reliquis ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset, effēcit. 10

7. factū: see App. 296; A. 510; B. 340, 2; H. 635; H.-B. 619. It may be
omitted in translation. dūxērunt = putāvērunt.

rebellione factā, to renew hostilities and.

8. rem, the campaign. hīs superātis, etc. = a conditional clause.

9. aut, or at least.

10. rūsus here does not mean "a second time," but denotes a return to
their former hostile attitude.

2. ēventū has here the rarer meaning accident, disaster.

ex eō, quod, from the fact that.

3. fore . . . accidit, that events would turn out as they actually did.
Literally? fore id = id futurum esse.

4. subsidia comparābat, was making provision.

6. quae . . . nāvēs, eārum = eārum nāvium quae.

7. aere: copper and bronze were used because they do not rust.

quae: the antecedent is an understood ea, the subject of comparārī.

9. studiō: ablative of manner, without a preposition.

XII . . . āmissis: translate by an adversative clause or a prepositional
phrase,—with the loss of only, etc.

10. reliquis: put forward for emphasis.

ut . . . effēcit, made it possible that they could sail tolerably well.

9. reditus, -ūs, *m.* [redeō], a going
back, returning, return.

6. ad-fligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *tr.*

[fligō, dash], damage, injure.

7. aes, aeris, *n.*, copper; money; aes
aliēnum, another's money, debt.

*The Britons
ambush the
Roman
foragers.*

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine
ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur vii,
neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā,
cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra
5 ventitāret, ii quī prō portīs castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesarī
nūntiāverunt pulverem maiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā
parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id
quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī,
cohortēs quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem
10 proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statīōnem succēdere, reliquās
armārī et cōnfestim sē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā
castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre
et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animad-
vertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō
15 pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ven-

1. dum ea geruntur, *in the meanwhile.*

2. frūmentātum: supine; see on *rogātum*, Bk. I, 11, 5.

3. neque ūllā . . . suspiciōne interpositā, *without any suspicion having arisen*; explained by the following *cum* clause.

5. quī . . . erant: before each of the four gates a cohort was regularly placed on guard (*statīō*).

6. pulverem, *cloud of dust.*

maiōrem . . . ferret, *unusually large* (lit. *larger than custom brings*).

7. parte, *direction.*

id quod erat, *as was (actually) the case*; compare *quod accidit*, ch. 31, 3. The expression is explained by *aliquid* . . . cōnsilī, *namely, that some new plot, etc.*

8. cōnsilī: genitive of the whole, with *aliquid*.

10. ex reliquīs duās: of the six remaining cohorts, four were to accompany him, leaving only two to guard the camp.

11. armārī: the passive form of a Latin verb is sometimes used as the equivalent of an active form with a reflexive pronoun as its object; *armārī* here = *sē armāre*.

12. sustinēre: used absolutely, *stood their ground.*

13. cōnfertā legiōne, abl. abs. denoting cause.

conicī: sc. *in eam*.

15. pars ūna, *only one place*, from which grain could be obtained.

suspiciātī: translate by a verb coördinate with *dēlituerant*.

11. cōnfestim, *adv.*, immediately, at once.

14. dē-metō, -ere, -messuī, -mes-sum, *tr.*, cut down, reap, harvest.

tūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

*Description of
chariot-fighting.*

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulum ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant, ut, sī illi ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum ūsū et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

16. dispersōs . . . occupātōs, *while they were, etc.*

17. paucīs interfectīs: translate as coördinate with *perturbāverant*.

18. incertīs ōrdinibus: abl. abs. denoting cause. The sudden attack of the enemy made the usual formation impossible.

19. circumdederant: this verb takes either the acc. of the person (here *reliquōs*) and the abl. of the thing, or the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing.

1. ex essedīs pugnae, *of chariot-fighting*.

2. perequitant: supply the subject from the context.

3. ipsō terrōre equōrum, *by the mere terror which the horses inspire*.

4. cum: the clause is of the same nature as that in Bk. III, 14, 17.

sē . . . insinuāvērunt: the charioteers drove into the intervals between their own troops of horse, where the men dismounted. The chariots then withdrew a short distance until they were needed.

7. illi: *i.e.*, the dismounted *essedārīi*.

multitūdine, *by superior numbers*.

9. praestant, *display*.

17. metō, -ere, messuī, messum, *tr.*, cut, reap.

18. essedum, -ī, *n.*, chariot, the two-wheeled war chariot used by the Britons.

19. circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.*, put around, surround, encircle.

2. per-equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, ride through, ride about or around.

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of cavalry, the tenth part of an āla.

in-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, wind or work into, introduce.

5. auriga, -ae, *m. and f.*, charioteer.

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō], way of retreat, refuge; retreat.

8. stabilitās, -ātis, *f.* [stabilis, steady], steadiness.

10 efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar brings help. The Britons decide to attack Caesar's camp.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad laccessendum hostem et
5 committendū proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs conti-
10 nērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

10. ac praecipitī locō, and even precipitous ground; ac as often adds a stronger expression. incitātōs, when at full speed.

sustinēre, to check, a complementary inf. after cōnsuērint.

11. brevī = celeriter.

per, along. The chariot was open in front; for illud. see Vocab., essedum.

1. quibus rēbus, by these tactics; abl. of means.

perturbātis nostrīs: dative with auxilium tulit.

3. adventū: see on quōrum adventū, Bk. II, 7, 4.

sē recēpērunt: used as in ch. 27, 1.

5. aliēnum . . . suō: aliēnus is another's, unfavorable, as opposed to suus, one's own, favorable.

6. brevī tempore intermissō, after waiting a short time.

7. (iī) quī . . . reliquī: the Britons mentioned in ch. 32, 4, 5.

8. continuōs, successive.

9. quae, of a sort that, hence the subjunctive.

11. moderor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr. [modus], control, guide; manage, govern.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, tr. and intr., turn, turn around, guide.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., beam, pole, especially of a chariot.

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī),

-cursum, tr. and intr., run through or over, pass over or along.

12. citō, adv. [citus], quickly, speedily, soon; comp., citius, sup., citissimē.

8. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [continueō], uninterrupted, continuous, successive, one after another.

suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt. 15

*The Britons
are defeated.
Caesar rav-
ages their
territory.*

35. Caesar. etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum transportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. 5
Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs nostrī tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt. 10

*The return
into Gaul.*

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in conti-

12. praedicāvērunt, caused . . . to become known.
in perpetuum, for all time to come.

13. liberandī: for the number and gender of this form see App. 291, a; A. 504, c; B. 339, 5; H. 626, 3; H.-B. 614.

14. hīs rēbus, by such measures as those mentioned in the preceding sentence.

2. ut (namely that) . . . effugerent: a substantive clause in apposition with idem.

essent pulsī: in the direct discourse the tense would be future perfect.

6. diūtius . . . nōn, not very long.

7. tantō . . . quantum, as far as; the abl. has here almost the same meaning as the acc. of extent.

8. cursū . . . potuērunt, freely, as it was possible to continue the pursuit on foot (lit. as they could by running and by [their own] strength). The cavalry were usually employed to pursue a retreating enemy.

2. hīs . . . numerum . . . duplicāvit, demanded of them twice the number; hīs may be taken as dative of reference.

3. ante: see ch. 27, 13.

12. prae-dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., proclaim, declare, state, assert.

15. peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], foot-

soldiers, infantry.

3. effugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, tr. and intr. [ex+fugiō], flee from, avoid, escape.

nentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmīs
 5 nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat.
 Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem
 nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem per-
 vērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōdem portūs, quōs
 reliquae, capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā dēlātae sunt.

*The treachery
 of the Morini.
 The "hollow
 circle" and a
 rescue.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs
 circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī,
 quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs
 reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum
 5 numerō circumsteterunt ac, sī sē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere
 iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad
 clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia vi convērunt. Quā rē
 nūtiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt.

4. propinquā diē aequinoctī, *as the time of the equinox* (here Sept. 24)
was drawing near. This is a period of severe storms.

infirmīs nāvibus, abl. abs., *with shattered ships.*

5. hiemī . . . subiciendam, *should be exposed to stormy weather.*

6. idōneam . . . solvit: compare ch. 23, 1, 2.

7. quae omnēs, *all the ships.*

8. quōs reliquae: supply *cēpērunt.*

9. capere: as in ch. 26, 14.

paulō infrā: south of Boulogne; cf. a similar use of the adjective
inferiōrem, ch. 28, 8.

On the English side the current sets toward the east, but on the Boulogne
 side it flows southward.

2. castra: made by Sulpicius Rufus at Boulogne; see ch. 22, 20-21.
 Caesar had already reached his camp.

3. proficiscēns, *on his departure.*

4. primō: an adverb. nōn ita, *not very.*

5. circumsteterunt: the object of this verb and the subject of pōnere are
 easily supplied. pōnere, *to lay down.*

6. orbe factō: this formation was used in order to present a protected
 front against an enemy attacking in superior numbers on every side.

ad, *in answer to.*

7. hominum: construe with *mīlia.*

8. omnem . . . equitātum: *i.e.*, those in the camp of Sulpicius.

4. aequinoctium, -ī, n. [aequus+
 nox], the equinox.

9. infrā, *adv. and prep.* [=inferā, *sc.*
 parte], below, farther down.

Interim nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque
amplius hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus 10
acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Postea vērō quam
equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs
terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

*The Romans
ravage the ter-
ritory of the
Menapii. Win-
ter quarters. A
second thanks-
giving.*

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum
iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britannia redūxerat, in
Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, mīsīt. Quī
cum propter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent
nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs 5
ferē in potestātem Labiēnī vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L.
Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant,
omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs
incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdi-
derant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium 10
legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex
Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus
gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta
est.

10. hōris: abl. after *amplius*.

paucīs . . . acceptīs: adversative,—*while they themselves received only a few wounds*.

4. siccitātēs: plural because the quality belongs to several places.

quō . . . habērent, *had no place to which they could withdraw*.

5. quō perfugiō . . . erant ūsī, *which they had used as a place of refuge*;
quō refers to *palūdum*, but is attracted into agreement with the predicate
object *perfugiō*.

7. dūxerant: see ch. 22, 18-20.

12. neglēxērunt: supply *hoc facere*.

13. ex litterīs . . . dēcrēta est: see Bk. II, 35, 10-11 and notes. The
length of this thanksgiving, in spite of the opposition of Caesar's enemies at
Rome (see note at the close of ch. 13), was made even greater than that of
the previous one, showing the importance which the Romans attached to
these campaigns. Though the expeditions into Germany and Britain had
been fruitless, unknown lands had been opened up for future conquest, and
the very daring of the enterprise flattered the national pride of the Romans.

4. siccitās, -ātis, *f.* [siccus], dry-
ness.

5. perfugium, -ī, *n.* [perfugiō, flee],
place of refuge, refuge.

BOOK V

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hībernīs
 Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis
The building of a fleet. Caesar goes to Illyricum.
 5 *The Pirustae are "pacified."* imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam
 plūrimās possint hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēs-
 que reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque
 dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiō-
 nisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō mari
 utī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās
 commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi flūctūs fierī cognō-
 10 verat, ad onera ac multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam
 paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās
 omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās

1. L. Domitiō . . . cōsulibus: the year was 54 B.C.
2. in Italiam = *in citeriōrem Galliam*.
3. quam plūrimās (sc. *aedificāre*) possint, *as many as possible*.
4. aedificandās . . . cūrent, *they should have built*.
5. modum, *size, proportions*.
6. ad . . . subductiōnis = *ut celeriter onerārī subducīque possent*. For the meaning of *subductiōnis* see on *subdūxerat*, Bk. IV, 29, 4.
7. quam quibus = *quam eae sunt quibus*.
 nostrō mari: of course the Mediterranean is meant.
8. atque id, *and that (too)*.
 quod . . . fierī: it is a fact that the current frequently changes. This, however, would not account for the size of the waves.
9. cognōverat: with the force of an impf.; cf. *cōsuēvimus*, l. 8.
11. reliquīs . . . maribus: the different arms of the Mediterranean.
12. āctuāriās: pred. adjective.
 imperat is regularly used with the accusative and infinitive only when the infinitive has the passive form. For a different construction cf. *utī . . . cūrent*, ll. 3-5.

-
1. Domitius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in 54 B.C.
 6. onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [onus], load.

- subductiō, -ōnis, *f.* [subducō], drawing ashore, beaching.
12. āctuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [agō], swift, swift-sailing.
- humilitās, -ātis, *f.* [humilis], lowness.

adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem 15 prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitatibus milītēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satis- 20 facere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum, Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitatē persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitatēs dat, quī litem aestiment poenamque cōstituant. 25

Caesar arrives in Gaul and proceeds against the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hibernīs, singulārī militem studiō in summā omnium

13. ea quae . . . nāvēs: of what the equipment consisted is stated in Bk. IV, 29, 8. Spain furnished metal for the anchors, etc., and grass for the ropes. sunt ūsuī takes the place of a passive of ūtor.

19. pūblicō = rei pūblīcae; cf. the similar use of pūblicē.

22. nisi . . . fēcerint: the conclusion is persecūtūrum (esse).

23. ad diem: i.e., ad cōstitutam diem.

24. dat, appoints.

25. poenam, compensation, indemnity.

1. rēbus: rēs, modified by a pronoun or adjective, is often used in place of a neuter pronoun or adjective alone, especially in the gen., dat., or abl. plural, to avoid ambiguity; hīs alone would naturally refer to arbitrōs in the preceding chapter.

3. circumitīs, after making the rounds of, etc., on a tour of inspection.

4. in summā . . . inopiā, in spite of the greatest scarcity.

14. ad-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. carry, bring.

per-agō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr., accomplish, complete.

15. Pīrūstae, -ārum, m., an Illyrian people.

16. incursiō, -ōnis, f. [incurrō, run into], invasion, attack.

21. percipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [per+capiō], perceive, hear, learn.

24. arbiter, -trī, m., judge, arbitrator.

lis, litis, f., strife, lawsuit, damages.

25. aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., reckon, estimate, consider.

5 rērum inopiā circiter dc eius generis, cuius suprā dēmōstrā-
 vimus, nāvēs et longās xxviii invēnit instrūctās neque multum
 abesse ab eō quī paucis diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātis
 militibus atque iīs quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit
 ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quō
 10 ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cognō-
 verat, circiter milium passuum xxx ā continentī; huic rei
 quod satis esse vīsum est militum relinquit. Ipse cum legiō-
 nibus expeditis iiii et equitibus dccc in finēs Trēverōrum pro-
 ficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō
 15 pārēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

*Factions
 among the
 Treveri. Caesar
 in a favorable
 rôle.*

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimū tōtius Galliae
 equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum,
 Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, tangit.
 In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, In-
 5 dūtiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē

5. cuius: for *quod*, an unusual attraction of the relative.

6. instrūctās: sc. *armamentis*.

neque multum, etc., and there was little to hinder launching them in a few days (lit. there was not much lacking from this but that, etc.); see on *neque longius*, etc., Bk. III, 18, 7.

7. dēdūcī: the opposite of *subdūcī*.

8. atque, and especially.

11. milium passuum: gen. of measure with *trāiectum*.

huic rei, for this purpose, i.e., to protect the fleet as it assembled.

12. quod . . . militum, what seemed a sufficient number of soldiers.

14. concilia (*Gallōrum*): which Caesar had summoned.

2. equitātū: on the cavalry of the Treveri see Bk. II, 24, 12.

3. suprā: in Bk. III, 11, 1, 2. tangit here = *attingit*.

4. principātū, leadership; not an office, *magistrātus*, but a prominent position gained by personal influence.

5. alter, the latter.

7. conlaudō, -āre, -āvi, -atum, tr. [com-+laudō], praise highly, eulogize.

9. Itius, -a, -um, adj. (sc. portus), a port of the Morini, probably Boulogne. Map IV, D, 1.

10. com-modus, -a, -um, adj., suitable; advantageous.

3. tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., touch; reach, come to, border on.

4. Indūtiomārus, -ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.

5. Cingetorix, -igis, m., (1) a chief of the Treveri, and a rival of his father-in-law Indutiomarus; (2) a British chief in Kent.

Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iisque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam 10 Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī magnitudīne per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteaquam nōn nullī principēs ex eā civitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorigis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnerunt et dē suis 15 privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsereretur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō contineret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprudentiam lābe- 20 rētur; itaque civitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātisque fortūnās eius fideī permissūrum.

Caesar de-
mands hostages
and offers
consolation.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterreret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere

7. in officiō futūrōs, *would remain true.*

11. ingentī magnitudīne: abl. of description with *quae*.

13. instituit: see on *instituunt*, Bk. III, 9, 12.

16. cōnsulere: note different meanings when followed by the accusative and the dative.

17. possent: subjunctive in a quoted reason.

19. in officiō contineret: for translation cf. Bk. III, 11, 4.

20. discessū: what double meaning is in this abl.? Cf. *adventū*, Bk. II, 7, 4. lāberetur: *i.e., ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficeret.*

23. fideī permissūrum, *put under his protection*; cf. *in fidem . . . permittere*, Bk. II, 3, 4, and note the difference in case construction.

2. institūtō cōnsiliō, *the plan he had formed*, told in ch. 3, 9-13.

11. Arduenna, -ae, *f., a forest of northeastern Gaul, the Ardennes. Map IV, F-G, 1-2.*

16. cōsulō, -ere, -sulūi, -sultum, *tr. and intr., take counsel for, con-*

sult for; take measures; consult.

18. idcirco, *adv., on that or this account, therefore.*

20. lābor, -ī, lāpsus, *intr., slip; fall, fall away, commit a fault.*

cōgerētur, omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis,
 5 Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs
 adductīs, in iīs filiō propinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōmi-
 nātīm ēvocāverat, cōsōlātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est,
 utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius, prīncipibus Trē-
 verōrum ad sē convocātis, hōs singillātīm Cingetorigī concili-
 10 āvit, quod cum meritō eius ab sē fierī intellegēbat, tum magnī
 interesse arbitrābātur eius auctōritātem inter suōs quam
 plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem per-
 spexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus, et quī
 iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc
 15 dolōre exārsit.

*Everything
 is ready for
 the departure.*

5. Hīs rēbus cōstitūtis, Caesar ad portum Itium
 cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs,
 quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte reiectās cursum tenēre
 nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse;
 5 reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās
 invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō
 mīlia IIII prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitatibus; ex quibus per-
 paucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā,
 reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse
 10 abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

8. prīncipibus: the leaders of the party of Indutiomarus.

10. quod (acc.) cum, etc., and he not only knew that he (Cingetorix) had
 deserved this of him, lit. that this was being done by him (Caesar) in accordance
 with his (Cingetorix's) deserts. cum . . . tum: correlative.

magnī interesse, that it was of great importance; magnī is genitive of
 indefinite value.

12. cuius . . . perspexisset, since he had, etc.; subjunctive in a causal
 clause. voluntātem, attachment.

14. fuisset: causal, like *perspexisset* above, or it may be explained as
 adversative. hōc dolōre = *huius rei dolōre*.

6. numerō: abl. of specification.

9. locō, as. cum . . . abesset, during his absence.

10. mōtum = *rebelliōnem*.

15. ex-ārdēscō, -ere, -ārsi, -ārsū-
 rus, intr. [ārdēscō, take fire], be
 kindled, be inflamed or excited.

3. Meldi, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people
 on the Marne, about modern Meaux.
 Map IV, E, 2.

*Dumnorix
causes trouble.
He wishes to
remain in
Gaul.*

6. Erat unā cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō 5 Haeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, 10 partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēptā, principes Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, ut in continentī remanērent: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī 15

1. cum ceteris: sc. *principibus*.

2. ante: in Book I, ch. 9, where Dumnorix's character and schemes are described at length.

4. animī: descriptive genitive.

5. accēdēbat, etc.: see on *accēdēbat quod*, Bk. III, 2, 13.

6. sibi . . . dēferri: just as Caesar had made Commius king of the Atrebates. The Haedui had no king.

7. neque, *but not*; cf. *neque*, Bk. IV, 26, 13.

recūsandī, *of protesting*, is used absolutely.

9. omnibus, *all possible*.

10. petere contendit, *earnestly begged*.

11. nāvigandī: for case see App. 106, *a*; A. 349, *a*; B. 204; H. 450; H.-B. 354.

12. religiōnibus, *religious scruples*, perhaps on the ground that he was bound to the performance of certain religious duties which made it impossible for him to leave Gaul.

diceret: see on Bk. I, 23, 9.

15. nōn . . . necāret: indirect discourse.

7. dictum, -ī, *n.* [dīcō], assertion; word.

9. hospes, -itis, *m. and f.*, host, guest; hereditary *or* family friend.

11. in-suētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, un-

used.

12. obstinātē, *adv.* [obstinātus, resolved], firmly, resolutely.

13. adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [ad+emō], take away, remove; destroy.

nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī
 20 cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Caesar is watchful. The wind causes delay. The flight and death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitatī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumno-
 5 rīgem statuēbat; et, quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibi ac rei pūblīcae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen
 10 sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impeditīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere

18. fidem . . . interpōnere, *he gave his pledge.*

19. ut . . . administrārent gives the content of the oath.

esse ex ūsū = *usuū esse.*

21. dēferēbantur: note the force of the imperfect.

1. tantum . . . dignitātis: Caesar felt that the revolt of this powerful tribe from its long established allegiance must be prevented at all hazards.

3. quibuscumque . . . posset, *by every possible means.*

4. longius, *still further.*

5. prōspiciendum (esse), *that he must take precautions.*

sibi does not refer to the subject of posset.

6. commorātus, *since he had to wait.*

8. omnis temporis = *tōtū annī.*

11. militēs = *peditēs.*

12. omnium impeditīs animīs = *nostrīs omnibus occupātīs* of Bk. IV, 34, 7; for the circumlocution cf. *eōrum . . . animīs*, Bk. IV, 6, 10.

16. spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [spolium], strip, despoil, plunder, rob.

4. āmentia, -ae, *f.* [āmēns], madness, folly.

6. com-moror, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, wait, stop.

7. Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

8. flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, *tr. and intr.*, blow.

coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum 15 insequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sãnō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse 20 cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Labiēnus guards Caesar's communications. The voyage. A long pull and a hard pull.

8. Hīs rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continentī cum III legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōsili- 5 umque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum V legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā

15. omnibus rēbus, *everything else*.

16. retrahī . . . imperat: see on *imperat*, ch. 1, 12.

17. prō sãnō (masculine), *like a sane man*.

18. quī: causal.

19. manū: *i.e.*, with the weapons in his hands. *fidem*, *protection*.

20. clāmitāns: intensive verb, *crying loudly*.

21. hominem: this noun is occasionally used instead of the demonstrative pronoun.

1. Labiēnō . . . relictō: the fact that Caesar left his best lieutenant and so strong a force shows that he realized the dangerous condition of affairs in Gaul.

5. prō . . . rē, *according to the occasion and the circumstances*.

6. parī (=eōdem) . . . quem: the usual construction would be *parī atque*.

7. nāvēs solvit: probably on July 21.

15. post-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, neglect, disregard.

16. re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, bring back.

17. sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

20. implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [in+plōrō, cry out], entreat, implore.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

7. Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, African; *sc. ventus*) the southwest wind, which blows from Africa to Italy.

circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius
 delātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōn-
 10 spexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs
 contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse
 ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum
 fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs
 nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum
 15 adaequāvērunt.. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus
 merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed,
 ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cognōvit, cum magnae manūs eō
 convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annō-
 tinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat,

8. nōn tenuit = *tenēre nōn potuit*. et: *but*.

longius . . . aestū, *being carried too far by the tide*, which was running northeast, so that they were leaving Britain behind them on the left.

9. sub sinistrā (*manū*): construe with *relictam*.

10. rūsus . . . commūtātiōnem: the tide now turned in the opposite direction.

11. caperet: meaning as in Bk. IV, 26, 15.

optimum . . . ēgressum: the landing was probably made north of Deal; see on *apertō* . . . *lītore*, Bk. IV, 23, 18. Caesar apparently does not mean that the landing was made at exactly the same point as in the previous year, but that it was on the same side of the island. Apparently he thought the shore here safer than where he had beached his ships on the first voyage.

13. virtūs, *perseverance, endurance*. laudanda, *praiseworthy*.

vectōriūs . . . nāvigiūs: abl. of means.

gravibusque, *and that too (-que) though heavily laden*.

14. nōn . . . labōre, *by unremitting labor at the oar*.

15. accessum . . . nāvibus, *the whole fleet reached, etc.*

16. neque, *but not*.

19. privātis (*nāvibus*): perhaps some of these belonged to traders, others to wealthy officers.

12. ēgressus, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior],
 landing, landing-place.

13. laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*
 [laus], praise, commend.

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō], for
 carrying; vectōria nāvigia, trans-
 port-ships.

14. rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*
 [rēmex], row.

16. merīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [meri-
 diēs], of midday; merīdiānum
 tempus, noon.

18. annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus],
 of last year, a year old.

amplius DCCC ūnō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant ac 20
sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Caesar, leaving
Atrius to guard
the ships, ad-
vances against
the enemy.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō
captō, ubi ex captivīs cognōvit quō in locō hostium
cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis
et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā
ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore
mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquiēbat. Ei
praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō-
gressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus
est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō
superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. 10
Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum nactī ēgregiē
et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur,
causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succīs
omnēs introitus erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpugnā-
bant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At 15
milites legiōnis vii testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs

20. **amplius DCCC** stands in a predicate relation with *quae*,—*which to the number of more than*, etc.; *amplius* does not affect the construction.

1. **expositō . . . captō**: tr. by clauses coördinate with *ubi . . . cognōvit*.

3. **cohortibus . . . equitibus**: tr. by a clause coördinate with *contendit*.

4. **dē tertiā vigiliā**: see on *secundā vigiliā*, Bk. II, 11, 1.

5. **veritus**, with the dat., means *fearing for*, *anxious about*.

litore . . . apertō, a low and open shore, i.e., free from reefs and offering an easy landing. In Bk. IV, 23, 18, 19 the shore is described as *apertō ac plānō*.

9. **flūmen**: the Stour, a small stream which flows through Canterbury.

11. **locum nactī**, where they had a place.

12. **opere** (art) = *manū* of Bk. III, 23, 4.

14. **rārī**, here and there, the opposite of *frequentēs*.

prōpugnābant, hurled missiles.

16. **testūdine factā**: protected by the *testūdō*, they threw up an embankment against the works of the enemy, in order to climb the wall and take the place.

7. **Ātrius, -ī, m.**, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Atrius, one of Caesar's officers.

14. **introitus, -ūs, m.** [*introeō*, go

in], entrance, place of entrance, access.

praeclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr. [*prae+claudō*], shut or cut off.

adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte
20 diēi cōsūptā mūnitiōnī castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

*Atrius sends
bad news.*

10. Postrīdiē eius diēi māne tripertītō milītēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem
5 vērunt quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs adflīctās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Caesar arranges to repair the fleet. A stronger camp. Cassivellaunus heads a league of the Britons.

11. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs cognōverat, cōram
5 perspicit, sic ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae reficī posse, magnō tamen negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet;

18. eōs: the soldiers of the VIIth legion; subject of *prōsequī*.

3. aliquantum itineris, some distance.

cum . . . in prōspectū: i.e., the three columns had gone so far that only the rear was visible to the soldiers left in camp.

7. neque . . . sustinērent, would not hold out, hold firm.

neque . . . possent: the ships, breaking from their moorings, had become unmanageable, and as a result (*ita*) collided (*concursū*) with one another.

2. revocārī: i.e., from the pursuit.

3. cōram: i.e., with his own eyes.

4. sic (namely that, etc.) . . . vidērentur gives the result of his own personal observation.

5. negōtiō: meaning as in Bk. II, 17, 8.

6. fabrōs: the force of artisans under the direction of the *praefectus fabrum* (= *fabrōrum*) was not sufficient to meet this emergency, so Caesar made use of the skilled workmen from the ranks of the legions.

1. tripertītō, adv. [tripertītus, in three parts], in or into three parts.

3. cōram, adv. [com-+ōs], in person, face to face, in one's presence.

6. faber, -brī, m. (gen. pl., *fabrum*), a workman, carpenter, mechanic. In the Roman army the *fabri* or engineers constituted a separate corps.

Labiēnō scribit, ut, quam plūrimās possit, iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum, nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs 10 rēbus circiter diēs x cōsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum 15 convēnerant summā imperī bellique administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimīs civitātibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs civitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū 20 permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Britain. Its inhabitants and products.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt,

7. scribit: the letter contains a command, hence *ut* and the subjunctive follow.

8. instituat = *instruat*.

erat . . . labōris, *involved much toil and trouble*.

9. commodissimum, *best*.

11. nē . . . intermissis, *not interrupting the labor of the soldiers even at night; how literally?*

14. eōdem: to the camp made at the close of the first day's fighting.

16. summā imperī, etc., *the supreme command and the general direction of the war; administrandī belongs only with bellī*.

18. ā marī . . . LXXX: following the route from his landing place.

19. huic . . . intercesserant, *in the past he had been constantly waging war with the other states; how literally?*

1. quōs nātōs (esse) in insulā is the subject of prōditum (esse). Translate, *who, according to their tradition (ipsī memoriā prōditum dīcunt), originated in the island*. This theory of the origin of peoples was common among the ancients.

7. scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, *tr. and intr., write*.

17. Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m., the British commander-in-chief who fought against Caesar*.

18. Tamesis, -is, *m., the Thames. Map IV, C-D, 1*.

1. interior, -ius, *comp. adj. [inter], inner, interior; superl., intimus, innermost*.

maritima pars ab iis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex
 Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus cīvitātum
 5 appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et
 bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.
 Hominum est infīnīta multitudō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē
 Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut
 nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs
 10 prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs
 regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere
 ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Galliā,
 est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et
 ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī

3. *maritima pars*: the southeast coast is meant.

4. *isdem nōminibus cīvitātum* = *nōminibus eārundem cīvitātum*. There were in Britain tribes called Atrebates and Belgae.

5. *ortī ex cīvitātibus* need not be translated.

6. *bellō inlātō*, *after*, etc., referring to *bellī . . . causā*, l. 3.

7. *crēberrima*: pred. adj.; sc. *sunt*.

9. *ad certum pondus exāminātīs* = *certī ponderis*.

10. *prō nummō*, as money, with *ūtuntur*.

plumbum album, tin. In early times the Phoenicians obtained tin from Cornwall. The mines were on the coast, not inland, as here stated.

11. *ferrum . . . aere*: both iron and copper are found in England.

13. *praeter . . . abietem*: this is an error. Both trees are native to Britain.

14. *animī . . . causā*, for amusement (lit. for the sake of the feelings).

4. *Belgium*, -ī, *n.*, Belgium, the country of the Belgae. Map IV, D-G, 1-2.

9. *nummus*, -ī, *m.*, a piece of money, coin.

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar.

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [exāmen, the tongue of a balance], weigh, balance.

10. *plumbum*, -ī, *n.*, lead; *plumbum album*, tin.

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [me-

dius+terra], inland, interior.

13. *fāgus*, -ī, *f.*, beech-tree, beech.

abiēs, -etis, *f.*, the silver fir, fir-tree.

lepus, -oris, *m.*, a hare.

gallīna, -ae, *f.* [gallus, cock], a hen.

14. *ānser*, -eris, *m.*, goose.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, taste, eat.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.* [for, speak], divine sanction or law, as opposed to *iūs*, human law or right; right, in the sight of the gods.

voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, 15
remissiōribus frīgoribus.

*The form and
situation of
the island.*

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est
contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī
est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad
orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet
circiter mīlia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque 5
occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor,
ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmīssūs

15. loca . . . temperātiōra: *i.e.*, they have a milder climate.

16. remissiōribus frīgoribus, *the cold*, etc.; ablative absolute, denoting cause.

2. contrā Galliam: in Bk. III, 9, 27, when describing the country of the allies of the Veneti, Caesar refers to Britain as situated *contrā eās regiōnēs*.

3. quō = *ad quem*.

adpelluntur, *put in*.

5. alterum (sc. *latus*), *a second side*; it balances ūnum, l. 1, and tertium l. 15.

ad Hispāniam: this error is found in all the ancient writers and in the ancient maps, in which the coast of Gaul runs southwest, and Spain extends much further north than it should. This explains why it is here located on the west of Britain.

6. quā ex parte, *on this side*.

dīmidiō minor: we should say "half as large"; how literally?

7. exīstimātur: in its original meaning; note the derivation.

parī spatiō: descriptive abl. depending on *Hibernia* and governing *trānsmīssūs*.

15. voluptās, -ātis, *f.* [volō], pleasure, delight.

temperātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of temperō, forbear], moderate, temperate, mild.

16. remissus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of remittō], relaxed, not rigid, mild.

1. triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, with three corners, triangular.

2. angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner, angle.

3. Cantium, -ī, *n.*, *a district of south-eastern England, Kent. Map IV, D, 1.*

4. meridiēs, -ēī, *m.*, midday; the south.

6. occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *intr.* [ob+cadō], fall or go down, be lost; set; occidēns sōl, the setting sun, west.

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland. *Map I, B, 1.*

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dis-+medius], half, one half of; *as subst.*, *n.*, a half.

7. trānsmīssus, -ūs, *m.* [trānsmittō], sending across, passing over, passage.

atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs
 10 obiectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nōn nullī scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō,
 15 dcc mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centēnum mīlium passuum.

*The manner
of life of the
Britons.*

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis,

8. atque: see on *parī* . . . *quem*, ch. 8, 6.

est: sc. *spatium trānsmisus* as subject.

in . . . mediō cursū = *in mediō trānsmisū*, i.e., half way across.

10. obiectae (esse), to lie opposite (ob) this side.

11. diēs continuōs XXX: the ancients thought that Britain extended much further north than it really does.

sub brūmam: cf. *sub occāsum sōlis*, Bk. II, 11, 19.

12. nisi = *nisi quod*,—except that.

certīs . . . mēnsūrīs, by exact measurements with the water clock (*clepsydra*). The water clock was on the principle of the hour glass, the water dropping through a small aperture in the bottom of the vessel.

14. ut fert . . . opīniō, in their opinion.

illōrum: these are the *nōn nullī* of l. 10.

18. centēnum: genitive plural.

1. hūmānissimī: meaning as in Bk. IV, 3, 8.

9. Mona, -ae, f., usually in ancient writers the island of Anglesey, probably in Caesar the Isle of Man. Map I, C, 1.

11. brūma, -ae, f. [for *brevima* = *brevissima*], the winter solstice; winter.

12. percontātiō, -ōnis, f. [percon-

tor], inquiring, question, inquiry.

13. mēnsūra, -ae, f. [mētior], measuring, measurement.

15. DCC = septingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [septem+centum], seven hundred.

18. viciēs, num. adv. [viginti], twenty times.

neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pelli-
busque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt 5
quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in
pugnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte
corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

*Fight with
British cavalry.*

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius insecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī intermissō 5
spatiō imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnitiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs conlocātī, ācriter pugnāvērunt,

3. cōnsuētūdine (*vītae*) = *mōribus*.

interiōrēs, *the inhabitants of the interior*. Compare the description of the Germans given in Bk. IV, 1, 15, 16.

4. plērīque, *for the most part*.

7. aspectū: ablative of respect.

capillō . . . sunt prōmissō, *they wear their hair long*.

8. rāsā: tr. as a main verb in the active voice.

1. equitēs . . . essedāriī: see on *sē . . . insinuāvērunt*, Bk. IV, 33, 4. The narrative is resumed from ch. 11, 17.

2. ita tamen ut, *with the result, however, that*.

3. partibus = *locīs*; for the omission of the prep. see App. 151, b; A. 429, 1; B. 228, b); H. 485, 2; H.-B. 436.

5. intermissō spatiō, *after a time*.

6. imprudentibus . . . castrōrum, *while our men were off their guard, and were busied in fortifying their camp*.

8. in statiōne: see on *quī . . . erant*, Bk. IV, 32, 5.

4. serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.

5. vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., clothe, dress.

vitrum, -ī, n., glass; woad, a plant used in dyeing blue.

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [*in* + *faciō*], lay on, color, stain.

6. caeruleus, -a, -um, adj. [*caelum*],

dark-blue, azure, sea-blue.

color, -ōris, m., hue, color.

horribilis, -e, adj. [*horreō*], dreadful, fearful.

7. aspectus, -ūs, m. [*aspiciō*], look; appearance, aspect.

capillus, -ī, m. [*dim. akin to caput*], the hair of the head, hair.

8. rādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr., shave.

labrum, -ī, n., lip; edge, border.

duābusque missīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque iīs prīmīs
 10 legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter
 sē cōstitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritīs nostrīs, per
 mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpē-
 runt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur.
 Illi plūribus submissīs cohortibus repelluntur.

*The tactics
 of the
 Britons.*

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculīs
 omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est
 nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequi
 cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs
 5 esse ad huius generis hostem, equitēs autem magnō cum periculō
 proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque
 cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent,
 ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent.
 Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōfertī, sed rārī magnisque inter-

9. duābus . . . cohortibus: adversative.

atque iīs prīmīs, and these too the first cohorts, which contained the best soldiers; cf. *atque id*, ch. 1, 8.

- 10. cum: adversative.

perexiguō . . . inter sē, with but very little space between them.

11. novō . . . nostrīs: from this it appears that these cohorts had not been in the previous expedition to Britain.

per mediōs: i.e., between the Roman cohorts.

3. nostrōs: i.e., peditēs, as is shown by equitēs, l. 5.

neque . . . audērent: because they had been trained to fight in close order. Indeed, the heavy armor of the legionaries made skirmishing impossible.

6. dīmicāre: the constr. is still that of ind. dis., depending on *intellēctum est*.

7. nostrōs: i.e., equitēs.

8. disparī proeliō: because the *essedārī* on foot supported the cavalry, while the Roman cavalry lacked the support of the legionaries.

9. rārī: as in ch. 9, 14.

10. per-exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

13. Laberius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp., Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune.

Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

6. cōsultō, *adv.* [cōsultus], deliberately, designedly, intentionally.

8. dis-pār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, ill-matched.

vāllīs proeliārentur statīōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque 10
aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatīgātīs
succēderent.

*The foragers
are attacked
but repulse
the enemy.
The British
host breaks up.*

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus
cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam
prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō laccessere coepērunt.
Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs
atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, 5
repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc
utī ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter
in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt
quoad subsidiō cōfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent,
praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō 10
neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī
facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique

10. statīōnēs, reserves.

11. aliōs aliī here expresses a reciprocal relation, *one another*.

dēfatīgātīs succēderent, *took the place of those who were worn out*.

1. in collibus: to which they had been driven; cf. ch. 15, 3, 4.

2. lēnius = *minus ācriter*, contrasted with *ācriter* of ch. 15, 1.

3. proeliō: what kind of ablative?

7. ab signīs, etc.: they even ventured up to the legions, which were
drawn up in battle array to protect the foragers.

nostrī: *i.e., peditēs*.

8. sequendī, not *īnsequendī* or *persequendī*, because the enemy had not
yet been put to flight.

9. subsidiō (abl.) cōfīsī: explained by *cum . . . vidērent*.

10. praecipitēs, *into headlong flight*.

11. suī colligendī: cf. the same expression, Bk. III, 6, 3.

12. ex, *immediately after*. quae . . . convēnerant: see ch. 11, 15, 16.

11. dē-fatīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,
tire out, weary, exhaust.

4. pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [pā-
bulum], to forage.

5. Trebōnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name;
*esp. Gaius Trebonius, one of
Caesar's legates*.

6. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden],

suddenly, unexpectedly.

pābulātor, -ōris, *m.* [pābulor], a
forager.

ad-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, fly
to or against, rush on or at, make
an onset.

7. ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*,
stand aloof, withdraw.

convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

*Caesar crosses
the Thames.*

18. Caesar cognitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen unō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis
5 rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixis mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim
10 legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs ierunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstarent, ut hostes impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinere nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandarent.

*Cassivellaunus
harasses the
Romans.*

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissis ampliōribus

14. summis . . . copiis, *in full force.*

1. cōsiliō: the plan, as suggested at the end of ch. 17, and further explained in ch. 19, was to harass the Romans and cut off their supplies, but to avoid a decisive battle.

3. omnīnō, *alone.*

atque hōc (locō) aegrē, *and there only with difficulty.*

6. acūtis . . . praefixis: set in the north bank, projecting forward.

8. praemissō equitātū: they were probably sent across further up the river, to engage the enemy in the flank, while the legions were removing the obstacles and crossing the river.

9. eā . . . eō, *such*, followed by a result clause; cf. *eam*, Bk. IV, 1, 20.

10. cum: adversative.

12. rīpās: for the plural see on *rīpīs*, Bk. II, 23, 11.

dīmitterent, *gave up, abandoned.*

1. suprā: see ch. 17, 12-14.

2. contentiōnis: *i.e.*, of conquering in a decisive battle.

ampliōribus, *the larger part of.*

6. acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* acuō, sharpen], sharpened, sharp, pointed.

sudis, -is, *f.*, a pile, stake.

prae-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fix

or fasten before, set in front.

7. tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, *tr.*, cover, cover over, protect.

10. ex-stō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* stand out, rise above; appear.

cōpiis milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impedītis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iis regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs effūderat, essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum his cōfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agris vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnārīi milites efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes surrender and ask protection.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnū obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,

4. servābat, *kept watching*; note the imperfects.

locis . . . silvestribus: the *essedā* must have had high wheels to pass over the rough ground and must have been very narrow.

impedītis: *i.e., ad quae (loca) aditus difficilis erat.*

10. hōc metū = *huius rei metū*; cf. *hōc dolōre*, ch. 4, 14.

relinquēbātur, etc., *the only course left was for Caesar not to permit*, etc.

11. neque . . . et: correlative as in Bk. III, 14, 13.

discēdī (impersonal, sc. *ab equitātū*) in sense is equivalent to *equitēs discēdere*.

12. tantum . . . quantum, *and to inflict only so much damage on the enemy as*; how literally?

13. labōre atque itinere = *labōre itineris*. This is explained by the fact that the foot-soldiers had to accompany the cavalry on their raids as a protection.

3. fidem secūtus: see on *fidem sequantur*, Bk. IV, 21, 18.

5. ipse, *while he himself*.

8. effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [ex-fundō], pour out, pour, spread abroad.

12. incendium, -ī, *n.* [incendō], a burning, conflagration, fire.

1. Trinovantēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe living in southeastern Britain. Map IV, D, 1.

2. Mandubracius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Trinovantes.

lĕgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs
 atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā
 Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit
 imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frū-
 10 mentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī
 imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque
 mīsērunt.

*The enemy's
 position is
 carried by
 storm.*

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum
 iniūriā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs,
 Bibrocī, Cassī lĕgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī
 dēdunt. Ab hīs cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassi-
 5 vellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis magnus
 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem
 Britannī vocant, cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūni-
 ērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōn-
 suērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit
 10 ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex
 partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīli-
 tum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte
 oppidī ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multi-
 que in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

8. praesit: sc. eī cīvitātī.

9. imperium . . . obtineat: i.e., he was to be independent of Cassivel-
 launus, who then held supreme power. The subj. denotes purpose.

10. exercituī, for the army; dative of reference.

11. ad numerum, to the (required) number.

1. dēfēnsīs: i.e., ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī.

2. prohibitīs, protected.

4. ex eō locō: where the embassy met him.

oppidum Cassivellaunī: supposed to be the modern St. Albans.

6. oppidum (pred. acc.) . . . vocant cum, the Britons call (a place) a
 town whenever. This is in contrast with the permanently inhabited fortified
 towns of the Gallic Celts.

7. impeditās: for meaning cf. impeditīs, ch. 19, 4.

2. Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m., Segon-
 tiācī, -ōrum, m., Ancalitēs, -um,
 m., Bibrocī, -ōrum, m., Cassī,

-ōrum, m., tribes located in the
 southeastern part of Britain. Map
 IV, C-D, 1.

Cassivellaunus orders an attack on the naval camp. This being unsuccessful, he surrenders.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus III rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra 5 nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorianantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfec- 10 tiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō 15 Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōstituit; interdīcit atque

2. suprā: see ch. 14, 2.

5. castra nāvālia: the ships had been drawn up on the land and inclosed within the fortifications; see ch. 11, 10.

9. hōc . . . nūntiātō, after the news of, etc.

tot . . . fīnibus: ablatives absolute denoting cause.

10. maximē etiam, especially also, adds another reason.

13. repentinōs . . . mōtūs: cf. ut . . . cōnsilia, Bk. III, 8, 10, 11. Experience had shown that disturbances among the Gauls were always to be expected, and the reports from Labienus may have been disquieting.

14. id (=nōn multum aestātis) . . . extrahī posse, that little might be lost. Caesar had spent over two months on the island.

15. quid (=quantum): construe with vectīgālis.

in annōs singulōs = quotannīs. The Romans never collected the tribute, as Caesar left no soldiers to enforce his commands. In any event it would have yielded little, as the poverty of the Britons was notorious.

16. interdīcit atque imperat, he expressly forbids.

4. Carvilius, -ī, m., Taximagulus, -ī, m., Segovax, -actis, m., British princes of Kent.

8. Lugotorix, -igis, m., a British chieftain.

9. dētrīmentum, -ī, n. [dēterō], loss, injury, defeat.

16. pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsū, tr., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was, in early times, weighed in payment).

inter-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, tr., intervene by an order, prohibit, interdict.

imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

*Caesar returns
into Gaul.*

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et non nullae tempestates deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis quae milites portaret desideraretur; at ex iis quae inanes ex continentibus ad eum remitterentur prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat, numerum LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra expectasset, nē anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites conlocavit ac summam tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigiliam, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

24-58. The summer of 54 B.C. had been one of drought and bad harvests. The provisioning of an army became a serious matter, and Caesar, contrary to his usual custom, decided to distribute his forces in six divisions among various Gallic tribes. One of these divisions was placed in the

4. commeatibus, *trips*, the original meaning.

5. ac adds something new and noteworthy.

tot navigationibus: abl. abs. with adversative force.

8. prioris commeatus (*i.e.*, navibus prioris commeatus quae expositis militibus remissae erant) . . . et quas: the two classes of naves inanes.

9. postea: after the great storm, ch. 11, 7-9.

10. locum, *destination*.

caperent and reicerentur (*while the rest*, etc.) are in the same constr. as desideraretur, l. 7. For the meaning of caperent, cf. insulam capere, Bk. IV, 26, 14.

13. suberat: the verb means "be near," in place or time; cf. propinquam diem aequinoctium, Bk. IV, 36, 4.

15. prima luce: a voyage of eight or nine hours.

4. de-pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, perish, be lost.

8. inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, aban-

doned, useless.

12. excludō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.*, exclude, cut off; hinder, prevent.

territory of the Eburones, under two lieutenants, Sabinus and Cotta. A cruel fate awaited it.

The Eburones, under their chief Ambiorix, revolted and attacked the camp. Beaten back, they asked for a conference. When this was granted, the crafty Ambiorix, under the guise of friendship, pretended to warn the Romans of impending danger, advising them to leave their own quarters, and to seek safety in the camp of Cicero or Labienus. Sabinus believed the Gaul and wanted to go, but Cotta spurned the counsel of an enemy with Roman haughtiness. A long discussion followed, and at length, as Cotta was overborne, the Romans made ready to march. The Eburones were waiting in ambush, and a fearful carnage ensued. Only a few Romans were left alive, and they, through all manner of difficulties and dangers, straggled through the woods to the camp of Labienus.

A second division of Caesar's army was quartered among the Nervii, under the command of Quintus Cicero. The cunning Ambiorix, stimulated by success, roused the Nervii and Atuatici to rebellion, and the Roman camp was assaulted. Other tribes rose, but to no purpose. Ambiorix tried his former trick, but the wary Cicero refused to leave his quarters, and, after many fruitless attempts, succeeded in sending a letter to his commander. Caesar replied at once, and took instant measures for the relief of his men. His dispatch, wrapped around a javelin and thrown into Cicero's camp, remained unnoticed for several days; but the soldiers held out undaunted. When the letter was found, smoke was already to be seen in the distance—Caesar was coming. The Gauls were crushed and the siege was raised, but the Romans had little reason to feel sure of their hold on the Gallic territory. Under the outward show of peace, there was sullen discontent and revengeful plotting. The Treveri were leaguings against their conquerors, and all Gaul was stirring and restless—a condition of growing rebellion that was not to reach its culmination until the last great struggle for Gallic freedom, which took place in the spring and summer of 52 B.C.

BOOK VI

1-8. Caesar, realizing the unrest of Gaul, now increased his forces by levying two new legions, and borrowing a third from Pompey. The winter was not yet past, but, eager to strike at the centres of rebellion, he began his work by laying waste the country of the Nervii. Next came the turn of the Senones, who submitted without delay; the Carnutes and the Menapii, who had given refuge to Ambiorix, followed their example, but Ambiorix made his escape. The Treveri, who had called for German aid, beset the winter quarters of Labienus, but were outwitted and utterly routed. Gaul was, for the time being, quiet; and Caesar, knowing that his greatest danger lay in the aid the German hosts were likely to give the disaffected Gauls, resolved once more to make his power and resources felt on the German side of the Rhine.

The reasons for the second passage of the Rhine. The Ubii offer explanations and promise help.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs
vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit;
quārum ūna erat, quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē
Trēverīs miserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix recep-
5 tum habēret. Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus, paulō suprā eum locum
quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā
atque institūtā ratiōne magnō militum studiō paucis diēbus
opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō,
nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitā-
10 tumque trādūcit. Ubii, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in
dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mit-
tunt quī doceant neque ex suā cīvitāte auxilia in Trēverōs
missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi
parcat; nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocenti-

3. sē instead of *ipsum*, in an indicative subordinate cl., is unusual.

4. ad . . . receptum habēret, *should find refuge with*.

6. ante: two years before; see Bk. IV, 17.

nōtā . . . ratiōne, *according to the familiar and established plan*, of his former bridge; cf. *ratiōnem* . . . *instituit*, Bk. IV, 17, 8.

13. petunt atque ōrant, *they earnestly entreat*.

14. parcat: give principal parts of *parcō* and *pariō*

odiō: abl. of cause.

Germānōrum: objective genitive.

bus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. 15
Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse;
Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs
perquirit.

*The Ubi
furnish sup-
plies and re-
port the re-
treat of the
Suebi.*

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior
Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque
iīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dē-
nūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant.
His cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum 5
locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia
ex agrīs in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs
hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem
posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mit-
tant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant. Illī imperāta 10
faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs,
posteaquam cērtiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint,
cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent penitus
ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam ibi esse infīnitā magni-
tūdine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre 15
et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Cherūscōs ab Suēbōrum
Suēbōsque ab Cherūscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohi-
bēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum
expectāre cōstituisse.

15. *amplius, more than he already had. The word is used as a substantive, governing a genitive of the whole.*

16. *cognitā . . . causā, after the matter had been investigated.*

2. *omnēs*: construe with *cōpiās*. The same tactics were used by the Suebi at the time of Caesar's first campaign in Germany.

4. *peditātūs equitātūsque*: appositional gen. telling of what the *auxilia* consisted.

7. *spērāns, etc.*: he hoped that, on account of a lack of provisions, they could be forced into battle under unfavorable conditions.

11. *paucīs . . . intermissīs, after a few days.*

13. *penitus ad, all the way to.*

15. *intrōrsus: i.e., toward the east.*

16. *prō nātivō mūrō, as a natural barrier.*

17. *prohibēre, protected.*

18. *initium: i.e., on the west side.*

*Politics among
the Gauls.
A system of
"boss" rule.*

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque
5 in omnibus pāgīs, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdictiō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdictiumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei causā antīquitus institūtum vidētūr, nē quis ex
10 plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus

1. *locum*, *point* in the narrative.

2. *dē . . . prōpōnere*, *to give a description of*.

Caesar found the country deserted and was not disposed to pursue the barbarians into the depths of their forests. Consequently his second invasion of Germany amounted to little more than a crossing and recrossing of the Rhine. Probably it is to this barrenness of incident that we owe the valuable description and comparison of Gallic and German customs which he here introduces.

5. *in singulis domibus*: *e.g.*, Diviciacus and Dumnorix, and Indutiomarus and Cingetorix.

7. *eōrum*: *i.e.*, *Gallōrum*. *quōrum*, like *quī* refers to *prīncipēs*.

8. *summa*, *the final decision*. *redeat*, *is referred*.

9. *nē . . . egēret*: the clause explains *eius rei causā*. It was the duty of the leader, as well as to his interest, to afford protection to his followers.

10. *auxiliī*: in classic Latin, the ablative is much more common than the genitive with *egeō*.

11. *opprimī*: by force. *circumvenīrī*: by craft.

12. *haec . . . Galliae*, *this same policy exists generally (in summā) throughout the whole of Gaul*.

13. *tōtius Galliae* depends on *ratiō*.

1. *vēnit*: for mood see App. 241, *a*; A. 545; B. 288, 1, *A*; H. 601, 1, 2; H.-B. 550, *a*. This was in 58 B.C.

2. *hī*, *the latter*.

*The factions
in Gaul. The
Romans hold
the balance of
power. How
they use it.*

valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitas erat in
Haeduīs magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Ger-
mānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad 5
sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant.

Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omnī nōbilitāte
Haeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut
magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent
obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum filiōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre 10
cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōsilī initūrōs, et partem
finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius
prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus
auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē
redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsi- 15
dibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per
Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam
adgregāverant, meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī
vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā,
Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī suc- 20
cesserant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intel-
legēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum
Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant.
Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita novam et repente collēctam

3. antīquitas: after the Romans began to support the Haedui.

4. clientēlae: smaller tribes receiving the protection of the larger ones,
for which they gave in return military service, and often paid tribute.

10. iūrāre: sc. *prīncipēs* as subject.

14. infectā rē, *without accomplishing his purpose.*

15. factā commūtātiōne: this was due to the defeat of Ariovistus, de-
scribed in Book I. Translate as a main clause; so also the following
ablatives absolute, which tell wherein the change consisted.

17. eōrum: *i.e.*, *Haeduōrum*.

18. ūtī, *were enjoying.*

19. reliquīs rēbus, *by all other means.*

20. dīmiserant, *had been compelled to give up.*

21. quōs (*i.e.*, *Rēmōs*): subject of *adaequāre*; sc. *Haeduōs* as object.

23. sē . . . dicābant, *placed themselves under the protection of the Remi.*

24. collēctam, *acquired.*

25 auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Haeduī habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two classes in Gaul. The influence and practices of the Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt nūmerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere
5 aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcū-
10 rant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt, et sī quod est facinus admissum, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcer-
15 nunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec

1. aliquō sunt nūmerō, are of any account, importance; a locative abl. without the preposition.

3. servōrum habētur locō, are regarded as slaves.

4. cum, whenever.

6. sēsē . . . nōbilibus: cf. sē . . . dicābant, ch. 12, 23.

9. rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, have charge of sacred rites. The Druid priests wore a distinguishing dress of white. The oak and mistletoe were held in peculiar reverence by them, and their sacrifices were performed in oak groves.

sacrificia . . . prōcūrant: i.e., they dictate the nature and manner of sacrifices, as well as the place and time, and decide by whom sacrifices must be offered.

10. religiōnēs denotes everything connected with matters of religious belief.

11. disciplīnae causā = discendī causā. hī: the Druids.

12. eōs: the Gauls.

13. cōstituunt, they render decisions.

16. dēcrētō nōn stetit, does not abide by their decisions. The abl. is locative.

sacrificiis interdīcunt: sc. eī; interdīcēre regularly takes a dat. of the person, and an abl. of the place or action forbidden.

poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque iīs petentibus iūs redditur 20 neque honōs ūllus communicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tem- 25 pore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta existimātur, et nunc, quī dīligentius 30 eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficiscuntur.

*Their education
and religion.
The knights.*

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum

18. dēcēdunt (*i.e.*, dē viā), avoid.

25. dē . . . contendunt, *they settle their strife over*, etc.

26. media, *the center*.

27. cōnsīdunt, *hold their sittings*.

locō cōsecrātō: in the neighborhood of the modern town of Dreux.

29. pārent: yet their common obedience to priestly authority never proved strong enough to overcome the absolute political disagreement of the Gallic peoples. *disciplīna*, *the system*.

in Britannīā: it is more probable that the Britons had originally received the Druidical system from the continent, and on account of their remoteness had kept its old forms unimpaired, while among the Gauls, who were more exposed to outside influences, the cult was gradually declining. The island of Mona was the chief seat of Druidical learning in Britain.

30. et nunc, *and so even now*.

31. illō (adv.) = *in Britanniam*.

3. in disciplīnam conveniunt is the same as *disciplīnae causā concurrūt*, ch. 13, 11.

5 versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nullī xx in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque
 10 eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In primīs hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant,
 15 metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō
 5 versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplis-

5. **versuum**: lines of poetry containing the substance of the Druidical teaching. Verse is easier to commit to memory than prose.

6. **ea**: *i.e., quae discunt.*

7. **cum**: adversative. **ratiōnibus**, *accounts.*

8. **Graecīs litterīs**: the language was of course the Gallic.

10. **litterīs cōnfisōs**, *relying on writing.*

minus memoriae studēre, *pay less attention to the memory.*

11. **praesidiō litterārum** = *litterīs cōnfisōs*, l. 10.

12. **hoc** is explained by the infinitives *interire* and *trānsire*; for case see App. 115, b; A. 369; B. 176, 2; H. 409, 1; H.-B. 364, 4.

13. **ab aliīs . . . trānsire ad aliōs**, *pass from one body to another.* The belief in the transmigration of souls was common among the ancients, and it appears even yet in some Oriental religions.

16. **mundī ac terrārum** (*orbis*), *the universe and the earth.*

18. **trādunt** = *docent.*

2. **ūsus**, *need*; cf. Bk. IV, 2, 10. **quod** is explained by the following *utī* clause; cf. *ut . . . remittant*, ch. 14, 11, 12.

5. **ut quisque est . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs . . . habet** = *quō quisque est . . . amplior, eō plūrēs*, etc. Translate, *the more distinguished a man is . . . the more*, etc. **cōpiīs** = *opibus*.

simus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

*Human
sacrifice.*

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō 5 vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā 10 exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsi, grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

*The gods of
the Gauls.*

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad

7. hanc . . . nōvērunt, *this is the only kind of influence and power of which they have any knowledge.*

1. dēdita, *given over, devoted.*

3. graviōribus morbis: *i.e., those that cannot be cured by the usual remedies.*

4. hominēs: *object of immolant and immolātūrōs.*

6. vītā hominis . . . hominis vīta: *observe the chiasmic order.*

7. nūmen, *majesty.*

9. simulācra: *sc. hominum.*

11. supplicia: *probably criminals were used in the state sacrifices, and slaves or clients as private offerings.*

12. aliquā here = *aliā aliquā. grātiōra, especially pleasing.*

13. cum, *whenever.*

14. dēscendunt, *they resort to.* Human sacrifice was not unknown in early Greek and Roman worship, and in certain cases was kept up until after Caesar's time. Cf. also the worship of Moloch, mentioned in the Old Testament.

1. deōrum depends on *maximē.* Caesar applies the names of Roman gods to the Gallic divinities that correspond in functions and attributes.

3. ferunt, *they call.*

quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbi-
 5 trantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Miner-
 vam. Dē his eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent
 opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum
 atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperiū caelestium
 tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicare
 10 cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent;
 cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in
 ūnum locum cōferunt. Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērum
 extrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque
 saepe accidit, ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē
 15 occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī rei
 supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

*Their belief
 about their
 origin. Treat-
 ment of
 children.*

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs prae-
 dicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob
 eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō
 diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annō-

4. quaestūs: the plural denotes the different kinds of money-making and traffic.

habēre . . . arbitrantur: he points out the roads (*viārum*) and accom-
 panies the traveler on his journey (*itinerum*), and brings him to his des-
 tination.

7. operum, handicrafts.

8. artificiōrum, trades. trādere: meaning as in ch. 14, 18.

10. dēvovent = sē immolātūrōs (*esse*) vovent of ch. 16, 4, hence the perfect
 subjunctive cēperint, representing a future perfect indicative in direct dis-
 course.

15. posita: i.e., in cumulīs.

16. supplicium cum cruciātū = supplicia cruciātūsque of Bk. IV, 15, 11.

1. ab Dīte . . . prōgnātōs (*esse*): they asserted that they were autoch-
 thones or aborigines, i.e., that they had sprung from the soil itself. Cf.
 nātōs in īnsulā, Bk. V, 12, 2.

patre: predicate, as a father.

2. prōditum dīcunt: cf. memoriā prōditum dīcunt, Bk. V, 12, 2.

4. noctium: the custom of beginning the day at sunset, common to the
 ancient Greeks and Germans, and to the Jews and Mohammedans, probably
 had its origin in reckoning time by the changes of the moon. The English
 "fortnight" (fourteen nights) and "sennight" (seven nights) illustrate the
 same practice. finiunt, mark off, measure.

rum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc ferē ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberōs, nisi cum adolēverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris adsistere turpe ducunt.

Marriage and burial customs among the Gauls.

19. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine accēperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum vitam superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Fūnera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia,

6. ab reliquis: sc. nationibus.

7. ut, so that.

8. puerili aetate: descriptive ablative.

9. in . . . adsistere, to appear at his father's side.

1. pecunias: plural, on account of the plural viri; so also dotibus, l. 3.

2. nomine, as; cf. obsidum nomine, Bk. III, 2, 14.

3. cum . . . communicant, add to.

4. ratio habetur, an account is kept.

fructus, income, interest.

uter (relative) . . . ad eum, to the survivor; how literally?

8. decessit: sc. vitam.

9. si . . . venit: i.e., if the circumstances of his death bring the wives under suspicion.

de uxoribus: from this it would seem that polygamy was practised among the Gauls, though probably only by the nobility.

in servilem modum: at Rome, only in the case of slaves could torture be used to force a confession.

10. si compertum est, if proof of guilt is discovered.

11. excruciatas interficiunt, they torture them to death.

pro, etc., considering the Gauls' civilization.

ac paulō suprà hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs
 15 dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōfectis ūnā cremā-
 bantur.

How the magistrates obtain information and use it.

20. Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur, habent lēgibus sāctum, sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō com-
 5 mūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsīs rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdini prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Religion and manner of life of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnis praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus
 5 iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā

14. suprà hanc memoriam, before our time.

15. iūstīs, usual, customary.

ūnā cremābantur: sc. cum mortuīs.

1. commodius, unusually well.

2. habent lēgibus sāctum, have a legal enactment. The object of *habent* is *sī* . . . *commūnicet*; with this object *sāctum* agrees as a predicate adjective.

3. rūmōre, gossip, hearsay, lacking confirmation.

fāmā, current report, which may have a foundation in fact.

6. dē . . . capere: cf. the similar passage in Bk. IV, 5, 2.

7. cognitum est, experience has shown.

quae vīsa sunt, what seems best; cf. Bk. II, 20, 14.

8. ex ūsū, of advantage; cf. *magnō* . . . *ūsuī*, Bk. IV, 20, 6.

9. per, through the medium of.

2. druidēs: they had no exclusive priestly class, with such extensive powers, to act as mediators between man and the gods; but they had priests and priestesses for sacrificing, taking the omens, etc.

3. student, lay stress on, attach importance to.

4. numerō, as.

5. Sōlem, etc.: as the personification of natural forces.

reliquōs . . . accēpērunt: Tacitus, writing 150 years later, names Mercury, Hercules, and Mars as the divinities most honored.

quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt, maximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc statūram alī, hōc virēs nervōsque cōfirmārī putant.

10

German
system of
land-holding.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coīerunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factionēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscantur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem

6. accēpērunt, *have heard of*.

7. ā parvis = ā puerīs, Bk. IV, 1, 17.

9. ferunt, *receive*.

1. agrī cultūrae nōn student: *i.e.*, in comparison with the Gauls, who were more advanced in agriculture. Tacitus says that among the Germans it was left to women and old men.

3. certum . . . propriōs: cf. Bk. IV, 1, 13-15.

4. in annōs singulōs: meaning as in Bk. V, 22, 15.

gentibus . . . hominum, *to families and kinsmen*.

5. quīque (= *īisque quī*) . . . coīerunt: individuals and small groups of men, who did not belong to the same stock, united themselves for this purpose.

quantum . . . agrī = *tantum agrī quantum*.

6. vīsum est: meaning as in ch. 20, 8. aliō: adv. = *aliū in locum*.

7. rei (*custom*) . . . causās: four reasons are introduced by *nē*, and a fifth by *ut*.

8. cultūrā: for the case see App. 147; A. 416; B. 225; H. 478, 4; H.-B. 431.

10. frīgora: the plural is used as in Bk. V, 12, 16.

11. aedificent: the house was roughly framed of wood, with a thatched roof of straw or reeds, and could be easily moved.

12. animī aequitāte . . . contineant (*sc. in officiō*): a contented frame of mind is viewed as the means by which the plebeians are kept in order.

coptineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

*Their
government.
Brigandage.
Their
hospitality.*

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc
5 sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs
10 dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam, quae extrā finēs cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, profiteantur, cōsurgunt iī quī et causam
15 et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent,

13. cum potentissimīs = cum opibus potentissimōrum.

1. maxima laus: cf. Bk. IV, 3, 1-4.

2. hoc is explained by expulsōs . . . cōsistere.

3. proprium, a mark; for the dependent genitive see App. 106; A. 385, c; B. 204, 2; H. 451, 2; H.-B. 339, c.

4. hōc is explained by timōre sublātō.

9. regiōnum, districts. pāgōrum: see on pāgōs, Bk. IV, 1, 8.

10. minuunt, settle. latrōcinia, pillaging expeditions.

13. ubi, whenever. Caesar does not have in mind a regular war, declared by a council, but an invitation by some chief for volunteers to join in a pillaging expedition.

14. profiteantur: the subj. represents a command in the direct discourse.

17. omnium . . . rērum . . . fidēs, all confidence.

19. prohibent (sc. eōs), they protect.

sānctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque 20
commūnicātur.

*Comparison
of the Gauls
and the
Germans.*

24. Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī
virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter
hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns.
Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima
Germāniae sunt loca circum Hercyniā silvam, quam Eratos- 5
thenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī
Orcyniā appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi
cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē con-
tinet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.
Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, 10
Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur,
Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarīnārum
rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim
adsuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī
cum illis virtūte comparant.

15

20. sānctōs, *inviolatē*.

21. commūnicātur: sc. *cum hīs*.

3. trāns Rhēnum: this is probably a false inference arising from the circumstance that in Caesar's time Celtic tribes were found in the south of Germany, but these had probably been left behind in a general migration of the Celts to the west.

6. quibusdam, *some other*. illī: Greek writers.

7. Volcae Tectosagēs: part of the Volcae had remained in Germany, a part of the Tectosages lived among the Pyrenees, and another division had wandered into Asia Minor and settled in Galatia.

9. laudis (= *virtūtis*) opīniōnem: cf. *opīniōnem virtūtis*, Bk. II, 8, 2.

10. nunc: this word, in contrast with *antē*, l. 1, belongs with the main clause *paulātim . . . comparant*. inopiā, *poverty*.

patientiā, *patient endurance*.

11. cultū, *clothing*.

12. prōvinciārum: the two Gauls.

13. rērum, *products*.

multa . . . ūsūs, *a great abundance of all sorts of necessities; lit. many things for abundance and necessities*.

*Description of
the Hercynian
forest.*

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōn-
strāta est, lātitudō viii diērum iter expeditō patet;
nōn enim aliter finīrī potest, nequē mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt.
Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus
5 rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum
et Anartium, hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine
regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem
attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae, quī sē aut
adisse ad initium eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prō-
10 cesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit, multaque in eā
genera ferārum nāscī cōstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn
sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae
prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

The reindeer.

26. Est bōs cervī figurā cuius ā mediā fronte inter
aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēc-
tum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus; ab eius summō sicut
palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae

2. expeditō = *quī sine impedimentīs iter facit*. The day's journey of a good traveler was often used among the Greeks as a unit of measure.

3. finīrī: meaning as in ch. 18, 4. The subject of the sentence is *lātitudō*.
mēnsūrās itinerum: such as the Romans used, the foot, mile, etc.

5. rēctā . . . regiōne, in a direction parallel with.

6. dīversīs . . . regiōnibus: the opposite of *rēctā . . . regiōne*, i.e., at right angles with the river.

8. huius Germāniae: the west part, where Caesar was.

9. initium: the east end. **cum**: adversative.

10. accēperit: meaning as in ch. 21, 6.

11. vīsa . . . sint: subj. in a rel. cl. of description; as also *differant* below.

13. prōdenda, *worthy of*, etc.

1. bōs: regularly used of any large animal that feeds on grass, and has horns and divided hoofs. Here the reindeer is meant, which at one time was found farther south than now, before the clearing of the forests and the change of climate. **figurā**: ablative of description.

ā mediā fronte, from the middle of the forehead.

2. ūnum cornū: an error, of course.

3. summō: a substantive.

4. palmae rāmīque: such antlers are called palmate, being broad and flat like a palm, with projecting finger-like points.

eadem . . . nātūra: the reindeer differs from all other members of the deer family in that the female has horns as well as the male.

marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque cornuum.

5

*Description
of the elk.*

27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figurā et varietās pellium, sed magnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō adflīctae cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adflīgunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

10

*Description
of the urus.*

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vėlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōspexērunt, parant. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus,

1. quae . . . appellantur, *the so-called.*

alcēs: like the reindeer, the elk has moved to the north on account of the change of climate.

hārum . . . figurā = *hārum figurā est cōnsimilis figurāe caprōrum.*

2. varietās pellium, *varied color.*

4. sine nōdīs: a similar belief was long held in regard to elephants.

5. adflīctae, *thrown down*; so also in l. 12.

9. ab, *at.*

10. tantum, *(but only) so far, i.e., with such care.*

summa . . . relinquātur, *they give the exact appearance of trees standing firmly* (lit. *a complete likeness of them standing is left*).

11. cōnsuētūdine = *ex cōnsuētūdine*; cf. Bk. IV, 32, 1.

1. ūrī: the bison was found in the Harz Mountains in the time of Charlemagne, and is still found in Lithuania and the Caucasus Mountains.

3. taurī: *genitive.*

7. in pūblicum, *into a public place.*

quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt.
 10 Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulis prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

*Caesar returns
to Gaul.*

29. Caesar postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi
 5 longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleretur atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā
 10 pōnit magnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat.

30-44. Caesar now turned through the forest of Ardennes, in pursuit of the treacherous and elusive Ambiorix; but still the rebel chieftain escaped. Pressed hard by the Romans, he disbanded his forces and fled alone. Caesar followed him. For the sake of greater speed and effectiveness, the Roman army was divided into four parts, one of which, under Quintus Cicero, was left in Sabinus's old camp in charge of the baggage, while the others advanced through the regions where Ambiorix was likely to be dis-

8. sint: subj. in a purpose clause. ferunt: meaning as in ch. 21, 9.

9. nē . . . exceptī, not even when caught very young.

10. multum . . . cornibus: cf. the shorter form of expression in ch. 27, 2.

11. ab labrīs, at the rim; cf. ab rādīcibus, ch. 27, 9, 10.

12. prō, as; cf. Bk. V, 12, 10.

The narrative is resumed from ch. 10.

3. suprā: in ch. 22, 1.

minimē: stronger than nōn, and emphasized by position.

5. barbarīs: dative of separation.

8. in extrēmō ponte, at the (west) end of the bridge.

turrim: this would indicate the presence of an island in the river, on which the tower was built, that part of the bridge between the island and the German bank having been broken down.

9. cohortium: these were composed of the auxiliaries.

covered. In the hope of active aid against the scattered and outlawed Eburones, Caesar invited other tribes to come at will and aid in the pillaging. Attracted by the opportunity, a band of German Sugambri straightway came from beyond the Rhine, intent on spoil, and caring not the least from what quarter they might happen to take it. Cicero's division, with its baggage, attracted them, and turning aside from the wretched Eburones, they advanced to storm the Roman camp.

When Caesar set out, he had promised to return in seven days, and had warned Cicero to let no man set foot outside the limits of his defenses. But Cicero, unhappily, undertook to think for himself, and sent five cohorts out to forage. The Sugambri surprised the camp, and, being with difficulty beaten back, fell on the foragers as they were coming back to their quarters. Only with great loss did the men rejoin their friends, and so great was the alarm that not even the withdrawal of the Germans reassured the frightened soldiers. It was a forlorn and panic-stricken band that Caesar found when he returned, according to his promise, on the seventh day; and only their leader's presence could restore the soldiers' confidence.

Ambiorix had not been taken, and Caesar turned his vengeance on the outlaw's people. He burned the villages of the Eburones, ravaged their crops, and nearly exterminated the miserable tribe. Yet Gallic love of freedom still survived, and Gallic resistance was not yet at an end. The next year was to see the greatest struggle of united Gaul against the power of sovereign Rome that had yet been made.

BOOK VII

1-67. Caesar now went southward, as was his wont, to hold the pro-consular courts in Cisalpine Gaul. Stirring events had been going on at Rome; Clodius, the brawling demagogue of the popular party, had been killed, and the utmost disorder had followed; Pompey had been made sole consul, and new levies of soldiers had been ordered in Italy. Crassus the triumvir had fallen before the Parthians in the far east. In such a state of affairs no one had more at stake in the political game of the capital than Caesar himself—and no men knew this better than the angry Gauls he had left behind him half-subdued.

Rebellion rose, spread, and burst into fury. The Romans at Cenabum were massacred. The tribes of the south leagued together with marvelous rapidity, and chose for their leader Vercingetorix, a prince of the Arverni, the ablest leader, as it proved, that the Gallic patriots ever had. They

hoped to overwhelm the Roman army while its general was gone, but Caesar learned the facts, and, although it was winter, set out at once to cross the Alps. In the face of all manner of hardships, through the heart of the enemy's country, the resourceful leader came swiftly and secretly to his own forces, and so began his preparations for war. Several towns were reduced without difficulty, and Caesar then besieged Avaricum, or modern Bourges, the principal town of the Bituriges.

Vercingetorix, meanwhile, was learning his lesson. The disciplined veterans of the Roman army were not to be overcome in fair fight on the open field, but they might be harassed, starved, and worn out by delays. A Fabian policy was adopted; town after town of the Bituriges was burned, and the Gallic fields were laid waste. But Avaricum had been spared at the intercession of its people, against the judgment of Vercingetorix; and Caesar, after a long and arduous siege, took the city and butchered its inhabitants.

The Roman force was now divided, Labienus marching with four legions among the Senones and the Parisii, and the commander himself, with the remaining six, investing Gergovia, the chief town of the Arverni. But the siege was unsuccessful; Caesar was beaten back with heavy losses—his sole personal defeat at the hands of the Gauls—and was compelled to retire into the country of his nominal allies, the Haeduan people.

But the Haedui, all this while, had been playing a double game, apparently caring nothing for their ancient relations with Rome, or the rights and wrongs of their fellow-Gauls. All their desire, it seemed, was to save their own skins and their own property, and be on the winning side at the last. Caesar, they now saw, was in straits. It was a good time to desert the Roman cause; so they burned his stores at Noviodunum, and ranged themselves forthwith on the side of the Gallic patriots. Caesar, beset with dangers, crossed the Loire and marched to join Labienus; the lieutenant, on his side, behaved with admirable judgment and courage, and, outwitting the Gauls who opposed his march, hurried toward the southeast, and succeeded in joining his chief. From that day the tide of war began to turn.

Vercingetorix, it is true, was still winning other tribes to the Gallic confederacy, and to all appearances had never been stronger in the power and number of his allies. He easily kept his leadership in spite of the claims of the Haedui, who greedily grasped at the supremacy for themselves; and, backed by the united strength of most of the Gallic tribes, he felt that he had the retreating Romans at his mercy. He risked battle—a serious mistake. The two armies met at the river Vingeanne, and Roman skill and discipline were once more victorious.

G.H.I.K. Cavalry Camps near the Water

Relief

ALBESIA

by Galle

● Castella
+ Caesar's Position in Last Battle
F. F. Twenty-foot Ditch

*Caesar pursues
the Gauls to
Alesia and be-
gins the siege.*

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castris conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs, quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem milites Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

2. ut . . . conlocāverat, redūxit: in the battle at the river Vingeanne, described in the preceding chapter, Vercingetorix had drawn up his foot-soldiery in front of his camp, in order to support his cavalry. Upon the defeat of the latter, he at once started for Alesia without returning to camp for his baggage.

3. Alesiam: the modern Alise Ste. Reine.

quod: for agreement cf. *quam*, Bk. II, 1, 3.

9. equitātū: abl. of specification; translate it as the subject in English.

10. parte, arm; for the case see App. 143, *a*; A. 431; B. 219, 1; H. 476, 3; H.-B. 437.

adhortātus . . . instituit: Caesar's forces now consisted of about 50,000 legionaries, 5,000 Gallic and German cavalry, and 10,000 Gallic and other auxiliary troops. The forces of Vercingetorix are variously estimated at from 60,000 to 80,000 men.

The siege of Alesia was the climax of the whole Gallic war. The position was one of remarkable strength, and its investment and reduction taxed Caesar's resourceful genius to the utmost. The town lay on an isolated plateau, the modern Mont Auxois, one and a quarter miles long by about a half mile wide. To the west lay a level plain, about three miles in length, through which flowed a branch of the upper Seine (the modern Brenne), two of whose tributaries ran parallel along the north and south of Mont Auxois, thus adding to the strength of the position. To the north, east, and south, at a distance of about a mile, rose other hills of the same height. The plateau itself had a steep slope, and a wall of rock ran, with some interruptions, around the crown of the height. Springs and wells assured to the besieged an abundant water supply. A stronghold of such difficult approaches, Caesar saw, was practically impregnable to assault, and, in spite of the enormous difficulties which lay in the way, it must be reduced by a siege.

*Situation and
defenses of
Alesia.*

69. Positum erat oppidum in colle summō admo-
dum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn
posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus
flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitīēs circiter mīlia
5 passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus
partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitudinis
fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad
orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum
complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum
10 praedūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituē-
bātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs
locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in
castellis interdiū statiónēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō
fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs
15 tenēbantur.

*A cavalry
battle. De-
feat and flight
of the Gauls.*

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā
plānitīē, quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia pas-
suum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus.

3. duo . . . flūmina: the Lutosa (the modern Ose) lay on the north, and the Osera (Oserain) on the south.

4. ante oppidum: the plain of Laumes lies toward the west.

6. mediocrī . . . spatiō, at a moderate distance, i.e., from the plateau on which Alesia lay. The heights of Rea and Bussy to the north, of Penneville to the east, and Flavigny to the south are each about a mile distant from Mont Auxois.

parī . . . fastigiō: they are a little more than 500 feet high.

7. quae pars . . . spectābat, hunc omnem locum = *omnem eam partem quae spectābat*.

9. māceriam: a wall of unhewn stone extending from one stream to the other, recurved at the ends to resist an attack on the flank and rear also; see Plan, P, S. Traces of this wall even yet remain.

11. tenēbat = *pertinēbat*. Caesar's figures have been fully verified by the results of the excavations begun by Napoleon III. in 1862.

castra . . . VIII: four of these were infantry camps, stationed on the heights (see Plan, A, B, C, D), while the others were cavalry camps lying on the low ground near the streams; see Plan, G, H, I, K. Traces of them all, as well as of five of the redoubts, have been discovered.

14. excubitōribus . . . praesidiūs: abl. of means. In the daytime the *castella* were occupied by small posts, but at night they were well picketed and held by strong garrisons which bivouacked in them.

2. intermissam, lying between.

Summā vī ab utrīque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēque prō castrīs cōstituit. 5 Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustioribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nullī relictīs equīs fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. 10 Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī, perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nullī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multīs 15 interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry with an appeal to the country for aid. He prepares for the siege.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat 5 omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī

5. **castrīs**: the camps on the heights of Flavigny are probably meant.

6. **in fugam coniectī**: they probably fled along the southern slope of Mont Auxois, to their camp to the east of the town, which was protected by the wall and ditch; see ch. 69, 9, 10.

7. **angustiōribus portīs**: in building the wall (*māceria*, ch. 69, 9), they had made the entrances too narrow; see Plan, P, S.

10. **fossam**: the ditch in front of the *māceria* just mentioned.

12. **nōn minus**: *i.e.*, *quam equitēs*.

quī . . . erant: the Gallic infantry who were encamped between the city and the *māceria*. See Plan, P, S.

13. **ad arma conclāmant**, *raise the cry*, "To arms!"

15. **portās claudī**: the city gates were closed so that the soldiers in the camp could not flee into the city proper.

1. **mūnitiōnēs**: the beginning of these works is described in ch. 69, 10-15.

2. **cōsiliū capit** = *cōstituit*, and, like it, is followed by the infinitive.

6. **cōgant**: why plural?

7. **suae**, like *sua*, refers to Vercingetorix.

libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī
indiligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum
10 interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē
diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse
parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus inter-
missum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frūmen-
tum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam iīs quī nōn
15 pāruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandu-
biīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim
mētiri instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat
in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae expectāre
et bellum administrāre parat.

*Caesar plans
his work of
circumvalla-
tion. The
ditches and
wall.*

72. Quibus rēbus cognitīs ex perfugīs et captivīs
Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam
pedum xx dērēctis lateribus dūxit, reliquās omnēs
mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedibus cccc redūxit, hōc
5 cōsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus

8. quod sī, *but if*.

10. ratiōne initā, *according to his reckoning*.

12. parcendō, *by economy*.

quā erat . . . intermissum, *where our line of contravallation was inter-
rupted*. The cavalry probably escaped to the eastward, up the valleys of
the Ose and Oserain.

18. ratiōnibus, *precautionary measures*. Note the different meanings
of the word in this chapter.

The main strength of Caesar's fortifications lay along the plain and, to a
small extent, along the north ravine, as in these places the besieged Gauls
would naturally find the best opportunities of escape. At other points, the
steep and rocky slopes were in themselves a natural defense, and demanded
less effort on the part of the besiegers to render them impregnable.

3. pedum XX: *i.e.*, in breadth; cf. *duodēvīgintī pedum*, Bk. II, 5, 21.

dērēctis lateribus, *with perpendicular sides*, so that the bottom and top
were of equal width. Trenches were commonly dug with one or both sides
aslant. This ditch stretched through the plain along the foot of the west
slope of Mont Auxois; see Plan f, f, f.

reliquās . . . mūnitiōnēs: the main line of contravallation.

4. hōc cōsiliō: explained by the clauses *nē . . . aut . . . advolāret aut
. . . possent*.

5. tantum . . . spatium: *i.e.*, around the base of Mont Auxois.

a. pallens
b. loricata

c. pinnae
d. larynx

e. cervi
f. fossae

CAMERON'S WORKS EMFORM ALBULA

g. cypri
h. lilia

i. stimuli



nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē imprō-
visō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multītūdō hostium advolāret,
aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent.
Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem alti-
tūdine perdūxit, quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissīs 10
locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac
vāllum xii pedum extrūxit. Huic lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit,
grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque
aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere
circumdedit, quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent. 15

*He employs
some ingenious
devices to hin-
der an attack.*

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmen-
tārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs tuērī necesse dēminūtīs
nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur;

6. nec . . . cingerētur, and the works as a whole could not easily be sur-
rounded by a line of soldiers. Caesar's army was not large enough to push
the construction of the siege works, and at the same time afford protection
to the soldiers engaged in the work, and to garrison the defenses as they
were completed.

9. hōc intermissō spatiō: i.e., of 400 feet; cf. l. 4.

eādem altitūdine: both were probably 8 or 9 feet deep.

10. interiōrem: the one lying nearer the city. This trench was dug with
square sides, and extended only a small portion of the distance around
Alesia, while the other had sloping sides, and ran the whole length of the
contravallation.

campestribus . . . locīs: in the plain of Laumes and in the north ravine.

11. ex flūmine: the inner ditch on the plain of Laumes was filled with water
from the Oserain. Excavation has revealed the gravel, which was washed
from the river, for almost half the length of the ditch. The small sections
that ran along the north ravine were filled from the little brook near by.

post eās: i.e., post exteriōrem fossam.

12. vallum: this palisade was set in the rampart of earth, and both
together had a height of 12 feet.

lōricam: a fence or parapet of hurdles, supported by the vāllum.

pinnās, battlements, erected on the lōricae at regular intervals, to furnish
additional protection to the soldiers that manned the walls.

13. cervīs: heavy forked branches of trees placed so as to project hori-
zontally.

ad commissūrās, near the joining, i.e., toward the top of the agger, where
the posts that supported the battlemented fence of hurdles (pluteī) were
driven in. pluteōrum: for illis. see Vocabulary.

14. tōtō opere: abl. of place.

15. quae . . . distārent, in such a way that they, etc.

2. dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs = cum (although) nostrī dēminuerentur iīs cōpiīs.

ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem
 5 ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē
 ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre
 numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs
 arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum
 dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs
 10 pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmissī et ab infimō
 revīnctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant
 ordinēs coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant,
 sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.
 Ante hōs oblīquīs ordinibus in quīncūncem dispositīs scrobēs
 15 in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiore
 ad infimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine

4. *temptāre, make an attempt upon, i.e., attack.*

6. *rūrsus, further.*

addendum: these additional means of defense were placed in the space of 400 feet that lay between the inner trench at the foot of Mont Auxois, and the two outer ones belonging to the line of contravallation.

8. *hōrum (rāmōrum):* to be construed with *cacūminibus*. Forked tree trunks or strong branches were peeled, freed from twigs, and sharpened at the top. They were then set firmly into the ground with the branches projecting above the edge of the trench.

9. *perpetuae . . . altae, continuous trenches, each five feet deep.*

10. *hūc = in hās fossās.*

11. *ab rāmīs, with their branches only.*

quīnī: note the force of the distributive. Everywhere that this sort of defense was placed, there were five rows.

12. *implicātī:* the rows were set so close together that the branches overlapped and interlaced, making a barrier broad and difficult enough to be almost insurmountable. *quō quī intrāverant, whoever went among them.*

13. *vāllīs:* the large branches, which, with their sharp points, resembled palisades. *induēbant, impaled.*

14. *oblīquīs ordinibus:* they were set in oblique lines like the pattern of a checker board.

15. *paulātim . . . fastīgiō, with a gradual slope to the bottom.* The pits were funnel-shaped, with a depth of three feet, and a diameter of two feet above and one below.

16. *hūc:* cf. the same use of this word in l. 10.

stīpitēs: in each *scrobis* was set a round stake of the thickness of a man's thigh, with a sharpened, fire-hardened point projecting about four inches above the top of the pit. These were surrounded with earth to the depth of a foot, well packed down; and the mouth of the pit was then covered with osiers and brushwood.

ab summō praeacūtī et praeustī dēmittēbantur, ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ordinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

A similar system of defense guards against attack from without. Caesar collects supplies.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIII milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent, nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convec-

18. cōfirmandī . . . causā, *in order to fix them firmly.*

19. singulī . . . exculcābantur, *each was stamped down with earth at the bottom, to the depth of a foot.*

21. octōnī ordinēs: more than eighty-six of these pits have been discovered, some of them in a perfect state of preservation.

23. tōtae: the stakes were entirely sunk in the ground, so that only the hooks projected. Five of them were discovered in the course of Napoleon's excavations.

25. nōminābant: the nicknames (*cippī, līlia, stimulī*), given by the Roman soldiers to these contrivances, seem to indicate that they were new devices, possibly invented by Caesar himself.

1. secūtus, *keeping to.*

2. prō locī nātūrā limits *aequissimās*. Caesar made use of the level ground on top of the heights as far as he could, as well as that in the valleys.

XIII milia passuum: the line of circumvallation inclosed all the other works, the *castella*, and the camps. It had but a single ditch, and ran parallel to the contravallation in the plain, but was interrupted on the steep declivities where the nature of the ground made it unnecessary.

4. diversās, *turned in the contrary direction.*

5. mūnitiōnum praesidia: the garrisons of the single *castra* and *castella*.

7. convecum, *in store, on hand.*

*The Gauls
assemble a
large army.*

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō
prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent,
ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum
numerus cuique cīvitatī imperandum, nē tantā multitudīne
5 cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī
ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum
clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus,
mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs adiūctīs Eleutetīs,
Cadūrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse
10 cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs,
Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus;
octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parisiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna
Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomātricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nervīīs, Mo-
rinīs, Nitobrogibus; v mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem
15 Atrebātibus; iiii Vellocassīs; Esuviīs et Aulercīs Eburovīcibus
iii; Rauracīs et Bōīs bīna; x ūniversīs cīvitatibus, quae Ōceanum
attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur,
quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs,
Osismī, Venetī, Lexovīī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum nume-
20 rum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum
Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cuiusquam imperiō
obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō eius hospitīō duo
mīlia mīsērunt.

5. discernere: *i.e.*, to keep their own men together, and apart from other tribes.

7. Segusiāvīs, etc.: locate these tribes on the map. The list is probably not quite accurate, but the number of tribes named by Caesar shows the magnitude of the crisis.

8. adiūctīs = *ūnā cum*.

13. Nervīīs: see on Bk. II, 28, 8.

20. suō . . . arbitriō, *on their own account and according to their own ideas.*

21. dīcerent: see on *dīceret*, Bk. V, 6, 12.

22. obtemperātūrōs: in the year 57 this tribe had demanded for itself the supreme command; cf. Bk. II, 4, 13-16. *prō*, *in consideration of*.

The army of relief sets out for Alesia, confident of immediate success.

76. Huius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coactis equitum milibus viii et peditum circiter ccl haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebāti, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgi Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlēcti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

77. At ii, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsūptō omni frūmentō,

1. operā, services. antea: cf. Bk. IV, 21, 13-17.

3. civitatem eius: the Atrebates.

4. immūnem, free from tribute; from this we may infer that the other states overthrown by Caesar were regularly not free from tribute, and did not have their own laws and constitution.

5. Morinōs attribuerat: as a dependent state.

ūniversae . . . cōsēnsiō: the expression is not quite accurate. The Aquitani, Treveri, Lingones, and a number of small tribes held aloof.

8. movērētur: sc. Commius as subject.

animō et opibus, with (their whole) soul and (all their) resources.

15. ad, for; for the prep. see App. 131, a; A. 428, a; B. 182, 3; H. 418, 4; H.-B. 453, 1.

16. aspectum modo, the mere sight.

18. ancipiti proeliō: explained by the following clauses, with the contrast between ex oppidō and foris.

The Gauls in Alesia hold a council. The desperate proposal of Critognatus.

5 *insciī* quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē
 exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variīs
 dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum
 virēs suppeterent, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn prae-
 tereunda vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem et
 nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et
 magnae habitus auctōritātis “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sen-
 10 tentiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis
 nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad
 concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ērup-
 tiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū
 prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista
 15 mollitia, non virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē
 ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem
 patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tan-
 tum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitāe
 nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem
 20 Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.
 Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propinquīs
 cōsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore existimātis, sī paene in

3. quid . . . gererētur: indirect question depending on *insciī*.

in Haeduīs: the council of the Gauls (ch. 75, 1, 2), had probably assembled at Bibracte, the capital of the Haedui.

6. suppeterent: implied indirect discourse.

cēnsēbat, were in favor of.

nōn praetereunda, must not be left unmentioned.

9. magnae . . . auctōritātis, considered (a man) of great authority.

11. neque . . . cēnsēō gives the reason for *nihil . . . dictūrus sum*.

12. cum . . . est, I am concerned with those.

14. residēre, (still) to remain.

ista: the gender is attracted to that of the predicate noun.

15. quī, men who; the clause is descriptive.

17. atque, now.

18. dignitās, authority of those who were in favor of making a sally.

22. animī depends on *quid*, a striking illustration of the fondness of the Latin for separating the genitive of the whole from the word on which it depends. Translate the passage, *what courage do you think our relatives and kinsmen will have?* etc.

ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte vestrā aut animī 25 imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne causā cotidiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaep̄tō, 30 hīs ūtiminī testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei cōsili est? Facere, quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad 35 bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbri magnāque inlātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostris ali- 40

23. nōlīte . . . exspoliāre: see App. 219; A. 450; B. 276, c; H. 561, 1; H.-B. 501, 3, 2.

28. ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus: the outer line of works, the circumvallation described in ch. 74, 1-4.

29. animī . . . causā, for pastime; cf. animī . . . causā, Bk. V, 12, 14.

30. illōrum: i.e., the Gallic army of relief.

32. quid . . . est, what, then, is my plan?

33. cōsili: pred. genitive.

nēquāquam . . . Teutonumque, in the war with the Cimbri and Teutons, (a struggle) by no means equal to this; see on Galliā vexātā, Bk. II, 4, 6.

37. exemplum, precedent.

38. institui, to be established.

pulcherrimum is in pred. agreement with (exemplum) institui et . . . prōdī.

39. quid . . . fuit, what likeness had that war to this of ours?

bellō: dat. of possession.

dēpopulātā is used passively; see on dīmēnsō, Bk. II, 19, 14.

40. quidem . . . excessērunt: quidem shows that the preceding ablatives absolute have an adversative force. Translate *they did at last leave*, etc.

quandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitatibusque
 45 cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

The Gauls attempt to send away all who are unfit for war. Caesar refuses them passage.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experienda arbitrantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō
 5 tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem
 10 receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

The besiegers besieged. The Gauls in Alesia prepare for an assault.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō

41. aliās terrās petiērunt: the German invaders, after ravaging Celtic Gaul and defeating several armies, had turned westward and crossed the Pyrenees. Fortunately for Rome they did not return for two or three years, and then their overthrow followed at the hands of Marius.

43. quōs: its antecedent is *hōrum*.

46. aliā condiciōne, on any other terms, i.e., for any other purpose.

49. secūribus: the axes of the proconsul's lictors, the symbol of Roman power.

1. cōstituunt ut: what is the usual construction after *cōstituere*? Cf. Bk. III, 1, 12, and Bk. IV, 6, 12.

4. dēscendant: meaning as in Bk. VI, 16, 14.

10. cibō iuvārent, feed.

3. ad, into the vicinity of.

exteriōre: i.e., outside of Caesar's line of defense. The hill was southwest of Alesia.

nōn longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, 5 quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque 10 prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

A long and desperate cavalry engagement. Thanks to the German cavalry the Gauls are repulsed.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, 5 dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum expectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcērant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum 10 suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfiderent et nostrōs mul-

5. plānitiam . . . dēmōnstrāvimus: the plain of Laumes; cf. ch. 69, 4, 5.

9. fit grātulātiō inter eōs = *grātulantur inter sē*.

11. proximam fossam: the one described in ch. 72, 2-5.

12. aggere: *i.e.*, with such materials as were used in the construction of an *agger*.

1. ad utramque partem: the inner line of defense, facing Vercingetorix in Alesia, and the outer, which faced the army of relief.

2. sī ūsus veniat, *in case of need*.

3. teneat (sc. *memoriā*) et nōverit: the second verb explains the first.

5. quae . . . tenēbant: the infantry camps were stationed on the heights.

7. rārōs: used predicatively, *here and there*.

expeditōs: a substantive. This device was adopted in imitation of certain German troops, which, according to Caesar, were made up of mingled cavalymen and foot-soldiers, in equal numbers.

10. complūrēs: *i.e.*, of the Roman horse.

titūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnī-
tīōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant
clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in
15 cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque aut rēctē aut turpiter
factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor
ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad
sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte
cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt;
20 quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque
sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra
insecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī
Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prōpe victōriā dēspērātā, sē in
oppidum recēpērunt.

*A night at-
tack upon the
Romans from
within and
from without.*

81. Ūnō diē intermissō atque hōc spatiō magnō
crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō
Gallī mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad
campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō,
5 quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū
cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus
nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem
pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre
exaudītō dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō

15. neque . . . poterat, *no deed either brave or cowardly could pass unnoticed.*

18. dubiā victōriā, *without decisive results.*

Germānī: the German cavalry had already proved to be excellent fighters, and had several times won the day for the Romans in this campaign, once already at Alesia; cf. ch. 70, 4-10.

21. cēdentēs: sc. eōs.

1. ūnō, *only one*; see on *annō*, Bk. IV, 1, 14.

2. harpagōnum, *grappling-hooks*, fastened to long poles, which were to be used in tearing down Caesar's rampart of hurdles.

3. Gallī: those of the relieving army.

4. campestrēs mūnitiōnēs: the fortification in the plain of Laumes, where the Romans had not the advantage of the higher position.

5. quā introduces a purpose clause.

6. crātēs prōicere: in order to bridge over the trench.

ēdūcit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus 10
attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus sudibusque,
quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.
Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmtō multa utrimque vulnera accipiun-
tur. Complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius
et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum 15
obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs
auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

*At first the
Gauls have the
advantage. The
Gallic force
from Alesia
arrives too late
to coöperate.*

82. Dum longius aberant Gallī, plūs multi-
tūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius
successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant
aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō
ac turribus trāiectī pīlis mūrālibus interībant. Multis undique 5
vulneribus acceptis nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpe-
teret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne
circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum
ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant

10. ut superiōribus diēbus, etc.: cf. ch. 80, 1-3.

11. fundīs librilibus: stones weighing a pound, hurled by means of a rope or strap attached.

sudibus: sharp, fire-hardened stakes, which were hurled like javelins.

12. glandibus: for illis. see Vocabulary.

13. prōspectū tenebrīs adēmtō, as their sight was obscured by the dark-
ness.

14. M. Antōnius: the triumvir.

16. quā ex parte = sī quā ex parte.

16. hīs auxiliō: the datives to which and for which.

17. ex . . . dēductōs, troops brought from the more distant redoubts.

1. dum, as long as.

3. stimulis . . . induēbant: cf. ch. 73, 23-25.

4. dēlātī, fell . . . and.

5. pīlis mūrālibus: these weapons, longer than ordinary javelins, were hurled from the walls, perhaps by engines.

6. nullā . . . perruptā, without breaking through at any point.

adpeteret = adpropinquāret.

7. superiōribus castrīs: the camps on the heights, north and south of the town; see ch. 80, 4, 5.

8. interiōrēs = quī in oppidō obsidēbantur.

10 prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus adminis-
trandis morātī prius suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mū-
nitiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum rever-
tērunt.

*The army of
relief, twice re-
pulsed, makes
an attack
on the north.*

83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsī Gallī,
quid agant, cōsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent;
ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque
cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter
5 magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī;
necessariōque paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant.
Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum
duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs
regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt
10 eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant;
quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōstituunt,
adeundī tempus dēfiniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs
cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus,
propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā
15 vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem
sē occultāvit milītēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit.
Cum iam merīdiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae
suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus

10. fossās: the ditches described in ch. 73, 7-10. The plural denotes different parts of the same ditch.

2. quid agant: in the direct form *quid agāmus*. See App. 268, III; A. 587; B. 315, 3; H. 642, 3; H.-B. 503.

4. collis: Mont Rea.

5. opere circumplectī, to include within the line of fortifications; the abl. denotes means.

6. lēniter dēclivī explains *inīquō locō*. The fact that this camp was on the slope of the hill and could be commanded from the summit (see Plan, D), was the reason why the Gauls directed their attack against it.

11. quōque = *et quō*.

12. videātur: in the direct form it would be *vidēbitur*.

14. propinquum: called *cōnsobrīnō* in ch. 76, 13.

15. sub lūcem: the time required shows that the route was a long, round-about one; see Plan.

ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt. 20

The Romans are assailed all along the line, from within and without.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. 5 Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant. 10

Both sides realize that it is "now or never." The Romans hard pressed on the north side.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat; Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; 5 Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt,

5. quae . . . pars . . . hūc = *in eam partem quae.*

7. occurrit is used absolutely;—*offered resistance.*

8. quī . . . exsistit, *which arose in the rear of the fighters*; pugnantibus is a dative of reference.

suum . . . cōstāre, *they realized that their own danger (i.e., escape from danger, or safety) depended on the bravery of others.* The Roman lines had to face both ways, defending the inner and outer works, and each line protected the rear of the other; if either gave way, it meant the destruction of the other.

10. quae absunt, *which are at a distance*, and therefore are unseen.

1. idōneum locum: at the northwest slope of the hill of Flavigny, marked by a cross on the Plan.

3. utrisque . . . occurrit, *both parties realized.* For the case of utrisque cf. pugnantibus, ch. 84, 8.

6. Sī . . . obtinuerint, *if they win the struggle.*

8. inīquum . . . fastigium, *the unfavorable slope of the ground downward*; see on lēniter dēclivī, ch. 83, 6.

10 aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī suc-
cēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēn-
sum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī
contegīt; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

*Caesar sends
Labienus with
reēnforcements.
He encourages
his men.*

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum
cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat,
sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne
pugnet; id nisi necessārio nē faciāt. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohor-
5 tātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum
frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs,
dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter magnitudinem mūnitiō-
num, loca praerupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant
cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs
10 dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum
ac lōricam rescindunt.

*Caesar directs
the contests all
along the line.
He hurries to
the support of
Labienus.*

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum
cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum;
postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs
subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsīs
5 hostibus eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs IIII ex

11. agger: see on *aggere*, ch. 79, 12.

mūnitiōnem: the works described in ch. 73, 7-25.

1. Labiēnum: he probably commanded the camp at C, northeast of Alesia.

3. dēductīs cohortibus: he was, first of all, to try to hold his ground (*sustinēre* is used absolutely). Only in case of need was he to withdraw as many cohorts as possible, from their position on the rampart, and make a sally. *ēruptiōne pugnet* = *ēruptiōnem faciat*.

6. interiōrēs: as in ch. 82, 8.

7. dēspērātīs . . . locīs: they gave up hope of storming the elaborate defensive works on the plain, and attempted to climb the steep ascent of Mt. Flavigny, where there were only the trench, wall, and towers to be overcome.

9. ex turribus prōpugnantēs = *eōs quī ex turribus prōpugnant*.

1. Brūtum: cf. Bk. III, 11, 11.

cum cohortibus, *with (some) cohorts*.

3. integrōs, *fresh troops*. A troop of Brutus and one of Fabius had already been engaged.

5. eō: to Mont Rea.

proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis XI cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit 10 certiōrem, quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

On Caesar's arrival the tide of battle turns. The Gauls flee, but are not pursued.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus visīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus 5 mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostrī ēmissis pīlis gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā 10 comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte

7. *circumīre exteriōrēs*, etc.: cavalry, probably from camp G, were to ride around the lines on the outside so as to attack the enemy in the rear.

9. *quās . . . obtulit*: the circumstances made a selection impossible.

11. *quid faciendum*: i.e., a sally; see ch. 86, 3.

In this chapter note the rapidity and vividness given to the narrative by the numerous short sentences unconnected by conjunctions (asyndeton).

1. *colōre*: Caesar wore the purple military cloak (*palūdāmentum*), the distinguishing mark of the commanding general.

3. *ut . . . cernēbantur* (sc. *ab hostibus*) gives the reason of *cognitō* and *visīs*. *dē locīs superiōribus*: the slopes of Mont Rea.

dēclīvia et dēvexa: the hill of Flavigny. The Gauls could not see the cavalry that had been sent to fall upon their rear (ch. 87, 6, 7), or they probably would not have attacked the Romans who were in their front.

5. *utrimque*: i.e., *ab exteriōribus et ab interiōribus hostibus*.

excipit rūsus, *answers*; the verb is used absolutely.

6. *ēmissis pīlis*: the fact that the Romans were on lower ground made a contest with missile weapons especially disadvantageous to them.

12. *tantō numerō*: 60,000 men; cf. 83, 9.

cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā
 15 ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiīs ac tōtius
 diēi labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī
 potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum ag-
 men cōnsequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur;
 reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

*Vercingetorix
surrenders.*

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō
 id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum,
 sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit
 fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte
 5 suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur
 dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs
 prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit; eō ducēs
 prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reser-
 vātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre
 10 posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae
 nōmine distribuit.

*Distribution
of the army
for the winter.
Caesar's third
thanksgiving.*

90. Hīs rēbus cōfectīs in Haeduōs proficiscitur;
 cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae
 imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum

14. fit . . . fuga = *fugiunt*.

15. crēbris subsidiīs: the numerous marches here and there to aid their comrades at threatened points.

2. suārum necessitātum, *of his own personal advantage*.

8. Vercingetorix dēditur: it is to be regretted that Caesar's clemency, so often shown toward less worthy antagonists, was not extended to the gallant Vercingetorix. The chief of the Arverni was a man of really remarkable military skill and power of organization, and in political ability and patriotism was far superior to any other of Caesar's Gallic foes. But a leader of his character was the very one who could expect no mercy. Caesar was first of all a Roman, and in Vercingetorix he saw only the most skillful and dangerous enemy that had ever threatened his power over the hard-won Gallic territory. The captive was sent to Rome, where he lay in a dungeon for six years. At last, in 45 B.C., he was led in chains before Caesar's triumphal car, and then was executed at the foot of the Capitol while his conqueror, at the altar above, was offering solemn sacrifice and thanksgiving to the gods of victorious Rome.

10. capita singula, *a captive apiece*.

2. recipit: *i.e., in dēditionem*.

numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum 5 cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturī- 10 gēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Matiscone in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cognitīs Rōmae diērum xx supplicātiō redditur. 15

7. attribuit: *i.e.*, he placed Sempronius Rutilus under the orders of Labienus.

9. nē . . . accipiant: Caesar was afraid that the Remi, because they had remained faithful to the Romans, would be harassed by the Bellovaci.

15. diērum . . . supplicātiō: see on *supplicātiō*, Bk. II, 35, 10, and *accidit nulli*, Bk. II, 35. 11.

redditur, *was decreed* to the gods in return for (*red-*) victory.

PART III

SELECTIONS FROM NEPOS

Cornelius Nepos, the author of the brief biographies which follow, lived in the first century B.C. Nothing is known of his life beyond the fact that he was a friend of Cicero, the orator, and of the poet Catullus. The work from which the following selections are taken was a series of biographies consisting of sixteen books, most of which are lost. The surviving portion comprises twenty-five biographies of generals and statesmen, chiefly Greeks. Most of the sketches are very brief, but they serve to supplement the knowledge which we have from other sources regarding the persons of whom they treat.

1. ARISTĪDĒS

1. Aristīdēs, Lysimachī filius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis ferē fuit Themistoclī atque cum eō dē principātū contendit. In hīs autem cognitum est quantō antestāret ēloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeō excellēbat Aristīdēs abstinentiā, ut
5 ūnus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nōs audierīmus, cognōmine Iūstus sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle conlabefactus testulā illā exsiliō decem annōrum multātus est.

1. Lysimachī: nothing further is known of him.

Athēniēnsis: nominative.

2. Themistoclī: may be either a dative or a genitive.

3. innocentiae: dative with a compound of *ante*.

4. adeō, so far.

ut ūnus sit appellātus, *that he was the only man who was called.*

5. audierīmus: a relative clause of parenthetical nature, with its verb in the subjunctive, is sometimes used to restrict the application of the antecedent. In this form of clause *quidem* frequently follows the relative.

7. testulā . . . multātus est, freely, *he was condemned to ten years' exile in accordance with a vote by the familiar method of ostracism*; *testulā* is an ablative of means, and *exsiliō* is an ablative of the penalty. The Athenians could by a popular vote send into exile for a period of years any citizen who was considered to be dangerous to the liberty of the state. In the case of Aristides the hostility of the ignorant class was aroused by his political enemies, and he was thus condemned to banishment. The word ostracism is derived from a Greek word meaning the same as the Latin *testula*, because in balloting an earthenware tablet was used. The word *ille*, when following its noun, means *the well-known*. Nepos implies that this custom of the Athenians was familiar to his readers.

Quī quidem cum intellegeret reprimī concitātam multitudinem nōn posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scribentem ut patriā pellerētur, quaesisse ab eō dīcitur quārē id faceret 10 aut quid Aristidēs commisisset, cūr tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre Aristidēn, sed sibi nōn placēre quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter cēterōs Iūstus appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam poenam nōn pertulit. Nam postquam Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit, sextō 15 ferē annō quam erat expulsus, populī scītō in patriam restitūtus est.

2. Interfuit autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna, quae facta est priusquam poenā liberārētur. Idem praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās in proeliō quō Mardonius fūsus barbarōrumque exercitus interfectus est. Neque aliud est ūllum huius

8. *quī quidem cum*, *when he*; *quidem* must be omitted in translation.

9. *cēdēnsque*, *and as he was withdrawing*, *i.e.*, from the assembly where the voting was going on.

ut pellerētur: a substantive clause, expressing will. What the man wrote on the tablet was an expression of his desire that Aristides should go into banishment.

11. *poenā*: for the case, see App. 149, *a*; A. 418, *b*; B. 226, 2; H. 481; H.-B. 442.

dūcerētur, *should be considered*.

12. *sibi nōn placēre*, etc., *he did not like it that he (Aristides) had endeavored so eagerly to be called the Just, in preference to all others*.

14. *poenam nōn pertulit*, *did not complete the term of his punishment*.

15. *dēscendit*: this verb is frequently used to denote movement toward the coast from a point inland.

sextō annō quam, *in the sixth year after*.

16. *populī scītō*: a decree of the Roman people was regularly *plēbis scītum*, or, as one word, *plēbiscītum*. The phrase which Nepos here uses was employed to denote a law of a similar sort passed in a foreign country. In later times, however, this term was used as an equivalent of *plēbiscītum* to refer to a Roman popular enactment.

restitūtus est, *was recalled*.

1. *Salamīna*: accusative of a Greek noun of the third declension. The battle of Salamis was fought in the year 480 B.C.

2. *poenā*: ablative of separation.

praetor: the word here means "commander."

3. *fūsus* (*est*), *was routed*.

5 in rē militārī inlūstre factum quam huius imperī memoria,
iūstitiae vērō et aequitātis et innocentiae multa, in primīs quod
eius aequitāte factum est, cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae
simul cum Pausaniā, quō duce Mardonius erat fugātus, ut summa
imperī maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trāsferrētur ad Athēniēn-
10 sēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lace-
daemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā Pausaniae et iūstitiā
factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē cīvitātēs Graeciae ad Athē-
niēnsium societātem sē adplicārent et adversus barbarōs hōs
ducēs dēligerent sibi.

3. Quōs quō facilius repellerent, sī forte bellum renovāre cō-
nārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūsque comparandōs
quantum pecūniae quaeque cīvitās daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus
est quī cōstitueret, eiusque arbitriō quadringēna et sexāgēna
5 talenta quotannis Dēlum sunt conlāta; id enim commūne
aerārium esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō tempore
Athēnās trāslāta est. Hic quā fuerit abstinentiā, nūllum
est certius indicium quam quod, cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,

5. huius imperī: freely, of his management of affairs on this occasion.

6. multa (sunt), there are many instances.

in primīs quod, especially that.

7. factum est: the subject is the clause ut . . . trāsferrētur, l. 8.

esset: the subject refers to Aristides.

12. ad Athēniēnsium, etc., allied themselves closely with the Athenians.

13. hōs: the Athenians.

14. ducēs, as leaders.

1. quōs: the barbarians.

cōnārentur: the conditional clause was future in the thought of the Athenians, but it has a past point of view, as quoted.

2. ad . . . comparandōs: the gerundive phrases depend on daret, l. 3.

3. quantum . . . daret, how much money each state should give.

pecūniae: genitive of the whole.

4. quadringēna et sexāgēna: the distributive numerals are used because the amount named was not a single sum of money, but an amount for each year.

5. Dēlum: Apollo's temple at Delos was the place of a famous oracle.

7. abstinentiā: descriptive ablative.

8. quod, the fact that. cum praefuisset: an adversative clause.

in tantā paupertāte dēcessit, ut quī efferrētur vix reliquerit. Quō factum est ut fīliae eius pūblicē alerentur et dē commūnī 10 aerāriō dōtibus datīs conlocārentur. Dēcessit autem ferē post annum quārtum quam Themistoclēs Athēnīs erat expulsus.

9. quī, means with which; quī is an adverb.

10. dē commūnī aerāriō, etc., their marriages were arranged for with dowries provided from the public treasury.

2. HAMILCAR

1. Hamilcar, Hannibalis fīlius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis, primō Pūnicō bellō, sed temporibus extrēmīs, admodum adulēscētulus in Siciliā praeesse coepit exercituī. Cum ante eius adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium, ipse ubi adfuit numquam hostī cessit neque locum 5 nocendī dedit, saepeque occāsiōne datā laccessivit semperque superior discessit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī āmisissent, ille Erycem sic dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur. Interim Carthāginiēnsēs classe apud insulās Aegātēs ā C. Lutātiō, cōsule Rōmānōrum, superātī 10 statuērunt bellī facere finem eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt

1. **Hannibalis**: Hamilcar's son, the great adversary of the Romans, bore the name of his grandfather.

cognōmine Barca, having the surname Barca.

2. **Pūnicō**: the city of Carthage was founded by the Phoenicians, with whose name the word *Pūnicus* is connected in derivation.

3. **cum**, while. Hamilcar took command in 247 B.C.

4. **male rēs gererentur**: the Carthaginians had given a fairly good account of themselves in the naval battles.

5. **locum nocendī**, a chance to inflict any injury.

6. **saepeque**: the force of -que is adversative.

8. **ut . . . vidērētur**: Nepos apparently means to imply that all traces of the activity of the enemy were cleared away from this region.

9. **classe**: to be construed with *superātī*.

10. **Lutātiō**: his full name was Gaius Lutatius Catulus. His victory over the Carthaginian fleet was won in the year 241 B.C. See p. 92.

Hamilcaris. Ille etsi flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pāci serviundum putāvit, quod patriam exhaustam sūmptibus diūtius calamitātēs bellī ferre nōn posse intellegēbat, sed ita ut
 15 statim mente agitāret, si paulum modo rēs essent reffectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōsque armīs persequī dōnicum aut virtūte vicissent aut victī manūs dedissent. Hōc cōnsiliō pācem conciliāvit, in quō tantā fuit ferōciā, cum Catulus negāret bellum compositūrum nisi ille cum suis, quī Erycem tenuerunt,
 20 armīs relictīs, Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dixerit quam cum tantō flāgitiō domum rediret: nōn enim suae esse virtūtis arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostēs adversariis trādere. Huius pertināciae cessit Catulus.

2. At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac spērārat rem publicam sē habentem cognōvit. Namque diūturnitāte externi malī tantum exārsit intestinum bellum, ut numquam parī periculō fuerit Carthāgō nisi cum dēlēta est. Primō mercē-
 5 nārii milites, quī adversus Rōmānōs fuerant, dēscivērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīginti mīlium. Ii tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppugnārunt. Quibus malīs

12. bellandī cupiditāte: compare Caesar's phrase, *bellandī cupidī*, Bk. I, 2, 14.

pāci serviundum, *that it was best to direct his efforts toward bringing about peace.*

15. mente agitāret, *was planning.*

16. dōnicum: an old form of *dōnec*, not often used.

17. manūs dedissent, *had yielded.*

18. ferōciā: a descriptive ablative.

19. compositūrum (esse): supply *sē* as subject.

suis: masculine.

20. dēcēderent: the verb is plural to agree with the plural subject implied by the phrase *ille cum suis*.

succumbente patriā, *even if his country should be destroyed.*

23. pertināciae: dative.

1. ut, *when.*

2. diūturnitāte: ablative of cause.

4. mercēnnārii: mercenaries from these same regions were also employed by Hannibal in the Second Punic War.

6. abaliēnārunt, oppugnārunt: asyndeton.

adeo sunt Poeni perterriti ut etiam auxilia ab Romanis petierint eaque impetrarint. Sed extremo, cum prope iam ad desperationem pervenissent, Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt. Is 10 non solum hostes a muris Carthaginiis removit, cum amplius centum milia facta essent armatorum, sed etiam eo compulit, ut locorum angustiis clausi plures famem quam ferro interirent. Omnia oppida abalienata, in his Uticam atque Hipponem, valentissima totius Africae, restituit patriae. Neque eo fuit 15 contentus, sed etiam fines imperii propagavit, totam Africam tantum otium reddidit, ut nullum in ea bellum videretur multis annis fuisse.

3. Rebus his ex sententia peractis fidenti animo atque infesto Romanis, quo facilius causam bellandi reperiret, effecit ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem. Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens illustris, Hasdrubal; Hamilcare occiso ille 5 exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit et princeps largitione vetustos pervertit mores Carthaginensium eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium.

4. At Hamilcar, posteaquam mare transiit in Hispaniamque venit, magnas res secundam gessit fortunam; maximas bellicosissimasque gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecuniam totam

9. *impetrarint*: the Romans did not send troops, however.

11. *cum . . . facta essent*, although their number had increased to more than a hundred thousand.

14. *abalienata*: translate by a relative clause.

16. *Africam*: in expressions of Place Where containing the adjective *totus* or *omnis* the preposition is often omitted.

17. *multis annis*: sometimes the ideas of Time within Which and Duration of Time are so closely related that the author may employ whichever one he chooses.

1. *rebus his*: an unusual order.

3. *imperator*: a predicate appositive.

6. *princeps pervertit*, he was the first to undermine.

7. *eiusdem post mortem*: he was assassinated by a slave.

2. *bellicosissimas gentes*: in later times the Romans found it no easy task to bring the Spanish tribes into submission.

locuplētāvit Āfricam. Hic cum in Italiam bellum inferre
 5 meditārētur, nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, in
 proeliō pugnāns adversus Vettōnēs occīsus est. Huius per-
 petuum odium ergā Rōmānōs maximē concitāsse vidētur
 secundum bellum Pūnicum. Namque Hannibal, fīlius eius,
 adsiduīs patris obtestātiōnibus eō est perductus ut interire
 10 quam Rōmānōs nōn experīrī māllet.

4. in Italiam bellum inferre, to transfer the war to Italy.

9. obtestātiōnibus: when Hannibal was nine years old he was taken to the altar by his father, and there made to swear lifelong hatred to Rome.

3. HANNIBAL

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentīā, quantō populus Rōmānus
 5 antecēdat fortitūdine cūctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque cum eō congressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ūnīus virtūtem.

10 Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit;

1. Carthāginiēnsis: nominative, used without a verb, as a part of the title of the narrative.

2. quod: relative pronoun.

ut . . . superārit: subject of *est* in line 1; *superārit* is a contracted form of *superāverit*.

4. imperātōrēs: in Caesar a dative would have been used.

5. cūctās, all other.

6. congressus est: the subject refers to Hannibal.

7. invidiā: Hannibal did not have the whole-hearted support of the Carthaginian government in his campaigns, and his military operations were hampered from this fact. The opposition to him appears to have been based on personal considerations and reasons of political partisanship.

quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrārent 5 darentque operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia atque antea sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē 10 suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adiūnxit: "pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesīvīt ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficiscī. 15 Id cum libenter accēpīsem atque ab eō petere coepīsem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam

12. quī . . . dēstiterit: a causal relative clause.

opum: genitive with *indigeō*.

1. Philippum: Philip the Fifth, king of Macedonia. He was engaged in two wars with Rome.

2. Antiochus: Antiochus the Great, king of Syria from 223 to 179 B.C.

6. darent operam, etc., to endeavor by secret plots to make Hannibal an object of suspicion to the king; quī darent is a relative clause of purpose.

8. alia . . . sentīret, held different sentiments from what he had formerly held.

neque frūstrā = et (cum) nōn frūstrā: the past perfects which follow are coördinate with vēnissent, line 5.

10. tempore, opportunity.

12. inquit: omit in translation.

14. Iovī: Nepos uses the name of the greatest of the gods of the Romans to denote the Carthaginian or Phoenician deity, Baal.

dīvīna rēs, solemn rites.

15. cōficiēbātur: the use of the imperfect with dum meaning "while" is not according to the best Latin usage.

17. dūcere: the object is omitted.

postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre iussit
 20 numquām mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patrī datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī ūt nēminī dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādē mente sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris, sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem
 25 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis, sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est, cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātūī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum
 5 pūblicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam civitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in
 10 Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcīt, cum omnibus incolīs cōflīxit; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quā Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Graium
 15 trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Graius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcīt, itinera mūniit, effēcīt ut eā elephantus ōrnātus ire posset, quā antea

24. cēlāris: contracted form of *cēlāveris*.

2. imperātōre: in predicate relation to *suffectō*.

4. Carthāginem: Place to Which construction, with *dēlātum*. English would employ the Place at Which construction.

6. annīs: ablative of comparison; the accusative might have been used, as in ch. 2, 13.

7. Saguntum: the siege of this city by Hannibal was the immediate cause of the Second Punic war. Saguntum had a treaty of alliance with Rome.

17. mūniit, *constructed*.

ōrnātus, *fully equipped*. On the back of the elephants there was fastened a sort of open box in which several soldiers rode.

posset: in a substantive clause introduced by *ut*.

ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

4. Cōflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōn-
sule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidī apud Padum
dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō idem
Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit.
Cum iīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Li- 5
gurēs Āpennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō
gravī morbō adficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō
aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamnum premerētur
lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumēnum
cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occīdit, neque multō post 10
C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem.
Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vērunt duo cōn-
sulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō
proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā
cōsulārēs, in hīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō 15
fuerat cōsul.

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente.
In propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi

18. in Italiamque = *et in Italiam*; the Latin prefers to attach *-que* to the object of a preposition rather than to the preposition.

1. cōflīxerat: Nepos proceeds to take up the narrative of events in Italy, and so uses the past perfect for an act which preceded the main events of his narrative. The engagement at the Rhone was of little importance.

2. Clastidī: locative. The battle really took place on the banks of the river Ticinus.

5. utrōsque: used instead of *utrumque*; a conjunction is omitted.

9. Trasumēnum: the Romans were caught in a defile near the north side of the lake, and lost half their number in the battle. The remainder of the army was completely scattered.

13. ūnō proeliō: the battle of Cannae. The order of events here given is not exact. The battle of Cannae was fought in the year 216 B.C., while the campaign of Fabius Maximus, which is mentioned in the next chapter, belongs to the preceding year.

1. pugnātā: except when used with such words as *pugna*, the passive forms of this verb are impersonal.

diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē obiēcit. Hīc
 5 clausus locōrum angustīs noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē
 expēdīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuencōrum dēli-
 gāta incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispālātam
 immisit. Quō repentinō vīsū obiectō tantum terrōrem iniēcit
 10 exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium
 Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō
 prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Grac-
 chum, iterum cōnsulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in insidiās inductum
 15 sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs cōnsulem, apud
 Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre
 proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī
 possit quantus ille fuerit; quamdiū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in
 aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēensem pugnam in
 20 campō castra posuit.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum revocātus bellum gessit
 adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius quem ipse primō apud
 Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat.
 Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus cupivit impraesentiarum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congregeretur.
 5 In conloquium convēnit, condiciōnēs nōn convēnerunt. Post
 id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōflīxit;
 pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadru-

3. Q. Fabius Maximus: he was known as the "Delayer" (*Cūnctātor*) from the plan which he adopted of attempting to avoid battle and wear out the enemy without risking a combat.

6. dedit verba, *deceived*.

7. obductā nocte, *when night had come on*.

12. parī imperiō: descriptive ablative.

16. longum est, *it would be a long task*.

1. dēfēsum: a supine, expressing purpose.

4. impraesentiarum: Caesar would have said *in praesentiā*.

5. quō: when does this word introduce a purpose clause?

mētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē 10 excesserant, insidiātī sunt eī, quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrumētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit, novīs dīlēctibus paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitū postea praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit usque ad P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērunt quī senātū popu- 5 lōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent captīvique redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, 10 futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimū nōminī Rōmānō, etiamnunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō Carthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, 15 praetor factus est, postquam rēx fuerat, annō secundō et vīcēsīmō; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē

9. ab Zamā: names of cities take the ablative with a preposition to denote the point from which distance is measured.

11. eī: *insidior* takes a dependent dative.

3. usque ad, etc., till the consulship of Publius Sulpicius and Gaius Aurelius.

4. hīs magistrātibus: ablative absolute.

8. Fregellīs: the envoys did not ask that their hostages be returned, but merely that they be transferred from the place where they were kept to the town of Fregellae.

9. senātūs cōsultō: the order of words in this phrase is unvarying.

12. foret = *esset*.

16. rēx: the title of the chief magistrates of Carthage was "suffete." Nepos is using the word *rēx* as an equivalent for this word.

18. parī . . . ac, the same . . . as.

Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex
 20 novīs vectīgālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs
 ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset quae in aerariō
 repōnerētur. Deinde annō post praetūram, M. Claudiō L.
 Fūriō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vērunt. Hōs
 Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs
 25 senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad
 Antiochum prōfūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvēs duās,
 quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, mīserunt,
 bona eius pūblicārun, domum ā fundāmentis disiēcērunt,
 ipsum exsulem iūdicārun.

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō prōfūgerat, L.
 Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam
 accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad
 bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque indūcere posset, cui iam per-
 5 suāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficiscerētur. Hūc
 Māgōnem frātre excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgō-
 nem eādē quā frātre absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī
 dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent,
 Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex
 10 memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs
 ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem

20. *quae penderētur*: a relative clause of purpose (so also *quae repōnerē-
 tur*).

24. *grātiā*: a synonym of the ablative *causā*, preceded by a genitive.

25. *senātus*: i.e., a hearing by the senate.

28. *pūblicārun*: apparently the Carthaginians hoped that by the
 sacrifice of Hannibal they might save their city from the complete destruc-
 tion to which they felt sure the Romans had doomed it.

2. *Āfricam*: Caesar uses *ad* with the accusative after *accēdō*.

3. *sī posset*, *hoping that he could*.

4. *Antiochī*: objective genitive, with *spē fidūciāque*.

7. *illī*: nominative, referring to Hannibal and Mago.

9. *duplex memoria*, *two different reports*.

11. *interfectum (esse)*: this word is appropriate only with *ā servulīs*;
 with *naufragiō* some such word as *periisse* is understood.

sī tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberī quam in Thermopylīs dē summā imperī dīmīcāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, 15 quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō marī cōflīxit. In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

9. Antiochō fugātō verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōnsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniā 5 portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, 10 omnēs suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abicit. Gortyniī templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus iis tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus inlūsīs Crētēnsibus omnibus ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō

12. tam voluisset . . . quam, *had been as willing . . . as.*

13. Tiberī: what case does Caesar use with *propius*?

Thermopylīs: the defeat of Antiochus by the Romans at Thermopylae occurred in the year 191 B.C.

18. ipse rem gessit: *i.e.*, commanded in person.

1. fugātō: in the battle of Magnesia, in 190 B.C.

2. sī . . . potestātem, *if he had put himself in his (Antiochus') power.*

Gortyniōs: the name of the people used instead of the name of the city.

4. nisi quid prōvidisset, *unless he should take some sort of precautions.*

7. summās: supply *amphorās*. Translate by an English noun.

13. inscientibus iis: ablative absolute; *sē* or *ipsīs* might have been used instead of *iis*. *tolleret*, *should carry off his property.*

1. Poenus: Hannibal.

fuit ergā Italiam neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobīque Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem; quem sī remōvisset, faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem: classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās conligi eāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiārīōs convocā iisque praecipit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

11. Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitūtā, priusquam

3. neque . . . armāvit, freely, and he set about inducing the king to go to war.

4. domesticis opibus: the resources of the Bithynians alone were not sufficient to give promise of a successful war against the Romans.

8. quō: ablative, expressing both degree of difference and cause.

9. utrobīque = *et marī et terrā*.

10. remōvisset: for a future perfect in direct discourse.

12. classe: ablative of means.

superābātur: the subject refers to Hannibal.

18. habeant: coördinate with *concurrant*.

19. id: object of *cōsecūtūrōs* (*esse*): the indirect statement depends on a word of saying implied by *praecipit*.

20. ut scīrent: object of *factūrum*;—*he would make it clear to them*.

21. magnō iīs praemiō fore, *they would receive a great reward*; *praemiō* is dative.

quārum: supply *classium*.

signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō
 locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit.
 Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistolamque osten- 5
 dēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem
 dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset
 scriptum. Tabellārius ducis nāve dēclārātā suis eōdem unde
 erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistolā nihil
 in eā repperit nisi quae ad inrīdendū eum pertinērent. Cuius 10
 • reī etsī causam mīrābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium
 statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bīthyniī
 Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur.
 Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petit,
 quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, 15
 quae in proximō lītore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae
 nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa
 fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt.
 Quae iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārunt, neque quārē id
 fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās 20
 cōspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum quid potis-
 simum vitārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua
 castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Per-

3. suis: dative with *palam faceret*, which = *ostenderet*.

6. rēgem: object of *quaerere*.

8. ducis: modifies *nāve*.

eōdem: adverb.

9. solūtā, *opened* (lit. *unfastened*).

10. quae pertinērent, *which would tend*.

12. dubitāvit: observe the different meaning of this word in line 7 (*dubitābat*) and note the dependent construction in each of the two passages.

15. quam: the antecedent is *salūtem*.

17. adversāriōs: the Bithynians.

19. quae iacta: the most important part of the thought is not in the pronoun, but in the participle which modifies it.

pugnantibus, *on the part of the fighters*; a dative of reference.

22. vitārent: the question in direct form would be *quid vitēmus*.

23. cōsiliō, arma: a rhetorical contrast.

gamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedes-
 25 tribus cōpiīs parī prūdentīā pepulit adversāriōs.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae
 Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent,
 atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iīs ūnus dīceret eum
 in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātui dētulit.
 5 Patrēs cōscriptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiīs
 futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt, in hīs
 Flāmininum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum suum
 sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn
 est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus
 10 iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi
 esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in
 cāstellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārat
 ut in omnibūs partibūs aedificī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē
 ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnis-
 15 sent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā
 prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem
 armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificī
 circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique

25. prūdentīā: ablative of manner.

1. geruntur: why present tense?

3. ex iīs: the usual substitute for a genitive of the whole after *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, or *quīdam*. But occasionally *ūnus* is modified by the genitive.

7. suum, sēcum, sibī: a rather unusual employment of the reflexive; *suum* refers to the Romans, *sē* to the king, and *sibī* to the Romans.

8. habēret, dēderet: the negative force of the conjunction *nē* affects only the first of the two verbs.

9. illud recūsāvit, etc., he objected to their demands in so far as they required him to do anything in violation of the laws of hospitality.

10. comprehenderent: representing an imperative in direct discourse.

11. locō: the preposition *in* is freely omitted with the ablative of this word.

14. ūsū venīret: the phrase is synonymous with *accideret*.

16. praeter cōnsuētūdinem: cf. Caesar's expression, *quam cōnsuētūdō ferret*, Bk. IV, 32, 6.

17. quī refers to Hannibal.

18. num: introducing an indirect question, this word means simply *whether*. What does it denote when introducing a direct question?

obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūtiāset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō 20 factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītā esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsimo. Quibus cōsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Atque hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot eius librī 5 sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, in eis ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānlī Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Huius bellī gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo, quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt quamdiū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsylus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsylō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre. 10

Sed nōs tempus est huius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius conlātis utrōrumque factis, quī virī praeferendī sint possit iūdicārī.

22. aliēnō: equivalent to a genitive of *alius*.

1. labōribus: ablative with a compound of *fungor*.

3. nōn convenit, *authorities do not agree*.

5. ad Rhodiōs, *(one) dedicated to the Rhodians*.

11. librī: for the divisions of the historical work from which these selections are taken, see p. 380.

4. CATŌ

1. M. Catō, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscēntulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est in Sabīnīs, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde hortātū L. Valerī Flaccī, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgam,

1. Catō: known as Cato the Censor. He was born 234 B.C.

ortus, *a native of*.

priusquam . . . daret, *before he turned his attention to public life*.

2. Sabīnīs, *the Sabine country*. Perhaps the character of Cato was influenced in no small degree by his contact with this sturdy and serious-minded people.

5 ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit
 in forōque esse coepit. Primum stīpendium meruit annōrum
 decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōsulibus tribūnus
 mīlitum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C.
 Claudi Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō
 10 apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaes-
 tor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō sortis necessitū-
 dine vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dissēnsit vitā. Aedilis
 plēbei factus est cum C. Helviō. Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit
 Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēs
 15 Q. Ennium poētam dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus
 quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēnsem triumphum.

2. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō. Sorte prō-
 vinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem exque eā triumphum
 dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus

5. **Perpenna**: he was consul in 92 and censor in 86.

6. **in forō**: the young man who wished to enter political life usually gained a considerable part of his education for such a career by listening to the speeches before the law courts and the political addresses which were made in the Forum. See *Intrōd.* 19.

primum . . . meruit, served his first campaign as a soldier.

11. **obtigit**, was allotted to. The quaestors had certain financial duties which they performed, subject in some degree to a superior official, a praetor or consul. The assignment of the quaestor to one of the higher magistrates was made by lot.

necessitūdine: the assignment by lot was supposed to establish a special bond between the officials thus associated in public duty.

12. **dissēnsit**: Cato is said to have criticized Scipio for using public funds too freely.

13. **plēbei**: observe the variation in the declension of this word.

15. **quod . . . aestimāmus**: the Romans of the period in which Nepos lived admired the poetry of Ennius very greatly.

1. **cōsulātum**: Cato was consul in 195 B.C.

2. **triumphum**: the wars conducted by Cato with the Spanish tribes do not appear to have been of much importance, but the honor of a triumph for a successful campaign was very freely granted to a provincial governor on his return, unless he had active political enemies.

3. **morārētur**: it appears that Cato wished to complete the military operations in which he was engaged before leaving his province.

cōsul iterum, cuius in priōre cōsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere, neque hoc per senātum efficere potuit, cum quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā, sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābatur. Quā ex rē irātus senātui cōsulātū peractō privātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī. Nam et in complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit et multās rēs novās in ēdictum addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimerētur, quae iam tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, usque ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscentiā, rei pūblīcae causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. A multīs tentātus nōn modo nūllum dētrīmentum exīstimātiōnis fēcit, sed, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā; nam et agricola sollers et perītus iūris cōsultus et magnus imperātor et probābilis orātor et cupidissimus litterārum fuit. Quārum studium etsī senior adripuerat, tamen tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperīri possit neque dē Graecis neque dē Italicis rēbus quod eī fuerit incognitum. Ab adulēscentiā cōnfēcit orātiōnēs. Senex historiās scribere instituit. Eārum sunt librī septem. Prīmus

5. *neque = sed nōn.*

6. *cum, although.*

7. *tum nōn potentiā, etc.:* Roman writers are fond of contrasting the virtues of an earlier time with the faults and vices of their own time.

9. *mānsit:* the subject refers to Scipio.

11. *animadvertit:* what is the difference between the meaning of *animadvertere* when used with a direct object, and when used with *in* and the accusative?

in ēdictum addidit: the *ēdictum* of the censors was a detailed statement of the policy which they expected to follow in performing the duties of their office.

15. *tentātus:* equivalent to an adversative phrase or clause.

16. *virtūtum laude crēvit, freely, his honorable character continued to win higher praise.*

1. *agricola sollers:* one of his books was a treatise on agriculture.

4. *senior:* he is said to have begun the study of Greek when he was eighty years old.

5. *quod:* the antecedent is an understood *quicquam*.

continet rēs gestās rēgum populī Rōmānī, secundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvitās orta sit Italica, ob quam rem omnēs Orīgī-
10 nēs vidētur appellāsse. In quārtō autem bellum Pūnicum est primum, in quīntō secundum. Atque haec omnia capitulātīm sunt dicta. Reliquaque bella parī modō persecūtus est usque ad praetūram Ser. Galbae, quī diripuit Lusitānōs; atque hōrum bellōrum ducēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōminibus rēs notāvit.
15 In eīsdem exposuit, quae in Italiā Hispāniīsque aut fierent aut vidērentur admīranda; in quibus multa industria et diligentia compāret, nūlla doctrīna.

10. quārtō: supply *librō*.

13. Galbae: he was praetor in 151 and in the next year was governor of Spain. He put to death in an atrocious manner the Lusitanians together with their wives and children after they had surrendered to him on a promise of being spared.

16. quibus: the antecedent is *eīsdem* (*librīs*).

PART IV

STORIES FROM OVID

Publius Ovidius Naso, known in English as Ovid, was born in the year 43 B.C. The greater part of his life was spent in Rome, and his poetry was much admired by the fashionable society which made up the court of the emperor Augustus. For some reason which is not certainly known he was banished from Rome in the year 8 A.D., and compelled to take up his residence at Tomi on the coast of the Black Sea, where he died, ten years later. His most important work, the *Metamorphoses*, from which the following selections are taken, was a connected poetic narrative, in fifteen books, of the myths describing the various transformations to which the gods submitted or which they caused on the part of human beings, animals, or inanimate objects.

1. HOW THE HUMAN RACE WAS DESTROYED BY FLOOD, AND HOW THE EARTH WAS REPEOPLED (*Metamorphoses* I, 262-415)

In olden times, the human race had become so wicked, that Jove decided to destroy them by a flood.

Prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antrīs
Et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nūbēs,
Ēmittitque Notum. Madidīs Notus ēvolat ālīs,
Terribilem piceā tēctus cālīgine vultum;
Barba gravis nimbīs, cānīs fluit unda capillīs,
Fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaеque sinūsque.
Utque manū lātā pendentīa nūbila pressit,
Fit fragor; inclūsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī.

265

262-264. *Straightway he (i.e., Jupiter) shuts up in Aeolian caves the North Wind and all other blasts that put to flight the gathered clouds, and sends the South Wind forth.*

262. Aeoliīs: Aeolus was a god, son of Jupiter, set to guard the winds in great caves upon an island near Sicily.

265. tēctus: the passive voice is frequently used in Latin poetry to represent the subject as acting upon itself. This is called the middle voice. Translate here *tēctus vultum*, *shrouding his face*, etc.

267. fronte, *on his brow.* In prose a preposition would have been used with this ablative.

269. funduntur: another example of the middle voice, but to be translated by the active voice of the English verb.

- 270 Nūntia Iūnōnis variōs indūta colōrēs
 Concipit Īris aquās, alimentaque nūbibus adfert.
 Sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī
 Vōta iacent, longīque perit labor inritus annī.
 Nec caelō contenta suō est Iovis īra, sed illum
 275 Caeruleus frāter itvat auxiliāribus undīs.
 Convocat hic amnēs. Quī postquam tēcta tyrannī
 Intrāvēre suī, “nōn est hortāmine longō
 Nunc,” ait, “ūtendum. Virēs effundite vestrās,
 Sic opus est. Aperīte domōs, ac mōle remōtā
 280 Flūminibus vestrīs tōtās immittite habēnās.”
 Iusserat. Hī redeunt, ac fontibus ōra relaxant,
 Et dēfrēnātō volvuntur in aequora cursū.
 Ipse tridente suō terram percussit. At illa
 Intremuit mōtūque viās patefēcit aquārum.
 285 Exspatiāta ruunt per apertōs flūmina campōs,
 Cumque satīs arbusta simul pecudēsque virōsque
 Tēctaque, cumque suīs rapiunt penetrālia sacrīs.

270, 271. *Iris, Juno's messenger, clad in rainbow hues, draws up the water and feeds it to the clouds.*

270. *indūta*: lit. *having put upon herself*, etc. Compare *tēctus*, 265.

272. *dēplōrāta*, etc., freely, *the farmer mourns over his desolated fields, and the long year's toil is vain and profitless.*

273. *vōta*: the “prayers” of the farmer are the growing crops, for the safety of which he prays.

275. *frāter*: Neptune, brother of Jove, and god of the sea.

277. *intrāvēre*: observe the ending *-ēre* instead of the more common *-ērunt*.

est ūtendum: the impersonal construction. Translate with *nōn hortāmine longō* — *no long exhortation need be employed*.

279. *opus est*: see note on Caesar, Bk. II, 8, 17.

280. In this and the two succeeding lines the elements are spoken of as if they were horses. So *immittite habēnās*, — *shake out the reins*; *ōra relaxant*, — *give loose rein*; *dēfrēnātō cursū*, — *in unrestrained course*.

283. *tridente*: the trident, a three-pronged spear, was the emblem of authority which Neptune always carried.

286. *satīs*: the perfect passive participle of *sērare*, *to sow*, used as a substantive; *things sown*, hence *crops*, *standing grain*.

Siqua domus mānsit potuitque resistere tantō
 Indēiecta malō, culmen tamen altior huius
 Unda tegit, pressaeque latent sub gurgite turrēs. 290
 Iamque mare et tellūs nūllum discrīmen habēbant;
 Omnia pontus erant. Deerant quoque litora pontō.
 Occupat hic collem; cumbā sedet alter aduncā
 Et dūcit rēmōs illic ubi nūper arārat;
 Ille super segetēs aut mersae culmina villae 295
 Nāvigat, hic summā piscem dēprēndit in ulmō;
 Fīgitur in viridī, sī fors tulit, ancora prātō,
 Aut subiecta terunt curvae vīnēta carīnae.
 Et, modo quā gracilēs grāmen carpsēre capellae,
 Nunc ibi dēfōrmēs pōnunt sua corpora phōcae. 300
 Mīrantur sub aquā lūcōs urbēsque domōsque
 Nēreīdes. Silvāsque tenent delphīnes, et altīs
 Incursant rāmīs agitātaque rōbora pulsan.
 Nat lupus inter ovēs, fulvōs vehit unda leōnēs,
 Unda vehit tigrēs. Nec vīrēs fulminis aprō, 305
 Crūra nec ablātō prōsunt vėlōcia cervō.

288. potuitque . . . malō, and could resist such a disaster without being overthrown.

293. hic . . . alter, one man . . . another.

294. dūcit rēmōs, plies the oars.

arārat: a shortened form, for arāverat.

296. summā in ulmō, in the top of an elm tree. To speak of catching fish in the top of a tree is simply a very vivid way of saying that the treetops were under water.

297. sī fors tulit, if chance so directs.

299. modo quā (supply parte), where but now.

302. Nēreīdes: a Greek nom. pl. form in -es; so also delphīnes.

303. agitātaque, etc., they dash against the swaying (lit. shaken) oaks. The epithet *agitāta* is used by anticipation (prolepsis), since the oaks would not be "shaken" until after the dolphins had "dashed against" them. This method of expression is foreign to our language.

305. nec vīrēs fulminis aprō (*prōsunt*), neither does the strength of his lightning (stroke) avail the boar. The boar's sidelong stroke with his tusks was called *fulmen*, because of its destructive power.

aprō: for case see App. 116; A.370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

Quaesītisque diū terrīs ubi sistere dētur,
 In mare lassātis volucris vaga dēcidit ālīs.
 Obruerat tumultōs immēnsa licentia pontī,
 310 Pulsābantque novī montāna cacūmina flūctūs.
 Maxima pars undā rapitur; quibus unda pepercit,
 Illōs longa domant inopī iēiūnia victū.

All human beings perish except one man and one woman, whose boat, when the floods subside, rests on Mt. Parnassus.

Sēparat Āoniōs Oetaeis Phōcis ab arvīs,
 Terra ferāx, dum terra fuit; sed tempore in illō
 315 Pars maris et lātus subitārum campus aquārum.
 Mōns ibi verticibus petit arduus astra duōbus,
 Nōmine Parnāsus, superantque cacūmina nūbēs.
 Hīc ubi Deucaliōn, nam cētera tēxerat aequor,
 Cum cōsōrte torī parvā rate vectus adhaesit,
 320 Cōrycidas nymphās et nūmina montis adōrant,
 Fātidicamque Themīn, quae tunc ōrācla tenēbat.
 Nōn illō melior quisquam nec amantior aequī
 Vir fuit, aut illā metuentior ūlla deōrum.
 Iuppiter ut liquidīs stāgnāre palūdibus orbem,
 325 Et superesse virum dē tot modo mīlibus ūnum,
 Et superesse videt dē tot modo mīlibus ūnam,
 Innocuōs ambōs, cultōrēs nūminis ambōs,
 Nūbila disiēcit, nimbisque Aquilōne remōtis

307. *And after she had long sought over the earth for a place to alight.*

ubi dētur: the clause expresses purpose.

309. *immēnsa licentia pontī, the mighty sea, freed from restraint.*

311. *maxima pars: i.e., hominum.*

quibus: dative with *parcere*.

313. *Āoniōs: the name of the people instead of the name of the country.*

316. *petit, rises toward.*

322. *aequī: genitive with amantior.*

323. *aut illā, etc., nor was there any (woman) more reverent toward the gods than she.*

324-326. *Iuppiter ut videt, when Jupiter saw, etc.*

324. *orbem: supply terrārum, the whole world.*

Et caelō terrās ostendit et aethera terrīs.

Nec maris ira manet, positōque tricuspidē tēlō

330

Mulcet aquās rēctor pelagī, suprāque profundum

Exstantem atque umerōs innātō mūrīce tēctum

Caeruleum Trītōna vocat, conchaeque sonantī

Īnspirāre iubet, flūctūsque et flūmina signō

Iam revocāre datō. Cava būcina sūmitur illī

335

Tortilis, in lātum quae turbine crēscit ab īmō,

Būcina, quae mediō concēpit ubi āera pontō,

Lītora vōce replet sub utrōque iacentia Phoebō.

Tunc quoque, ut ōra deī madidā rōrantia barbā

Contigit, et cecinit iussōs inflāta receptūs,

340

Omnibus audīta est tellūris et aequoris undīs,

Et quibus est undīs audīta, coërcuit omnēs.

Flūmina subsīdunt, collēsque exīre videntur.

Iam mare lītus habet, plēnōs capit alveus amnēs,

332. exstantem, tēctum: to be construed with *Trītōna*.

tēctum: a different construction from the *tēctus* of line 265. In the present instance, as shown by the context, *innātō mūrīce*, the act in *tēctum* can hardly be considered as that of *Trītōn*; *umerōs* is therefore not object, but acc. of specification with *tēctum*. Translate, *with his shoulders covered with the clinging* (lit. *native*) *purple-fish*, i.e., the *murex* (a shell-fish) grew like barnacles on Triton's shoulders.

335. illī: poetic use of the dative of agent.

337, 338. quae mediō, etc., *which, when far out at sea it has received (the Triton's) breath, fills with its notes the shores that lie beneath the rising and the setting sun.*

339. tunc quoque: these words apply the usual action to the present situation.

ōra madidā rōrantia barbā: by observing the quantity of the final vowels the student will perceive that Ovid has arranged his two pairs of noun and adjective in a curiously interlocked order, *ōra* and *rōrantia* belonging syntactically together, and *madidā* and *barbā*. Instances of this method of arrangement abound in Ovid's poems.

340. contigit: the subject is *būcina*.

et cecinit, etc., *and being filled with (Triton's) breath, it sounded forth the recall commanded.*

342. undīs: compare note on *illī*, line 335. Observe the order of words, the noun standing at the end of the line and its modifier (*omnibus*) at the beginning.

345 Surgit humus; crēscunt loca dēcrēscētibz undīs.
 Postque diem longam nūdāta cacūmina silvae
 Ostendunt, līmumque tenent in fronde relictum.

The surviving pair, with much grief for the destruction of their race, find their way to the oracle and inquire of the goddess how the earth may be repopled.

Redditus orbis erat. Quem postquam vīdit inānem
 Et dēsōlātās agere alta silentia terrās,
 350 Deucaliōn lacrimīs ita Pyrrham adfātur obortīs:
 “Ō soror, ō coniūnx, ō fēmina sōla superstes,
 Quam commūne mihī genus et patruēlis orīgō,
 Deinde torus iūnxit, nunc ipsa perīcula iungunt:
 Terrārum, quāscumque vident occāsus et ortus,
 355 Nōs duo turba sumus; possēdit cētera pontus.
 Haec quoque adhūc vītāe nōn est fidūcia nostrae
 Certa satis. Terrent etiam nunc nūbila mentem.
 Quis tibi, sī sine mē fātīs ērepta fuissēs,
 Nunc animus, miseranda, foret? Quō sōla timōrem
 360 Ferre modō possēs? Quō cōnsōlante dolērēs?
 Namque ego, crēde mihī, sī tē quoque pontus habēret,
 Tē sequerer, coniūnx, et mē quoque pontus habēret.
 Ō utinam possem populōs reparāre paternīs

345. crēscunt . . . undīs, the (uncovered) areas increase as the waves recede.

346. silvae: subject of *ostendunt*.

351. soror: Pyrrha was not the sister but the cousin of Deucalion, since they were the daughter and son of the brothers Epimetheus and Prometheus respectively.

352. patruēlis orīgō: in allusion to the relationship just mentioned.

353. torus, wedlock.

354. occāsus et ortus: understand *sōlis*.

356, 357. Nor is our hold on life as yet entirely secure.

359. miseranda, poor soul.

quō: to be taken with *modō*; how wouldst thou be able to bear thy grief alone?

363. possem: for mood see App. 221, b; A. 441, a; B. 279, 1, 2; H. 558, 1, 2; H.-B. 511, 1.

paternīs artibus: his father Prometheus had formed human beings out of clay, and given them life.

Artibus atque animās fōrmātae infundere terrae!
 Nunc genus in nōbīs restat mortāle duōbus; 365
 Sic vīsum est superīs: hominumque exempla manēmus."
 Dixerat, et flēbant. Placuit caeleste precārī
 Nūmen, et auxilium per sacrās quaerere sortēs.
 Nūlla mora est, adeunt pariter Cēphīsidas undās,
 Ut nōndum liquidās, sic iam vada nōta secantēs. 370
 Inde ubi libātōs inrōrāvēre liquōrēs
 Vestibus et capitī, flectunt vestīgia sānctae
 Ad dēlūbra deae, quōrum fastīgia turpī
 Pallēbant mūscō stābantque sine ignibus ārae.
 Ut templī tetigēre gradūs, prōcumbit uterque 375
 Prōnus humī, gelidōque pavēns dedit ōscula saxō.
 Atque ita, "sī precibus," dīxērunt, "nūmina iūstīs
 Victa remollēscunt, sī flectitur ira deōrum,
 Dīc, Themī, quā generis damnum reparābile nostrī
 Arte sit, et mersīs fer opem, mītissima, rēbus." 380

The mysterious response is given by the oracle that they must cast behind them the bones of their parent. They are horrified at the thought of this impious deed, until they discover its real meaning.

Mōta dea est sortemque dedit: "discēdite templō,
 Et vėlāte caput, cīnctāsque resolvite vestēs,
 Ossaque post tergum magnae iactāte parentis."

364. *terrae, clay; dative with infundere.*

370. *ut . . . sic, though . . . still.* The water was still muddy from the recent flood, but confined within its banks.

371, 372. *Then after having caught up and sprinkled upon their garments and their heads some of the water, etc.*

371. *liquōrēs:* running water was used by the ancients for purposes of purification before they engaged in any sacred act.

375. *ut:* as in line 324.

376. *humī:* locative.

381. *templō:* ablative of Place from Which; in prose a preposition would be used.

382. This was the usual manner of dress of one engaged in sacrifice.

383. *post tergum, behind you.*

- 385 Obstipuere diu, rumpitque silentia voce
 Pyrrha prior, iussisque deae parere recusat,
 Detque sibi veniam, pavidō rogat ore, pavetque
 Laedere iactātis maternās ossibus umbrās.
 Interea repetunt caecis obscura latebris
 Verba datae sortis secum, inter seque volutant;
 390 Unde Promēthidēs placidis Epimēthida dictis
 Mulcet et, "aut fallāx," ait, "est sollertia nobis,
 Aut pia sunt nullumque nefas oracula suadent.
 Magna parens terra est; lapidēs in corpore terrae
 Ossa reor dici; iacere hos post terga iubemur."

Then they throw behind them stones, which are the bones of Mother Earth, and these stones change to men and women.

- 395 Coniugis auguriō quamquam Titānia mōta est,
 Spēs tamen in dubiō est; adeō caelestibus ambō
 Diffidunt monitis. Sed quid temptare nocēbit?
 Descendunt velantque caput tunicāsque recingunt
 Et iussōs lapidēs sua post vestigia mittunt.
 400 Saxa — quis hoc credat, nisi sit pro teste vetustās?—
 Pōnere dūritiem coepere suumque rigōrem,
 Molliriūque morā, mollitaque dūcere fōrmam.
 Mox ubi creverunt, naturaque mitior illis
 Contigit, ut quaedam, sic nōn manifesta, vidēri

385. prior, *first*. The Latin, more accurate than the English, regularly uses the comparative when only two objects are in question.

iussis: dative with *parere*.

386. det: construe the clause as object of *rogat*:— *and she begs with trembling lips (that the goddess) pardon her (for refusing)*.

387. iactātis ossibus: ablative absolute, suggesting the idea of means, *by hurling her bones*.

388. caecis latebris: construe with *obscura (verba)*.

396. adeō, *to such an extent*.

397. sed quid, etc., *but what harm will it do to try?*

400. credat: for mood see App. 207; A. 444; B. 277; H. 552; H.-B. 517.

404-406. ut quaedam, etc., *a certain likeness to a human form can indeed be seen, but still not very clear; such as is the form of marble statues begun and not yet fully worked out—just like images in the rough*.

Fōrma potest hominis, sed utī est dē marmore coeptis 405
 Nōn exācta satis rudibusque simillima signīs.
 Quae tamen ex illīs aliquō pars ūmida sūcō
 Et terrēna fuit, versa est in corporis ūsum;
 Quod solidum est flectīque nequit, mūtātur in ossa;
 Quae modo vēna fuit, sub eōdem nōmine mānsit; 410
 Inque brevī spatiō superōrum nūmine saxa
 Missa virī manibus faciem trāxēre virōrum,
 Et dē fēmineō reparāta est fēmina iactū.
 Inde genus dūrum sumus experiēnsque labōrum,
 Et documenta damus quā sīmus orīgine nātī. 415

414. labōrum: genitive with the adjective *experiēns*.

2. HOW TWO YOUNG LOVERS CAME TO A TRAGIC END (*Metamorphoses* IV, 55-166)

Pyramus and Thisbe, two young people of Babylon, being thwarted in love by their parents, agree to meet by night without the walls at Ninus's tomb.

Pȳramus et Thisbē, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter, 55
 Altera, quās oriēns habuit, praelāta puellīs,
 Contiguās tenuēre domōs, ubi dīcitur altam
 Coctilibus mūrīs cīnxisse Semīramis urbem.
 Nōtitiam primōsque gradūs vīcīnia fēcīt;
 Tempore crēvit amor. Taedae quoque iūre coīssent; 60
 Sed vetuēre patrēs. Quod nōn potuēre vetāre,
 Ex aequō captīs ārdēbant mentibus ambō.
 Cōnsciū omnis abest; nūtū signīsque loquuntur.
 Quōque magis tegitur, tēctus magis aestuat ignis.

56. puellīs: dative with the compound verb, *praeferō*.

58. urbem: that is, Babylon.

59. nōtitiam primōsque gradūs, *acquaintance and the first steps of love*.

61. quod: the antecedent is the statement of the next line.

62. ex aequō, *equally*.

63. cōnsciū omnis abest, *there was no go-between, that is, no third person who was in their secret (cōnsciū)*.

64. quōque magis: in prose *eō* would probably have been used with the second *magis*,—*the more . . . the more*.

- 65 Fissus erat tenui rimā, quam dūxerat olim
 Cum fieret, paries domui communis utriusque.
 Id vitium nulli per saecula longa notatum —
 Quid non sentit amor?— primi vidistis, amantes,
 Et vocis fecistis iter; tutaeque per illud
 70 Murmure blanditiae minimō transire solēbant.
 Saepe, ubi constiterant, hinc Thisbē, Pyramus illinc,
 Inque vicēs fuerat captatus anhelitus oris,
 “Invide” dicebant “paries, quid amantibus obstās?
 Quantum erat, ut sinerēs totō nos corpore iungī,
 75 Aut hoc si nimium, vel ad oscula danda patērēs!
 Nec sumus ingrati; tibi nos debere fatēmur,
 Quod datus est verbis ad amicās transitus aurēs.”
 Talia diversā nequiquam sede locuti
 Sub noctem dixere “valē,” partique dedere
 80 Oscula quisque suae non pervenientia contrā.
 Postera nocturnos aurora removerat ignēs,
 Solque pruinosās radiis siccaverat herbās;
 Ad solitum coire locum. Tum murmure parvō
 Multa prius questī, statuunt ut nocte silenti
 85 Fallere custodes foribusque excēdere temptent,
 Cumque domo exierint, urbis quoque tecta relinquant;

65, 66. *The party wall of the two houses had been split by a narrow crack which it had at some former time developed when it was building.*

68. *amantes, lovers; compare amantibus in line 73.*

70. *blanditiae, fond words.*

74. *quantum (=quantulum) erat, how small a thing it would be.*

erat: for tense see App. 254, a; A. 521, a, note; B. 304, 3, a; H. 581, 3; H.-B. 582, 3, a.

76. *debere:* the direct object of this verb is the substantive *quod* clause in the next line.

79, 80. *partique dedere oscula, etc., and imprinted kisses, each one upon his own side of the wall.*

84. *statuunt:* the object is *ut . . . temptent, relinquant, convenient, lateant.*

Nēve sit errandum lātō spatiantibus arvō,
 Convenient ad busta Ninī, lateantque sub umbrā
 Arboris. Arbor ibī niveīs ūberrima pōmīs
 Ardua mōrus erat, gelidō contermina fontī.
 Pacta placent, et lūx tardē discēdere vīsa est;
 Praecipitātur aquīs, et aquīs nox exit ab īdem.

90

Thisbe reaches the trysting place first, and while waiting for her lover, is alarmed to see a lioness approaching the spring near by to drink. Thisbe hastily retreats to the tomb of Ninus, dropping her veil in her flight. This the lioness tears as she departs.

Callida per tenebrās versātō cardine Thisbē
 Ēgreditur fallitque suōs, adopertaque vultum
 Pervenit ad tumulum, dictāque sub arbore sēdit.
 Audācem faciēbat amor. Venit ecce recentī
 Caede leaena boum spūmantēs oblita rictūs,
 Dēpositūra sitim vīcīnī fontis in undā.
 Quam procul ad lūnae radiōs Babylōnia Thisbē
 Vīdit, et obscūrum trepidō pede fūgit in antrum,
 Dumque fugit, tergō vėlāmina lāpsa relīquit.
 Ut lea saeva sitim multā compescuit undā,

95

100

87. *nēve sit errandum*, etc., and that they may run no risk of missing each other as they wander in the open fields.

spatiantibus: supply *eīs*, dative of agent.

88, 89. *busta Ninī, arboris*: this tomb and tree are an important element in the story, since Ovid thus prepares his stage setting in advance.

89. *niveīs pōmīs*: Ovid assumes for the purpose of his story that before this tragedy of Pyramus all mulberries were white.

91. *pacta placent*, the agreement is satisfactory, that is, both as to time and place of meeting.

92. *praecipitātur*: pass. with reflexive meaning; (the day) sinks down into the waters.

94. *adoperta*: that is, with the veil mentioned below, l. 101.

97. *caede oblita*, etc., with her foaming jaws smeared (with blood) from cattle freshly slain; *oblita* may be explained as the middle voice.

98. *dēpositūra sitim*, to slake her thirst.

99. *ad lūnae radiōs*, by the light of the moon.

100, 101. *fūgit, fugit*: what difference in tense is noticeable in these verbs, and how is the difference to be explained?

Dum redit in silvās, inventōs forte sine ipsā
 Ōre cruentātō tenuēs laniāvit amictūs.

Pyramus, coming later, hastily concludes from the bloody veil and the lion's tracks that his sweetheart is dead, and straightway kills himself with his sword.

- 105 Sērius ēgressus vestīgia vīdit in altō
 Pulvere certa ferae, tōtōque expalluit ōre
 Pȳramus. Ut vērō vestem quoque sanguine tīnctam
 Repperit, "ūna duōs," inquit, "nox perdet amantēs;
 Ē quibus illa fuit longā dignissima vītā,
 110 Nostra nocēns anima est. Ego tē, miseranda, perēmī,
 In loca plēna metūs quī iussī nocte venīrēs,
 Nec prior hūc vēnī. Nostrum dīvellite corpus,
 Et scelerāta ferō cōsūmite vīscera morsū,
 Ō quicumque sub hāc habitātis rūpe, leōnēs.
 115 Sed timidī est optāre necem"—vėlāmina Thisbēs
 Tollit, et ad pactae sēcum fert arboris umbram.
 Utque dedit nōtae lacrimās, dedit ōscula vestī,
 "Accipe nunc," inquit, "nostrī quoque sanguinis haustūs."
 Quōque erat accīnctus, dēmīsit in īlia ferrum,
 120 Nec mora, ferventī moriēns ē vulnere trāxit.
 Ut iacuit resupīnus humō, cruor ēmicat altē;

103. *inventōs forte sine ipsā*, the veil (*amictūs*) which she chanced upon (*inventōs forte*) without the girl herself. It was a mere "empty" (*sine ipsā*) veil which the lioness tore, but this detail of the story is important as being the real cause of the tragic death of Pyramus.

109. *ē quibus*: a prepositional phrase corresponding to the genitive of the whole. The two parts are *illa* and *nōs*, which is implied in *nostra*.

110. *nostra . . . est*, mine is the guilty soul. *miseranda*, poor girl.

111. *venīrēs*: what would be the prose construction?

115. *sed timidī est*, etc., but it is a coward's part (merely) to pray for death. The brave man, he thinks, will seek the death which he desires.

117. *nōtae*: read with *vestī*;—the familiar veil.

118. *accipe*: addressed to the garment.

119. *quōque* = *et quō*. The prose order of this line would be *ferrumque, quō accīnctus erat, in īlia dēmīsit*.

120. *nec mora*: understand *erat*. Translate, and without delay.

Nōn aliter quam cum vitiātō fistula plumbō
Scinditur, et tenuī strīdente forāmine longās
Ēiaculātur aquās atque ictibus āera rumpit.

Arboreī fētūs aspergine caedis in ātram

125

Vertuntur faciem. Madefactaque sanguine rādīx

Pūniceō tinguīt pendentia mōra colōre.

Thisbe now comes forth from her hiding place, discovers her dying lover, and, after a pathetic lamentation and a prayer that their ashes may rest together in the same tomb, stabs herself with her lover's sword.

Ecce metū nōndum positō, nē fallat amantem,

Illa redit, iuvenemque oculīs animōque requīrit,

Quantaque vītārit nārrāre perīcula gestit.

130

Utque locum et riguā cognōscit in arbore fōrmam,

Sīc facit incertam pōmī color. Haeret, an haec sit.

Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsāre cruentum

Membra solum, retrōque pedem tulit, ōraque buxō

Pallidiōra gerēns exhorruit aequoris īnstar,

135

Quod tremit, exiguā cum summum stringitur aurā.

Sed postquam remorāta suōs cognōvit amōrēs,

Percutit indignōs clārō plangōre lacertōs,

Et laniāta comās amplexaque corpus amātum

Vulnera supplēvit lacrimīs flētumque cruōrī

140

Miscuit, et gelidīs in vultibus ōscula fīgēns,

122. cum: not a preposition.

123, 124. et tenuī strīdente, etc., and through the slender, hissing aperture sends forth long streams of water, and cleaves the air with the jets.

130. vītārit=vītāverit, perfect subjunctive in an indirect question.

131. et . . . fōrmam, and recognized the form of the blood-stained tree. The phrase with *in* is rather loosely used. Thisbe's attention is first attracted to the strange color of the mulberries. Ovid is not at all troubled by the fact that this would hardly be noticeable by moonlight.

132. haeret, an haec sit, she stands in doubt as to whether this is (the right tree).

135. gerēns, with. aequoris: construe with īnstar;—like the sea.

136. summum (aequor), its surface.

137. amōrēs, lover.

138. indignōs: not unworthy, but unworthy to receive such treatment, innocent.

- “Pyræme,” clāmāvit, “quis tē mihi cāsus adēmit?
 Pyræme, respondē; tua tē cārissima Thisbē
 Nōminat. Exaudī, vultūsque attolle iacentēs.”
 145 Ad nōmen Thisbēs oculōs iam morte gravātōs
 Pyræmus ērēxit, vīsāque recondidit illā.
 Quæ postquam vestemque suam cognōvit, et ēnse
 Vidit ebur vacuum, “tua tē manus” inquit, “amorque
 Perdidit, infēlix. Est et mihi fortis in ūnum
 150 Hoc manus, est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vīrēs.
 Persequar exstīctum, lētique miserrima dīcar
 Causa comesque tuī. Quīque ā mē morte revellī
 Heu sōlā poterās, poteris nec morte revellī.
 Hoc tamen ambōrum verbīs estōte rogātī,
 155 Ō multum miserī, meus illiusque parentēs,
 Ut quōs certus amor, quōs hōra novissima iūnxit,
 Compōnī tumulō nōn invidēātis eōdem.
 At tū, quæ rāmīs arbor miserābile corpus
 Nunc tegis ūnīus, mox es tēctūra duōrum,
 160 Signa tenē caedis, puliōsque et lūctibus aptōs

142. *mihi*: dative with a word of “taking away.”

146. *vīsā illā*: ablative absolute; *when he has seen her*.

147. *ēnse*: ablative of separation with *vacuum*.

148. *ebur*: that is, the ivory scabbard.

149, 150. As his own hand and love have brought death to her lover, so: *I, too, have a hand that's brave for this one act; I, too, have love.*

151. *exstīctum*: understand *tē*.

152. *quīque ā mē*, etc., *you who by death alone could be separated from me shall not be separated from me even by death.*

154. *hoc*: words of asking sometimes have a dependent accusative retained in the passive. This request is explained in lines 156, 157.

155. *multum* is used adverbially and has the effect of raising *miserī* to the superlative degree.

meus illiusque parentēs: the full expression would be *mī parēs illiusque parēs*.

156, 157. *ut . . . nōn invidēātis*: we should expect here *nē invidēātis*; but by Ovid's arrangement *nōn* is separated as far as possible from the *ut*, and is to be taken intimately with the verb: *be entreated of us (estōte rogātī) that you be not unwilling*, etc.

Semper habē fētūs, geminī monumenta cruōris."

Dixit, et aptātō pectus mūcrōne sub imum

Incubuit ferrō, quod adhūc ā caede tepēbat.

Vōta tamen tetigēre deōs, tetigēre parentēs.

Nam color in pōmō est, ubi permātūruit, āter;

165

Quodque rogīs superest, ūnā requiēscit in urnā.

161. *geminī monumenta cruōris*, freely, to commemorate our death together.

164. Observe the omission of a conjunction.

166. *quodque rogīs superest*, and all that was left from the funeral pyre.

3. HOW TWO PIOUS OLD PEOPLE ENTERTAINED ANGELS.

UNAWARES. (*Metamorphoses* VIII, 616-724)

The river-god Achelous has been relating some wonderful changes wrought by the hands of the gods. One of his hearers scoffs at this, and calls in question the very existence of the gods. Whereupon an old man present tells a story of Jove and Mercury to illustrate their divine power.

Obstipuēre omnēs, nec tālia dicta probārunt;

Ante omnēsque Lelex, animō mātūrus et aevō,

Sic ait: "immēnsa est finemque potentia caelī

Nōn habet, et quicquid superī voluēre, perāctum est.

Quōque minus dubitēs, tiliae contermina quercus

620

Collibus est Phrygiīs, modicō circumdata mūrō.

Haud procul hinc stāgnum est, tellūs habitābilis ōlim,

624

616. *tālia dicta*: the impious denial of the power of the gods to which Achelous has just given utterance.

617. *animō mātūrus et aevō*, freely, a man of the mature judgment which age brings.

620. *quōque . . . dubitēs*: the clause expresses the purpose of the mention of the act denoted by the verb of the main clause; (*I will state the following facts*) in order that you may have less doubt. A similar ellipsis sometimes occurs in English.

tiliae contermina quercus, etc., near by a linden stands an oak tree, with a low wall surrounding them.

624. *haud procul hinc*, not far from this spot, that is, where the two trees stand.

625 Nunc celebrēs mergīs fulicisque palūstribus undae.

These gods, traveling in disguise upon the earth, are again and again denied the hospitality which is the sacred right of every wayfarer, until they come to the humble cottage of an aged pair, Philemon and Baucis. These welcome the strangers, and supply them with the very best that their house affords.

Iuppiter hūc speciē mortālī, cumque parente
 Vēnit Atlantiadēs positīs cādūcifer ālis.
 Mille domōs adiēre, locum requiemque petentēs,
 Mille domōs clausēre serae. Tamen ūna recēpit,
 630 Parva quidem, stipulīs et cannā tēcta palūstrī;
 Sed pia Baucis anus parilīque aetāte Philēmōn
 Illā sunt annīs iūctī iuvenālibus, illā
 Cōsensuēre casā; paupertātemque fatendō
 Effēcēre levem nec inīquā mente ferendō.
 635 Nec rēfert, dominōs illīc famulōsne requīrās;
 Tōta domus duo sunt, idem pārentque iubentque.
 Ergō ubi caelicolae placitōs tetigēre penātēs,
 Submissōque humilēs intrārunt vertice postēs,
 Membra senex positō iussit relevāre sedilī,
 640 Quō superiniēcit textum rude sēdula¹ Baucis.
 Inde focō tepidum cinerem dīmōvit et ignēs
 Suscitāt hesternōs foliisque et cortice siccō
 Nūtrit et ad flammās animā prōdūcit anīlī,
 Multifidāsque facēs rāmāliaque ārida tēctō

627. Atlantiadēs: Mercury, the son of Jupiter and of Maia, who was the daughter of Atlas.

positīs ālis: because he was posing as a mortal, as was Jupiter also (*speciē mortālī*).

632. illā: to be taken with *casā*.

634. nec inīquā, etc., and by bearing it calmly.

636. tōta domus, the entire household.

pārentque iubentque: that is, they are both *fāmulī* and *dominī* at once.

638. submissō vertice: the door lintel was so low that the gods had to stoop in order to enter.

639. The old man set out a bench and bade them rest their limbs upon it.

643. flammās prōdūcit, blew it into flame.

Dētulit et minuit, parvōque admōvit aēnō. 645
 Quodque suus coniūnx riguō conlēgerat hortō,
 Truncat holus foliīs. Furcā levat ille bicornī
 Sordida terga suis nigrō pendentia tignō,
 Servātōque diū resecat dē tergore partem
 Exiguam, sectamque domat ferventibus undīs. 650
 Intereā mediās fallunt sermōnibus hōrās,
 Concutiuntque torum dē mollī flūminis ulvā 655
 Impositum lectō, spondā pedibusque salignīs.
 Vestibus hunc vēlant, quās nōn nisi tempore fēstō
 Sternere cōnsuērant; sed et haec vīlisque vetusque
 Vestis erat, lectō nōn indignanda salignō.
 Accubuēre deī. Mēnsam succincta tremēnsque 660
 Pōnit anus. Mēnsae sed erat pēs tertius impār;
 Testa parem fēcit. Quae postquam subdita clīvum
 Sustulit, aequātam mentae tersēre virentēs.
 Pōnitur hīc bicolor sincērae bāca Minervae,
 Conditaque in liquidā corna autumnālia faece, 665
 Intibaque et rādīx et lactis māssa coāctī,
 Ōvaque nōn ācrī leviter versāta favillā,
 Omnia fictilibus. Post haec caelātus eōdem

645. *minuit, she broke them into small pieces.*

646. *quod*: the antecedent is *holus* in the next line.

647, 648. *levat ille sordida terga suis, he (the old man) lifts down a piece of bacon (terga suis) blackened (by the smoke).*

654. *mediās fallunt hōrās, they while away the intervening time, that is, while the dinner is cooking.*

655. *torum, cushion.*

656. *lectō*: the Romans reclined on couches at banquets, and Ovid ascribes the same custom to the people of early times, although in fact they probably sat at the table as we do.

spondā, pedibus: ablatives of description.

659. *nōn indignanda, a good match for.*

664. *bicolor bāca Minervae*: the olive, which is green in its unripe state, and nearly black when ripe; hence the epithet *bicolor*.

667. *nōn ācrī favillā, the warm embers.*

668. *omnia fictilibus, all (being served) in earthenware dishes.*

Sistitur argentō crātēr fabricātaque fāgō
 670 Pōcula, quā cava sunt, flāventibus inlita cērīs.
 Parva mora est, epulāsque focī mīsere calentēs;
 Nec longae rūrsus referuntur vīna senectae,
 Dantque locum mēnsis paulum sēducta secundīs.
 Hīc nux, hīc mixta est rūgōsīs cārica palmīs
 675 Prūnaque et in patulīs redolentia māla canistrīs
 Et dē purpureīs conlēctae vītibus ūvae.
 Candidus in mediō favus est. Super omnia vultūs
 Accessēre bonī nec iners pauperque voluntās.

When the feast is nearly over, the old couple discover by the miraculous replenishing of the wine that their guests are gods, and beg pardon for their meager entertainment. The gods calm their fears, and bid them follow to the nearest hillside.

Intereā totiēns haustum crātēra replērī
 680 Sponte suā, per sēque vident succrēscere vīna.
 Attonitī novitāte pavent, manibusque supīnīs
 Concipiunt Baucisque precēs timidusque Philēmōn.
 Et veniam dapibus nūllisque parātibus ōrant.
 Ūnicus ānser erat, minimae custōdia villae,
 685 Quem dīs hospitibus dominī mactāre parābant.
 Ille celer pennā tardōs aetāte fatīgat,
 Ēlūditque diū, tandemque est vīsus ad ipsōs
 Cōnfūgissee deōs. Superī vetuēre necārī;
 ‘Dī’ que ‘sumus, meritāsque luet vīcīnia poenās
 690 Impia,’ dīxērunt; ‘vōbīs immūnibus huius

668, 669. *caelātus eōdem argentō crātēr*, an embossed mixing bowl of the same precious ware; that is, this vessel was also of cheap clay.

670. *quā cava sunt inlita*, coated on the inside.

672. *referuntur*: the wine was served after the first course, then removed, and then brought on again after the second course, which consisted of the boiled bacon and vegetables. It was again removed before the dessert (*mēnsae secundae*). Ovid follows the order of a Roman dinner.

678. *nec iners pauperque voluntās*, and lively and abounding good will.

683. *And they beg pardon for their poor fare and plain service.*

690, 691. *vōbīs immūnibus*, etc., it shall be granted to you to escape this destruction (that threatens your neighbors); *immūnibus* is in predicate relation to *vōbīs*. For a similar usage, see App. 276, A.

Esse malī dabitur. Modo vestra relinquite tēcta
 Ac nostrōs comitāte gradūs et in ardua montis
 Īte simul.' Pārent ambō, baculisque levātī
 Nītuntur longō vestīgīa pōnere clīvō.

Here, looking back, they discover that the whole countryside has been flooded as a judgment upon its inhospitality. Only the house of the pious old pair remains, and this, before their very eyes, is changed into a magnificent temple.

Tantum aberant summō, quantum semel ire sagitta 695
 Missa potest; flexēre oculōs, et mersa palūde
 Cētera prōspiciunt, tantum sua tēcta manēre.
 Dumque ea mīrantur, dum dēflent fāta suōrum,
 Illa vetus, dominīs etiam casa parva duōbus
 Vertitur in templum; furcās subiēre columnae, 700
 Strāmina flāvēscunt aurātaque tēcta videntur,
 Caelātaeque forēs, adopertaque marmore tellūs.

Bidden to make any request which they desire of the gods, Philemon and Baucis ask that while they live they may serve as priest and priestess in this temple, and that they may die at exactly the same time. This prayer is granted, and in the end they are both changed into trees.

Tālia tum placidō Sāturnius ēdidit ōre:
 'Dīcite, iūste senex et fēmina coniuge iūstō
 Digna, quid optētis.' Cum Baucide pauca locūtus, 705
 Iūdicium superīs aperit commūne Philēmōn:
 'Esse sacerdōtēs dēlūbraque vestra tuērī
 Poscimus; et quoniam concordēs ēgimus annōs,
 Auferat hōra duōs eadem, nec coniugis umquam
 Busta meae videam, neu sim tumulandus ab illā.' 710
 Vōta fidēs sequitur. Templī tūtēla fuēre,

697. *tantum, only.*

699. *That old cottage of theirs, the house that had been (too) small even for its two occupants.*

700. *furcās subiēre columnae, marble columns took the place of the forked posts.*

704. *coniuge: for case see App. 149, a.*

711. *vōta fidēs sequitur: that is, their prayer was answered.*

- Dōnec vīta data est. Annīs aevōque solūtī
Ante gradūs sacrōs cum stārent forte locīque
Nārrārent cāsūs, frondēre Philēmona Baucis,
715 Baucida cōspexit senior frondēre Philēmōn.
Iamque super geminōs crēscēte cacūmine vultūs,
Mūtua, dum licuit, reddēbant dicta 'valē' que
'Ō coniūnx' dīxēre simul, simul abdita tēxit
Ōra frutex. Ostendit adhūc Cībyreius illīc
720 Incola dē geminō vicīnōs corpore truncōs.
'Cūra piī dīs sunt, et quī coluēre coluntur.'"

712. annīs aevōque solūtī, *enfeebled by extreme age.*

717. mūtua reddēbant dicta, *they spoke to each other.*

EXERCISES IN PROSE COMPOSITION

BASED ON PARTS I AND III

LESSON I

(1-3)

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—App. 95, *a*; A. 284, 393, *a*; B. 168, 2; H. 393, 8; H.-B. 319, II.

ABLATIVE OF TIME.—App. 152; A. 423; B. 230, 231; H. 486; H.-B. 439.

1. In that year, Romulus founded a city on the Palatine Hill.
2. This city was called Rome. 3. Tullus Hostilius was chosen king. 4. We shall conquer the enemy (*hostēs*) in the third year of the war. 5. Romulus and his people were considered (*putāre*) brigands. 6. These men were named senators on account of their age. 7. On the same day, a storm suddenly arose.

LESSON II

(4-7)

APPOSITION.—App. 95, *b*; A. 281, 282; B. 169, 1, 2; H. 393; H.-B. 319, I.

AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—App. 173; A. 305; B. 250; H. 396; H.-B. 322.

1. Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome, defeated the Albans. 2. The sons of Ancus, the fourth king of Rome, killed Tarquinius Priscus. 3. The Roman games which Tarquinius instituted continue to our time. 4. The hills which Servius Tullius added to the city were the Quirinal, the Viminal, and the Esquiline. 5. The king fled from Rome in the twenty-fourth year of his reign. 6. Tarquinius Superbus, whose wife was the daughter of Servius Tullius, was the last king of Rome. 7. I attacked Ardea in the last year of my reign. 8. I lost my throne (*imperium*) and I fled from the city with my children.

LESSON III

(8-11)

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH.—App. 131, *a*; A. 426, 2, 427; B. 181, 1, 2; H. 418, 419; H.-B. 385, *a*, *b*.

INDIRECT OBJECT.—App. 113; A. 362; B. 187; H. 424; H.-B. 365.

1. Porsenna and his army came to Rome. 2. The Romans gave Collatinus his inheritance and he withdrew (*migrāre*) from the city. 3. The Romans gave authority (*imperium*) to two consuls. 4. The terror was great because the Etruscans were coming to Rome. 5. Tarquinius waged war with Titus Larcus, the First Dictator. 6. The army which the dictator had collected was large. 7. Brutus and Collatinus were consuls in the same year. 8. Horatius saved (*cōservāre*) Rome on that day.

LESSON IV

(12-14)

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.—App. 150; A. 419, 420; B. 227; H. 489; H.-B. 421.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH.—App. 151; A. 426, 3; B. 228; H. 483; H.-B. 433.

(Translate the subordinate clauses in 1, 2, 3, 4, by ablatives absolute.)

1. When the commands of the senate had been heard, Cincinnatus set out for Rome. 2. After the enemy are defeated, the dictator will return to his farm. 3. When the gold had been received, we withdrew, but we were defeated by Camillus. 4. Since the army had been surrounded, there was great fear in the city. 5. Camillus, who had been in exile in a neighboring state, defeated the Gauls. 6. The Romans, who could not defend the city, gave gold to the Gauls. 7. The army defeated the enemy and returned to Rome. 8. Romulus is called the founder of Rome, and Camillus will be called a second Romulus.

LESSON V
(15-16)

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—App. 137; A. 405; B. 216; H. 468; H.-B. 406, 1.

GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE.—App. 101; A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5; H.-B. 346.

1. The Samnites were defeated by Fabius Maximus, and their towns were captured. 2. The spies who had been captured by the Romans were led through the camp. 3. Part of our army was sent under the yoke. 4. Many of the captives were sent to Rome by Pyrrhus. 5. After Pyrrhus was wounded (*abl. abs.*), the army of the enemy fled. 6. The prisoners, who were in the camp of Pyrrhus, were treated with the greatest honor. 7. The king was willing (*velle*) to give Fabricius a fourth part of his kingdom. 8. The physician of Pyrrhus, the king, came to the camp at night. 9. I was sent to Rome, and I saw a country (*patria*) of kings.

LESSON VI
(17-20)

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—App. 140; A. 413; B. 222; H. 473, 1; H.-B. 418-420.

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.—App. 122; A. 384; B. 192; H. 434; H.-B. 362.

1. The consul crossed to Africa with a large army and defeated the Africans. 2. This victory was pleasing to the Romans, and the consuls celebrated a triumph (*triumphāre*). 3. We captured many men, together with (*ūnā cum*) the boats in that battle. 4. The Africans, to whom these terms of peace were not pleasing, sought help from the Lacedaemonians. 5. Catulus had set out for Sicily with large forces. 6. Sardinia was laid waste by the Romans and many prisoners were carried off (*abdūcere*). 7. Many thousand prisoners (*genitive*) will be given back, because the Carthaginians have no hope of victory. 8. After losing many boats (*abl. abs.*) the enemy withdrew. 9. We gave gold to the masters of the slaves and the prisoners were sent back to Carthage.

LESSON VII

(21-23)

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS.—App. 116; A. 370; B. 187, III; H. 429; H.-B. 376.

LOCATIVE.—App. 151, *a*; A. 427, 3; B. 232; H. 483, 484; H.-B. 449.

1. Hannibal made war on Saguntum, a city of Spain. 2. The Romans declared war on Hannibal because the people of Saguntum were their allies. 3. Scipio met the army of the Carthaginians, but he was defeated. 4. Eight prisoners were unwilling to remain at Rome. 5. Many thousands perished at Saguntum, and many were wounded. 6. You have attacked a city which is friendly to us. 7. Scipio was sent into Spain with an army and Sempronius set out for Sicily. 8. When the enemy had been routed, we returned to camp. 9. The Carthaginians wished to remain in Sicily. 10. The envoys came to Rome the same year.

LESSON VIII

(24-27)

Cum CLAUSE OF SITUATION.—App. 242; A. 546; B. 288, 1, *B*; H. 600, II; H.-B. 524.

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.—App. 115; A. 367; B. 187, II; H. 426; H.-B. 362.

1. When Hannibal came into Italy, many states gave themselves up to him. 2. This peace displeased Hannibal, but he gave back the prisoners. 3. These terms will not displease the Romans, and the envoys will return to Rome. 4. When we had begun to lose confidence (*diffidere*) regarding the outcome of the war, we summoned the Numidians. 5. The Romans captured the envoys when they were returning to Africa. 6. Scipio, who had waged this war in Africa, was killed at Rome. 7. Famea will command (*praeesse*) the cavalry which the Carthaginians have sent. 8. After the destruction of Carthage (*abl. abs.*), there was peace in Italy. 9. Scipio was called Africanus because he had conquered the Africans. 10. The war came to an end (*finem accipere*) in the nineteenth year.

LESSON IX

(28-32)

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *ut*.—App. 225, *a*, 3; A. 531; B. 282; H. 568; H.-B. 502, 2.

TENSE USE WITH *dum*, "while."—App. 234, *a*; A. 556; B. 293, I; H. 604, 1; H.-B. 559.

1. Sulla returned to Italy in order that he might wage war against the consuls. 2. While Marius was renewing the war in Italy, Sulla conquered the enemies of the Roman people in Asia. 3. While the army was returning from Greece, many fled from the city. 4. Mithridates asked for peace in order that he might not (*nē*) lose his kingdom. 5. We waged war against the pirates in order that navigation might be safe. 6. When Marius and Cinna had entered Rome, they killed many ex-consuls. 7. We shall assign (*dēferō*) this war to Pompey, who has conquered the pirates. 8. The king has been defeated by Sulla, and he will send envoys. 9. After the city had been captured (*not a clause*) there was a triumph at Rome. 10. The consul will enter Rome with an army and will proscribe many very prominent men (*nōbilēs*).

LESSON X

(33-36)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—App. 266, 269; A. 580ff.; B. 314ff.; H. 642, 643; H.-B. 534-538.

1. Eutropius says that Catiline was driven from the city by Cicero. 2. The Romans heard that the army of the enemy had been defeated by the other consul. 3. We know that Caesar defeated the Helvetians. 4. Pompey said that he would return to Rome. 5. Cicero said that the associates of Catiline wished to ruin (*dēlēre*) the country. 6. I believe that Caesar is returning to the city because he has been ordered to disband (*dīmittere*) his army. 7. He has come in order to be consul. 8. The camp was plundered while the army was fleeing. 9. When Caesar saw the head of Pompey, he shed tears. 10. The army escaped because the enemy did not pursue (*sequī*) on that day.

LESSON XI

(37-40)

CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH *ut*.—App. 226; A. 537; B. 284, 1; H. 570; H.-B. 521, 2.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—App. 262; A. 574; B. 300; H. 649, II; H.-B. 537.

1. Augustus so conducted the government (*imperium*) that there was peace at Rome. 2. We ask (*quaerere*) why you do not come to the senate house. 3. The senate knew who were foremost (*praecipuus*) among the conspirators. 4. The army of the enemy was so great that we fled. 5. Eutropius says that Augustus was fortunate in war and self-controlled in peace. 6. We have heard that Brutus was a friend of Caesar. 7. When Antony and Augustus had defeated the army of the senate, they divided the state between them. 8. The consul set out in order to wage war in Spain. 9. The Romans thought Cleopatra wished to reign in the city. 10. I do not know who is the leader of the army.

LESSON XII

(Aristides, Hamilcar)

REVIEW OF PREPOSITIONS.—App. 153-155; A. 220; B. 141-143; H. 420, 490; H.-B. 405, 418, 433.

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES.—App. 213; A. 332; B. 162, 2; H. 378; H.-B. 231, 1.

1. Aristides asked the man (from the man) what he was writing. 2. Do you not wish to remain in your native country? 3. I realize (*intellegere*) that you have been stirred up by my enemies. 4. The Lacedaemonians were not chosen leaders against the barbarians, were they? 5. Do you know what the man replied? 6. Hamilcar was sent into Sicily with an army. 7. We asked help from the Romans because our soldiers had revolted. 8. The general sent these soldiers in order that the camp might be defended. 9. Hamilcar did not know that Carthage was in so great danger. 10. Since the war has been renewed (*abl. abs.*), I shall not withdraw from Sicily.

LESSON XIII
(Hannibal)

REVIEW OF *eō* AND *possum*.—App. 84, 80; A. 203, 197, *b*; B. 132, 126; H. 297, 291; H.-B. 194, 191.

1. Hannibal could have defeated the Romans on that day.
2. The enemy will not be able to make war on Italy without a larger army.
3. I have ordered the soldiers to go to the camp.
4. The envoys will go to Rome, in order to ask for (*petere*) peace.
5. The Romans thought that an army could not cross the Alps.
6. I ask who can doubt this.
7. Hannibal so maintained (*cōservāre*) this hatred that he could not be a friend to the Romans.
8. Do you wish to set out to the camp with me?
9. Did he not leave his brother in Spain with an army when he set out for Italy?
10. I shall so keep this oath that I shall always be an enemy of Rome.

LESSON XIV
(Hannibal)

REVIEW OF *ferō* AND *fīō*.—App. 81, 83; A. 200, 204; B. 129, 131; H. 294, 296; H.-B. 193, 195.

1. Quintus Fabius, the dictator, will bring us aid.
2. The consuls had been defeated, and the enemy were becoming more powerful.
3. Hannibal will be recalled and made general.
4. Because no one could bring me aid, I fled from the city.
5. Scipio waged war with Hannibal in Africa.
6. Hannibal was in charge of (*praeesse*) the fleet which Antiochus sent.
7. I shall not go to Italy to be killed (see Lesson IX) by the Romans.
8. While the others were defending themselves, the king fled.
9. Hannibal could not be captured alive (*vīvus*).
10. You can judge which (*uter*) was the braver general.

LESSON XV
(Cato)

REVIEW OF *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.—App. 82; A. 199; B. 130; H. 295; H.-B. 192

1. Cato wished to have Valerius Flaccus as a colleague.
2. The tribune is unwilling to return to the camp.
3. The praetor prefers to go to Spain.
4. Helvius will be made aedile, and you will be made consul.
5. Quintus Ennius was called a great poet by Cicero.
6. Scipio wishes to drive me from the province and to succeed me.
7. Cato wrote histories when he was an old man.
8. Can you not name the leaders of these wars?
9. Scipio said that he preferred to remain in the city.
10. He made so great progress that he became a great orator.
11. No one knows who wrote these books.

WORD FORMATION

I. NOUNS

A. Nouns from Verbs

1. The suffix **-tor** (**-sor**) forms nouns denoting the agent or doer of the act.

dictātor 68,* dēfēnsor 69, conditor 74, cēnsor 78, explōrātor 80, victor 89, imperātor 90, dīvisor 110, ōrātor 119, interfector 130, mercātor 137, dēprecātor 153, praetor 177, speculātor 207, gubernātor 248, auctor 261, quaestor 289, pābulātor 335, inventor 349, dēsertor 354, prōditor 354, vēnātor 357, excubitor 362, doctor 397, cultor 404, rēctor 405.

Agency is expressed in English by nouns in **-or**, **-tor**, and **-er**, *e.g.*, *surveyor*, *speculator*, *defender*.

2. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō** (**-siō**), **-tus** (**-sus**),† **-tūra** (**-sūra**), and often **-ium** form abstract nouns denoting an act or the result of an act.

(a) nātiō 49, supputātiō 52, sēditiō 69, trepidātiō 70, obsidiō 72, expeditiō 73, occāsiō 76, admīrātiō 82, condiciō 82, dēditiō 89, permūtātiō 90, religiō 101, nāvigātiō 117, legiō 120, contentiō 126, coniūrātiō 139, profectiō 142, lēgātiō 142, ōrātiō 143, dictiō 144, suspīciō 145, reditiō 146, mūnitiō 152, largitiō 153, possessiō 156, interneciō 161, dubitātiō 161, commūtātiō 163, populātiō 165, offēnsiō 174, exīstimātiō 175, ratiō 187, opīniō 193, oppugnātiō 199, dēfēnsiō 201, statīō 217, cohortātiō 226, excursiō 322, māchinātiō 232, ēruptiō 236, significātiō 236, sectiō 237, diciō 237, supplicātiō 238, rebelliō 251, contemptiō 261, pollicitātiō 262, cūctātiō 263, cōfirmātiō 263, dēfatīgātiō 264, exercitātiō 264, continuātiō 274, vēnātiō 276, auditiō 281, aquātiō 287, simulātiō 289, occupātiō 292, perturbātiō 309, subductiō 316, incursiō 317, percontātiō 332, satisfactiō 343, contagiō 347, aestimātiō 351, quaestiō 351, cognātiō 353, dissēnsiō 353, cōnsēnsiō 369, grātulātiō 372, dīmicātiō 378, dēspērātiō 385, obtestātiō 386, obtrectātiō 386.

This suffix appears in English as **-(t)ion**, *e.g.*, *nation*, *occasion*, *religion*.

(b) cēnsus 58, exercitus 62, impetus 62, cōnsēnsus 70, status 83, cursus 85, complexus 90, cāsus 91, adventus 96, ēventus 104, equitātus 109, circuitus 121, successus 122, cultus 137, occāsus 139, concursus 152, cōnātus 152, cōnspectus 156, conventus 169, sūmptus 170, ascēnsus 176, ictus 181, spīritus 195, commeātus 198, dēiectus 203, ūsus 205, strepitus 207, nātus

* The number indicates the page where the word first occurs.

† Genitive **-tūs** (**-sūs**).

210, discessus 211, aditus 212, incursus 219, prōspectus 222, fremitus 225, obitus 231, contemptus 233, cruciātus 234, exitus 248, dēcessus 254, flūctus 254, congressus 255, pulsus 256, dēspectus 259, interventus 260, vestītus 277, captus 279, trāiectus 299, mōtus 303, nūtus 303, reditus 309, receptus 312, ēgressus 325, introitus 327, trānsmisus 331, aspectus 336, quaestus 350, vīctus 353, versus 355, prōventus 373, ululātus 374, trānsitus 388, vīsus 390, dēlēctus 391, interitus 392, rīsus 395, hortātus 397, prōgressus 399, ortus 406, gradus 407, iactus 409, anhēlitus 410, amictus 412, morsus 412, flātus 413, lūctus 414, parātus 418.

The English derivatives of these words appear either unchanged or without the inflectional ending (-us), *e.g.*, *consensus*, *congress*.

(c) nātūra 140, sepultūra 185, armātūra 205, statūra 233, cultūra 261, sectūra 266, iūctūra 295, mēnsūra 332, iactūra 345, mercātūra 350, commissūra 365.

This suffix appears in English as -ure, *e.g.*, *nature*.

(d) imperium 47, excidium 48, comitium 64, auxilium 83, taedium 102, conloquium 107, stīpendium 122, initium 132, indicium 144, iūdicium 144, aedificium 145, maleficio 149, beneficium 153, studium 173, subsidium 200, officium 252, nāvīgium 258, vestīgium 278, perfugium 315, incendium 337, odium 342, silentium 362, flāgitium 384, naufrāgium 392.

NOTE. This list contains only the words of which the connection with the verb is more obvious.

These words appear in English unchanged or with the ending -y or -e, *e.g.*, *tedium*, *colloquy*, *vestige*.

3. The suffixes -men and -mentum form nouns denoting an act or the result of an act.

(a) fulmen 54, flūmen 73, certāmen 84, agmen 164, hortāmen 402, vėlāmen 411, forāmen 413, strāmen 419.

English derivatives are rare and generally technical, *e.g.*, *foramen*.

(b) ōrnāmentum 111, testāmentum 129, iūmentum 141, impedīmentum 180, tormentum 203, mūnīmentum 216, tegimentum 221, armāmentum 258, dētrīmentum 339, mōmentum 377, fundāmentum 392, alimentum 402, documentum 409, monumentum 415.

This suffix appears in English as -ment, *e.g.*, *ornament*, *testament*.

4. The suffix -or forms abstract nouns which usually denote a physical or mental state.

terror 62, pavor 70, sūdor 71, favor 76, dolor 141, amor 175, timor 178, furor 194, clāmor 208, error 393, fragor 401, rigor 408, plangor 413.

This suffix is retained in the English derivatives, *e.g.*, *error*.

B. Nouns from Adjectives

1. The suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tās*, *-tūdō*, form abstract nouns which usually denote quality or condition.

(a) *memoria* 56, *audācia* 63, *victōria* 68, *impatientia* 98, *perfidia* 107, *amīcitia* 107, *reverentia* 110, *angustiae* 152, *grātia* 153, *vigilia* 157, *praesentia* 165, *potentia* 170, *iūstitia* 173, *temperantia* 173, *inopia* 185, *prūdentia* 196, *clēmentia* 211, *misericordia* 230, *īnscientia* 249, *dīligentia* 265, *dēmentia* 288, *imprūdentia* 307, *āmentia* 323, *inimīcitia* 345, *dūritia* 353, *īnfāmia* 354, *dēsidia* 354, *notitia* 355, *patientia* 355, *mollitia* 370, *stultitia* 371, *cōstantia* 371, *invidia* 372, *laetitia* 372, *ēloquentia* 380, *innocentia* 380, *abstinentia* 380, *intemperantia* 382, *ferōcia* 384, *avāritia* 393, *licentia* 404, *sollertia* 408, *vīcīnia* 409, *blanditia* 410.

The suffix *-ia* regularly appears in English as *-y*, *-tia* as *-ce*, or *-cy*, e.g., *memory*, *justice*, *constancy*.

(b) *potestās* 65, *diūturnitās* 65, *dignitās* 67, *vēlōcitās* 72, *necessitās* 77, *honestās* 85, *calliditās* 82, *fēlicitās* 118, *celeritās* 118, *dubietās* 123, *nōbilitās* 124, *libertās* 128, *cupiditās* 131, *hūmānitās* 137, *facultās* 150, *lēnitās* 157, *impūnitās* 163, *liberālitās* 169, *adfīnitās* 171, *bonitās* 187, *mōbilitās* 191, *levitās* 191, *fertilitās* 194, *propinquitās* 195, *indignitās* 211, *acclīvitās* 216, *brevitās* 219, *difficultās* 219, *exiguitās* 221, *inīquitās* 222, *paucitās* 241, *opportūnitās* 254, *tranquillitās* 259, *gravitās* 279, *īnfirmatās* 280, *rapiditās* 293, *ūtilitās* 298, *alacritās* 303, *stabilitās* 312, *siccitās* 315, *humilitās* 316, *aequitās* 350, *egestās* 355, *varietās* 357, *crūdēlitās* 370, *imbēcillitās* 371, *dēclīvitās* 377, *societās* 382, *paupertās* 383, *vetustās* 408, *novitās* 418.

This suffix appears in English as *-ty*, e.g., *velocity*.

(c) *multitūdō* 49, *cōsuētūdō* 52, *fortitūdō* 141, *longitūdō* 141, *lātītūdō* 141, *altitūdō* 151, *magnitūdō* 209, *mānsuētūdō* 212, *lassitūdō* 222, *turpitūdō* 229, *crassitūdō* 255, *firmitūdō* 256, *amplitūdō* 279, *sōlitūdō* 297, *similitūdō* 366, *necessitūdō* 398.

This suffix appears in English as *-tude*, e.g., *multitude*.

II. VERBS**A. Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominative Verbs)****FIRST CONJUGATION**

nōminō 49, *rēgnō* 51, *superō* 53, *ampliō* 53, *duplicō* 56, *triumphō* 57, *ordinō* 58, *armō* 64, *vindicō* 68, *nūntiō* 70, *liberō* 72, *labōrō* 74, *exsulō* 74, *pugnō* 76, *damnō* 76, *vāstō* 81, *vulnerō* 84, *fugō* 84, *turbō* 106, *militō* 109, *īfestō* 117, *necō* 120, *aequō* 133, *vagor* 140, *bellō* 141, *arbitror* 141, *probō*

143, conciliō 143, spērō 144, pācō 147, mātūrō 149, temperō 150, hiemō 154, iūdicō 157, cūrō 159, glōrior 163, accūsō 167, nūdō 200, moror 201, perīclitor 202, praedor 215, exanimō 222, proelior 223, laxō 227, tardō 227, dominor 234, simulō 280, frūmentor 281, praecipitō 291, auxilior 308, onerō 316, spoliō 323, rēmigō 326, pābulor 335, iūrō 345, interpretor 346, dūrō 357, firmō 358, māterior 365, locuplētō 386, pūblicō 392, rōrō 401, lassō 404, stāgnō 404, fōrmō 407, precor 407, vėlō 407, aestuō 409, siccō 410, cruentō 412, laniō 412, vitiō 413, gravō 414, aptō 415, truncō 417, levō 417, indignor 417, comitō 419.

SECOND CONJUGATION

flāveō 418, frondeō 420.

THIRD CONJUGATION

cōstituō 48, ingredior 72, tribuō 93, molō 146.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

finiō 73, serviō 91, saeviō 118, potior 140, largior 170, mūniō 180, partior 251, stabiliō 365, molliō 408.

Most English derivatives are verbs formed from the perfect participle, *e.g.*, *nominate*, *duplicate*, etc.; others are formed from the present stem, sometimes irregularly, *e.g.*, *admire*, *reign*, etc.; see the list of English derivatives on p. 435.

B. Verbs from Other Verbs

1. Frequentative verbs denote repeated or intensive action. The endings are -tō (-sō), -itō, and sometimes -titō (double frequentatives).

tractō 80, clāmitō 114, spectō 139, incitō 145, temptō 162, vexō 162, iactō 169, occultō 186, versō 191, sustentō 199, dēcertō 206, increpitō 213, exagitō 232, excitō 251, adflīctō 253, cōnsector 260, cōgitō 270, ventitō 279, prōpulsō 348, cōsultō 349, concitō 370, agitō 384, pulsō 403, volūtō 408, captō 410, habitō 412, suscitō 417.

English derivatives are formed in the same way as those in the preceding section, *e.g.*, *agitate*, *vex*, etc.

2. Inceptive verbs denote the beginning of an act. The ending is -scō.*

proficīscor 72, poscō 79, expavēscō 80, cognōscō 82, cōnscīscō 102, dēlitīscō 114, adscīscō 146, ulcīscor 158, reminīscor 160, oblīvīscor 162, cōnsuēscō 163, crēscō 175, rescīscō 186, inveterāscō 191, relanguēscō 213, nāscor 216, extimēscō 256, remollēscō 278, nancīscor 302, exārdēscō 327,

*For convenience, all the forms in -scō are listed here. In some cases the suffix is attached to the root, *e.g.*, *nāscor*, *nōscō*, etc.; others of these verbs are formed from adjectives or nouns, *e.g.*, *mātūrēscō*, *quiēscō*.

ēdiscō 346, adolēscō 349, adsuēscō 358, obstipēscō 408, compescō 411, expallēscō 412, exhorrēscō 413, permātūrēscō 415, requiēscō 415, flāvēscō 419.

A few English derivatives are found, *e.g.*, *decrease*, *increase*, *acquiesce*, etc.

C. Compound Verbs

1. **ā-**, **ab-**, **-abs-** (15),* *from, away, off*; abstineō 94, absum 53, abstergeō 71.

2. **ad-** (57), *to, towards*, accurrō 177; *at, near*, adsum 166; *against*, adorior 160.

3. **ante-** (4), *before, in front of*, literal and figurative, antecēdō 72, antepōnō 301.

4. **circum-** (13), *around*, literal and figurative, circumveniō 183 and 344.

5. **con-** (98), *together*, conveniō 126, conclāmō 262; *intensive*, commoveō 191 (of one person); *thoroughly*, cōficiō 125.

6. **dē-** (71), *off, down from, away*, dēmigrō 62, dēsiliō 64; *denoting cessation of the action expressed by the verb*, dēserō 105, dēspērō 103; *to the uttermost, out*, dēcertō 206; *with an unfavorable significance*, dēcipiō 88.

7. **dī-**, **dis-** (32), *apart, in different directions*, diffugiō 97; *at intervals*, dispōnō 151; *between, among*, dīligō 351; *with negative force*, diffīdō 104, displiceō 83; *intensive*, dīruō 111.

8. **ē-**, **ex-** (75), *out, forth*, expellō 66; *out of a former state*, effēminō 137; *thoroughly, completely*, ēdoceō 262, ēdiscō 348.

9. **in-** (69), *in, on*, insum 105, incolō 136, innītor 228; *into, toward, against*, indūcō 78, inferō 94; *with an unfavorable significance*, invideō 234.

10. **inter-** (16), *between, off*, interrumpō 63, interclūdō 180; *at intervals*, intericiō 247, 373; *down to destruction*, intereō 348.

11. **ob-** (32), *against*, oppugnō 60; *down*, occīdō 57; *intensive*, obstupefaciō 63.

12. **per-** (33), *through*, perfringō 181; *intensive, thoroughly*, permoveō 141.

13. **prae-** (19), *before*, literal and figurative, praecēdō 112 and 137; *over*, praesum 109.

14. **prō-** (33), *forward*, prōcēdō 71; *forth*, prōferō 71; *for*, prōsum 51.

15. **sub-** (36), *down*, subigō 58; *up from beneath*, succēdō 181; *after*, succēdō 53; *close*, subsum 183; *to the help of*, subveniō 116.

16. **trāns-** (13), *across*, trānseō 50; *over*, trādō 95; *through*, trānsfīgō 181.

*The figures in parentheses indicate the number of compound verbs occurring in this book formed with this prefix.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

I. FROM ADJECTIVES*

A. From Adjectives which are Derived from Nouns

1. The suffixes **-cus**, **-icus**, **-ānus**, **-īnus**, **-īlis**, **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ārius** form adjectives meaning *belonging to, connected with*, etc.

(a) From **-cus**, **-icus** (Eng. *-ic*): Britannic, Gallic, Germanic, Italic, Punic, tyrannic.

(b) From **-ānus** (Eng. *-an*, *-ane*): African, German, human, humane, meridian, Roman, veteran.

(c) From **-īnus** (Eng. *-in*, *-ine*): divine, Aventine, Esquiline, Latin, Palatine, Tarentine, transmarine, Sabine, Saguntine.

(d) From **-īlis** (Eng. *-il*, *-ile*): civil, hostile, juvenile, puerile, servile; also humble.

(e) From **-ālis** (Eng. *-al*): equal, autumnal, immortal, mortal, mural, naval, liberal, pedal, Quirinal, triumphal, vestal, Viminal.

(f) From **-āris** (Eng. *-ar*): consular, familiar, singular.

(g) From **-ārius** (Eng. *-ary*): estuary, legionary, mercenary, necessary.

2. The suffix **-ōsus** (Eng. *-ose*, *-ous*) forms adjectives denoting fulness. bellicose, copious, seditious, sumptuous.

B. From Adjectives which are Derived from Verbs

1. The suffixes **-ilis** (Eng. *-il*, *-ile*) and **-ibilis** (Eng. *-ble*) form adjectives denoting capacity or ability (generally passive in sense).

fertile, habitable, horrible, incredible, instable, mobile, noble, probable, reparable.

2. The suffix **-idus** (Eng. *-id*) forms adjectives denoting a state.

arid, candid, horrid, frigid, liquid, languid, timid, placid, pallid, tepid, sordid, valid.

* Additional adjectives for which no English derivative is given are: *Āfricus*, *Alpicus*, *bellicus*, *domesticus*, *modicus*, *nauticus*, *Nervicus*, *Nōricus*, *pūblicus*, *Veneticus*; *Aquītānus*, *Cassīānus*, *cotidiānus*, *montānus*, *oppidānus*; *Clūsīnus*, *vicīnus*; *aedilis*, *anilis*, *librilis*; *sēsquipedālis*; *auxiliāris*, *militāris*; *aerārius*, *cibārius*, *classiārius*, *essedārius*, *frūmentārius*, *nefārius*, *onerārius*, *sagittārius*, *stīpendiārius*, *tabellārius*; *pruinōsus*; *rūgōsus*; *fictilis*, *inūtilis*, *lacrimābilis*; *cupidus*, *pavidus*.

Additional suffixes are: *-timus*, *finitimus*, *lēgitimus*, *maritimus*; *-tus*, *honestus*, *iūstus*, *rōbustus*, *vetustus*; *-ivus*, *captivus*, *fugitivus*, *nātivus*.

3. Adjectives and participles in *-ēns* (sometimes used as substantives) furnish many derivatives in *-ent* (adjectives and nouns).

absent, confluent, continent, client, fervent, frequent, impatient, imprudent, innocent, insolent, orient, parent, patent, potent, present, serpent, silent.

C. From Comparatives

exterior, inferior, interior, junior, major, posterior, prior, senior, superior, ulterior.

II. FROM VERBS

1. Many English verbs are derived, directly or indirectly* from the participial stem of a Latin verb.

(a) English verbs derived from Latin words in this book which are represented by one derivative:

abdicate, accelerate, accommodate, arbitrate, commemorate, communicate, complete, create, cremate, debilitate, delete, deliberate, demonstrate, depopulate, deprecate, derogate, designate, desolate, devote, disperse, dissipate, dominate, duplicate, ejaculate, enumerate, erect, estimate, exhaust, expatiate, extort, frustrate, immolate, implicate, inflate, insinuate, instruct, lapse, liberate, mediate, migrate, militate, moderate, narrate, navigate, nominate, placate, precipitate, predicate, possess, postulate, profess, prohibit, promote, prostrate, pulsate, recuperate, refract, relate, separate, stagnate, tolerate, use, vacate, vindicate, vitiate.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

agitō: agitate, cogitate; **agō**: exact, transact; **capiō**: accept, except, intercept; **claudō**: close, disclose; **dīcō**: contradict, interdict; **dūcō**: abduct, conduct, deduct; **faciō**: affect, effect, i. e. infect, perfect; **figō**: fix, affix, prefix, transfix; **flīgō**: afflict, conflict; **fundō**: fuse, confuse, diffuse, infuse; **gradior**: progress, transgress; **gregō**: congregate, segregate; **iaciō**: eject, interject, object, project, reject, subject; **legō**: collect, elect, neglect; **mittō**: dismiss, promise; **premō**: press, oppress, repress; **rumpō**: corrupt, erupt, interrupt; **sacrō**: consecrate, execrate; **sequor**: execute, persecute;

* Only about half the words in this list are formed from the Latin participle directly; a large number are formed from English nouns (about 30), adjectives (13) and participles (15) which are formed from the Latin participle; a smaller number come from frequentative forms; a few are derived from compounds made in French (*e.g.*, *disclose*, *displease*, *remove*) and a few are English compounds (*e.g.*, *dismiss*, *repress*). The purpose of this section is not to teach English etymology but to illustrate the indebtedness of English to Latin. It makes little difference, therefore, that we derive *object* and *reject* from *obiectare* and *reiectare*; *subject* from the English adjective, and *interject* and *project* from the English nouns, while *eject* and *inject* are derived directly from the Latin participle.

serō: desert, insert; **simulō**: simulate, dissimulate; **speciō**: expect, prospect, respect; **statuō**: constitute, institute; **trahō**: detract, extract, retract; **tribuō**: attribute, distribute; **veniō**: circumvent, invent.

2. The following verbs are derived from the present stem of the Latin verb.

(a) English verbs derived from Latin words which are represented by one derivative:

acquiesce, add, adhere, admire, adopt, adore, commute, compare, condone, confide, confirm, consider, console, consume, condemn, declare, define, derive, discern, dispute, divide, elude, examine, excel, extrude, form, ignore, impede, impend, infest, laud, lave, merge, note, persevere, persuade, perturb, postpone, prepare, provide, purge, recline, relax, require, rescind, respond, retard, serve, solicit, subside, succumb, surge, temper, tempt, urge, vend, verge.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

cēdō: cede, accede, concede, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, succeed; **citō**: excite, incite; **claudō**: conclude, exclude, include, preclude; **cūrō**: cure, procure; **currō**: concur, occur; **dūcō**: adduce, conduce, educe, induce, introduce, produce, reduce, seduce, traduce; **fendō**: defend, offend; **ferō**: confer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, transfer; **mandō**: command, commend, remand; **mittō**: admit, commit, demit, emit, intermit, manumit, omit, permit, pretermitt, remit, submit; **moveō**: move, remove; **pellō**: compel, expel, impel, propel, repel; **plōrō**: deplore, explore, implore; **portō**: comport, deport, export, import, report, support, transport; **prehendō**: comprehend, reprehend; **scandō**: descend, transcend; **scribō**: prescribe, proscribe; **sedeō**: reside, supersede; **servō**: conserve, observe, reserve; **sistō**: assist, consist, desist, exist, insist, resist, subsist; **solvō**: solve, resolve; **spīrō**: conspire, inspire; **tendō**: tend, contend, intend; **vādō**: evade, invade; **veniō**: convene, intervene, supervene; **vertō**: advert, animadvert, avert, convert, pervert, revert.

3. The following are derived from the present stem of Latin words, with slight changes in form:

(a) Latin words represented by one derivative:

administer, appear, conceal, decrease, desire, despair, despise, deter, extinguish, glory, labor, occupy, redeem, relinquish, remain, veil, vex.

(b) Latin words represented by two or more derivatives:

capiō: conceive, deceive, perceive, receive; **faciō**: amplify, sacrifice, satisfy, signify, suffice; **iungō**: conjoin, enjoin; **nūntiō**: denounce, pronounce, renounce; **placeō**: please, displease; **spoliō**: spoil, despoil; **teneō**: abstain, contain, detain, obtain, pertain, retain, sustain; **vocō**: convoke, evoke, revoke.

APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of *Belium Helveticum* (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
 - a. Before another vowel, or *h*; as *eō*, *nihil*.
 - b. Before *nd* and *nt*; as *laudandus*, *laudant*¹.
 - c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than *s*; as *laudem*, *laudat*.
2. A vowel is long:
 - a. Before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*; as *inferō*, *cōsul*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*.
 - b. When it results from contraction; as *isset*, for *iisset*.
3. A vowel is usually long:
 - a. In monosyllables not ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, or *t*; as *mē*, *hīc*, but *ab*, *ad*.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

a = <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i>	ā = <i>ah!</i>
e = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>	ē = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>
i = <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>	ī = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>
o = <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> (not as in <i>got</i>)	ō = <i>oh!</i>
u = <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>	ū = <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>
y = French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i> ; it rarely occurs.	

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:
 - ae** = *ai* in *aisle*
 - oe** = *oi* in *oil*
 - au** = *ow* in *how*

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-ee*. The diphthong appears in *cui, huic, cuius, and huius*.

a. When the consonant *i* (= *j*) stands between two vowels, as in *maior, eius, Troia, and cuius*, though *i* was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, *maior, eiuis, Troia, and cuiuis*. The second *i* is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first *i* makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

ai = *ai* in *aisle*

ei = *ey* in *they*

oi = *oi* in *oil*

ui as indicated above.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, go*

i (consonant, sometimes printed *j*) = *y* in *yet*

n before **c, g, q,** and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

r pronounced distinctly

s as in *this*, never as in *these*

t as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

v = *w*

x = *ks*

ch, ph, th = *c, p, t*

bs, bt = *ps, pt*

qu = *qu* in *quart*

ngu = *ngu* in *anguish*

su = *sw* in *suādeō, suāvis, suēscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in *mittō, annus*, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk, pen-knife*. We sound only one consonant in *ditty, penny*.

7. *i* is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of *iaciō*, the form *iciō* was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant *i* was pronounced, though not written, before vowel *i*; as *dēiciō*, pronounced as if *dēiiciō*; *abiciō*, as if *abiiciō*.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph*, or *th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as *pat-ris*, *ag-rī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-trī*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, a).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: *est* is *est*, not *ĕst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, a), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then *pat-ris*, *ag-rī* (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nis*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *dīvī' sa*, *appel' lō*, *in' colunt*.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as *Gallia'que*.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-i
III.	{ consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	e	-ēi or -ei

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, f., tongue, language

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	lingua	a language (as subject) -a
<i>Genitive</i>	linguae	of a language, language's -ae
<i>Dative</i>	linguae	to or for a language -ae
<i>Accusative</i>	linguam	a language (as object) -am
<i>Vocative</i>	lingua	O (or thou) language -a
<i>Ablative</i>	linguā	by, from, in, or with a language -ā

PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	<i>linguae</i>	languages (<i>as subject</i>)	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	<i>linguārum</i>	of languages, languages'	<i>-ārum</i>
<i>Dative</i>	<i>linguis</i>	to or for languages	<i>-is</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	<i>linguās</i>	languages (<i>as object</i>)	<i>-ās</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>linguae</i>	O (<i>or ye</i>) languages	<i>-ae</i>
<i>Ablative</i>	<i>linguis</i>	by, from, in, or with languages	<i>-is</i>

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae*, m., *the Belgae*; *Matrona*, m., *the (river) Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in *-ae*; as *Samarobrīvae*, *at Samarobriva*.

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in *-o*; the nominative masculine in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*; the nominative neuter in *-um*.

<i>animus</i> , m., <i>mind</i>	<i>puer</i> , m., <i>boy</i>	<i>ager</i> , m., <i>field</i>	<i>vir</i> , m., <i>man</i>	<i>bellum</i> , n., <i>war</i>
SINGULAR				
N. <i>animus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
G. <i>animī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bellī</i>
D. <i>animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
A. <i>animum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
V. <i>anime</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
A. <i>animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
PLURAL				
N. <i>animī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
G. <i>animōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
D. <i>animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
A. <i>animōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
V. <i>animī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
A. <i>animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
<i>filius</i> , m., <i>son</i>	<i>Gaius</i> , m., <i>Gaius</i>	<i>Boī</i> , m., <i>the Boii</i>	<i>deus</i> , m., <i>god</i>	
SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. <i>filius</i>	<i>Gaius</i>	<i>Boī</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
G. <i>filī</i>	<i>Gāī</i>	<i>Boiōrum</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>deōrum</i>
D. <i>filio</i>	<i>Gāio</i>	<i>Boīs</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, dīs</i>
A. <i>filium</i>	<i>Gaium</i>	<i>Boiōs</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
V. <i>filī</i>	<i>Gāī</i>	<i>Boī</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
A. <i>filio</i>	<i>Gāio</i>	<i>Boīs</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, dīs</i>

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). **Vulgus**, *crowd*, is usually neuter. **Locus**, m., *place*, has plural **loca**, n., *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in **-ī**; as **Agedincī**, *at Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in **-ius** regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in **-ī**, instead of **-īi** and **-ie**, and nouns in **-ium** form the genitive in **-ī**. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; **cōn-si'li**, *of a plan*; **ini'ti**, *of a beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in **-āius**, **-ēius**, and **-ōius** are declined like **Gāius** and **Bōi**.

e. A few words have **-um** instead of **-ōrum** in the genitive plural; **socium** (or **sociōrum**), *of allies*.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in **-i**. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, **-s** or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, **b** or **p**. The nominative ending is **-s**.

princeps, m., *chief*

Stem **prīncip-**

SING.	PLUR.
N. prīnceps	prīncipēs
G. prīncipis	prīncipum
D. prīncipī	prīncipibus
A. prīncipem	prīncipēs
V. prīnceps	prīncipēs
A. prīncipe	prīncipibus

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, **d** or **t**. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is **-s**, and the final **d** or **t** of the stem is dropped before it.

laus, f., *praise*

Stem **laud-**

mīles, m., *soldier*

Stem **mīlit-**

caput, n., *head*

Stem **capit-**

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
G. laudis	laudum	mīlitis	mīlitum	capitis	capitum
D. laudī	laudibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	capitī	capitibus
A. laudem	laudēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	caput	capita
V. laus	laudēs	mīles	mīlitēs	caput	capita
A. laude	laudibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	capite	capitibus

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is *-s*, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *z*.

lēx, f., <i>law</i> Stem lēg-		dux, m., <i>leader</i> Stem duc-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
G. lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
D. lēgī	lēgibus	duci	ducibus
A. lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
V. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
A. lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

cōsul, m., <i>consul</i> Stem cōsul-		pater, m., <i>father</i> Stem patr-		aequor, n., <i>sea</i> Stem aequor-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. cōsul	cōsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
G. cōsulis	cōsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
D. cōsulī	cōsulibus	patri	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
A. cōsulem	cōsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
V. cōsul	cōsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
A. cōsule	cōsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in *-m*. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

homō, m., f., <i>human being</i> Stem homin-		ratiō, f., <i>reason</i> Stem ratiōn-		flūmen, n., <i>river</i> Stem flūmin-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
G. hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
D. hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
A. hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
V. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
A. homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *r*.

mōs, M., <i>custom</i>		honor, M., <i>honor</i>		tempus, N., <i>time</i>	
Stem mōs-		Stem honōs-		Stem tempos-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
G. mōris	mōrum	honōris	honōrum	temporis	temporum
D. mōrī	mōribus	honōrī	honōribus	temporī	temporibus
A. mōrem	mōrēs	honōrem	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
V. mōs	mōrēs	honor	honōrēs	tempus	tempora
A. mōre	mōribus	honōre	honōribus	tempore	temporibus

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., *-em*, abl., *-e*, acc. plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-ī*.

turris, F., <i>tower</i>	hostis, M., F., <i>enemy</i>	caedēs, F., <i>slaughter</i>
Stem turri-	Stem hosti-	Stem caedi-
	SINGULAR	
N. turris	hostis	caedēs
G. turris	hostis	caedis
D. turri	hostī	caedī
A. turrim or -em	hostem	caedem
V. turris	hostis	caedēs
A. turri or -e	hoste	caede
	PLURAL	
N. turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
G. turrium	hostium	caedium
D. turribus	hostibus	caedibus
A. turris or -ēs	hostēs or -is	caedēs or -is
V. turrēs	hostēs	caedēs
A. turribus	hostibus	caedibus

cubīle, N., couch

Stem cubīli-

vectīgal, N., tax

Stem vectīgāli-

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>G.</i> cubīlis	vectīgālis
<i>D.</i> cubīlī	vectīgālī
<i>A.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>V.</i> cubīle	vectīgal
<i>A.</i> cubīlī	vectīgālī

PLURAL

<i>N.</i> cubīlia	vectīgālia
<i>G.</i> cubīlium	vectīgālium
<i>D.</i> cubīlibus	vectīgālibus
<i>A.</i> cubīlia	vectīgālia
<i>V.</i> cubīlia	vectīgālia
<i>A.</i> cubīlibus	vectīgālibus

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), *m.*, *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), *m.*, *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, *m.*, *fire*, and **nāvis**, *f.*, *ship*, often have **abl.-ī**. **Mare**, *n.*, *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-īs**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās**, **-tātis**.

cliēns, m., retainer

Stem client-

urbs, f., city

Stem urb-

SINGULAR		PLURAL	SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	cliēns	clientēs		urbs	urbēs
<i>G.</i>	clientis	clientium		urbis	urbium
<i>D.</i>	clientī	clientibus		urbī	urbibus
<i>A.</i>	clientem	clientēs or -īs		urbem	urbēs or -īs
<i>V.</i>	cliēns	clientēs		urbs	urbēs
<i>A.</i>	cliente	clientibus		urbe	urbibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

senex, M., <i>old man</i>	os, N., <i>bone</i>	vis, F., <i>force</i>	bōs, M., F., <i>ox, cow</i>	Iuppiter, M., <i>Jupiter</i>
SINGULAR				
N. senex	os	vis	bōs	Iuppiter
G. senis	ossis	vis	bovis	Iovis
D. senī	ossi	vi	bovī	Iovī
A. senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
V. senex	os	vis	bōs	Iuppiter
A. sene	osse	vi	bove	Iove
PLURAL				
N. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
G. senum	ossium	vīrium	bovum or boum	
D. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	
A. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
V. senēs	ossa	vīrēs	bovēs	
A. senibus	ossibus	vīribus	bōbus or būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. *Masculine* are nouns in ō (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō) -or, -ōs, -er, -es.

b. *Feminine* are nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x, and in -s when preceded by a consonant.

c. *Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in -a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in -u; nominative masculine in -us, nominative neuter in -ū.

passus, M., pace		cornū, N., horn	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
G. passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
D. passui	passibus	cornū	cornibus
A. passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
V. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
A. passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

a. *Domus, house, manus, hand, Idūs, Ides*, are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ū.

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.

d. *Domus*, *f.*, *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>domuum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>domui</i> or <i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>domō</i> or <i>domū</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Loc.</i>	<i>domī</i> (<i>at home</i>)	

FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in *-ē*; nominative in *-ēs*. Usually feminine.

<i>diēs</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>day</i>		<i>rēs</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>thing</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i> <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

a. *Diēs* in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is *-ēi* after a vowel, *-ei* after a consonant. *-ē* is sometimes used instead of either.

c. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. *Aciēs*, *spēs*, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

ADJECTIVES

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

magnus, *large*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>	<i>magnārum</i>	<i>magnōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnōs</i>	<i>magnās</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>magne</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnī</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magna</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>magnō</i>	<i>magnā</i>	<i>magnō</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>	<i>magnīs</i>

liber, free

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>G.</i> liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>D.</i> liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>A.</i> liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>V.</i> liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>A.</i> liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

noster, our

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>G.</i> nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
<i>D.</i> nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
<i>A.</i> nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
<i>V.</i> noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
<i>A.</i> nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in *alter* usually -ius) and the dative singular in -ī in all genders. These are *alius, another, sōlus, only, tōtus, whole, ūllus, any, nūllus, no, ūnus, one, alter, the other, uter, which* (of two), *neuter, neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in *magnus*. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of *alius*.

SINGULAR					
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
<i>G.</i> ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
<i>D.</i> ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
<i>A.</i> ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
<i>A.</i> ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
<i>N.</i> alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>G.</i> alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>D.</i> aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>A.</i> alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>A.</i> aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only *-ī* in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

		<i>fortior, braver</i>	
		SING.	PLUR.
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>		<i>Mas. and Fem. Neuter</i>
N. fortior	fortius		fortiōrēs fortiōra
G. fortiōris	fortiōris		fortiōrum fortiōrum
D. fortiōrī	fortiōrī		fortiōribus fortiōribus
A. fortiōrem	fortius		fortiōrēs fortiōra
V. fortior	fortius		fortiōrēs fortiōra
A. fortiōre	fortiōre		fortiōribus fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs, more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

		SING.	PLUR.
	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
N. plūs		plūrēs	plūra
G. plūris		plūrium	plūrium
D.		plūribus	plūribus
A. plūs		plūrēs or -īs	plūra
A. plūre		plūribus	plūribus

35. One termination.

		<i>vetus, old</i>	
		SING.	PLUR.
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Mas. and Fem. Neut.</i>
N. vetus	vetus		veterēs vetera
G. veteris	veteris		veterum veterum
D. veterī	veterī		veteribus veteribus
A. veterem	vetus		veterēs vetera
V. vetus	vetus		veterēs vetera
A. vetera	vetere		veteribus veteribus

a. Here belongs *princeps*, *chief*. *Dives*, *rich*, also belongs here, but has *dītia* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

acer, sharp

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
G. <i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
D. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
A. <i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -is</i>	<i>ācrēs or -is</i>	<i>ācria</i>
V. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
A. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

a. Here belong *celeber*, *famous*, *equester*, *equestrian*, *pedester*, *pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, all

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
G. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
D. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
A. <i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -is</i>	<i>omnia</i>
V. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
A. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is*, *-e*.

38. One termination.

audāx, bold

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
G. <i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
D. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
A. <i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs or -is</i>	<i>audācia</i>
V. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
A. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

oriēns, rising

SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
G. orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
D. orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
A. orientem	oriēns	orientēs or -is	orientia
V. oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
A. oriente or -ī	oriēnte or -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in *-āns* and *-ēns*. Participles usually have the ablative singular in *-ī* only when used as adjectives, in *-e* when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are *-ior, -ius*; superlative, *-issimus, -a, -um*. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: *altus, high; altior, -ius, higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.*

40. Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: *ācer, sharp* (base, *ācr-*), *ācrior, ācerrimus*.

41. Most adjectives in *-ilis* are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. They are *facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender*. Example: *facilis, facilior, facillimus*.

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

bonus, mellor, optimus, good, better, best.

malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.

magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.

parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.

multus, plūs, plūrimus, much, more, most.

dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right. dexterous, etc.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) *citerior*, *citimus*, *hither*, *hithermost*.

(*dē*, prep., *down*) *dēterior*, *dēterrimus*, *worse*, *worst*.

(*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) *interior*, *intimus*, *inner*, *inmost*.

(*prae*, prep., *before*) *prior*, *prīmus*, *former*, *first*.

(*prope*, adv., *near*) *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.

(*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*), *outer*, *outmost*.

inferus, *inferior*, *infimus* (*imus*), *lower*, *lowest*.

posterus, *posterior*, *postrēmus* (*postumus*), *latter*, *last*.

superus, *superior*, *suprēmus* (*summus*), *higher*, *highest*.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*. Example: *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base; as *lātus*, *wide*, *lātē*, *widely*: from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in *nt* add only *-er*; as *audāx*, *audācis*, *bold*, *audācter*, *boldly*; *fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*, *bravely*; *prūdēns*, *prudentis*, *prudent*, *prūdentē*, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as *multum*, *much*, *facile*, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as *lātius*, *more widely*, *audācius*, *more boldly*, *fortius*, *more bravely*, *prudentius*, *more prudently*, *plūs*, *more*, *facilius*, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as *lātissimē*, *most widely*, *audācissimē*, *most boldly*, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*, *prudentissimē*, *most prudently*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *facillimē*, *most easily*.

NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

Roman			
Numerals	Cardinal	Ordinal	Distributive
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	binī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trinī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndēcim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī

LXX. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēni
LXXX. octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēni
XC. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēni
C. centum	centēsimus	centēni
CI. centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus	centēni (et) singulī
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducentī
CCC. trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecentī
CCCC. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēni
D. quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēni
DC. sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescentī
DCC. septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēni
DCCC. octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēni
DCCCC. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēni
M. mīlle	mīllēsimus	singula mīlia
MM. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending *-ēnsimus* is often used for *-ēsimus*.

48. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *magnus* (31); *mīlle* as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of *cubīle* (25) and generally spelled *mīlia*. Ordinals are declined like *magnus*, distributives like the plural of *magnus*.

49. For the declension of *ūnus* see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

duo, two			trēs, three	
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, *two hundred and twenty*. In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without et; as *duo milia sescenti viginti sex*, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six*.

PRONOUNS

51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, <i>ego</i> , <i>I</i>		Second person, <i>tū</i> , <i>you (thou)</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. <i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
G. <i>meī</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is*, *he*, *ea*, *she*, *id*, *it*, 57; or, when *him*, *them*, etc., refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *nōbīscum*, *with us*.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, <i>meī</i> , <i>of myself</i>		Second person, <i>tuī</i> , <i>of yourself</i>		Third person, <i>sui</i> , <i>of himself, etc.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
G. <i>meī</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
A. <i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum*, *with himself*.

53.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

<i>1st pers.</i>	meus, -a, -um, my	noster, -tra, -trum, our
<i>2d pers.</i>	tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)	vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)
<i>3d pers.</i>	suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)	suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)
	eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)	eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

54.

hic, this (near the speaker)

SING.			PLUR.		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G. huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D. huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, **hoc**, is pronounced **hocc** when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, *a*.

55.

iste, that (near the person spoken to)

SING.			PLUR.		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G. istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D. istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A. istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
A. istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

56. Ille, that (something more remote) is declined like iste.

57.

is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)

SING.			PLUR.		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. is	eā	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
G. eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D. eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs eīs	iīs, eīs
A. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
I. eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs eīs

58.

Idem, the same

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>Idem</i>		<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>Idem or</i> <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>eiusdem</i>		<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>eīdem</i>		<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eundem</i>		<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>cōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>eōdem</i>		<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or</i> <i>eīsdem</i>

59.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>ipse</i>		<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>ipsius</i>		<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>ipsī</i>		<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ipsum</i>		<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>ipsō</i>		<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

60.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>quī</i>		<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>cuius</i>		<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>cui</i>		<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quem</i>		<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>quō</i>		<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. *Quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The *quī* of *quicumque* is declined regularly. *Quisquis*, *quicquid* (*quid-quid*), and *quōquō* are the only common forms of *quisquis*.

b. The preposition *cum* is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

61.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quī, *quae*, *quod*, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. *Quis*, *quid*, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SING.

<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. quis	quid
G. cuius	cuius
D. cui	cui
A. quem	quid
A. quō	quō

a. The enclitic *-nam* is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; *quisnam*, *who, pray?*

b. *Cum* is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are *quis*, *quī*, and their compounds. *Quis* and *quī* in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

quis, *quid*, *any one*
aliquis, *aliquid*, *some one*
quispiam, *quidpiam*, *some one*

quisquam, *quicquam* (*quidquam*),
any one (abl. sing. and entire
plural supplied by *ūllus*, *-a*, *-um*)

quīvis, *quaevis*, *quidvis* }
quīlibet, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* }
any one etc., you like
quīdam, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, *a cer-*
tain man
quisque, *quidque*, *each*

ADJECTIVE

quī, *quae* (*qua*), *quod*, *any*
aliquī, *aliqua*, *aliquod*, *some*
quispiam, *quaepiam*, *quodpiam*,
some
(adjective supplied by *ūllus*)

quīvis, *quaevis*, *quodvis* }
quīlibet, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet* }
any you like
quīdam, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *a*
certain
quisque, *quaeque*, *quodque*, *each*

a. In *quī* and *aliquī* the nominative and accusative plural neuter are *qua* (or *quae*) and *aliqua*.

b. In the declension of *quīdam*, *m* becomes *n* before *d*; as *quendam*.

VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	<i>ā</i>	- <i>āre</i>
II.	<i>ē</i>	- <i>ēre</i>
III.	<i>e (i, u)</i>	- <i>ere</i>
IV.	<i>i</i>	- <i>ire</i>

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive*,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active*,—present participle; gerund: *passive*,—gerundive.

b On the perfect stem are formed: *active*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive*,—future infinitive; *active*,—future participle; supine: *passive*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of *laudō* are :

laudō, laudāre (present stem, *laudā*).
laudāvī (perfect stem, *laudāv*).
laudātum (supine stem, *laudāt*).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui*

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

Imperfect

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

Future

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

Perfect

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuimus</i>
<i>fuisti</i>	<i>fuistis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuērunt or -ēre</i>

Pluperfect

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

Future Perfect

<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

Imperfect

<i>essem (or forem)</i>	<i>essēmus (or forēmus)</i>
<i>essēs (or forēs)</i>	<i>essētis (or forētis)</i>
<i>esset (or foret)</i>	<i>essent (or forent)</i>

Perfect

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

Pluperfect

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. es este

Future

2d pers. estō estōte

3d pers. estō suntō

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus

INFINITIVE

*Pres. esse**Perf. fuisse**Fut futūrus (esse) or fore*

67.

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

Imperfect

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Future

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt
	or -ēre

Pluperfect

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

Future Perfect

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverīmus
laudāverīs	laudāverītis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Pluperfect

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>		
2d pers.	laudā	laudāte
<i>Future</i>		
2d pers.	laudātō	laudātōte
3d pers.	laudātō	laudantō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāre
<i>Perf.</i>	laudāvisse
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	laudāns
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	laudātum
<i>Abl.</i>	laudātū

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	laudandī
<i>Dat.</i>	laudandō
<i>Acc.</i>	laudandum
<i>Abl.</i>	laudandō

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
laudor	laudāmur
laudāris or -re	laudāminī
laudātur	laudantur

Imperfect

laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābāris or -re	laudābāminī
laudābātur	laudābantur

Future

laudābor	laudābimur
laudāberis or -re	laudābiminī
laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

laudātus sum	laudātī sumus
laudātus es	laudātī estis
laudātus est	laudātī sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
lauder	laudēmur
laudēris or -re	laudēminī
laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēris or -re	laudārēminī
laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect

laudātus sim	laudātī simus
laudātus sis	laudātī sītis
laudātus sit	laudātī sint

Pluperfect

laudatus eram	laudāti erāmus
laudatus erās	laudāti erātis
laudatus erat	laudāti erant

Pluperfect

laudātus essem	laudāti essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudāti essētis
laudātus esset	laudāti essent

Future Perfect

laudātus erō	laudāti erimus
laudātus eris	laudāti eritis
laudātus erit	laudāti erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. laudāre	laudāmini
------------------	-----------

Future

2d pers. laudātor	
3d pers. laudātor	laudantor

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudārī*Perf.* laudātus esse*Fut.* laudātum irī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. laudātus*Fut.* laudandus

68.

SECOND CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monui, monitum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

Imperfect

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

Future

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

Imperfect

monērem	moneremus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

Perfect

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt or -ēre

Perfect

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

Pluperfect

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Future Perfect

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. monē monēte

Future

2d pers. monētō monētōte

3d pers. monētō monentō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. monēns Fut. monitūrus

SUPINE

Acc. monitum Abl. monitū

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse)

GERUND

Gen. monendī

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

SECOND CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneor, monērī, monitus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
moneor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
monear	moneāmur
moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
monēbar	monēbāmur	monērer	monērēmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāminī	monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monēbātur	monēbantur	monērētur	monērentur
<i>Future</i>			
monēbor	monēbimur		
monēberis or -re	monēbiminī		
monēbitur	monēbuntur		
<i>Perfect</i>		<i>Perfect</i>	
monitus sum	monitī sumus	monitus sim	monitī simus
monitus es	monitī estis	monitus sis	monitī sitis
monitus est	monitī sunt	monitus sit	monitī sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>		<i>Pluperfect</i>	
monitus eram	monitī erāmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus erat	monitī erant	monitus esset	monitī essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
monitus erō	monitī erimus		
monitus eris	monitī eritis		
monitus erit	monitī erunt		
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
<i>Present</i>		<i>Pres. monēri</i>	
2d pers. monēre	monēminī	<i>Perf. monitus esse</i>	
<i>Future</i>		<i>Fut. monitum iri</i>	
2d pers. monētor			
1 pers. monētor	monentor		
PARTICIPLE			
<i>Perf. monitus</i>			
<i>Fut. monendus</i>			

69.

THIRD CONJUGATION ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

Imperfect

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

Future

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

Perfect

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

Future Perfect

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. dūc*	dūcite
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. dūcitō	dūcitōte
3d pers. dūcitō	dūcuntō

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	dūcēns
<i>Fut.</i>	ductūrus

Imperfect

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

Perfect

dūxerim	dūxerīmus
dūxeris	dūxerītis
dūxerit	dūxerint

Pluperfect

dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere*Perf.* dūxisse*Fut.* ductūrus (esse)

SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	ductum
<i>Abl.</i>	ductū

GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	dūcendī
<i>Dat.</i>	dūcendō
<i>Acc.</i>	dūcendum
<i>Abl.</i>	dūcendō

* Irregular for dūce.

THIRD CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **dūcor, dūcī, ductus sum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris or -re	dūciminī
dūcitur	dūcuntur

Imperfect

dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris or -re	dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

Future

dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris or -re	dūcēminī
dūcētur	dūcentur

Perfect

ductus sum	ductī sumus
ductus es	ductī estis
ductus est	ductī sunt

Pluperfect

ductus eram	ductī erāmus
ductus erās	ductī erātis
ductus erat	ductī erant

Future Perfect

ductus erō	ductī erimus
ductus eris	ductī eritis
ductus erit	ductī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. dūcere	dūciminī
-----------------	----------

Future

2d pers. dūcitor	
3d pers. dūcitor	dūcuntor

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris or -re	dūcāminī
dūcātur	dūcantur

Imperfect

dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris or re	dūcerēminī
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

Perfect

ductus sim	ductī sīmus
ductus sis	ductī sītis
ductus sit	ductī sint

Pluperfect

ductus essem	ductī essēmus
ductus essēs	ductī essētis
ductus esset	ductī essent

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcī*Perf.* ductus esse*Fut.* ductum irī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus*Fut.* dūcendus

70.

FOURTH CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum**

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

Imperfect

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

Perfect

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt
	or -ēre

Pluperfect

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

Future Perfect

audīverō	audīverimus
audīveris	audīveritis
audīverit	audīverint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. audī	audīte
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. auditō	auditōte
3d pers. auditō	audiuntō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

Perfect

audīverim	audīverīmus
audīverīs	audīverītis
audīverit	audīverint

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissēmus
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvisset	audīvissent

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīre*Perf.* audīvisse*Fut.* auditūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. audiēns *Fut.* audītūrus

SUPINE

Acc. audītum *Abl.* audītū

GERUND

Gen. audiendī
Dat. audiendō
Acc. audiendum
Abl. audiendō

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: audior, audīrī, audītus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audior	audīmur
audīris or -re	audīmini
audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

Perfect

audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

Pluperfect

audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

Future Perfect

audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris or -re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

audītus sim	audītī simus
audītus sis	audītī sitis
audītus sit	audītī sint

Pluperfect

audītus essem	audītī essēmus
audītus essēs	audītī essētis
audītus esset	audītī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. audire audimini

Future

2d pers. auditor
3d pers. auditor audiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. audiri*Perf.* auditus esse*Fut.* auditum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. auditus*Fut.* audiendus

71.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captum*

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

Imperfect

capiēbam	capiēbāmus
capiēbās	capiēbātis
capiēbat	capiēbant

Future

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

Perfect

cēpi	cēpimus
cēpisti	cēpistis
cēpit	cēpērunt
	or -ēre

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiam	capiamus
capias	capiātis
capiat	capiant

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

Pluperfect

cēpisse	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. cape	capite
---------------	--------

Future

2d pers. capitō	capitōte
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō

PARTICIPLE

Pres. capiēns	Fut. captūrus
---------------	---------------

SUPINE

Acc. captum	Abl. captū
-------------	------------

INFINITIVE

*Pres. capere**Perf. cēpisse**Fut. captūrus (esse)*

GERUND

*Gen. capiendī**Dat. capiendō**Acc. capiendum**Abl. capiendō*THIRD CONJUGATION IN *IO*

PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capior, capī, captus sum*

INDICATIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur
caperis or -re	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbāris or -re	capiēbāmini
capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

capiar	capiēmur
capiēris or -re	capiēmini
capiētur	capientur

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING.	PLUR.
capiar	capiāmur
capiāris or -re	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris or -re	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

captus sum	capti sumus
captus es	capti estis
captus est	capti sunt

Perfect

captus sim	capti simus
captus sis	capti sitis
captus sit	capti sint

Pluperfect

captus eram	capti erāmus
captus erās	capti erātis
captus erat	capti erant

Pluperfect

captus essem	capti essēmus
captus essēs	capti essētis
captus esset	capti essent

Future Perfect

captus erō	capti erimus
captus eris	capti eritis
captus erit	capti erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. capere	capimini
-----------------	----------

Future

2d pers. capitor	
3d pers. capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capi*Perf.* captus esse*Fut.* captum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus*Fut.* capiendus

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *laudāstī* for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

b. Perfects in *-ivī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *iis* it usually contracts to *is*.

Examples: *audiī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audiisse* for *audīvisse*.

DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, urge vereor, fear sequor, follow partior, share

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. hortārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>partīrī</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus esse</i>	<i>veritus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partītus esse</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus (esse)</i>	<i>veritūrus (esse)</i>	<i>secūtūrus (esse)</i>	<i>partītūrus (esse)</i>

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. hortāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partītus</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partītūrus</i>
<i>Fut. Pass. hortandus</i>	<i>verendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>

GERUND

hortandī, -ō, etc. verendī, etc. sequendī, etc. partiendī, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū veritum, -tū secūtum, -tū partītum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidē, fidere, fīsus sum, trust

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended* action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,
Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb **sum**: thus,

Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.
Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of **sum** see 66. **Sum** is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions **ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super**. **Praesum** has a present participle, **praesēns**.

78. In **absum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but **ā** is used for **ab** before **f**, giving **āfui, āfutūrus**, etc. There is a present participle **absēns**.

79. In **prōsum**, **sum** is inflected in the same way, but the preposition **prō** has its original form **prōd** before all forms of **sum** beginning with **e**; as, **prōdesse, prōderam**. The present tense is, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt**.

80. **Possum**, *be able, can*, is a compound of **pot-** and **sum**.

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potui**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram	possem
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	
<i>Perf.</i>	potui	potuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram	potuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō	

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	posse
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. potēns

81. ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	feram
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

feram
ferrem
tulerim
tulissēm

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer ferte
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō fertōte fertō feruntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

SUPINE

lātum, -tū

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, ferimini, feruntur
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lātus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

ferar
ferrer
lātus sim
lātus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre, ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertor fertor, feruntor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātum iri

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus

82.

volō, velle, volui, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling
mālō, mälle, mālui, prefer

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	nōlītō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. velle</i>	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf. voluisse</i>	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. volēns</i>	nōlēns
---------------------	--------

83. Fīō, be made, be done, become, happen, is the irregular passive of **faciō, make.** Note the **i** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er**.

Principal parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fīō, fīs, fit
	fimus, fitis, fiunt
<i>Imp.</i>	fīēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	fiam
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

fiam
fierem
factus sim
factus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. fī, fite

INFINITIVE

Pres. fierī*Perf.* factus esse*Fut.* factum irī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. factus*Fut.* faciendus

84.

eō, ire, iī, itum, go

INDICATIVE

Pres. eō, is, it,
Imus, Itis, eunt*Imp.* ibam*Fut.* ibō*Perf.* iī for ivī*Plup.* ieram*Fut. Perf.* ierō

SUBJUNCTIVE

eam

irem

ierim

iissem or issem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. ī, ite*Fut.* itō, itōte
itō, euntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. ire*Perf.* iisse or isse*Fut.* itūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

Pres. iēns (*Gen.* euntis)*Fut.* itūrus

GERUND

eundī, etc.

SUPINE

itum, -tū

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, *ii* usually contracts to *i* before *s*.

85. *Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give*, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short *a*. *ā* appears only in the following active forms,—*dās, dā, dāns*.

86.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects *meminī, I remember*; *ōdī, I hate*; and *coepī, I have begun*. Notice that *meminī* and *ōdī* have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE

Perf. meminī*Plup.* memineram*Fut. Perf.* meminērō*ōdī**ōderam**ōderō**coepī**coeperam**coeperō*

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	öderim	coeperim
<i>Plup.</i>	meminisssem	ōdissem	coepissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>		ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	ōsus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of *coepī* the passive form *coeptus sum* is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: *laudārī coeptus est, he began to be praised.*

87.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as *pluit, it rains.*

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: *decet, it becomes; libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; miseret, it causes pity; oportet, it is right; paenitet, it repents; piget, it displeases; pudet, it shames; rēfert, it concerns; taedet, it wearies.* All of these except *rēfert* belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as *acēdit, it is added, from accēdō, I approach.*

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as *pugnātur, it is fought.*

SYNTAX

SENTENCES

88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.*

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Galli fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate* or *dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*. Example: *ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject) *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *mīles* would be used in the first sentence, *mīlitem* in the second, and *mīlitī* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *mīlitem*, *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs*, *many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dicit pīlum mīlitem vulnerāvisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsit*, *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *ā mīlite interfectus est*, *he was killed by a soldier*; *cum mīlite vēnit*, *he came in company with a soldier*.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: *A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.*

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. **RULE:** *A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.*

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pisō fuit cōsul*, *Piso was consul*; *Pisō factus est cōsul*, *Piso became consul*; *Pisō appellātus est cōsul*, *Piso was called consul*. For the predicate accusative with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. **RULE:** *An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.*

EXAMPLES: *Pisō, cōsul, mīlitī Pisōnī gladium dedit.* *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

96.

NOMINATIVE

RULE: *The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).*

EXAMPLE: *Gallia est divisa* (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

GENITIVE

A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

97. GENERAL RULE: *A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.*

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98–105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: *tuorum comitum sentina* (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades*.

ATTRIBUTIVE

98. Subjective and Objective Genitives. These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as *amor*, *love*, *amō*, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves*, (subjective), or that *some one loves his father* (objective); *occāsum sōlis* (i, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); *rēgnī cupiditate* (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. Possessive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: *finibus Belgārum* (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; *finibus vestris*, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede *causā* or *grātiā*, for the sake of. Examples: *huius potentiae causā* (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

RULE: *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: *huiusce modī senātūs cōsultum* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; *trium mēnsium molita cibāria* (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

RULE: *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: *eōrum ūna pars* (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; *hōrum omnium fortissimī* (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; *ubinam gentium sumus* (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in (not of) the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on *satis* used substantively. Examples: *quantum bonī* (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; *satis causae* (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with *quīdam*. Example: *ūnus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: *hī omnēs* (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

102. Genitive of Material.

RULE: *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

Example: *aciem legiōnum quattuor* (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions*.

PREDICATIVE

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man*. Example: *est hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis* (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs*.

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: *senātūs cōsultum est huiusce modī*, *the decree is of this kind*.

105. The Genitive of Value. With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magnī*, *parvī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*. Example: *tantī eius grātiā esse ostendit* (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value*.

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:*

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plēnus*, *full (of)*. Examples: *bellandī cupidī* (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *rei militāris perītissimū* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science*.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: *tui similis* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *vērī simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth)*.

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: *locum medium utriusque* (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them*.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: *Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: *reminiscerētur veteris incommodī* (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumēliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

RULE: *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.*

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: *mē inertiae condemnō* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

109. Verbs of Emotion.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb *misereor, pity*, also takes the genitive. Examples: *mē meōrum factorum numquam paenitēbit* (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds*; *mē eius miseret* or *eius misereor*, *I pity him.*

110. Interest and Rēfert.

RULE: *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: *rei pūblīcae intersit* (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state*; *meā interest*, *it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** *Potior occasionally governs the genitive.*

For *potior* with the ablative see 145. Example: *Galliae potiri* (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

GENERAL RULE: *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

RULE: *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: **eī filiam dat** (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. **Dōnō**, *give, present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: **eī librum dōnō**, *I give (to) him a book*; **eum librō dōnō**, *I present him with a book*.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially **cōsulō**, *consult* or *consult for*, and **metuō**, *fear* or *fear for*. Examples: **sī mē cōsulis** (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; **cōsulite vōbis** (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: **eī filia datur**, *his daughter is given to him*.

115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

RULE: *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

EXAMPLES: **civitātī persuāsit** (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; **novis rēbus studēbat** (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; **Allobrogibus imperāvit** (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as **audiēns sum**, *obey*, and **fidem habēre**, *trust*. Example: **cui fidem habēbat** (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: **prōvinciae mīlitum numerum imperat** (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; **id iis persuāsit** (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them*).

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs **dēlectō**, *delight*, **iubeō**

command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: Labiēnum iubet (I, 21, 5), he commands Labienus.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesarī persuādeō, I persuade Caesar, becomes Caesarī à mē persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me (literally, it is persuaded to Caesar).*

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the *dative of separation*.

RULE: *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

EXAMPLES: *cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), since they excelled all; finitimis bellum inferre (I, 2, 12), to make war upon their neighbors; mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praeficit (I, 10, 7), he puts Labienus in command of the works; scūtō militī detractō (II, 25, 13), having snatched a shield from a soldier.*

II. RULE: *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

EXAMPLE: *sī Haeduīs satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), if they should make restitution to the Haedui.*

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, *aggredior, attack; incendō, burn; interficiō, kill; oppugnō, assault; but there are many others. Example: eōs aggressus (I, 12, 9), having attacked (or attacking) them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: *illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: *mūnitiōnī Labiēnus praeficitur, Labienus is put in command of the works.*

117. Dative of Possessor.

RULE: *The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

118. Dative of the Agent.

RULE: *The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nōn expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitātī ā tē persuādendum est*, *the state must be persuaded by you*.

119. Dative of Purpose.

RULE: *The dative may express purpose or tendency.*

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; *quī novissimis praesidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear*, lit. *who were for a guard to the rear*.

120. Dative of Reference.

RULE: *The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.*

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet*.

121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit** (Cic. Cat. II, 4.), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius, or simply he took out Tongilius.*

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: *Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.*

Examples: **plēbī acceptus** (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; **proximī sunt Germānis** (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; **castris idōneum locum** (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp.*

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: **ad amicitiam idōneus**, *suitable for friendship.*

b. The adjectives **propior** and **proximus** and the adverbs **propius** and **proximē** sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition **prope**. Example: **proximī Rhēnum** (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine.*

c. For **similis** and **dissimilis** see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Example: **certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse** (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.*

124. Direct Object.

RULE: *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as **puerum laudat**, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as **coniūrātiōnem fēcit**, *he made a conspiracy.*

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: **puer laudātur**, *the boy is praised*; **coniūrātiō facta est**, *a conspiracy was made.*

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially *ad*, *circum*, *in*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *trāns*, have transitive meanings. Example: *ire*, *to go*, intransitive; but *flūmen trānsire*, *to cross (go across) the river*.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with *ab*. Examples: *Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; *eadem ab aliis quaerit* (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others*.

b. **RULE:** *Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.*

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a). Examples: *eōs hoc moneō* (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; *sī quid ille sē velit* (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him*.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: *Haedui frūmentum flāgitābantur*, *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; (ii) *hoc monentur*, *they are given this advice*.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.*

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: *quem rēgem cōstituerat* (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; *Caesarem certiōrem fēcit*, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain)*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: *quī rēx cōstitutus erat*, *who had been appointed king*; *Caesar certior factus est* (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain)*.

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.*

Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt* (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt*, *three parts were led across the river*.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: *An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.*

Examples: *eam vltam vivere*, *to live that life*; *trīdūi viam prōcēdere* (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march*.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*. Examples: *id iis persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); *multum posse*, *to have much power*.

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *more*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *plērumque*, *for the most part*, and *nihil*, *not at all*. Here belong also *id temporis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and *maximam partem* (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*. Example: *multum sunt in vênātiōne* (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting*.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

Example: *O fortūnātam rem pūblicam* (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

130. Accusative of Time and Space.

RULE: *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, *diēs, day; pēs, foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: *rēgnū multōs annōs obtinuerat* (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; *mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant* (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

131. Place to Which.

RULE: *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: *ad iūdicium coēgit* (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial*; *in agrum Nōricum trāsierant* (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; *sē Massiliam cōferet* (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; *domum reditiōnis* (I, 5, 6), *of a return home*.

a. *Ad* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: *ad Genavam pervenit* (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

132.

VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: *dēsillite, commilitōnēs* (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

133.

ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

RULE: *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: *suīs finibus eōs prohibent* (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; *quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent* (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; *ā Bibracte aberat* (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. *Place from which*: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: *ut dē finibus suīs exīrent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; *quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant* (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; *Rōmā profūgērunt* (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; *domō exīre* (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; *proeliō abstinēbat* (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Examples: *amplissimō genere nātus* (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; *sorōrem ex mātrem (nātam)* (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

136. Ablative of Material.

RULE: *The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.*

Example: *nāvēs factae ex rōbore* (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak*.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: *The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.*

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvëtiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

138. Ablative of Cause.

RULE: *Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.*

Examples: *grātiā et largitiōne* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suā victōriā glōriārentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by *causā* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*; and by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustias* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quā dē causā*, (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

RULE: *With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.*

Examples: *lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used instead of *plūs quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

RULE: *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpiis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.

141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: *The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: *hominēs inimicō animō* (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; *nōndum bonō animō vidērentur* (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*.

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Examples: *pars cum cruciātū necābātur* (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; *magnis itineribus* (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches*

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: *In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.*

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—*cōsuētūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte*. Examples: *iniussū suō* (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; *mōribus suis* (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; *suā voluntāte* (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish*.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: *Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.*

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: *imperiō populī Rōmānī* (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; *intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat* (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet*.

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: *The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: *rēgnī cupiditate inductus* (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power*.

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plēnus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nītor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*. Examples: *nātūrā locī cōfidēbant* (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Examples: *frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat* (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with *ūtor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *fulfill*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vēscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: *eōdem ūsī cōsiliō* (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperiō potīrī* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: *The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.*

Example: *Caēsari multis auxiliīs opus est*, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun. Example: *sī quid opus esset* (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*. Example: *sī opus factō esset* (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: *parvō pretiō redēpta* (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*.

148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

RULE: *The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Compare 139. Examples: *nihilō minus* (I, 5, 1), lit. *less by nothing*, = *nevertheless*; *paucis ante diēbus*, (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (lit. *before by a few days*).

a. *Eō . . . quō*, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*. Example: *eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent* (I, 14, 3), lit. *he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly*, = *he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened*.

149. Ablative of Specification.

RULE: *The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.*

Examples: *linguā inter sē differunt* (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; *maior nātū*, *older (greater in birth)*.

a. The ablative is used with *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*. Example: *ipsis indignum* (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

150. Ablative Absolute.

RULE: *A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.*

RULE: *Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."*

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) *remōtis equis proelium commisit* (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) *M Messālā M. Pīsōne cōsulibus* (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of, etc.*; *eō dēprecātōre* (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) *omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt* (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; *Sēquanīs invitīs ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; *monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat* (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) *locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . conantur* (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous positions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: *Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.*

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt* (I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. **RULE:** *Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.*

The locatives *domī*, at home, and *rūrī*, in the country, are also in regular use. Examples: *Samarobrivae* (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; *domī largiter posse* (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. **RULE:** *No preposition is regularly used with locō, locīs, parte, partibus when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by tōtus.*

Examples: *nōn nullīs locīs trānsitur* (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several places; *vulgō tōtīs castrīs* (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So *ab* and *ex* are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with *in* if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: *ūnā ex parte* (I, 2, 7), on one side; *cotidiānīs proeliīs contendunt* (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; *memoriā tenēbat* (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: *Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without preposition.*

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: *eō tempore* (I, 3, 14), at that time; *id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōfēcerant* (I, 13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in(within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: *eā tōtā nocte iērunt* (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab**, **absque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**.

a. The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**. It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

b. **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. **In** and **sub** with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, *a*); as, **flūmen est lātum**, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, **flūmen lātum**, *the wide river*.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Examples: **homō bonus**, *a good man*; **mulieri bonae**, *to a good woman*; **bellōrum magnōrum**, *of great wars*.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier**, *a good man and woman*; **bella et victōriae magnae**, *great wars and victories*.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī**, *the men and their characters are good*; **hominēs et arma sunt magnī**, *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt magna**, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: **multī**, *many men*; **multōrum**, *of many men*; **multae**, *many women*; **multārum**, *of many women*; **multa**, *many things*; **multārum rērum**, *of many things*.

159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: **invitus vēnit**, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; **primus vēnit**, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, **imus**, *the bottom of*; **medius**, *the middle of*; **summus**, *the top of*; **primus**, *the first part of*; **extrēmus**, *the last part of*; **reliquus**, *the rest of*. Examples: **in colle mediō** (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; **summus mōns** (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; **primā nocte** (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*.

161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: **diūturniōrem impūnitātem** (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; **cupidius insecūtī** (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; **monte Iūrā altissimō** (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by **quam**, with or without a form of **possum**. Examples: **quam maximum numerum** (I, 3, 3), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

162. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: *ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: *utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus* (II, 1, 1), *as I (lit. we) have said before.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: *Suī and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Example: *eum videō qui sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.*

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject suī and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *suī* or *suius*. Example: *Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).*

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with *inter* to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other*. Examples: *inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent* (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: *Caesar exercitum dūxit, Caesar led (his) army.*

a. **Suus** is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun **sui**, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. **Hic** refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: *hic liber, this book (near me).*

169. **Iste** refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: *iste liber, that book (near you).* When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. **Ille** refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: *ille liber, that book (yonder).*

a. **Ille** and **hic** are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. **Hic** is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. **Is** is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When **is** is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—*the man, a man, such a man, that*, etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. **Ipse** emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: *ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar se laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.*

a. *Ipse* is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipsius liber*, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; *vester ipsorum liber*, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō*, *Caesar, whom I praise*; *ego, qui eum laudō*, *I, who praise him*; *Caesar et Cicerō, qui mē laudant*, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

a. *Coordinate Relative.* It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, etc.*) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go*. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *qui* (I, 15, 5), *they*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.*

Example: *si quis laudat*, *if anyone praises*.

175. RULE: *Aliquis (aliqui) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.*

Example: *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*.

176. *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicat*, *some one may say*.

177. RULE: *Quisquam and ūllus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō*, *nor do I praise anyone*; *cur quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesciō quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. RULE: *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudātus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudatae sunt*, *the women were praised*.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnērunt*, *a great number came*; *duo milia occisī sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, *a*, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisī sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dividit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudātur*, *he is praised*; *eī crēditur* (115, *d*) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

THE MODES

182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: *laudat, he praises; nōn laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?*

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: *laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i. e., I give the command "let him praise."*

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential*. Examples: *laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.*

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: *laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises.* Compare *laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: *laudā, praise (thou); dēsillite (IV, 25, 11), jump down.*

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.*

187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

a. RULE: *Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: *nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?*

b. RULE: *Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).*

But *nē . . . quidem, not even*, is used in statements. Examples: *nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise; nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.*

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit, he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat, he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat, he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: *laudat, he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: *oppida sua omnia incendunt*, (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns*.

b. With such expressions as *iam diū*, *iam pridem*, *for a long time*, *multōs annōs*, *for many years*, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē moneō*, *I have been warning you for many years*. There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with *dum*, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example: *laudābat*, *he was praising*.

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as *laudābat*, *he used to praise*, or *he kept praising*. It is less often used of attempted past action; as *laudābat*, *he tried to praise*.

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē monēbam*, *I had been warning you for many years*.

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: *laudābō*, *I shall or will praise*, or *be praising*.

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: *laudāvī*, *I have praised*.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, *vēnī*, *I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here*. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially *nōvī*, *cognōvī*, *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and *cōsuēvī*, *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: *laudavi, I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: *laudaveram, I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, *a*, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: *veneram, I had come, i. e., I was there; noveram, I knew; consuēveram, I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: *laudaverō, I shall or will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, *a*, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: *venerō, I shall have come, i. e., I shall be there; noverō, I shall know; consuēverō, I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*. Examples: *laudatūrus est, he is about to praise; laudatūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudatūrus erit, he will be about to praise.*

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived....., planned..... But Caesar went.....," Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived, had planned But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

RULE: *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After *dum*, *while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	= present or future
Imperfect	= imperfect or future to a past
Perfect	= perfect or future perfect
Pluperfect	= pluperfect or future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come*, or *I shall come*, *that I may praise*, *laudem*; *I came* *that I might praise*, *laudārem*. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses*, can be followed.

RULE: *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*

203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

Principal Tenses			
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	rogō, <i>I ask</i>	Present	quid faciat, <i>what he is doing</i>
Future	rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>	Perfect	quid fēcerit, <i>what he has done (or</i> <i>did)</i>
Present perfect	rogāvi, <i>I have asked</i>		
Future perfect	rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>		

Historical Tenses			
Imperfect	rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	Imperfect	quid faceret, <i>what he was doing</i>
Historical perf.	rogāvi, <i>I asked</i>	Pluperfect	quid fēcisset, <i>what he had done</i>
Pluperfect	rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>		

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, *cum sint* would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction *quod sunt*.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: *temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dēfuerit* (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*.

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: **diem dicunt quā diē convenient** (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; **omne frumentum combūrunt ut parātiōrēs ad perīcula subeunda essent** (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger*.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

dicō eum lit. <i>him</i> <i>I say that he</i>	laudāre <i>to be praising</i> <i>is praising</i>	laudātūrum esse <i>to be about to praise</i> <i>will praise</i>	laudāvisse <i>to have praised</i> <i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dicam eum, <i>I shall say that he is praising</i>		<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
dixi eum, <i>I said that he</i>	<i>was praising</i>	<i>would praise</i>	<i>had praised.</i>

a. With such perfects as **dēbui**, **licuit**, **oportuit**, **potui**, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: **laudāre potui** lit. *I was able to praise*, = *I could have praised*.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by **fore** (**futūrum esse**) **ut**, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: **dicat fore ut timeat**, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears*, = *he says that he will fear*; **dixit fore ut laudārētur**, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised*, = *he said that he would be praised*.

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.*

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential*. Examples: *Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnissēt, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.*

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dīcat, some one may say*. In an independent sentence the student should always express *may, might, can, could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*. Example: *nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitāre potest, no one can doubt.*

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: *quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt (implying that no one can)?*

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: *quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?*

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: *cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?*

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: *quis vēnit?* *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

213. **RULE:** Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. **RULE:** When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: *scribitne epistulam?* *is he writing a letter?* *epistulamne scribit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

b. **RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *yes*, the interrogative particle is *nōnne*.

Example: *nōnne epistulam scribit?* *is he not writing a letter?*

c. **RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *no*, the interrogative particle is *num*.

Example: *num epistulam scribit?* *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; *or not* is *annōn*. Examples: *utrum pugnāvit an fūgit?* *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*. Example: *epistulamne scribit?* *scribit*, *yes*; *nōn scribit*, *no*.

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is *nē* (188, b).

217. RULE: *An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.*

218. RULE: *A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: *venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.*

219. RULE: *A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōlī, nōlīte, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by *cavē* (with or without *nē*), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: *nōlī dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.*

220. RULE: *A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.*

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by *utinam* (not to be translated).

a. RULE: *A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

Example: *(utinam) adsit, may he be here!*

b. RULE: *A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

c. RULE: *A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: *utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!*

COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction*. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive *quod* clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quōd, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: *hominēs misit quī vidērent*, *he sent men to see*, lit. *who were to see*.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *quō* is used. Example: *vēnit quō facilius vidēret*, *he came that he might see more easily*, lit. *by which the more easily he might see*.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction *ut* is used. Example: *vēnit ut vidēret*, *he came to see, that he might see*, or *in order to see*; *venit ut videat*, *he comes to see*.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction nē is always used. Example: hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret, *he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing*.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. RULE: *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a*. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: *mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent* (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; *incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit* (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; *tam fortis est ut pugnet*, *he is so brave that he would fight, or as to fight, or that he fights*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command*, *I hinder*, *the result is*.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: *imperō ut eās*, *I command you to go*, does not mean *I command in order that you may go*, but rather *I give the command "go"*.

a. RULE: Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*.

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after *iubeō*, *command*, *cōnor*, *attempt*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*. See 280, a. *Ut* is often omitted after verbs of asking, commanding, and wishing, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: *civitātī persuāsīt ut exirent* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *civitātī persuāsīt nē exirent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *et licet eat*, *he may go*; *obsidēs utī dent perficit* (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages*.

RULE: Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with *nē* meaning *or ut* meaning *that not*.

ē nōn, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*. Examples: *timeō it*, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō: nē veniat*, *I am at him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear will not come* (originally *timeō: veniat*, *I am afraid: let him or come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

RULE: Verbs meaning *avoid*, *hinder*, *prevent*, and *refuse* may subjunctive with *nē*, *quā*, or *quōminus*.

But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quīn* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after *either positive or negative*. Examples: *eum impediō nē*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quīn*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (I, 31, 24), *and that they would not refuse to be*.

SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.*

Compare 228, a. Example: *montēs efficiunt ut nōn exire possint*, *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave*.

b. **RULE:** *Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *hīs rēbus flēbat ut vagārentur* (I, 2, 1f), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. **RULE:** *Such phrases as mōs est, cōsuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *iūs est*, *lēx est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equīs pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback*.

d. **RULE:** *Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quīn.*

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *sī* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quīn hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.*

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.*

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is* = *(such) a man* (171, a), *eius modi*, *such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *is est quī pugnet*, *he is a man who fights*; *secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent* (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms that they kept)*; *tam improbus quī nōn fateātur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit*.

b. RULE: *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.*

So after *est quī*, *there is a man who*; *nōn* or *nēmō* or *nūllus est quī*, *there is no one who*; *quis est quī?* *who is there who?* *sōlus* or *ūnus est quī* *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *nūllī sunt quī putent*, *there are none who think*; *erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exire possent* (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave*.

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*. Examples: *ūnum (iter) vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur* (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved*; *neque commissum intellegeret quārē timēret* (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid*.

DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. RULE: *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.*

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam* (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. RULE: *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat, persuādet* (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorīgī (is prīncipātum obtinēbat) persuādet*.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

While, as long as

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. RULE: *Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est* (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

b. RULE: *Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.*

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

Until

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. RULE: *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. RULE: *Dum, donec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Examples: *Galli expectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.*

Before

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. RULE: *Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. RULE: *Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Example: *Galli magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Galli prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.*

After

237. RULE: *Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when (after, not while), simul ac, cum primum, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.*

Example: *ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

Cum

238. Cum has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when, after*;
causal, *since, because*;
adversative (concessive), *although*.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with *cum* is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. Causal and Adversative Cum.

RULE: *Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.*

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *his cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening*.

240. Temporal cum. Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

RULE: *Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

RULE: *Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.

a. Clauses of Date.

RULE: *Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.*

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principes erant Haedui* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum meaning whenever is usually followed by the indicative.*

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēflxerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.*

c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

RULE: *Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the cum clause.*

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another* (for *cum prōcessisset, cohortātī sunt*, *when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.*).

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

RULE: *Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.*

RULE: *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), *when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him* (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum cīvitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), *while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died* (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: *Cum* meaning *whenever* is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvelle-re poterant* (I, 25, 7), *when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.*

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. **RULE:** *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, *because*, *since*, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply *because* (*as he said*), (*as he thought*), (*as I said*), (*as I thought*), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) *reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), *they surpass the other Gauls because they fight*; (with the subjunctive) *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), *he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted*.

245. **RULE:** *Cum*, *since*, *because*, and often *quī*, *since he*, etc., are used with the subjunctive.

But the indicative is often used with *quī*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim*, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive *quī* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) *illī autem, quī omnia praeclāra sentīrent, negōtium suscepērunt* (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) *fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc.* For example with *cum*, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: *Quamquam*, *although*, and *etsī*, *tametsī*, *even if*, *although*, are used with the indicative.

Example: *etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverant, tamen suspicābātur* (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected.* But *quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet*.

247. RULE: *Cum*, *although*, and less commonly *quamvis* (*in Cicero*), *however much*, *however*, *although*, *quī*, *although he*, etc., *ut*, *although*, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for *cum* see 239) *quamvis senex sit, fortis est*, *however old he may be, he is brave*; *ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent* (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations.* But the indicative is sometimes used with *quī* when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: Substantive clauses with *quod*, *that*, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: *illa praetereō, quod Maelium occidit* (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.*

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that*, *whereas*. Example: *quod ūnum pāgum adortus es, nōlī ob eam rem dēspicere* (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions *sī, if, sī nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sīn, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. **Undetermined Present or Past (253).** *sī pugnāt, vincit, if he fights he conquers; sī pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. **Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254).** *sī pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; sī pugnāvisset, vicisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. **More Vivid (Confident) Future (256).** *sī pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. **Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257).** *sī pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Examples: *sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; quī fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnāvit nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: *A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: *sī fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnāvisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).*

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: *sī fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); sī fortis fuisset pugnāre dēbuit or dēbu-erat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).*

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *sī pugnābit eum laudābō*, *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him*; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, *whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised*.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *sī pugnet vincat*, *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer*; *quī pugnet laudētur*, *whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised*; *sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem*, *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him*.

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *sī veniat hīc adsumus*, *if he should come we are here*.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: **damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat** (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; **dīcat**, *he would say* (if he should be asked); **velim**, *I should like*. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. RULE: *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often **nē**. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: **magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit** (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us*; **modo nē** (or **nōn**) **discēdat eum vidēbō**, *if only he do not leave I shall see him*.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: *The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi, ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.*

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: **currit quasi timeat**, *he runs as if he were afraid*; **cucurrit quasi timēret**, *he ran as if he were afraid*.

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) *quis veniat?* *who would come?* (indirect) *rogō quis veniat*, *I ask who would come*; (direct) *quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) *rogāvī quid facerem*, *I asked what I was to do*.

264. RULE: *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) *quis vēnit?* *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit*, *I ask who came*; (direct) *ubi est?* *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset*, *he told me where he was*.

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by *num* or *-ne*, *whether* (no difference in meaning). *Sī* is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*. Examples: (direct) *venitne?* *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat*, or *rogō veniatne*, *I ask whether he is coming*; *expectāvit sī venirent*, *he waited to see whether they would come*.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by *necne*, instead of *annōn*. Examples: *rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset, an fūgisset*, *I asked whether he had fought or run away*; *rogāvī utrum pugnāvisset necne*, *I asked whether he had fought or not*.

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. *Direct discourse* repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave*.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. RULE: *Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).*

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: *mīles est fortis, the soldier is brave, becomes dixit mīlitem esse fortem, he said that the soldier was brave.*

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. RULE: *Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*. Examples: *ad Id. Apr. revertiminī, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes respondit: . . . ad Id. Apr. reverterentur (I, 7, 19), he replied . . . : (that) they should return, etc.; is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original nōlī dēspicere (219), do not despise).*

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: *An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original quid tibi vis, what do you want?)?*

II. RULE. *An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.*

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: *respondit: . . . num memoriam dēpōnere posse (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original I can not forget [can I?])?*

III. RULE. *A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.*

Example: *incūsāvit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original iūdicet. See 210, a)?*

269. Subordinate Clauses. RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod . . . superāssent* (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original *iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis*).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by *et*, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since *quō* connects with the preceding sentence *posse* might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of *saying* or *thinking*.

a. *Repraesentatiō.* But after a past verb of *saying* or *thinking* the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of *saying* or *thinking*; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dīcit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset*, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.* So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dīcit*, imperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dīcit*, pluperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *suī* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: *hunc mīlitem laudō, I praise this soldier*, may become *dīcō mē hunc mīlitem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier*, or *dīcit sē illum mīlitem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now to then, here to there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dīcit* or *dīxit*, *sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*; *sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dīcit* or *dīxit*, *sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. **RULE:** *The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.*

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (244). It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: *Caesar frūmentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat eī praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen*).

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: *Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.*

Example: *cum certissimae res accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset* (I, 19, 1), *since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.*

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: *Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.*

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of *desire* (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: *ire potest, he can go; ire potuit, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; ire debet, he ought to go; cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: *fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave.*

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet, it is permitted*, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: *ire oportet, one must go, literally to go is right; ire oportuit, one ought to have gone* (205, a), *literally to go was right; ei ire licuit, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; ire necesse est, one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-

sative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet*, *one ought to be brave*; *virō licet esse fortī (fortem)*, *a man may be brave*, lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*.

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. **RULE:** *The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.*

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a*, and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet*, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. **RULE:** *The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.*

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

a. Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*). Example: *mīlitēs pugnāre iussit*, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

b. With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire*, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmentem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potiri posse spērānt* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive. RULE: *The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.*

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fūgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled*, or *because he had been conquered he fled*; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc visō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a,) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes *pugnāns occisus est*, usually either *dum pugnat occisus est*, or *cum pugnāret, occisus est*; *seeing this he fled*, *cum hoc vīdisset fūgit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currit*, never *est currēns*.

285.

FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: *praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant* (I, 5. 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; *mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cūrō, cause, have* (literally *take care*), *dō, give over*, *suscipiō, undertake*. Examples: *pontem faciendum cūrat* (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; *cōsulibus senātus rem pūblicam dēfendendam dedit*, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: **visus fūgit**, *having been seen he fled*; **Caesare visō fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled*. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habēō**. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: **magnās cōpiās coāctās habet**, *he has great forces (which he has) collected*, or *he has collected great forces* (and still has them); while **magnās cōpiās coēgit**, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam**, *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded*.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: **fugiendī causā** (99, a), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum eī** (115), *for persuading him*; **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā**, **videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā**, and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī**. In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā**, **urbis** is the genitive mod-

ifying *causā* and *videndae* agrees with *urbis*, literally *for the sake of the city to be seen*. Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: *If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: *eī crēdendī causā*, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vēscor* (145) is used. Example: *spēs potiundī oppidī* (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

II. RULE: *If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) *ad effēmīnandōs animōs* (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) *urbis videndae causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: *bellandī cupiditās*, *a desire of fighting*; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, *desirous of seeing Caesar*; *bellandī causā vēnit*, *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting)*.

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—*meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, or *vestrī* with a genitive in *-ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: *suī cōservandī causā*, *for the sake of saving themselves*. The usual gerund would be *sē cōservandī*; the gerundive *suī cōservandōrum*.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose. Examples: *parātus ad proficiscendum*, *ready to set*

out; *ad Caesarem videndum* (gerundive, see 289, II), *venit, he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in,* and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: *in quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis* (III, 25, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

THE SUPINE

295. RULE: *The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

It may govern a direct object. Examples: *gratulātum vēnerunt* (I, 30, 2), *they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium* (I, 11, 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. RULE: *The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).*

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō,* is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mirābilis,* and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est.* Example: *perfacile factū* (I, 3, 16) lit. *very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.*

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius* (-a, -um), *Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis* (-e), *Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis, Sextilis, September* (-bris, -bre), *Octōber, November,* and *December.* Later *Quīntilis* was changed to *Iūlius,* in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus,* in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*,—*ārum*, *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Idūs*,—*-uum*, *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example *a. d. IV. Id. Iān.* = *ante diem quārtum Idūs Iānuāriās*. The logical, but less usual form is *diē quārtō ante Idūs Iānuāriās*, *on the fourth day before the Ides of January*. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH)

(ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = Kal. Iān.

(13 + 1 - 4 = 10) Jan. 10 = a. d. iv. Id. Iān. (13 + 1 - 10 = 4).

(28 + 2 - 8 = 22) Feb. 22 = a. d. viii. Kal. Mār. (28 + 2 - 22 = 8).

(7 + 1 - 4 = 4) July 4 = a. d. iv. Nōn. Iūl. (7 + 1 - 4 = 4).

GENERAL VOCABULARY

A., *abbr. for Aulus.*

ā, ab, or abs, *prep. with abl.; of place, from, away from, from the neighborhood of; with expressions of measure, off, away, at a distance of; of position or direction, at, on, in, on the side of; of time, from, since, after; of separation, source, etc., from; of agency, by, at the hands of.*

ab-aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*aliēnō, alienate*], *estrangle.*

ab-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., *disavow; with sē and the abl., resign, abdicate.*

ab-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., *remove, withdraw, conceal; hide.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., *lead away, take away, drive away.*

ab-eō, -īre, -īvī and -iī, -itum, intr., *go away, retire, vanish; come off, turn out.*

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [*ab+iaciō*], *throw or cast away, cast.*

abiēs, -etis, f., *the silver fir, fir-tree.*

abscidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr. [*abs+caedō*], *cut off, tear off or away.*

absēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of ab-sum*], *absent, away.*

ab-similis, -e, adj., *unlike.*

ab-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, intr., *stand from or aloof, withdraw.*

abs-tergeō, -ēre, -tersī, -tersum, tr., *wipe off or away.*

abstinentia, -ae, f. [*abstineō*], *abstinence, self-restraint.*

abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. and intr. [*abs+teneō*], *keep from, abstain from; absent oneself from; withhold, hinder.*

abs-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., *drag away, carry away by force.*

ab-sum, abesse, āfui, —, intr., *be away from, be lacking, be absent, be distant from; take no part in; ā bellō abesse, take no part in war.*

ac, *see atque.*

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [*ad+cēdō*], *draw near, approach; come to in addition, be added, enter into, be inspired in; undertake, take part in.*

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [*ad+celerō, hasten*], *hurry, make haste.*

accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum, tr. [*ad+-cendō, burn*], *set fire to, kindle, light.*

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of accipiō*], *acceptable, pleasing, popular.*

accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, intr. [*ad+cadō*], *fall to, fall; of weapons, strike; come to pass, happen, take place; be true of.*

accidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr. [*ad+caedō*], *cut at or into, cut deep, hew, notch.*

accingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctum, tr. [*ad+cingō*], *gird, arm, equip.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [*ad+capiō*], *take, take in, receive, accept; learn, hear, hear of; deal with, treat; w. finem, have, come to; w. incommodum or dētrimentum, suffer.*

acclivis, -e, adj. [*ad+clivus*], *sloping upward, rising, ascending, uphill.*

acclivitas, -ātis, f. [*acclivis*], *an ascent, acclivity.*

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of **accommodō**], adapted, fit, suited.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, arrange, adjust, put on.

accubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lie down.

accumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [ad+cumbō, recline], lay oneself down, recline at table

accūrātē, *adv.* [accūrātus, carefully wrought], carefully, with care.

accurrō, -ere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō], run to, hasten to.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ad+causa], accuse, blame, censure.

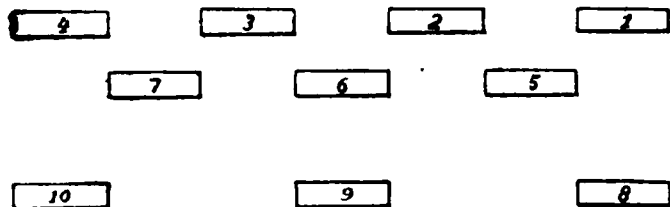
ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, harsh, severe; *w.* favilla, glowing.

acervus, -ī, *m.*, a heap.

Achaea, -ae, *f.*, the province of southern Greece. Map I, H, 6.

Achillēs, -is, *m.*, the hero of the Iliad, and the most famous Greek warrior in the Trojan war.

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, sharp edge; line of battle, battle-line; battle, engagement; **aciēs triplex**, a triple battle-line, the usual formation adopted by Caesar. In this arrangement, each legion was drawn up in three lines, one behind another, the first one consisting of four cohorts, and the second and third of three each. The cohorts were placed checkerwise, with the third line a little farther back from the second than the latter was from the front line. After the



preliminary skirmishing of the light-armed troops, with which the Romans commonly began battle, the three cohorts of the second line moved forward into the spaces be-

tween the four in front of them, thus presenting a solid front of seven cohorts. This was continued on the right and the left by the front lines of the neighboring legions, drawn up in a similar fashion. The three cohorts composing the rear line remained in their original position, for the purpose of affording support to the others.

ācriter, *adv.* [ācer], sharply, bravely, fiercely, vigorously, vehemently; *comp.*, ācrius, *sup.*, ācerrimē.

acta, -ae, *f.*, sea-shore.

Actium, -ī, *n.*, promontory and town in Epirus. Map I, G, 5.

actuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [agō], swift, swift-sailing; **actuāria** (sc. nāvis), swift boat, cutter. See nāvis.

acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of acuō, sharpen], sharpened, sharp, pointed.

ad, *prep.* with *acc.*; with verbs of motion, to, up to, toward; to the vicinity of; of position, at, near to, close by; to express purpose, for, to; of time, up to, until, on; **ad diem**, on the day, at the appointed time; with expressions of number or amount, almost, about, toward; in other relations, at, according to, up to, among, in the eyes of; used adverbially, with numerals, about.

ad-aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.*, make equal, equal; keep up with; **cursum adaequāre**, keep up with; be on a level or equal.

ad-amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, desire eagerly, covet.

ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, bring to, add; give, impart; **addere animum** or **animōs**, give courage, embolden; **sē adderē**, add oneself to, i.e., turn into.

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, bring to, lead, pull; induce, draw.

ad-eō, *adv.*, to this point, to such an extent, so far, so very, so; indeed.

ad-eō, -īre, -iī or -īvi, -itum, tr. and intr., go to, approach, reach; apply to; attack, assail; visit.

ad-equitō, -āre, -āvi, —, tr. [equitō, ride], ride up to.

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum, tr., bring or carry to, present; cause; bring forward, allege.

adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ad+faciō], do something to, treat, afflict, punish; with acc. and abl., reward with, visit with, inflict upon.

ad-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., affix, fasten to, attach.

ad-finis, -e, adj., adjacent to; as subst., m. and f., connection by marriage, connection.

adfinitās, -ātis, f. [adfinis], alliance by marriage; relationship.

adflictō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq. of adfligō], damage greatly, shatter, injure, wreck; throw down, overthrow; harass, destroy.

adflictus, -a, -um, adj. [pf part. of adfligō], overwhelmed, distressed.

ad-fligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, tr. [fligō, dash], strike, damage, injure; throw down, overthrow, overturn.

ad-for, -fārī, -fātus, tr. [for, speak], say or speak to, address.

adgredior, -ī, -gressus, tr. and intr. [ad+gradior], advance against, attack, undertake.

ad-gregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [gregō, collect in a flock], gather, assemble; join, attach.

ad-haereō, -ēre, —, —, intr., cleave or stick to, cling to.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr. [ad+habeō], apply; bring to, summon; admit, invite; turn to for counsel, consult; employ, use.

ad-hortor, -ārī, -ātus, tr., encourage, urge, incite.

ad-hūc, adv., up to this time, yet, as

yet, heretofore, to this day; **adhūc nōn or neque adhūc**, not as yet, not to this time.

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., leader of the *Sotiates*.

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [ad+iaciō], throw to, join to, annex, add; w. *aggerem*, throw up; pf. part. as adj., adjacent.

adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [ad+agō], urge, compel, drive or bring by force; cast, ram in, thrust; w. *iūs iurandum*, bind by oath.

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, tr. [ad+emō], take away, remove, deprive of; destroy.

aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō], a going to, access, approach; way of approach, entrance.

ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr., join to, add; associate.

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtum, tr., help, assist; contribute to, support.

ad-minister, -trī, m., assistant, attendant, priest.

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ministrō, serve], manage, administer; attend to, carry out, do.

admīrābilis, -e, adj. [admīror], wonderful, admirable.

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [admīror], admiration.

ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., wonder at, admire; be astonished.

ad-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., admit, receive, grant audience to; permit, incur; of a crime, commit; w. *equum*, give reins to.

ad-modum, adv., to the limit; very, very much, quite.

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., move toward, bring near or up; put to, apply; offer.

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, intr. [ad+alēscō, grow up], grow up. reach maturity or man's estate.

ad-operiō, -īre, -operuī, -opertum, tr.

- [operiō, cover], cover up or over, wrap, muffle.
- ad-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, choose, adopt.
- ad-orior, -irī, -ortus, tr.**, rise up against, fall upon, attack, assail; approach, address.
- ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, beseech, implore; worship, do homage to.
- ad-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, prepare, prepare for.
- ad-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr. and intr.**, drive or force to, land, put ashore, put in.
- ad-petō, -ere, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr.**, strive for, reach after; long for, desire; draw nigh, approach, be at hand.
- ad-plicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [plicō, fold], fold a thing on another, fold or bring near, apply; *sē adplicāre*, bend toward, lean; join.
- ad-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, carry, bring or convey to.
- ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.** [propinquō, approach], come near, approach.
- adripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, tr.** [ad + rapiō], snatch or take up, grasp.
- ad-quiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, intr.**, become quiet, rest; die.
- adroganter, adv.** [adrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly.
- adrogantia, -ae, f.** [adrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, insolence.
- ad-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, tr.** [sciscō, approve], take to oneself as allies, admit, receive.
- adsiduus, -a, -um, adj.** [adsideō, sit by], close at hand, ever present; continual, constant.
- ad-sistō, -ere, adstitī, —, intr.**, stand by or near, stand.
- adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr.** [adsuētus + faciō], accustom, inure.
- adsuētō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, tr. and intr.** [suēscō, become used], accustom; become accustomed or familiarized; be accustomed or wont.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr.**, be at, near, or present, be at hand; come, appear; help.
- ad-surgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, intr.**, rise, rise out of respect to.
- adulēscēns, -entis, adj.** [pres. part. of *adolēscō*], young; as *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, youth, young man or woman.
- adulēscēntia, -ae, f.** [adulēscēns], youth.
- adulēscēntulus, -ī, m.** [dim. of *adulēscēns*], very young man, stripling.
- aduncus, -a, -um, adj.**, curved inward, curved, hooked.
- adventus, -ūs, m.** [ad + veniō], a coming to, coming, arrival.
- adversārius, -a, -um, adj.** [advertō], hostile; as *subst.*, *m.*, opponent, enemy.
- adversum or adversus, adv. and prep.** [advertō], opposite; against.
- adversus, -a, -um, adj.**, turned toward, facing, in front, opposite; unfavorable, hostile.
- ad-vertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, tr.**, turn or direct toward, steer; *animum advertere*, observe, notice.
- ad-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.**, fly to or against, rush on or at, make an onset.
- aedificium, -ī, n.** [aedificō], building.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [aedēs, house + faciō], build.
- aedilis, -is, m.** [aedēs, house], aedile.
- Aegātēs, -ium, f.**, a group of islands west of Sicily. *Map II, C, 7.*
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj.**, ill, sick.
- aegrē, adv.** [aeger], painfully, with difficulty, scarcely; *aegrē ferre*, feel distress at, be annoyed at.

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt, the country round about the lower Nile. *Map I, J, 7-8.*

Aemilius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Aemilius Paulus, consul in 219 and 216 B.C.

(2) Marcus Aemilius Lepidus, member of the second triumvirate, and consul in 46 B.C.

(3) Lucius Aemilius, a decurion in Caesar's army.

aëneūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of bronze or copper.

aënus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of copper or bronze; as *subst.*, *n.*, a brazen vessel, kettle.

Aeolius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Aeolian; of Aeolus, god of the winds.

aequālis, -e, *adj.*, equal, like; of the same age; as *subst.*, *m.*, contemporary.

aequāliter, *adv.* [aequālis], equally, uniformly, evenly.

aequē, *adv.* [aequus], equally, in like manner; **aequē . . . quam**, as . . . as.

Aequi, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of central Italy. *Map I, B, 7.*

aequinocmium, -ī, *n.* [aequus+nox], the equinox.

aequitās, -ātis, *f.* [aequus], equality; fairness; evenness of mind, contentment.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [aequus], make equal or even, equalize, make level; *pass.*, be equal, be as large as.

aequor, -oris, *n.* [aequus], even surface; surface of the sea; the sea generally.

aequum, -ī, *n.* [aequus], level place, plain; fairness, justice.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level; fair, just; favorable.

āēr, āeris (*acc.* āera), *m.*, the air, atmosphere.

aerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of cop-

per, copper-; as *subst.*, *f.*, mine; *n.*, treasury, fund.

aes, aeris, *n.*, copper; money; **aes aliēnum**, another's money, debt.

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aestimō], valuation.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, reckon, estimate, regard; consider.

aestuārium, -ī, *n.* [aestus], low marsh-land, tidal swamp, estuary, marsh.

aestuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [aestus], be in violent agitation, boil; rage; glow.

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat, boiling, surging; summer; tide.

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, time of life, life, age; old age, years; life of man, a generation, men of an age.

aeternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aevum], perpetual, for all time, immortal.

aethēr, -eris, *m.*, the upper air, air; sky, heaven.

aevum, -ī, *n.*, eternity; lifetime, generation; age, old age.

Āfer, Āfri, *m.*, an African; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, Africans, Carthaginians.

Āfrānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, the continent of Africa. *Map I, C-F, 6-8.*

Āfricānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or in Africa, African; as *subst.*, *m.*, a cognomen.

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, African; (*sc. ventus*) the southwest wind, which blows from Africa to Italy.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, farm; land, country; territory, district; plain.

Agēsilāus, -ī, *m.*, a king of Sparta.

agger, -eris, *m.* [ad+gerō], materials for making a mound or earthwork; a mound, rampart; earthwork surrounding a Roman camp. The agger constructed by the Romans in besieging a city was a dike or earth-

work, built of tree-trunks, earth, and massive stones. If the country round the besieged town offered no great hindrance to the operations of the besiegers, the **agger** was built parallel with the city wall, and equa to it in height; and, being provided with palisades and towers, served to protect the attackers and render their offensive operations secure. If the country was rough and broken, the construction of the **agger** was more difficult. It was begun at a considerable distance from the town, and, gradually rising in height, approached the wall at right angles with the latter. Covered galleries within the structure itself assured safety to the besiegers. It was built up to the ditch in front of the town, and its highest point was on a level with the foot of the city wall, or, in some cases, as high or even higher than the top of the wall. The breadth varied from 40 to 60 feet. When the **agger** was completed, it afforded a point of vantage for the attack, or a gradual approach by which the movable tower and the battering ram could be brought up against the wall.

Agis, -īdis, *m.*, a king of Sparta.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of **agō**], set in motion, shake; revolve, consider.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [**agō**], a marching army or column; army, band, troop; line; in **agmine**, on the march; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.

agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *tr.* [**ad** + (**g**) **nōscō**], recognize, acknowledge.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *tr.*, put in motion, drive, extend, bring up, advance; pursue; do, act, transact, perform; *w.* **triumphum**, celebrate; *w.* **bellum**, carry on, wage; treat, confer; arrange, decide, urge; of time, pass, live through;

annum agēns vicēsimum, in his twentieth year; *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, past; *w.* **silentium**, keep; *inv.* as *interj.*, age! come now!

agricola, -ae, *m.* [**ager** + **colō**], farmer.

aiō, *defect.*, say yes, say; tell.

āla, -ae, *f.*, a wing.

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, active, eager, ready.

alacritās, -ātis, *f.* [**alacer**], activity, spirit, eagerness, readiness.

ālārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [**āla**], belonging to a wing; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, auxiliary troops.

Albānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alba**], Alban, of Alba; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Albans.

Albinus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

alcēs, -is, *f.*, an elk; moose-deer.

Alesia, -ae, *f.*, a town of the *Mandubii*, the modern Alise Sainte Reine. *Map IV, F, 3.*

Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, a city at the mouth of the Nile, founded by Alexander the Great. *Map I, J, 7.*

aliās, *adv.* [**alius**], at another time; **aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**], of another, of others; strange, foreign; unsuitable, unfavorable.

alimentum, -ī, *n.* [**alō**], nourishment, maintenance, sustenance.

aliō, *adv.* [**alius**], to another place, elsewhere.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time, for a while.

aliquandō, *adv.*, once upon a time, once; finally, at length; of the future, one day, some time or other.

aliquantō, *adv.* [**aliquantus**], in some degree, somewhat, considerably.

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, a little; as *subst.*, *n.*, a good deal, some.

aliquis (-quī), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (-quod), *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, some one, somebody, something; anyone; as *adj.*, some, any.

aliquot, *indecl. num. adj.*, several, some, a small number of.

aliter, *adv.* [**alius**], otherwise, in any other way, on any other condition; **aliter ac**, otherwise than, different from (what).

alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other, different, else; **alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another, the one . . . the other, **aliū** . . . **aliū**, some . . . others.

Allia, -ae, *f.*, a small tributary of the Tiber. *Map I, B, 7.*

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a powerful Gallic tribe of the Province. *Map IV, F-G, 4.*

alō, -ere, **alūī**, **altum** (**alitum**), *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; keep, rear; increase, foster.

Alpēs, -ium, *f.*, the Alps. *Map I, D-E, 3-4.*

Alpicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**Alpēs**], Alpine; as *subst.*, *m.*, the inhabitants of the Alps.

altē, *adv.* [**altus**], high, on high.

alter, -tera, -terum, *adj.*, one of two, the other; a second, another; **alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other; *in pl.*, **alterī** . . . **alterī**, the one party . . . the other.

altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**altus**], height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of alō*], nourished, well-grown, high, lofty; deep; of silence, profound; proud; as *subst.*, *n.*, the deep, the sea.

alūta, -ae, *f.*, tanned leather, leather.

alveus, -ī, *m.* [**alvus**, belly], the bed or channel of a river.

amāns, -antis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of amō*], fond of, attached or devoted to; as *subst.*, *m. and f.*, a lover.

ambactus, -ī, *m.* [*Celtic*], a dependant, retainer, vassal.

Ambarri, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. *Map IV, F, 3-4.*

ambi- (**amb-**, **am-**, **an-**), *prep.*, in composition only, around, on both sides.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe about modern Amiens. *Map IV, D-E, 1-2.*

Ambibarii, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of Normandy. *Map IV, B-C, 2.*

Ambiliatī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Picardy. *Map IV, C, 3.*

Ambiorix, -īgis, *m.*, king of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Haedui. *Map IV, E, 3.*

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse. *Map IV, F, 1.*

ambō, -ae, -ō, *num. adj.*, both.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [**āmēns**], bewilderment of mind, madness, folly.

amicē, *adv.* [**amicus**], in a friendly manner, kindly.

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [**amicus**], friendship, alliance.

amictus, -ūs, *m.* [**amiciō**, wrap about], any article of outer clothing, a veil, mantle.

amicus, -ī, *m.*, a friend.

amicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly, loving, kind.

ā-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, dismiss, lose.

amnis, -is, *m.*, a river.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, love, be in love; **amātus**, beloved.

amor, -ōris, *m.* [**amō**], love, lover.

amphora, -ae, *f.*, amphora, jar.

amplector, -ī, -plexus, *tr.* [**ambi-**+**plectō**, weave], cling to, embrace.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**amplus**+**faciō**], enlarge, increase.

ampliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**amplus**], increase, extend, enlarge.

amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**amplus**], wide

extent, size, breadth; importance, consequence.

amplius, *n. comp. adj.* [amplus], as *adv.*, more; as *subst.*, more, a greater amount.

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, of large extent, spacious; noted, illustrious, renowned, magnificent, splendid.

an, *conj.*, introducing the second part of a disjunctive question, or, or rather, or indeed; *elliptically*, implying a negative answer, before an apparently single question, or is it that? can it be that? with the first member omitted, whether.

Anartēs, -ium, *m.*, a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.

Ancalitēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of south-east Britain. *Map IV, C, 1.*

anceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [an = ambi- + caput], with two sides or fronts, double; two-edged.

ancilla, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of ancula*, maid-servant], a handmaid, maid-servant.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, an anchor.

Ancus, -ī, *m.*, praenomen of Ancus Marcius, fourth king of Rome.

Andebrogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi.

Andēs, -ium, *m.*, a people of Anjou. *Map IV, C, 3.*

Andriscus, -ī, *m.*, a Persian pretender to the throne of Macedonia.

angulus, -ī, *m.*, a corner, angle.

angustiae, -ārum, *f.* [angustus], narrowness, smallness, narrow place, defile; straits, difficulties.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined; in **angustō**, at a crisis.

anhēlitus, -ūs, *m.* [anhēlō, pant], panting, breath, breathing.

anīlis, -e, *adj.* [anus], of an old woman, old woman's.

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life, breath of life, vital principle; soul.

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.* [animum advertō], give attention to, observe, notice; *w. in and acc.*, punish.

animal, -ālis, *n.* [anima], a living being, animal.

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, mind; feelings, heart, spirit; disposition, nature; impulse; courage, encouragement; pleasure; **animī causā**, for pleasure.

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], of last year, a year old.

annus, -ī, *m.*, a year; *pl.*, years, life.

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus], lasting a year; annual.

ānser, -eris, *m.*, a goose.

ante, *adv. and prep.*; as *adv.*, before; in front; formerly, previously, ago; **ante-quam** or **ante . . . quam**, sooner . . . than, before; as *prep.*, before, before the time of, in front of.

anteā, *adv.*, before, previously, formerly.

ante-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.*, precede, go ahead; surpass.

ante-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry before, prefer.

antemna, -ae, *f.*, a sail-yard, sail.

Antemnātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Antemnae, a town north of Rome. *Map I, A, 7.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place or set before, regard of more importance, prefer.

ante-stō, -stāre, -stetī, —, *intr.*, excel, be superior to.

Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, name of a Syrian king, Antiochus III.

antīquitus, *adv.* [antīquus], from early times, long ago, anciently.

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante], old, belonging to former times.

Antistius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Antistius Reginus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

- Antōnius, -ī, m.,** a Roman name. (1) Gaius Antonius, consul in 63 B.C. (2) Marcus Antonius, a lieutenant of Caesar, a member of the second triumvirate, and consul in 44 B.C. (3) Lucius Antonius, brother of (2), consul in 41 B.C.

antrum, -ī, n., cave, cavern.

ānulus, -ī, m. [*dim. of ānus*, ring], ring, signet-ring.

anus, -ūs, f., an old woman, old wife; as *adj.*, old.

Āonius, -a, -um, adj., of Aonia or Boeotia, Boeotian; as *subst.*, m. pl., Boeotians.

Ap., *abbr. for Appius.*

Āpennīnus, -ī, m., the Apennines. *Map II, B-D, 2-3.*

aper, apri, m., a wild boar.

aperiō, -ire, aperui, apertum, tr., open, unlock; disclose, make known.

apertē, adv. [*apertus*], openly, manifestly.

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of aperiō*], uncovered, exposed, open.

Apollō, -inis, m., son of Jupiter and Latona, god of archery, prophecy, music, poetry, and medicine.

appareō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr. [*ad+pareō*], appear, make one's appearance.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call by name; name, call; call upon.

Appius, -ī, m., a praenomen; as *adj.*, Appius, -a, -um, of Appius, Appian.

Apr., *abbr. for Aprīlis, -e, adj.* [*aperiō*], of April, April.

aptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [*aptus*], fit, place, adjust.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted, suited, adapted.

apud, prep. with acc., at, at the house of, with; near, among, in; in the possession of; in the opinion of, in the writings of.

Āpūlia, -ae, f., Apulia, a district of southeastern Italy. *Map II, E-F, 4-5.*

aqua, -ae, f., water.

aquātīō, -ōnis, f. [*aquor*, fetch water], getting or bringing water.

aquila, -ae, f., an eagle; standard. The aquila, the standard of the legion, was a gold, silver, or bronze eagle set on a long staff. It was in the care of the *primi pilus* and served to show the position of the legion's commander.



AQUILAE

Aquileia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul. *Map II, D, 1.*

Aquillō, -ōnis, m., the north wind, wind.

Aquitānia, -ae, f., Aquitania, southwestern Gaul between the Garonne

and the Pyrenees. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Aquitanian; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Aquitani.

āra, -ae, *f.*, an altar.

Arar, -aris, *m.*, a tributary of the Rhone, the modern Saône. Map IV, F-G, 3-4.

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, judge, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -ī, *n.* [arbiter], judgment, opinion; discretion, pleasure.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [arbiter], testify; judge, decide, think, believe.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, a tree.

arboreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [arbor], of a tree, tree's.

arbustum, -ī, *n.* [arbor], a place where trees are planted, grove, orchard.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for, call.

Ardea, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Rutuli, south of Rome. Map I, A, 8.

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *intr.*, burn, be burned, be consumed; be inflamed with emotion or passion.

Arduenna, -ae, *f.*, a forest of north-eastern Gaul, the Ardennes. Map IV, F-G, 1-2.

arduum, -ī, *n.* [arduus], a steep place, height.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep, difficult; lofty, towering aloft.

Aremoricae, -ārum, *f.*, *adj.* [Celtic], along the sea, **Aremonican**; **Aremoricae civitatēs**, the coast peoples between the Loire and the Seine. Map IV, B-D, 2.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver.

Argos, *n.* (only in *nom.* and *acc.*), or **Argī**, -ōrum, *m.*, a city of the eastern part of the Peloponnesus. Map I, H, 6.

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry, parching; as *subst.*, *n.*, dry land.

ariēs, -ietis, *m.*, a ram; battering ram, a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; a buttress.



Ariminum, -ī, *n.*, a town of Umbria, on the Adriatic. Map II, D, 3.

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, a German king, defeated in Gaul by Caesar in 58 B.C.

Aristidēs, -is, *m.*, an Athenian statesman.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, tools; arms; weapons, equipment; *fig.*, war; in **armis esse**, be under arms, be ready for service.

armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō], implements; esp. tackle or rigging of a ship.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō], armor, equipment; armed soldiers; **levis armātūra**, light infantry. The auxiliaries of the **levis armātūra** were generally equipped with the weapons of their own countries. They wore leathern cuirasses and carried small round shields. Caesar placed no great reliance on them, but usually employed them at the beginning of his battles, to make a show of numbers and force. When a battle had been won by the legionaries, it was also the duty of the light-armed soldiers to join the **equitēs** in the pursuit of the enemy. For the equipment of the light-armed soldier see *illus.* facing p. 201.

Armenia, -ae, *f.*, a country in Asia, divided into Armenia Major and Minor. Map I, J, 4.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [arma], arm, equip, fit out; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, armed, in arms; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, armed men.

arō, **arāre**, **arāvī**, **arātum**, *tr.*, plow.

ars, artis, f., skill, art, the arts; artifice, craft, cunning.

Artaxerxēs, -is (*acc. -ēn*), *m.*, a king of the Persians.

artē, adv. [*artus*, shut up], in narrow compass, closely, tightly.

articulus, -ī, m. [*dim. of artus*], a little joint, joint, knuckle.

artificium, -ī, n. [*artifex*, artisan], a trade, handicraft.

Arvernī, -ōrum, m., a people of Celtic Gaul. *Map IV, E, 3-4.*

arvum, -ī, n. [*arō*], arable land, field; *pl.*, fields, plain, country.

arx, arcis, f., citadel, fortress.

ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, tr. and intr. [*ad+scandō*, climb], mount, climb, ascend; go on board.

ascēsus, -ūs, m. [*ascendō*], a climbing up; way up, ascent, approach.

Asia, -ae, f., Asia Minor. *Map I, I-J, 4-6.*

Asina, -ae, m., a cognomen; *esp. Gn. Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul 260 B.C.*

aspectus, -ūs, m. [*aspiciō*], look; appearance, aspect.

aspergō, -inis, f. [*aspergō*, scatter], a sprinkling; spray, drops.

aspis, -idis, f., a viper, asp, adder.

ast, see at.

astrum, -ī, n., a star; *pl.*, stars, the sky, heaven.

at (ast), conj. with stronger adversative force than *autem* or *sed*, used to contradict or introduce objections, but, yet.

Atella, -ae, f., a town in Campania. *Map II, D, 5.*

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., black, dark.

Athēniēnsis, -e, adj., of Athens; *m.*, as *subst.*, an Athenian.

Atīlius, -ī, m., name of a Roman gens.

Atlantiadēs, -ae, m., a descendant of Atlas, *esp. Mercury, his grandson.*

atque or (before consonants) ac, conj. [*ad+-que*], and; and also, and even, and especially; with words of likeness or unlikeness, as, than; after *alius*, from.

Atrebās, -ātis, m., an Atrebatian; **Atrebātēs, -um** (*-ī, -ōrum*), a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, E, 1.*

Atrius, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp. Quintus Atrius, one of Caesar's officers.*

attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, tr. [*ad+tangō*], touch, reach, attain; touch upon, border upon, adjoin.

attollō, -ere, —, —, tr. [*ad+tollō*], to raise, lift up.

attonitus, -a, -um, adj. [*attonō, stun*], thunderstruck, amazed.

attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. [*ad+tribuō*], allot to, assign.

Atuatucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutons. *Map IV, F, 1.*

auctor, -ōris, m. [*augeō*], a producer, originator, instigator, author; giver; cause; of a weapon, wielder, thrower.

auctōritās, -ātis, f. [*auctor*], a producing; authority, influence, dignity; prestige.

auctus, -a, -um, adj. [*augeō*], increased, rich.

audācia, -ae, f. [*audāx*], daring, boldness.

audācter, adv. [*audāx*], boldly, bravely, fiercely.

audāx, -ācis, adj., bold, daring; presumptuous; violent.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, tr. and intr., dare, venture, be courageous or daring; *pres. part. as adj.*, daring, bold.

audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, tr., hear, listen to; hear of; *dictō audiēns*, obedient.

auditiō, -ōnis, f. [*audiō*], hearing, hearsay, rumor.

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, tr. [ab+ferō], take away, snatch away, carry away, remove; carry off; bear, waft.

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, tr., increase, augment.

augurium, -ī, n. [augur, augur], observance of omens, augury.

Augustus, -ī, m., Majestic, a cognomen conferred on all the Roman emperors; especially the emperor Octavianus, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar.

Aulerci, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people divided into several branches: (1) Aulerci Brannovices, Map IV, F, 3; (2) Aulerci Cenomani, Map IV, D, 2; (3) Aulerci Eburvices, Map IV, D, 2, and perhaps (4) Aulerci Diablintes, Map IV, C, 2.

aura, -ae, f., air in motion, breeze, wind; air, atmosphere.

aurātus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], adorned or covered with gold, gilded.

Aurēlius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], of gold, golden.

auriga, -ae, m., charioteer, driver.

auris, -is, f., the ear.

aurōra, -ae, f., the dawn, daybreak, morning.

aurum, -ī, n., gold, anything made of gold.

Aurunculeius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Ausci, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Aquitania. Map IV, D, 5.

aut, conj., or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.

autem, conj., the weakest form of adversative, and so never first in its clause, but, however; used merely to indicate transition, moreover.

autumnālis, -e, adj. [autumnus, autumn], of autumn, autumnal.

auxiliāris, -e, adj. [auxilium], aiding,

auxiliary; *m. pl. as subst.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [auxilium], give aid, help, assist.

auxilium, -ī, n. [augeō], aid, help; resource, resort; *n. pl.*, auxiliary troops, reinforcements. *The auxilia consisted of troops raised in the provinces or in allied states, and placed under the command of Roman praefecti. Though some were armed in the Roman fashion, they were for the most part equipped with the weapons of their native countries. Caesar employed auxiliaries from Gaul, Spain, Illyricum, Numidia, and Germany, as well as his Balearic slingers and Cretan bowmen. The whole number of his light-armed troops, his slingers and bowmen, and his cavalry, belonged to the auxiliary force.*

avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed.

Aventinus, -a, -um, adj., Aventine; mōns Aventinus, the Aventine Hill. Map III, D, 5.

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr., turn away, turn; *pf. part.*, āversus, turned away; having the head turned; in the rear.

avis, -is, f., bird.

avus, -ī, m., grandfather.

Axona, -ae, m., a river of Belgic Gaul, the Aisne. Map IV, E-F, 2.

B

Babylōnius, -a, -um, adj., of Babylon, Babylonian.

Baccheius, -a, -um, adj., Bacchic, of Bacchus.

Bacēnis, -is, f. (*sc. silva*), the forest Bacenis; probably the modern Harz and Thüringerwald. Map IV, H-I, 1.

baculum, -ī, n., stick, walking-stick.

Baculus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

Baleāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic, of the Balearic isles. *Map I, C-D, 5.*

barba, -ae, *f.*, the beard.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, strange, barbarous; *as subst., m. pl.*, foreigners, barbarians.

Barca, -ae, *m.*, surname of *Hamilcar*.

Basilus, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of one of *Caesar's* lieutenants.

Batāvī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe living about the mouths of the *Rhine*. *Map IV, F, 1.*

Baucis, -idis (*acc. -in*), *f.*, an old woman, wife of *Philemon*.

beātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*beō*, bless], blessed; rich.

Belgae, -ārum, *m.*, the Belgians, a nation of northern *Gaul*. *Map IV, D-G, 1-2.*

Belgium, -ī, *n.*, Belgium, the country of the *Belgae*. *Map IV, D-G, 1-2.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*bellicus*], warlike, fierce.

bellicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*bellum*], of or in war; military.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [*bellum*], wage war, fight.

Bellovaeī, -ōrum, *m.*, a *Belgic* tribe about modern *Beauvais*. *Map IV, D-E, 2.*

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war.

bene, *adv.* [*bonus*], well, rightly, successfully, highly; *comp.*, *melior*, *sup.*, *optimē*.

beneficium, -ī, *n.* [*bene+faciō*], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, *n.*, a city of the *Haedui* on *Mount Beuvray* near modern *Autun*. *Map IV, E-F, 3.*

Bibrax, -ctis, *f.*, a town of the *Remi*. *Map IV, E, 2.*

Bibroci, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of south-east *Britain*. *Map IV, C, 1.*

Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. *Lucius Calpurnius Bibulus*, consul in 59 *B.C.*

bi-color, -ōris, *adj.*, of two colors, two-colored.

bicornis, -e, *adj.* [*bis+cornū*], with two horns, two-pronged.

bīduum, -ī, *n.* [*bis+diēs*], period of two days, two days.

biennium, -ī, *n.* [*bis+annus*], period of two years, two years.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m.*, an *Aquitania* people in modern *La Bigorre*. *Map IV, C-D, 5.*

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, by twos, two each, two apiece.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [*bis+pedālis*, of a foot], of two feet, two feet in length or thickness.

bipertitō, *adv.* [*bis+partior*], in two parts or divisions.

bis, *num. adv.*, twice, doubly, in two ways.

Bīthŷnia, -ae, *f.*, a country in *Asia Minor*. *Map I, I, 5.*

Bīthŷnīi, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of *Bithynia*.

Biturigēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of central *Gaul*. *Map IV, D-E, 3.*

blanditia, -ae, *f.* [*blandus*], flattery; *pl.*, flatteries, blandishments; fondness.

Boduognātus, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the *Nervii*.

Boeōtī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of *Greece*.

Bōi (*Boīi*), -ōrum, *m.*, a powerful *Celtic* tribe, part of which settled among the *Haedui*. *Map IV, E, 3.*

bonitās, -ātis, *f.* [*bonus*], goodness, fertility.

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, worthy, kind, kindly, well-disposed; skillful; *n. as subst.*, good, excellence, advantage; *n. pl. as subst.*, goods, property; *comp.*, *melior*, *melius*; *sup.*, *optimus*, -a, -um, best; excellent.

bōs, *bovis*, *m. and f.*, bull, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle.

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, forearm, arm.

Brannovicēs, -um, *m.*, a division of the Aulerci. *Map IV, F, 3.*

Bratuspantium, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bellovaci. *Map IV, E, 2.*

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief; small; **brevī** (*sc. tempore*), in a short time, quickly.

brevitās, -ātis, *f.* [*brevis*], shortness, short stature.

Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain. *Map IV, A-D, 1.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Britain, British. *Map I, C, 1.*

Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the people of Britain, Britons.

brūma, -ae, *f.* [*for brevima = brevis-sima*], the shortest day, the winter solstice; winter.

Bruttii, -ōrum, *m.*, the Bruttians, inhabitants of the southwestern point of Italy. *Map II, F, 6.*

Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a family name of the gens Junia (*literally*, Dull).

(1) Lucius Junius Brutus, nephew of Tarquinius Superbus, and one of the first consuls at Rome.

(2) Marcus Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

(3) Decimus Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

būcina, -ae, *f.*, a crooked horn or trumpet; a Triton's shell. The name **būcina** was applied to a large curved horn used in the Roman army to indicate the ends of the watches at night, and to sound the reveille in the morning. See *illus. facing page 201.*

busta, see **bustum**.

bustum, -ī, *n.*, often *pl.*, a lighted or burned-out funeral pyre, tomb, grave.

buxum, -ī, *n.* [*buxus*, box-tree], box-wood.

C

C., *abbr. for Gāius.*

C, *for centum, etc.*

Cabūrus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

cacūmen, -inis, *n.*, the top, tip, summit, peak; top of a tree.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [*cadō*], fallen or dead body, corpse.

cadō, -ere, *cecidi*, **cāsūrus**, *intr.*, fall; fall dead, be slain.

cādūceus, -ī, *m.*, herald's staff.

cādūcifer, -ī, *m.*, *adj.* [*cādūceus + ferō*], bearing a herald's staff, an epithet of Mercury.

Cadūrci, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Aquitania. *Map IV, D, 4.*

caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind; not seen, concealed, hidden, obscure.

caedēs, -is, *f.* [*caedō*], cutting, slaughter, bloodshed, murder.

caedō, -ere, *cecidi*, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, hew, cut down; beat, strike; rout; kill, slay.

caelestis, -e, *adj.* [*caelum*], of heaven, heavenly, divine; *m. pl. ds subst.*, heavenly beings or objects, divinities.

caelicola, -ae, *m. and f.* [*caelum + colō*], a god, divinity.

Caelius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Caelian; **mōns Caelius**, the Caelian Hill at Rome. *Map III, F, 4.*

caelō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, to engrave in relief, carve, engrave.

caelum, -ī, *n.*, the sky, heaven, esp. as the abode of the gods.

Caemānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, F, 1.*

Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of the town of Caenina, northeast of Rome. *Map I, B, 7.*

caenum, -ī, *n.*, filth, mire.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, G, 1.*

caeruleus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*caelum*], like the sky, dark-blue, azure.

Caesar, -aris, m., a family name in the Julian gens. (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror and dictator. (2) Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, the emperor, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar.

caespes, -itis, m. [caedō], a cut sod, turf; grassy field, sward.

calamitās, -ātis, f., loss, misfortune, calamity; casualty, defeat.

caleō, -ēre, -uī, calitūrus, intr., be warm or hot.

Caletī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um), m., a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

cāligō, -inis, f., mist, fog; darkness.

calliditās, -ātis, f. [callidus], cunning, shrewdness.

callidus, -a, -um, adj. [calleō, be skillful], shrewd, adroit, skillful.

cālō, -ōnis, m., soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. The cālōnēs were usually slaves.

Camillus, -ī, m., a cognomen; esp. Lucius Furius Camillus, a famous leader of the Romans in the war against the Samnites.

Campānia, -ae, f., a district south of Latium. Map II, D-E, 5.

campester, -tris, -tre, adj. [campus], of a plain, flat, level; loca campestria, level ground.

campus, -ī, m., a plain, open space or country, field; of the sea, surface, expanse; **Campus Mārtius,** a grassy plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars. Map III, C, 1-2.

candidus, -a, -um, adj. [candeō, be bright], shining, radiant, white, bright, fair.

Caninius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Gaius Caninius Rebilus, a legate of Caesar.

canistrum, -ī, n., basket of reed, plaited basket.

canna, -ae, f., a reed, cane.

Cannae, -ārum, f., a small town in Apulia. Map II, E, 4.

Cannēnsis, -e, adj., of Cannae.

canō, -ere, cecinī, —, tr. and intr., sing; play, sound.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Spain. Map IV, A-B, 5.

Cantium, -ī, n., a district of southeastern England, Kent. Map IV, D, 1.

cānus, -a, -um, adj., white, gray, hoary; w. seges, yellow.

capella, -ae, f. [dim. of caper], a she-goat, goat.

caper, -prī, m., a he-goat, goat.

capillus, -ī, m. [dim. akin to caput], the hair of the head, hair.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, tr., take, take possession of, capture, seize; reach, receive, get; choose; take on, assume; tempt, attract; be large enough for, contain, hold; of mental impressions, take in, conceive; w. cōnsilium, form; w. arma, take up.

Capitōlium, -ī, n. [caput], the chief temple of Jupiter at Rome, the Capitol; the Capitoline Hill on which the temple was built; the citadel of Rome. Map III, D, 3.

capitulātim, adv. [caput], by heads, summarily.

capra, -ae, f. [caper], a she-goat.

captiva, -ae, f. [captivus], a female captive, captive.

captivus, -ī, m. [capiō], prisoner, captive.

captō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of capiō], try to catch, catch at eagerly, strive for, seize.

captus, -ūs, m. [capiō], taking, seizing; capacity.

Capua, -ae, f., a city in Campania. Map II, D, 5.

caput, -itis, n., the head, top; source, mouth; a person, individual; life, citizenship; capitis poena, capital

punishment; **capitis damnātus**, condemned on a capital charge.

Carcasō, -ōnis, f., a town of the Province, modern Carcassonne. Map IV, E, 5.

carcer, -eris, m., prison, dungeon.

cardō, -inis, m., the pivot and socket on which the doors of the ancients turned; a hinge.

Cāria, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor. Map I, I, 5-6.

cārica, -ae, f. [**Cāricus**, of Caria], a Carian fig; dried fig.

carīna, -ae, f., a hull, bottom of a ship; poet., a boat, craft, ship.

carmen, -inis, n., a song, verse, air; prophecy; charm, incantation.

Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe between the Seine and Loire, near modern Chartres. Map IV, D-E, 2-3.

carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat.

carpō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, tr., to pluck, pick; crop, graze; carp at, censure.

carrus, -ī, m., a cart.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., of Carthage; as subst., m., a Carthaginian.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city on the northern coast of Africa. Map I, E, 6.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, beloved.

Carvilius, -ī, m., a British prince of Kent.

casa, -ae, f., a hut, cottage.

Casca, -ae, m., a cognomen.

cāseus, -ī, m., cheese.

Cassī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southeast Britain. Map IV, C, 1.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., of or with Cassius.

Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

(1) Spurius Cassius Viscellinus, first **magister equitum**, 501 B.C.

(2) Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the

Tigurini. (3) Gaius Cassius Longinus, one of the murderers of Caesar.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., the British commander-in-chief who fought against Caesar.

castellum, -ī, n. [dim. of **castrum**], a fortress, stronghold; redoubt.

Casticus, -ī, m., a chief of the Sequanians.

castrum, -ī, n., a fortress; usually pl., **castra, -ōrum**, a military encampment, camp; **castra pōnere** or **castra mētārī**, to pitch a camp. The site of the **castra** was always chosen with the utmost care. When the army was nearing the end of a march, a detachment was sent forward under the command of several centurions, to find the best ground for the purpose. If possible, a gently-sloping hill was selected, which commanded the country around, and about which wood, water, and fodder were easily to be had. Before the main body of the army arrived, the camp had been surveyed and staked off, and immediately upon the coming up of the legions, their packs and weapons were laid aside, and the work of fortification was begun. The camp was usually laid off in the form of a square or oblong, with rounded corners (though the nature of the ground often made some modification of the normal plan necessary) and was invariably surrounded by a rampart and a trench. Inside the wall stretched an open space (**intervāllum**) of sometimes 200 feet in breadth, which served not only as a place where the pack-animals and baggage might be bestowed, but also afforded the soldiers security from missiles or firebrands that might be thrown by the enemy. At or near the middle of the camp lay the **praetōrium**, where the tents of the general and

his staff were placed. In front of this were the **augurāle** or place of sacrifice, and the **forum**, where the soldiers assembled when the commander addressed them; and back of the **praetōrium** was placed the **quaestōrium**, where were kept the booty, in charge of the quaestor, and the hostages. Three large roadways or **viae** ran through the camp, the **via principālis** and **via quintāna**, which lay along the front and rear of the **praetōrium**, and the **via praetōria**, which ran from the forum to the front or praetorian gate. Four entrances were made in the wall, the **porta praetōria** at the front, the **porta decumāna** at the rear, and the **portae principālis dextra** and **principālis sinistra** on the right and left sides respectively. The gates were cleverly protected by earthworks in such a way that an enemy must turn to the left in order to enter, thus exposing his right side, unprotected by the shield, to the defenders of the gate. The way in which Caesar's soldiers were distributed in their camp is not precisely known, but every part of the army had its allotted place, which it invariably took, and, to the slightest detail, the utmost system and order prevailed throughout. Usually about three hours were required to complete the fortification of a camp. For plan of the **castra** see p. 47.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [**cadō**], a falling, fall; an accident, chance, occurrence; emergency; pass, extremity; mischance, misfortune, calamity, fate.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequanians.

catēna, -ae, *f.*, a chain, fetter.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, Catiline, a cognomen; esp. Lucius Sergius Catiline, who conspired against the Roman government in 63 B.C.

Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis, a champion of the senatorial party against Caesar.

Catulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

Caturigēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 4.*

causa, -ae, *f.*, a cause, reason, excuse; *abl. with gen.*, on account of, for the sake of; a position, condition.

cautēs, -is, *f.*, a sharp or pointed rock, reef.

caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *tr. and intr.*, beware, be on one's guard; followed by *acc.*, or *abl. with ā*, be on one's guard against, avoid.

Cavillōnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Haedui, modern Chālon-sur Saône. *Map IV, F, 3.*

cavus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hollow, hollowed out.

cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessum**, *intr.*, give way, retreat, yield; go, pass.

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, frequented, thronged, celebrated, famous.

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, speedy, sudden.

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* [**celer**], speed, quickness.

celeriter, *adv.* [**celer**], quickly, rapidly, speedily.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, keep covered, hide from one, conceal; *pass.*, be concealed or unnoticed.

Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celts, a nation of central Gaul. *Map IV, B-H, 1-4.*

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe of southeast Britain. *Map IV, D, 1.*

Cēnomanī, -ōrum, *m.*, a branch of the Aulerci. *Map IV, D, 2.*

cēseō, -ēre, **cēnsui**, **cēsum**, *tr.*, estimate; be of opinion, think, decide; be in favor of.

cēnsor, -ōris, *m.* [**cēseō**], censor, a Roman magistrate.

Cēnsōrīnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

cēnsōrius, -ī, *m.* [cēnsor], a former censor.

cēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [cēnsor], censorship.

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cēnsēō], a census, enumeration of people according to wealth for purposes of taxation and military service.

Centēnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

centēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [centum], one hundred times.

centēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [centum], hundredth.

centum, *num. adj., indecl.*, a hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centuria, company of a hundred], a centurion, captain. The centurions were plebeian under-officers who had risen from the ranks by their own superior military ability. There were sixty in each legion, chosen by the general himself; and, as they were the bravest and most experienced soldiers of the army, they had great influence in maintaining a high standard of discipline and efficiency among the rank and file. A centurion, being a plebeian, could rise to no higher command. The six who belonged to the first cohort took the highest rank (**prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnēs**), and, on account of their experience and courage, joined with the higher officers to form the general's standing council of war. For the dress of the centurion see *illus. facing p. 135*.

Cēphīseis, -idis (*acc. pl. -idas*), *f. adj.*, of the Cephisus, a river of Phocis and Boeotia.

cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax.

cernō, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *tr.*, separate, distinguish, perceive.

certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, struggle], contest, rivalry; struggle, battle.

certē, *adv.* [certus], certainly, at least, at all events, assuredly.

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of cernō], definite, settled, certain, fixed; exact, trustworthy, undoubted; sure; **certiōrem facere**, inform; sure of aim, unerring; true, constant.

cervus, -ī, *m.*, a stag, deer; forked branches used to break cavalry charges.

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [freq. of cēdō], be remiss, delay; cease; of time, leave idle or unemployed; be unemployed or disused.

cēterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of, other, remaining; *m. pl. as subst.*, the rest, the others.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, G, 4.

Cherūscī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe between the Weser and the Elbe. Map IV, H-I, 1.

cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions.

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.

Cibyrei, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or from Cibyra, a Phrygian town.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.* [cicer, chickpea], a cognomen. (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, consul in 63 B.C. (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of (1), a lieutenant of Caesar.

Kimber, -brī, *m.*, a Cimbrian; *pl.*, **Cimbri**, a people from Jutland who invaded Italy and were conquered by Marius. Map I, E, 1.

Kimberius, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Suebi.

Cinnātus, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of a famous Roman dictator.

Cineās, -ae, *m.*, the minister of Pyrrhus.

Cingetorix, -īgis, *m.*, (1) a chief of the Treveri, and a rival of his father-in-law Indutiomarus; (2) a British chief in Kent.

cingō, -ere, cīnxi, cīnctum, tr., encompass, surround, encircle; surround with a girdle, gird on, gird.

cinis, -eris, m., ashes.

Cinna, -ae, m., a cognomen; esp. Lucius Cornelius Cinna, a partisan of Marius, and father-in-law of Julius Caesar.

cippus, -ī, m., a pillar, boundary-stone; *pl.*, a stockade formed of tree-trunks driven into the ground.

circā, adv. and prep. with acc., round about, all around, round.

circinus, -ī, m., a pair of compasses.

circiter, adv. and prep. with acc. [circus]; as *adv.*, about, nearly; as *prep.*, near, about.

circuitus, -ūs, m. [circumeō], a going round, circuit, compass; in *circuitū*, all around, on all sides.

circum, prep. w. acc. and adv., around, about, round about.

circum-arō, -arāre, -arāvī, —, tr., plow around.

circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [circum+claudō], shut in, inclose, surround.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, tr., put around, bind around, surround, encircle, inclose.

circum-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead around.

circum-eō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr., go or march around; surround, inclose; traverse, visit.

circum-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr., surround, overwhelm.

circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [circum+iaciō], hurl around, set or place around.

circum-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., fortify around, fortify, protect.

circumplector, -ī, -plexus, tr. [circum+plector, embrace], fold oneself about, infold, surround.

circum-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr., sit around; besiege, blockade.

circum-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, tr., surround.

circum-vāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vāllō, intrench], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

circum-veniō, -īre, -vērī, -ventum, tr., come around, surround, outflank; deceive, defraud.

circus, -ī, m., a circle or inclosure for athletic sports; a circus. *Map III, D-E, 4.*

cis, prep. with acc., on this side of.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. [citer, on this side], on this side, nearer; Gallia Citerior, Cisalpine Gaul.

citō, adv. [citus], quickly, speedily; *comp.*, *citius*, *sup.*, *citissimē*.

citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part of citō, put in quick motion], rapid, in a rapid course.

citrā, adv. and prep. with acc. [citer, on this side], on this side of, within; before; less than, short of.

citrō, adv. [citer, on this side], hither; *ultrō citrōque*, back and forth.

cīvilis, -e, adj. [cīvis], of citizens, civic; civil; befitting a citizen, moderate.

cīviliter, adv. [cīvilis], in a manner befitting a citizen.

cīvis, -is, m. and f., citizen, fellow-citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis, f. [cīvis], citizenship; state, community, nation; city.

clam, adv., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of clāmō], call out loudly or repeatedly, cry out, shout.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., call, cry out, shout.

clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō], outcry, shouting; clamor, noise, din.

clandestīnus, -a, -um, adj., secret, hidden.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, loud, shrill; renowned.

classiarius, -a, -um, *adj.* [classis], belonging to the fleet; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, marines, naval forces.

classis, -is, *f.*, a division; fleet.

Clastidium, -ī, *n.*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudius, -ī, *m.*, name of one of the oldest and most illustrious Roman gentes; as *adj.*, **Claudius**, -a, -um, of Claudius, Claudian.

(1) Appius Claudius Crassus Sabinus Regillensis, consul and decemvir in 451 B.C.

(2) Appius Claudius Caecus, censor in 312, and consul in 307 and 296 B.C.

(3) Appius Claudius Caudex, consul in 264 B.C.

(4) Appius Claudius Nero, consul in 207 B.C.

(5) Appius Claudius, consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, -ere, **clausī**, **clausum**, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line of march, bring up the rear; shut in, shut up.

claudus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lame.

clāvus, -ī, *m.* [claudō], nail, pin, spike, usually of metal.

clēmētia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns, mild], gentleness, mercy, clemency.

Cleopātra, -ae, *f.*, the last queen of Egypt.

cliēns, -entis, *m.* [originally cluēns, from clueō, hear], a dependent, vassal, client, subject, ally.

clientēla, -ae, *f.* [cliēns], the relation of client and patron, vassalage, patronage; *pl.*, bodies of clients; of nations, allies, dependants.

clivus, -ī, *m.*, declivity, slope, pitch.

cloāca, -ae, *f.*, sewer.

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Clusium; **rēs Clūsīna**, the commonwealth of Clusium. *Map II, C, 3.*

Clypea, -ae, *f.*, a town of northern Africa, not far from Carthage. *Map I, E, 6.*

Cn., *abbr.* for Gnaeus.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+acervō, heap up], heap or mass together, pile up.

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+artō, contract], press together, crowd together.

Coclēs, -itis, *m.*, a cognomen (lit. one-eyed).

Cocosātēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of northwestern Aquitania. *Map IV, C, 4.*

coctilis, -e, *adj.* [coquō, cook], baked; built of burned bricks, brick-.

coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [com-+emō], buy up, purchase.

coēō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), -itum, *intr.* [com-+eō], go or come together, assemble, meet; unite, be joined.

coepī, -isse, **coeptum**, *tr. and intr.*, begin, commence; *pf. part.*, **coep-tus**, begun, undertaken.

coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [com-+arceō], inclose, restrain, check, curb, correct; subdue.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+agitō], consider thoroughly, reflect, ponder; think, intend, plan.

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cognātus], blood relationship; body of kinsmen, family.

cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+(g)nāscor], related; as *subst.*, *m.*, a kinsman, blood-relation.

cognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of cognōscō], known.

cognōmen, -inis, *n.* [com-+(g)nōmen], a surname, family name.

cognōscō; -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *tr.* [com-+(g)nōscō], become acquainted with, learn about, investigate, learn, come to a decision; in the *pf. tenses*, know, be aware; recognize.

cōgō, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, *tr.* [com-+agō], drive or bring together, collect, assemble; of liquids, thicken, curdle; urge, compel, drive.

cohors, -rtis, f., a cohort, *the tenth part of a legion. The illustration shows the arrangement of the cohort in battle.*

III Manip.	II Manip.	I Manip.
I Cent	I Cent	I Cent
II Cent	II Cent	II Cent

cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohörtor], exhortation, encouragement.

cohörtor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [com-+hörtor], encourage, rally, address.

coiciō, see coniciō.

Collātīnus, -ī, m., cognomen of Lucius Tarquinius.

collēga, -ae, m., colleague, associate in office.

collis, -is, m., height, hill.

collum, -ī, n., the neck.

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, tr., till, cultivate; cherish, protect; honor, worship; practise, observe.

colōnia, -ae, f. [colōnus], colony.

colōnus, -ī, m. [colō], farmer, husbandman, yeoman.

color, -ōris, m., hue, color.

columna, -ae, f., column.

com-, old form of the prep. **cum**, used only in composition.

coma, -ae, f., the hair of the head, hair; *pl.*, locks; foliage, leaves.

combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [com(b)-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

comes, comitis, m. and f., companion, comrade, associate.

comitium, -ī, n. [com-+eō], place of meeting; *esp. a place adjacent to the Forum where assemblies and courts of law were held*, the Comitium. *Map III, A, 5.*

comitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [comes], accompany, follow.

commeātus, -ūs, m. [commeō, go and come], communication, trip; supplies, provisions, military stores.

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,

remind one of, speak of, describe, state.

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+mandō], intrust entirely, commend, surrender.

commentīcius, -a, -um, adj. [com-minīscor, invent], pretended, false.

com-meō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; *with ad*, visit.

commilitō, -ōnis, m. [com-+mīles], fellow-soldier, comrade.

comminus, adv. [com-+manus], hand to hand.

com-miseror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [miseror, bewail], pity, bewail.

commissūra, -ae, f. [committō], uniting; joint, junction.

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., bring together; engage in, begin; trust, intrust.

Commius, -ī, m., a prince of the *Atrebates*.

commodē, adv. [commodus], conveniently, easily, efficiently, well.

commodum, -ī, n. [commodus], convenience, advantage, privilege.

com-modus, -a, -um, adj., in full measure; suitable; advantageous; easy, agreeable.

commonefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [com+moneō+faciō], remind.

com-moror, -ārī, -ātus, intr., tarry, wait, stop.

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr., move, disturb, alarm; excite, begin.

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., [commūnis], make common, communicate, share; join, add, connect.

com-mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., fortify strongly, fortify.

commūnis, -e, adj., general, common, in common; ordinary, natural.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [commūtō], a change, turn.

com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, change entirely, change; exchange.

com-pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, appear, make one's appearance.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+pār, like], match, compare.

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare, prepare for; get, get together, secure, obtain.

com-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive together, collect; force, drive.

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, *tr.*, discover, learn.

compescō, -ere, -uī, —, *tr.* restrain, check; *fig.*, allay.

complector, -ī, -plexus, *tr.* [com-+plector, embrace], embrace, include, include.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [com-+pleō, fill], fill up; make full, complete; man.

complexus, -ūs, *m.* [complector], an embrace.

com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), *adj.*, several, many, a great many.

com-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place together, unite; contrive; settle, finish; lay away, entomb; *w.* vultum, make up, compose.

com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, bring together, collect.

com-prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, *tr.*, seize, catch; apprehend, arrest, take prisoner.

com-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, approve, adopt.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [cōnor], attempt, undertaking.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor], attempt, undertaking.

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+cēdō], go away, yield, give way; concede, permit, grant, yield; assign.

concha, -ae, *f.*, shell-fish; shell.

concidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [com-+cadō], fall down together, collapse; fall, fall dead.

concīdō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum, *tr.* [com-+caedō], cut down, cut to pieces, kill; cut up, cut off; intersect.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [concilium], reconcile, conciliate; bring about, win, secure.

concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting, assembly, council.

concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [com-+capiō], take hold of, draw up; draw in, catch; conceive *in the mind*; begin to say, stammer.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of concīdō], call, summon; arouse, urge, excite.

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+clāmō], cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.

conclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.* [com-+claudō], shut up, close, confine; **conclūsum mare**, an inland sea.

concors, -cordis, *adj.* [com-+cor], of the same mind, harmonious.

concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, *intr.* [com-+currō], run or rush together, encounter; rush, hasten; assemble, flock together.

concursum, -ūs, *m.* [concurrō], running together, dashing together, collision; attack; running about.

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *tr.* [com-+quatiō], strike together, shake violently, shake up.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [condicō, agree], agreement, terms, condition, terms of service; state, situation, condition.

conditor, -ōris, *m.* [condō], a founder.

condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [com-+dō], put together, found; build; put away, store, treasure; preserve, pickle; plunge, strike deep.

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+dōnō], give up, grant; forgive, pardon.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe about modern Condroz. *Map IV, F, 1.*

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [com-+dūcō], lead or bring together, assemble; induce; lead; hire.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr. [com-+ferō], bring together, collect; remove, transfer, betake; compare; *sē cōnferre*, betake oneself, go, withdraw; ascribe; lay blame; *sc. sē*, match oneself, contend.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of cōnferciō, press close], crowded, closely crowded.

cōnfestim, adv., immediately, at once.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [com-+faciō], make ready, do thoroughly, complete, finish up; wear out, exhaust; kill; furnish, prepare, dress; compose, write; masticate.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, intr. [com-+fidō], be confident, believe, trust, rely upon.

cōnfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [com-+figō], fix, fasten or nail together, fasten.

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, f. [cōnfirmō], confirmation, assurance, evidence.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+firmō], strengthen, establish, confirm; assert, declare; assent.

cōnfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, intr., strike together; contend, fight.

cōnfluēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of cōnfluō], a flowing together, confluence.

cōnfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [com-+fodiō], dig up; stab.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr. [com-+fugiō], flee, take refuge, resort.

cōnfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.

[com-+fundō], pour together, mingle; join, combine.

cōnfūsus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of cōnfundō], confused, disordered, unregulated.

congedior, -ī, -gressus, intr. [com-+gradior], come together, meet, encounter, contend.

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+grex], collect, assemble, unite.

congressus, -ūs, m. [congedior], a meeting, encounter, conflict.

coniciō or coiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [com-+iaciō], throw or put together; throw, cast; *in fugam conicere*, put to flight; put, place.

coniūctim, adv. [coniungō], jointly, unitedly, in common.

coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr. [com-+iungō], join together, join, unite.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. [coniūrō], a conspiracy, confederacy, league.

coniūrātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of coniūrō], swearing together, conspiring; *m. pl. as subst.*, conspirators.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [com-+iūrō], take oath together, league together, conspire.

coniūnx or coniux, -ugis, m. and f. [coniungō], a husband, wife.

conlabefiō, -fierī, -factus, pass. of conlabefaciō, tr. [com-+labefaciō, cause to totter], be overthrown.

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+laudō], praise highly, eulogize.

conligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together.

conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [com-+legō], gather together, collect, assemble; rally; *sē conligere*, rally; recover; acquire.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+locō, place], place, post, arrange; marry.

conloquium, -ī, *n.* [conloquor], a conversation, conference.

conloquor, -ī, -locūtus, *intr.* [com-+loquor], talk (with), confer.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, undertake, attempt.

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [com-+quaerō], seek for carefully, search out, collect.

cōnsalūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+salūtō], greet, salute.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sanguineus, of blood], of the same blood, related; *as subst., m.*, kinsman, relative.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsūm, *tr.* [com-+scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark on.

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītum, *tr.* [com-+sciscō, approve], decree, adjudge; *necem sibi cōnsciscere*, commit suicide.

cōnscius, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+sciō], partaking with another in the knowledge of *anything*, conscious, aware; *as subst.*, a confidant, go-between.

cōnscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scrīptum, *tr.* [com-+scrībō], enroll, levy, enlist.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+sacrō], set apart, consecrate; honor as a deity, deify; *pf. part. as adj.*, consecrated, sacred.

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sector, follow eagerly], follow eagerly, pursue, chase.

cōnsenēscō, -ere, -senuī, —, *intr.* [com-+senēscō, grow old], grow old together, grow old.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōnsentiō], agreement, unanimity.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō], agreement, consent.

cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm, *intr.* [com-+sentiō], think together, agree, combine, conspire.

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.* [com-+sequor], follow after, follow up, follow, overtake, reach; gain, succeed in.

cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *tr.* [com-+serō, join], bind together; *manūs cōnserere*, fight hand to hand, come to close quarters.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+servō], save, spare; protect, maintain; observe, regard.

cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, look at closely, observe; consider.

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, Publius Considius, one of Caesar's officers.

cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [com-+sidō, sit], sit down together, sit down, hold a sitting; halt, encamp; settle.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, deliberation; advice, purpose, design, plan; *cōnsilium capere or inire*, form a plan; conspiracy; understanding, judgment, discretion, wisdom; behavior, course; council, assembly; *commūnī cōnsiliō*, by or with common consent.

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.* [com-+similis], very like, just like.

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.* [com-+sistō], stand, halt, stay; make a stand, take or keep a position, get a foothold; *of a ship*, run aground; consist in, depend or rest on.

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, *m.* [com-+soror], a mother's sister's son, cousin.

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [com-+sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort.

cōnsors, -sortis, *adj.* [com-+sors], having an equal share in, having a common lot, a brother's; *as subst., m. and f.*, a partner, husband or wife.

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnspiciō], sight, presence.

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.*

[com-+speciō, spy], look at, sight, perceive, observe, contemplate.
cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, get sight of, see.

cōspirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [com-+spirō], breathe together, agree together, combine; conspire.

cōstanter, *adv.* [cōstāns, firm], stubbornly, uniformly, consistently.

cōstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōstāns, firm], firmness, resolution, constancy.

cōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.* [com-+sternō], strew over, cover, thatch.

cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+statuō], place, station; set up, raise; arrange, draw up; build, found, establish; institute, appoint; determine, determine upon, render a decision; *of ships*, moor.

cōstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum, *intr.* [com-+stō], stand together, stand firm; agree, correspond; **cōstat**, it is known, it is ascertained or settled; be evident, clear; be dependent.

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *intr.* [com-+suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *in the pf. tenses*, be accustomed or wont.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuētus], habit, custom; way of life, manner of living; precedent, tradition.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul.

cōnsulāris, -e, *adj.* [cōnsul], of a consul, consular; *as subst., m.*, a man of consular rank, ex-consul.

cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul], consulship.

cōsulō, -ere, -sului, -sultum, *tr. and intr.*, take counsel for, consult for, promote the welfare of; take measures; consult, ask for advice.

cōsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [freq. of cōsulō], reflect, consider, take counsel.

cōsultō, *adv.* [cōsultus], deliberately, designedly, intentionally, on purpose.

cōsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōnsulō], decree.

cōsultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of cōnsulō], skillful, experienced; **iūris cōsultus**, lawyer.

cōsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, *tr.* [com-+sūmō], devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste; *of time*, pass.

cōsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *intr.* [com-+surgō], arise together, rise up.

contāgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [com-+tangō], touching; contagion, pollution.

contegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.* [com-+tegō], cover up, cover over.

contemnō, -ere, -tempstī, -temptum, *tr.* [com-+temnō, scorn], think slightingly of, disparage; despise, disregard.

contemptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contemnō], disdain, contempt.

contemptus, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō], a despising, contempt, an object of contempt.

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, *tr. and intr.* [com-+tendō], stretch; strive for, make an effort for; exert oneself; **ad salutem contendere**, make for a place of safety; march rapidly, hasten; fight, contend; ask, entreat.

contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō], straining, effort; struggle, contest; dispute, strife.

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō], content, satisfied.

conterminus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+terminus, limit], bordering upon, nigh to, adjoining.

contexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [com-+texō, weave], plait, bind together, interweave, connect.

contiguus, -a, -um, *adj.* [contingō], touching, adjoining, close together.

continēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of contineō*], holding together, continuous, extensive; neighboring; *as subst., f.*, mainland, continent.

continenter, *adv.* [*continēns*], continuously, without interruption, continually.

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [*com-+teneō*], keep together, keep, detain, shut or hem in, bound; hold in check, restrain, hold; *sēsē continēre*, maintain oneself, remain.

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [*com-+tangō*], touch, reach, extend to; strike; happen, come to, fall to one's lot.

continuātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*continuō*, connect], a continuance, succession, series.

continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*contineō*], holding together, uninterrupted, continuous, one after another.

contrā, *adv. and prep.*; *as adv.*, on the contrary; **contrā atque**, contrary to what, otherwise than; in opposition, on the opposite side; on the other hand, in answer; *as prep.*, against, over against, opposite to; contrary to.

contrā-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *intr.*, speak against, oppose.

contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [*com-+trahō*], collect, get together.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*contrā*], opposite, contrary.

contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [*contrōversus*, disputed], a dispute, quarrel, controversy.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, outrage, injury.

convallis, -is, *f.* [*com-+vallis*], an inclosed valley, basin, defile.

convehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.* [*com-+vehō*], carry or bring together, collect, fetch in.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*

[*com-+veniō*], come together, assemble, come to; be fitting or suitable; *impers.*, **convenit**, it is agreed or agreed upon.

conventus, -ūs, *m.* [*conveniō*], a coming together, meeting, assembly; judicial session, assizes.

convertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.* [*com-+vertō*], turn around, turn; **signa convertere**, wheel around, face about; *pass.*, turn oneself.

convincō, -ere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [*com-+vincō*], convict.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*com-+vocō*], call together, call, summon.

coōrior, -īrī, -ortus, *intr.* [*com-+orior*], arise, spring up, break forth.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; resources; *pl.*, supplies, provisions, troops, forces, army; number, amount; opportunity.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cōpia*], well-supplied, rich, abundant.

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, bond; grappling-hook, fastening.

cor, *cordis*, *n.*, the heart, *esp. as the seat of the affections and passions*; **cordī esse**, be dear.

cōram, *adv. and prep. with abl.* [*com-+ōs*]; *as adv.*, before one's eyes, in person; in one's presence; *as prep.*, before, in the presence of.

Corinthius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*Corinthus*], Corinthian; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Corinthians.

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, a city on the isthmus of Corinth. *Map I, H, 5.*

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of Britany near Corseult. *Map IV, B, 2.*

Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp.* Publius Cornelius Rufinus, consul in 321 B.C. For others see Lentulus, Cinna, Gallus, Scīpio, Sulla.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; horn of the moon; wing, flank. The name **cornū** was applied to a large, almost circular horn, with a shrill tone. It was used in the Roman army to repeat the signals for advance or retreat that were sounded by the tuba.

cornum, -ī, *n.* [**cornus**, cornel-tree], a cornel-cherry; a javelin of cornel-wood.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, a crown, wreath, garland; line of soldiers.

Corōnēa, -ae, *f.*, a town in Boeotia, in Greece.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body; frame, mass; size of body, shape.

corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [**com**+**rumpō**], corrupt, seduce.

cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, the northwest wind.

Cōrycides, -um (*acc. -as*), *f. adj.*, of the Corycian cave on Mount Parnassus, Corycian; **Cōrycides nymphae**, the nymphs of the Corycian cave.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cotidiē**], daily; ordinary, usual.

cotidiē, *adv.* [**quot**+**diēs**], every day, daily.

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, cognomen of one of Caesar's legates, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.

crassitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**crassus**, thick], thickness.

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen. (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus the triumvir, noted for his wealth. (2) Publius Crassus, son of (1), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crātēr, -ēris, *m.*, mixing vessel, wine-bowl.

crātis, -is, *f.*, wicker-work, hurdle.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, repeated, numerous, frequent.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr. and intr.*, intrust, trust, place confidence in; believe, think.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, burn to ashes, burn.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, produce, make; choose, appoint.

crēscō, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**, *intr.*, come into being; increase, grow, thrive, prosper; *pf. part.*, **crētus**, arisen, born, sprung from.

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, the island of Crete. Map I, H-I, 6.

Crētēnsis, -e, *adj.*, Cretan; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, Cretans.

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, Cretans. Map I, H-I, 6.

Critognātus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Arverni.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō**, crucify], crucifying, torture, torment.

crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**], cruelty, barbarity.

crūdēliter, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**], cruelly.

cruentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**cruentus**], make bloody, stain with blood.

cruentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cruor**], spotted with blood, blood-stained; cruel.

cruor, -ōris, *m.*, blood, gore, a stream of blood; bloodshed, murder.

crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, the leg below the knee, shank.

Crustumīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Crustumeria, a town northeast of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

cubīle, -is, *n.* [**cubō**, recline], resting place, couch, lair; marriage-bed.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, summit, ridge; roof.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt.

cultor, -ōris, *m.* [**colō**], a cultivator, farmer; worshiper.

cultūra, -ae, *f.* [**colō**], cultivation; **agrī cultūra**, agriculture.

cultus, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**], cultivation, training, civilization; clothing, attire; outward bearing.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with, at the same time with.

cum, *conj.* [= **quom**, *acc. of quī*]; of time, when, while, whenever, after; **cum** . . . **tum**, while . . . especially, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as; of cause, since, because; of opposition, though, although.

cumba, -ae, *f.*, little boat, skiff.

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, heap, pile, mass.

cunctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūctor**], delay, hesitation, reluctance.

cūctor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant.

cūctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**coniūctus**], all together, all.

cuniculus, -ī, *m.*, rabbit-burrow, tunnel, mine.

cupidē, *adv.* [**cupidus**], desirously, eagerly.

cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [**cupidus**], desire, longing.

cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**], desirous, eager, zealous, fond.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -itum, *tr.*, wish ardently, desire, be eager.

cūr, *adv.*, *interrog.*, why? wherefore? *rel.*, why, by reason of which, that.

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, concern, task, trouble; object of care.

cūria, -ae, *f.*, court, curia; the senate house.

Curius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**cūra**], care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done.

currō, -ere, **cucurri**, **cursum**, *intr.*, run.

currus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], chariot.

Cursor, -ōris, *m.* [**cursor**, a runner], surname of L. Papirius.

cursus, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**], a running,

race; pace, speed; **magnō cursū**, at full speed; course, way; journey, voyage.

curvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, curved, rounded.

custōdia, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**], watch, care, custody; watcher, guard.

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, a guard, guardian, watcher.

Cyrēnae, -ārum, *f.*, a city in northern Africa. *Map I, H, 7.*

Cyrēnaei, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of northern Africa. *Map I, H, 7.*

D

D., *abbr. for Decimus.*

D, *for quīngenti, etc.*

Dācī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Dacians, people of Dacia. *Map I, H, 3.*

Dalmatae, -ārum, *m.*, the Dalmatians, people of Dalmatia. *Map I, F-G, 4.*

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**damnum**], condemn, sentence; censure, find fault with.

damnum, -ī, *n.*, hurt, loss; source of loss, bane, calamity.

Dānuvius, -ī, *m.*, the Danube. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*

daps, **dapis**, *f.* (usually *pl.*), solemn feast; meal, victuals.

Dardani, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of southern Moesia. *Map I, G, 4.*

dē, *prep. with abl.*, of place, from; of time, from, just after, about; of partition, from, of; of respect, about, concerning, of, in regard to; of cause, on account of, over, for; in other relations, from, of, on, according to.

dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [**dē+habeō**], keep away or back; owe, be under obligation; ought, must.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**dēbilis**, weak], disable, weaken.

dē-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.,
go away, depart, withdraw; (sc. *vītā*) die.

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr.,
decide, determine; decree, allot by decree; decide by combat, fight.

dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [certō, fight], fight to the end, fight out, contend.

dēcessus, -ūs, m. [dēcēdō], a withdrawal, departure; of *tide*, ebb or fall.

dēcidō, -ere, -cidī, —, intr. [dē+cadō], fall down, drop, sink.

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [decem], tenth.

Decimus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [dē+capiō], take in, deceive.

Decius, -ī, m., a Roman name.
(1) Publius Decius Mus, a Roman consul who devoted himself to the Manes in the Latin war of 337 B.C. (2) Publius Decius Mus, grandson of (1), who devoted himself to the Manes in the war against Pyrrhus, 280 B.C.

dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [clārō, make clear], make clear, reveal.

dēclivis, -e, adj. [dē+clivus], sloping downward, descending; as *subst., n.,* a slope.

dēclivitās, -ātis, f. [dēclivis], a slope, declivity.

dē-crēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, intr., grow less, decrease.

dēcrētum, -ī, n. [dēcernō], decision, decree, order.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus], of a tenth, decuman; **decumāna porta,** the rear gate or main entrance, near which the tenth cohort of each legion was stationed.

decuriō, -ōnis, m., decurion, commander of a squadron of ten men.

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum, tr. and intr., run down, run away, hurry off.

decus, decoris, n., grace, beauty, honor.

dē-decus, -oris, n., dishonor, disgrace.

dēditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], surrendered; as *subst., m. pl.,* prisoners of war, captives.

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō], a surrender; in *dēditiōnem venire or dēditiōnem facere,* to surrender.

dē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., give over, surrender; devote, dedicate.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead down; lead away, withdraw; remove, drive away; w. *nāvēs,* launch; w. *vēla,* unfurl; lead, bring, conduct, escort, bring as a wife; induce.

dēfatigātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō], weariness, exhaustion.

dē-fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., tire out, weary, exhaust.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, f. [dēficiō], a falling away, desertion, revolt.

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsum, tr. and intr. [dē+-fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel, defend, protect; make a defense.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [dēfendō], a defense.

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], a defender.

dē-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., bring down, carry away, bring from one place to another, convey; *pass.,* be driven, fall; assign, grant, confer; report, submit; register.

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of dēfetiscor, grow tired], exhausted, worn out.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [dē+faciō], be wanting, fail, fall away, be insufficient, be exhausted; revolt; desert.

dē-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., fix or fasten down, drive in, plant.
dē-finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr., set bounds to, mark off, define, determine.
dē-fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, intr., weep over, bewail, lament.
dēfōrmis, -e, adj. [dē+fōrma], ill-shaped, unsightly, ugly.
dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f. [dēfōrmis], blemish, deformity.
dē-frēnātus, -a, -um, adj. [dē+frēnō, bridle], unbridled, unchecked.
dē-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, tr. and intr., flee from, shun, avoid.
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [dē+iaciō], throw down, bring down, strike down; cast down, disappoint; drive, carry.
dēiectus, -ūs, m. [dēiciō], a throwing down; slope, descent.
deinceps, adv. [dein+caput], one after another, successively; without intermission; next.
deinde or dein, adv., thence, from there; afterwards, then, hereafter, in the second place, next.
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., allure, delight; *pass.*, delight or take pleasure in.
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, tr., efface; destroy, overthrow, ruin.
dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., weigh well, deliberate, consider.
dēlibrō, -āre, —, -ātum, tr. [liber, bark], strip off the bark, peel.
dē-ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., bind down, bind, fasten, moor.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [dē+legō], choose, select.
dēlitiscō, -ere, -lituī, —, intr. [dē+latēscō, hide], hide, lie hidden.
delphīn, -īnis, m., dolphin.
dēlūbrum, -ī, n., a place of cleansing, temple, shrine.

dēmentia, -ae, f. [dēmēns, mad], madness, infatuation, folly.
dē-inergō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr., sink.
dē-metō, -ere, -messuī, -messum, tr., mow or cut down, reap, harvest.
dē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., remove, move away, depart.
dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr., lessen, diminish, impair.
dēmīssus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part.* of dēmīttō], let down, low-lying, low.
dē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., send or let down, lower, bow; sink, plunge.
dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., point out, show, prove; mention, state.
dē-moror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., delay, retard; restrain, hinder.
dēmum, adv. [dē], at length, at last.
dē-negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., deny outright, refuse; say no.
dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [decem], ten each.
dēnique, adv., afterwards, at last, finally; at least.
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense.
Dentātus, -ī, m., cognomen of M. Curius, celebrated for his victories over the Samnites and over Pyrrhus.
dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., announce, give notice; warn.
dē-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., drive from or away, ward off.
dē-perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., destroy utterly; lose entirely, lose.
dē-pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr., go to ruin, perish, be lost.
dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [plōrō, wail], lament, bewail the loss of, deplore.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr., lay down, lay aside, put away or off; give up, resign; quench, slake; place, station.

dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus, tr., lay waste, ravage; *pf. part. with pass. force*, ravaged.

dē-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry off or away, remove.

dēprecātor, -ōris, m. [**dēprecor**], mediator, intercessor.

dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr., beg off, pray against; pray for deliverance, beseech; plead for.

dē-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsum, tr., seize, capture; detect.

dē-prēndō, a shorter form of dēprehendō.

dērēctē, adv. [**dērēctus**], straight, directly, exactly.

dērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of dērigō*, lay straight], direct, straight; perpendicular.

dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**dē+rivus**], draw off.

dē-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., take from or away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, intr. [**dē+scandō**, climb], climb down, descend, dismount; resort.

dē-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītum, intr. [**sciscō**, approve], withdraw, revolt.

dē-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., write out; mark off, divide.

dē-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, tr. [**serō**, join], leave, abandon, desert.

dēsertor, -ōris, m. [**dēserō**], deserter.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., long for, desire, miss; demand, expect; *pass.*, be missing, be lost.

dēsidia, -ae, f. [**dēsideō**, sit idle], a sitting still; inactivity, indolence.

dē-signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., mark out, mean, designate.

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, —, intr. [**dē+saliō**], leap down; alight, dismount.

dē-sinō, -ere, -sivī or -sū, -situm (*pf. inf. dēsisse*), *intr.*, cease, stop.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, intr., stop, cease, desist, forbear; desist from, abandon.

dēsōlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**dē+sōlus**], leave alone; *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, desolate.

dēspectus, -ūs, m. [**dēspiciō**], a looking down, view, outlook.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f. [**dēspērō**], despair.

dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., be hopeless, give up hope, despair of.

dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. and intr. [**dē+speciō**, spy], look down upon, scorn, despise.

dē-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., strip off, plunder, despoil, deprive.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., fasten down, secure, make fast; fix upon, design, resolve; detail; **operī dēstinātī**, detailed for the work.

dēstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, tr. [**dē+statuō**], desert, betray.

dē-stringō, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, tr., draw off; draw, unsheathe.

dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, —, intr., be wanting, fail.

dē-super, adv., from above.

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj., worse, less.

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., frighten away, deter, prevent; repress, control.

dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. [**dē+teneō**], keep back, delay, engage.

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., pull off, take away, strip off, remove; drag or turn around.

dētrimentum, -ī, n. [**dēterō**, wear away], loss, injury, damage, defeat.

dē-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., strike down; drive off, dislodge.

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., son of Prometheus, who, with his wife Pyrrha, survived the flood.

deus, -ī (nom. pl., dī, dat. and abl. pl., dīs), m., a god, deity.

dē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, tr., carry away, take away, bring.

dē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come down, go or come (to), reach.

dēvexus, -a, -um, adj. [dēvehō], sloping; *n. pl. as subst. (sc. loca)*, slopes, hillsides.

dē-vincō, -ere, -vici, -victum, tr., conquer completely, overthrow.

dē-voveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, tr., devote, offer, consecrate; *pf. part. devōtus, as subst.*, a sworn follower.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, right-hand, on or to the right; *as subst., f.*, dextra, the right hand.

dī-, see *dis-*.

Diablintēs, -um, m., probably a part of the Aulerci. *Map IV, C, 2.*

Diāna, -ae, f., daughter of Jupiter and Latona and goddess of the chase.

diciō, -ōnis, f. [dicō], saying; jurisdiction, dominion, sway.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., proclaim; consecrate; give over.

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, tr., say, declare, speak, utter; express, mention; appoint; *w. iūs*, pronounce, interpret, administer.

dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate], a dictator.

dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor], the office of dictator, dictatorship.

dictiō, -ōnis, f. [dicō], a speaking, pleading.

dictum, -ī, n. [dicō], a saying, assertion; word; command.

dī-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead or draw apart, separate, divide.

diēs, -ēī, f. and m., a day; time, period of time, appointed time; *ad diem*, on the day, at the appointed time; *in diēs*, day by day, from day to day.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, tr. and intr. [dis-+ferō], bear apart; postpone, delay; differ.

difficilis, -e, adj. [dis-+facilis], not easy, hard, difficult.

difficulter, adv. [difficilis], with difficulty; *comp.*, difficilius; *sup.*, difficillimē.

difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment.

diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, intr. [dis-+fidō], distrust; lose confidence, despair.

diffuō, -ere, -flūxī, —, intr. [dis-+fluō], flow in different directions.

diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intr. [dis-+fugiō], flee in various directions, scatter.

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [dis-+fundō], pour or spread out, branch widely.

digitus, -ī, m., a finger; a toe; an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot.

dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus], worthiness; honor, prestige, distinction; rank, dignity; authority, office.

dignor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [dignus], deem worthy, accept; condescend.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, deserving, fit.

dīlēctus, -ūs, m. [diligō], a choosing; levy, draft.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully, with exactness or pains.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], heedfulness, care, diligence.

diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. [dis-+legō], single or choose out, love, be attached to.

dī-mētior, -irī, -mēnsus, *tr.*, measure out *or* off, measure.

dīmīcātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dīmīcō], combat, struggle.

dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [micō, flash], fight, contend, battle.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dis-+medius], divided in the middle, halved, half; *as subst., n.*, a half.

dī-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, send away, let go; dispatch, detail; leave, abandon; lose.

dī-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move *or* put apart, remove.

dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [dis-+emō], interrupt, break up.

diripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], tear in pieces; plunder, ravage.

dī-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, demolish, destroy.

dis- *or* **dī-**, inseparable particle used in composition, apart, in different directions, in pieces, not.

Dis, **Dītis**, *m.*, Pluto, brother of Jupiter and god of the underworld, the region of darkness and night.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, depart, go *or* come away, withdraw.

dis-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, separate, distinguish, discern.

discessus, -ūs, *m.* [discēdō], a going asunder, departure; defection.

disciplīna, -ae, *f.* [discipulus, learner], instruction, training, discipline; system of instruction, system.

disclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.* [dis-+claudō], shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate.

discō, -ere, didicī, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught, learn to know.

discrīmen, -inis, *n.* [discernō], a separation, distinction; danger.

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [dis-

+iaciō], drive asunder, disperse, rout; destroy.

dis-pālātus, -a, -um, *pf. part. of dispālor* [pālor, wander], scattered, dispersed.

dis-pār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, unlike, ill-matched.

dispergō, -ere, -persī, -persum, *tr.* [dis-+spargō], scatter; *pf. part. as adj.*, scattered, dispersed.

dispertiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [partiō], distribute.

displīceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.* [dis-+placeō], displease, be unsatisfactory.

dis-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, distribute; arrange; place at intervals, station.

dis-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, debate about, dispute.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dissentiō, disagree], disagreement, dissension.

dis-sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsu, *intr.*, dissent, disagree.

dis-serō, -ere, —, —, *tr.*, sow here and there, plant *or* set at intervals.

dissideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [dis+sedēō], sit apart; disagree, differ; be hostile to.

dis-simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, make unlike; disguise, dissemble.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse.

distīneō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr.* [dis-+teneō], hold apart, keep apart, divide, isolate.

distō, -āre, —, —, *intr.* [dis-+stō], stand apart, be apart, be distant; differ, be different.

dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, assign, apportion, divide, distribute.

di-stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, *tr.*, draw asunder; occupy, engage.

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time;
comp., **diūtius**, *sup.*, **diūtissimē**.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* **diēs**], by day.

diūturnitās, -ātis, *f.* [**diūturnus**], long continuance, length of time.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**diū**], of long duration, long.

dī-vellō, -ere, -vellī (-vulsī), -vulsum, *tr.* [**vellō**, tear], rend asunder, tear to pieces, destroy.

dī-versus, -a, -um, *adj.*, facing different ways, turned in the opposite direction, opposite; contrary, different; opposed, separate.

dītissimus, -a, -um, *sup.* of **dīves**, rich.

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*, (1) a chief of the *Haedui*, friendly to the Romans; (2) a chief of the *Suessiones*.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a chief of the *Helvetians*.

dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visum, *tr.*, part, divide; distribute, share, allot.

dīvinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**dīvinus**], foresee, divine.

dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**dīvus**, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred; **rēs dīvinae**, religious exercises, divine worship, sacrifices.

dīvisor, -ōris, *m.* [**dīvidō**], one who divides, a distributor.

dō, dare, **dedī**, **datum**, *tr.*, give, concede, grant, afford; impart, intrust, offer; cause, make; assign, appoint; **negōtium dare**, assign a matter, employ; pay, suffer; put; inflict; give forth; utter; *of a letter*, send, write; indicate; inspire; *w.* **tergum**, turn; **tergum dare**, take to flight; **vēla dare**, set sail; **locum dare**, make room for, yield to; *in fugam dare*, put to flight; **sē ventō dare**, run before the wind.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, **doctum**, *tr.*, teach, inform, show, declare.

doctor, -ōris, *m.* [**doceō**], teacher.

doctrīna, -ae, *f.* [**doceō**], learning.

documentum, -ī, *n.* [**doceō**], evidence, proof.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intr.*, grieve, be sorry, suffer, be grieved, be afflicted.

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [**doleō**], pain, suffering, distress, grief, cause of grief.

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, trickery.

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**domus**], of or belonging to the home, home; one's own; internal, civil.

domicilium, -ī, *n.* [**domus**], fixed abode, home, dwelling.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [**dominus**], be master, exercise authority, rule.

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner, ruler, lord.

Domitius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in 54 B.C., who fell at *Pharsalus* in 48.

domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, tame; conquer; destroy; *of food*, boil soft.

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; household, family; *loc.* **domī**, at home.

dōnec, *conj.*, while, as long as; until, till.

dōnicum, *conj.*, until.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**dōnum**], give, present, bestow.

dōs, **dōtis**, *f.* [**dō**], a marriage gift or portion, dowry; a gift, offering.

Dūbis, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a river of Celtic Gaul. Map IV, F-G, 3.

druidēs, -um, *m.*, the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

dubietās, -ātis, *f.* [**dubius**], doubt, hesitation.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**dubitō**], doubt, uncertainty.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [dubius], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., wavering, doubtful, uncertain; slight, hard to discern; *as subst., n.*, doubt; **procul dubiō**, without doubt; **in dubiō**, in doubt, uncertain.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo + centum], two hundred.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, march; *w. rēmōs*, ply; *w. fōrmam*, assume; get, receive, take *as wife*; trace, inscribe; *of a ditch or wall*, make, run; think, consider.

Duilius, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp. Gaius Duilius, who conquered the Carthaginians in the battle of Mylae.*

dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until.

Dumnorix, -īgis, m., a Haeduan chief, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., two.

duodecim, indecl. num. adj. [duo + decem], twelfth.

duodecim, -a, -um, num. adj. [duodecim], twelfth.

duodēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., twelve each.

duo-dē-vigintī, indecl. num. adj., two from twenty, eighteen.

duplex, -icis, adj. [duo + plicō, fold], twofold, double.

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [duplex], to double.

dūritia, -ae, f. [dūrus], hardness; hardship.

dūritiēs, -ēī, f. [dūrus], hardness.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [dūrus], harden, make hardy; hold out, last, remain.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard; rough, harsh; severe, unyielding, pitiless, unfeeling; adverse.

Dūrus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

dux, ducis, m. [dūcō], leader, guide; general; chief.

dynastēs, -ae, m., prince, ruler.

E

ē, see ex.

ēā, adv. [is], there, by that way.

ebur, -oris, n., ivory; a thing made of ivory, *esp. a scabbard.*

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic people between the Meuse and Rhine. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

Eburovicēs, -um, m., a division of the Aulerci. *Map IV, D, 2.*

ecce, interj., lo! behold! there!

ēdictum, -ī, n. [ēdicō, declare], edict.

ē-discō, -ere, -didicī, —, tr., learn in detail, learn by heart, learn.

ēditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō], raised high, elevated.

ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., give out, disclose; produce, inflict.

ē-doceō, -ēre, -cui, -ctum, tr., teach thoroughly, show in detail, explain.

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead out, march out.

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ex + fēmina], make feminine, make womanish, enervate, weaken.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, tr. [ex + ferō], bring or carry out; bring; spread or publish abroad, make known; bury.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ex + faciō], make out; make, effect, accomplish, bring about, form; finish; render; make up, amount to.

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, tr. and intr. [ex + fugiō], flee from or away, avoid, escape.

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [ex + fundō], pour out, pour, spread abroad; **sē effundere**, rush out, spread abroad; spend, waste

egeō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., need, lack, want.

egestās, -ātis, f. [egeō], need, want, poverty.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I, I myself.

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, intr. [ex+gradior], go out or forth, leave; land from a ship, disembark.

ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], excellently, admirably, remarkably.

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ex+grex], extraordinary, remarkable, unusual; distinguished, illustrious.

ēgressus, -ūs, m. [ēgredior], a going forth, landing, landing-place.

ē-iaculor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [iaculor, hurl a dart], shoot or throw out.

ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [ex+iaciō], cast or drive out, expel; cast up, strand; **sē ēicere**, rush.

elephantus, -ī, m., an elephant.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, m., dependents of the Arverni. *Map IV, D, 4.*

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [ex+legō], pick out; choose; *pf. part. ēlēctī*, picked (men, etc.).

ēloquentia, -ae, f. [ēloquēns, eloquent], eloquence.

ē-lūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, tr., elude, escape; cheat, deceive.

Elusātēs, -um, m., an Aquitanian tribe about modern Eauze. *Map IV, D, 5.*

ē-micō, -āre, -uī, —, intr., spring out, break forth, leap up or forth.

ē-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., emigrate.

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr. [ēminus], stand out, project.

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., send forth; throw, discharge, hurl; let go, let drop, release; utter.

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr., buy, purchase, take (*in compounds*).

ē-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, intr., be born from, spring or sprout up.

enim, conj., postpositive, for, really; but; *with ellipsis of a cl. to be supplied*, for, of course, naturally.

Ennius, -ī, m., a famous Roman poet.

ēnsis, -is, m., a sword.

ē-numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., enumerate, relate.

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., report, disclose.

eō, adv. [is], to that place, there, thither.

eō, ire, īi or īvī, itum, intr., go, proceed, walk; *of different sorts of motion*, move, fly, dart, etc.; set out.

eōdem, adv. [idem], to the same place, thither.

Epaminōndās, -ae, m., a famous Theban general.

Ephesus, -ī, f., an Ionian city near the coast of Asia Minor. *Map I, I, 5.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj. [ephippium], caparisoned; using pads or saddles.

ephippium, -ī, n., a horse-cloth, saddle-pad, saddle.

ephorus, -ī, m., an ephor, a Spartan magistrate.

Epimēthis, -idis, f., daughter of Epimetheus, Pyrrha.

Ēpirus, -ī, f., the northwest district of Greece. *Map I, G, 5.*

Eporēdorix, -igis, m., a Haeduan chief.

epulae, -ārum, f., only in pl., food; a banquet, dinner.

eques, -itis, m. [equus], a horseman, knight; *pl.*, cavalry. *The cavalry of Caesar's army, in contrast to that of an earlier day, was made up entirely of foreign auxiliaries, placed under the command of a Roman officer. Part of it remained with his forces the year round, and was detailed to serve with the infantry in divisions of*

ten turmae or squadrons to each legion (about 330 men altogether). This force consisted of Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. In addition, the Gallic tribes sent a cavalry force for the summer campaigns, usually amounting to about 4,000 men, which was commanded by Gallic officers. The Gallic cavalry wore the cavalry helmet (*cassis*) and carried small round shields (*parmae*). They were provided with long swords and with Gallic javelins (*trāgulae*), which could be used for thrusting, or could be hurled by means of a thong.

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques], of or belonging to a horseman; of cavalry, cavalry-.

equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [equitō], cavalry.

equus, -ī, *m.*, a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is, *m.*, a Greek poet, astronomer, philosopher, and geographer, born 276 B.C.

ergā, *prep.* with *acc.*, toward, in relation to, to, for.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, so then, then, now.

ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [ex+regō], lift, raise; *sē* ērigere, stand up; *pf. part.* as *adj.*, standing upright, high.

ēripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, *tr.* [ex+rapiō], snatch away, deprive, take away; rescue.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, wander up and down, wander, go astray; be in doubt, waver.

error, -ōris, *m.* [errō], mistake, error.

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* and *intr.*, burst forth, rush out, sally; arise.

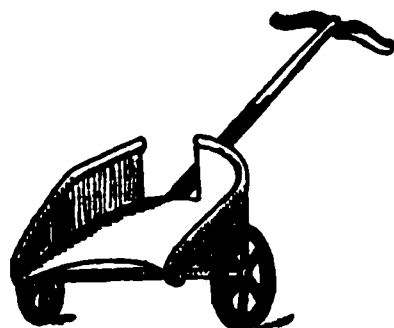
ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ē-rumpō], a breaking out, sortie, sally.

Eryx, -cis, *m.*, a mountain and town in western Sicily.

Ēsquilīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Esquiline; as *ubst.*, *m.* (*sc.* *mōns*), the Esquiline Hill. *Map III, F, 2-3.*

essedārius, -ī, *m.* [essedum], a fighter in a war chariot, chariot-eer.

essedum, -ī, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons.



Esuvii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people living near modern Essey. *Map IV, C-D, 2.*

et, *conj.* and *adv.*, and, also, too, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and, not only . . . but also.

et-iam, *adv.* and *conj.*, yet, even yet, still, even; **etiam nunc**, yet, even now, still; also, too.

etiam-num, *adv.*, still, yet.

Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, a country on the west coast of Italy. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Etruscans, people of Etruria. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

et-sī, *conj.*, even if, although, though.

Eumenēs, -is, *m.*, a king of Pergamus.

Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe.

Eurysthenēs, -is, *m.*, brother of Procles.

ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *intr.*, go away, escape; get up, climb.

ē-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry out; elevate.

ē-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pluck or pull out.

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out, result, happen.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ex+veniō], an outcome, result; fate, disaster.

ē-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, *tr.*, overturn, overthrow; destroy, ruin.

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call forth, summon.

ē-volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., fly or rush forth.

ex or (only before consonants) **ē**, *prep. w. abl.*; of space, out of, from; on the side of, on; of time, from, since, after; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march; of source, out of, from; of cause, because of, in consequence of, in accordance with; in partition, of, from, from among; in other relations, from, in conformity with, according to, by, of.

ex-agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., drive out or away, stir up, rouse; disturb, harass.

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**exāmen**, the tongue of a balance], weigh, balance.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**exanimus**, breathless], deprive of breath, exhaust; *pf. part.*, **exanimātus**, breathless, exhausted.

ex-ardescō, -ere, -ārsī, -ārsurus, intr. [**ardescō**, take fire], be kindled, be inflamed or excited.

ex-audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., hear, discern; hearken to, listen, heed.

ex-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., go out or away, withdraw, retire.

excellō, -ere, —, —, tr. and intr., be eminent or superior, surpass.

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of excellō*], high, lofty, tall.

excidium, -ī, n. [**cadō**], downfall, destruction, ruin.

ex-ciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [**cieō**, stir up], rouse, awaken; disturb.

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [**ex+capiō**], take out; take up, catch, capture; intercept, withstand, resist; meet, receive, welcome; listen to, overhear; come after, succeed; *abs.*, follow immediately.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*freq.*

of exciō], call out, arouse, rouse; excite, incite; erect, raise.

exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [**ex+claudō**], shut out, exclude; cut off, hinder, prevent.

ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**cruciō**, torture], torture, torment.

excubitor, -ōris, m. [**ex+cubō**, recline], one who lies out on guard, a watchman, sentinel.

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**ex+calcō**], trample out, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, f. [**excurrō**, run out], a running out or forth, sally, sortie.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [**ex+causa**], excuse, justify.

exemplum, -ī, n., specimen, representative; example, precedent.

ex-eō, -īre, -īī or -īvī, -ītum, intr., go out, come forth; rise, appear.

exerceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citum, tr. [**ex+arceō**], drive forward; train; practise, exercise; *pass.*, be busy.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [**exercitō**, train], exercise, practise.

exercitātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train], trained, experienced.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [**exerceō**], army.

ex-hauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum, tr., exhaust.

ex-horrēscō, -ere, -horruī, —, tr. and intr. [**horrēscō**, begin to bristle], tremble, shudder; shudder at.

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [**ex+agō**], drive out, expel; require, demand; question, consider; complete; spend, pass.

exiguē, adv. [**exiguus**], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitās, -ātis, f. [**exiguus**], scantiness, smallness, shortness, want.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [**exigō**], weighed out; limited, small, slight; light; a little; as *subst.*, *n.*,

a small amount, a little; *temporis exiguum*, a little while.

eximiē, *adv.* [*eximius*], particularly, remarkably.

eximius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*eximō*], selected, eminent, remarkable.

eximō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [*ex+emō*], take away, remove.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*existimō*], opinion, judgment.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ex+aestimō*], estimate; consider; suppose, believe.

exitus, -ūs, *m.* [*exeō*], a going out, exit; result, end, outcome.

exōrdium, -ī, *n.* [*ex+ōrdō*], a beginning.

ex-pallēscō, -ere, -pallui, —, *tr. and intr.*, turn or grow pale.

ex-pavēscō, -ere, -pāvī, —, *tr. and intr.* [*pavēscō*, begin to fear], fear greatly, dread.

expeditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*expediō*], a military expedition, campaign.

expeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of expediō*], unimpeded, free, light-armed, unencumbered; easy.

ex-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive out or forth, expel; shoot.

experiēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of experior*], experienced, used to, inured to.

experior, -īrī, -pertus, *tr.*, make trial of, try; experience; prove; contend with.

expers, -pertis, *adj.* [*pars*], having no part in or knowledge of.

ex-pleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [*-pleō*, fill], fill up, finish, complete; fulfil, discharge, execute.

ex-plicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātum (-itum), *tr.* [*plicō*, fold], unfold; set forth in writing.

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*], a scout, spy. *Explōrātōrēs* were not individual spies, but reconnoiters who were sent out in detachments.

ex-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, investigate, examine, find out, spy out, reconnoitre, try; *pf. part.*, assured, certain.

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, put forth, expose; set ashore, land; *ex nāvibus expōnere*, disembark; abandon; draw up, station; set forth, relate, explain.

ex-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry out or away.

ex-poscō, -ere, -poposci, —, *tr.*, demand.

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [*ex+premō*], press, force out; draw from.

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, take by storm, capture, conquer.

exquirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [*ex+quaerō*], seek or search out, inquire, investigate.

exsecror, -ārī, -ātus [*ex+sacrō*], curse, execrate; *part. exsecrandus*, as *adj.*, detestable, deplorable.

ex-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow out, enforce, assert.

ex-sistō, -ere, -titī, -titum, *intr.*, stand or come forth, project, appear; ensue.

ex-spator, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, wander from the way, spread, overflow.

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, wait for, await, wait to see; anticipate, hope for.

ex-spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, plunder completely, rob; utterly deprive of.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -tīnxī, -tinctum, *tr.* [*stinguō*, quench], put out, quench; kill, slay; *pf. part.*, *extinctus*, quenched, slain, dead.

ex-stō, -āre, —, —, *intr.*, stand out, rise above; appear.

ex-struō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, *tr.* [*struō*, heap up], heap up, rear; erect, construct.

exsul, -ulis, *m.*, an exile.

exsulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [exsul], be in exile.

exterior, see **exterus**.

externus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exterus], external, foreign.

ex-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten outright, terrify, frighten, dismay.

exterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ex], on the outside; *comp.*, exterior, -ius, outward, outer, exterior; *sup.*, **extrēmus**, -a, -um, outermost, extreme, farthest; the end or last part of, extremity of; in **extrēmā spē**, in utter despair; *m. pl.* as *subst.*, the rear, last; *ad extrēmum*, at last.

ex-timēscō, -ere, -timuī, —, *tr. and intr.* [timēscō, fear], be afraid or panic-stricken; fear greatly, dread.

ex-torqueō, -ēre, -sī, -tum, *tr.*, twist out; wrest away, extort, obtain by force.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [exterus], outside, beyond, outside of.

ex-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw, pull, or drag out; remove; of *time*, waste, lose, fritter away.

extrēmō, *adv.* [extrēmus], at last.

extrēmus, see **exterus**.

ex-trūdō, -ere, -trūsi, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, shove], thrust or push out, shut out, drive away.

exuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, draw out or off, strip, despoil; lay aside, put away.

ex-ūrō, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.*, burn up, consume, destroy.

F

faber, -brī (*gen. pl.* **fabrum**), *m.*, workman, smith, carpenter, mechanic. In the Roman army the **fabri** or engineers usually constituted a separate corps, under the

command of the **praefectus fabrum**. Caesar, however, seems to have drawn his **fabri** from the legions, and they returned to military duty when their engineering work was completed.

Fabius, -ī, *m.*, name of a Roman gens.

(1) Quintus Fabius Maximus Rulianus, *magister equitum* in 325 B.C., consul five times, dictator twice.

(2) Quintus Fabius Maximus Gurges, son of (1), consul three times.

(3) Quintus Fabius Maximus Verucosus, son of (2), surnamed *Cunctator* from his caution; dictator and five times consul.

(4) Quintus Fabius Maximus, conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni, 121 B.C.

(5) Gaius Fabius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Fābricius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Fabricius, famous for his part in the wars against the Samnites and against Pyrrhus.

fabricō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [fabrica, workshop], make, construct; carve.

faciēs, -ēi, *f.* [faciō], form, figure, look; face, countenance, aspect.

facile, *adv.* [facilis], easily, without effort, readily; *nōn . . . facile*, hardly.

facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy, without difficulty; easily found or obtained.

facinus, -oris, *n.* [faciō], an act, deed; misdeed, outrage, crime.

faciō, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, *tr.*, make, form, construct, do, perform; **verba facere**, speak; cause, render, bring to pass, effect, act; *w. nefās*, commit; **vim facere**, use violence; *w. vulnus*, inflict; choose, gain, acquire; give; *pass. impers.* fit, it results; *abs.*, act, conduct oneself.

factiō, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō], a making, combination, party, faction.
factiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [factiō], ambitious, intriguing.
factum, -ī, *n.* [faciō], deed, act; event.
facultās, -ātis, *f.* [facilis], opportunity, power; supply, provision; *pl.*, means, resources.
faex, **faecis**, *f.*, grounds, dregs; the brine of pickles.
fāgus, -ī, *f.*, a beech-tree, beech, beech-wood.
Falernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Falernian; **ager Falernus**, a district in northern Campania.
fallāx, -ācis, *adj.* [fallō], deceitful, deceptive, fallacious.
fallō, -ere, **fefellī**, —, *tr. and intr.*, deceive, disappoint; elude, escape; of time, beguile, while away.
falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of fallō*], deceived, cheated; false, unfounded.
falx, **falcis**, *f.*, a sickle, pruning-hook, scythe; hook, wall-hook; **mūrālis falx**, a long hook used in demolishing walls.

fāma, -ae, *f.* [for, say], talk, common talk, report; reputation, fame.
Famea, -ae, *m.*, surname of Himilco, a Carthaginian general.
famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation.
familia, -ae, *f.* [famulus], slaves, a household; family, race.
familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia], belonging to the household, private; **rēs familiāris**, property, estate.
familiāriter, *adv.* [familiāris, intimately], kindly.
famulus, -ī, *m.*, a slave, minister, attendant.
fānum, -ī, *n.*, temple, shrine.

fās, *n.*, *indecl.* [for, speak], divine sanction or law, as opposed to **iūs**, human law or right; right in the sight of the gods.
fastigātē, *adv.* [fastigātus], sloping, in a sloping direction.
fastigātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of fastigō*, make pointed], inclined, sloping.
fastigium, -ī, *n.*, top of a gable, top of a building, roof, pinnacle; height, elevation; rank, dignity; slope.
fateor, -ērī, **fassus**, *tr.* [for, speak], confess, own, admit.
fātidicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fātum + dīcō], predicting fate, prophetic.
fatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, weary, fatigue; test.
fātum, -ī, *n.* [for, speak], that which is said, an utterance; what is ordained, fate; death; *pl.*, the Fates.
fautrix, -īcis, *f.* [faveō], a favorer, patron.
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**, *intr.*, be favorable or friendly to, favor.
favilla, -ae, *f.*, cinders, hot ashes, ashes.
favor, -ōris, *m.* [faveō], favor, goodwill.
favus, -ī, *m.*, honeycomb, honey.
fax, **facis**, *f.*, a torch, fire-brand.
fēlicitās, -ātis, *f.* [fēlix], good fortune.
fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix], happily, successfully, auspiciously; *comp.*, **fēlicius**; *sup.*, **fēlicissimē**.
fēlix, -īcis, *adj.*, fruit-bearing; successful, fortunate, happy.
fēmina, -ae, *f.* [feō, bear], a female, esp. a woman; the female sex, woman-kind.
fēmineus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fēmina], of a woman, woman's.
femur, -oris or -inis, *n.*, the thigh.
fera, -ae, *f.* [ferus], a wild beast, wild animal.

ferāx, -ācis, adj. [ferō], productive, fertile.

ferē or fermē, adv., nearly, usually, generally; about, for the most part.

fermē, see ferē.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, tr., bear, carry, bring; offer; move; **pedem ferre**, move, step; *pass. or reflex.*, hasten, rush, flee; render; *w. fors or cōsuētūdō*, impel, bring about; *of the wind*, drive, blow; lift; bear away, win, get, acquire, earn; bear, brook; **graviter ferre**, be annoyed or indignant at; endure, withstand; **ferendus**, bearable, tolerable; report, say, call; propose; **condiōnem ferre**, propose conditions; enact; *abs., w. opiniō*, go, be current; **impūne ferre**, go unpunished.

ferōcia, -ae, f. [ferōx, fierce], fierceness, courage.

ferōx, -ōcis, adj. [ferus], fierce, savage, bold; headstrong, insolent.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], of iron, iron.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron; a weapon of iron or steel, spear-head, spear, sword.

fertilis, -e, adj. [ferō], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitās, -ātis, f. [fertilis], fertility.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, fierce, cruel; *as subst., m.*, a wild beast.

fervēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of ferveō*, boil], boiling hot, glowing, burning; boiling; *fig.*, inflamed, violent.

fervidus, -a, -um, adj. [fervor, glowing heat], burning, hot; yeasty.

fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, weak, exhausted.

festinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., hasten.

festūca, -ae, f., pile-driver.

fēstus, -a, -um, adj., of holidays, festive, festal.

fētus, -ūs, m., bringing forth; produce, fruit.

fibula, -ae, f., a fastening, clasp, brace; pin, brooch.

fictilis, -e, adj. [fingō], of clay.

fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], trustworthy, faithful, reliable; safe.

Fidēnātēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Fidenae, a town north of Rome. Map I, B, 7.

fidēns, -entis, adj. [fidō], confident.

fidēs, -eī, f. [fidō], faith, belief, confidence; good faith, truth, faithfulness; promise, word, assurance; **fidem facere or interpōnere**, give assurance; fulfillment; proof; protection; in **fidem recipere**, take under one's protection; dependence, alliance; **fidem sequi**, *w. dat.*, be loyal to; **fidem servāre**, keep one's word.

fidō, -ere, fīsus sum, intr., trust, put confidence in, rely upon.

fidūcia, -ae, f. [fidus], confidence, assurance, reliance.

fidus, -a, -um, adj. [fidō], faithful, loyal.

figō, -ere, fixī, fixum, tr., fix, fasten, set firmly, plant; *w. ōscula*, imprint; thrust in; direct.

figūra, -ae, f. [fingō], form, shape, figure.

fīlia, -ae, f., daughter.

fīlius, -ī, m., son.

findō, -ere, fidī, fissum, tr., cleave, split, part, divide.

fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum, tr., form, devise, invent, imagine; *pf. part. as adj.*, pretended, false.

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr. [finis], bound, mark off, limit, define, measure; end, finish, decide.

finis, -is, m. and f., a boundary, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory, land; end, close; death.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fīnis], bordering, adjacent, neighboring; *m. pl. as subst.*, neighbors.

fiō, fierī, factus, *used as pass. of faciō*, be made, be done, be occasioned; come to pass, take place, become, result, happen.

firmiter, *adv.* [firmus], strongly, steadily, firmly.

firmitūdō, -inis, *f.* [firmus], strength, firmness, solidity.

firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [firmus], strengthen; fortify; strengthen in resolution.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, vigorous, firm.

fiscus, -ī, *m.*, basket, purse; treasury.

fistula, -ae, *f.*, pipe, tube, water-pipe; reed-pipe, Pan's pipe.

Flaccus, *see Valerius.*

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, demand, dun.

flāgitium, -ī, *n.* [flāgitō], shame, disgrace.

flagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, flame, blaze, burn.

flāmen, -inis, *n.* [flō], a blowing, blast, wind.

Flāminīnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

flamma, -ae, *f.*, blaze, fire, flame; *fig.*, flame of love, flame.

flāveō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [flāvus], be golden yellow, light yellow; *pres. part.*, yellow.

flāvēscō, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [flāveō], become golden yellow.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, *tr. and intr.*, bend, turn, turn around, incline, curve, guide; appease; *pf. part. as adj.*, bent, curving.

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, *tr. and intr.*, weep, lament.

flētus, -ūs, *m.* [fleō], a weeping, lamenting; tears.

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, *tr. and intr.*, blow.

flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of flōreō*], flowering, blooming, flourishing, prospering.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.

flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō], wave, billow.

flūmen, -inis, *n.* [fluō], flood, river.

fluō, -ere, flūxī, —, *intr.*, flow, stream, drip, pour.

focus, -ī, *m.*, hearth, fireplace.

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossum, *tr.*, dig.

foederātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [foederō, establish by treaty], leagued together, allied.

foedus, -eris, *n.*, agreement, treaty, stipulation.

folium, -ī, *n.*, leaf.

fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain, source; water.

forāmen, -inis, *n.* [forō, pierce], opening, orifice.

fore, **forem**, *forms used for futūrus esse and essem.*

foris, -is, *f.*, gate of a house, door of a house or room.

foris, *adv.*, out of doors, without, on the outside.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape; appearance, beauty.

fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [fōrma], shape, fashion, mould.

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance; *abl.*, forte as *adv.*, by chance, perhaps, accidentally.

forte, *see fors.*

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, valiant.

fortiter, *adv.* [fortis], bravely, stoutly.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis], strength, courage.

fortuitō, *adv.* [fortuītus], by chance, accidentally.

fortuītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fors], accidental.

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [fors], fortune, fate; good fortune; condition, position.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [fossus], a ditch, trench, *an indispensable part of every Roman camp. Its size varied with the season of the year and the length of time the camp was to be occupied, the width ranging from 10 to 22 feet, and the normal depth being about 9. The earth from the fossa was thrown up to make the vāllum, and, if time permitted, the sides of the slope were covered with turf, stones, or wood to strengthen them. For illus. see vāllum.*

fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall, snare.

fragor, -ōris, *m.* [frangō], a crashing, crash, thunder-peal.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck, shatter; break down, overcome; weaken, wear out.

frāter, -tris, *m.*, a brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter], of a brother, brother's.

fraudulentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fraus], deceitful, fraudulent.

fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, trickery.

Fregellae, -ārum, *f.*, a town in Latium.

fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [fremō, roar], confused noise, uproar, din.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, repeated, frequent; in great numbers, crowded; full, filled.

frequentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [frequēns], resort to, frequent, celebrate.

frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, depending or relying upon, confiding in.

frigidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frīgus], cold.

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold, *pl.*, cold.

frondeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [frōns], put forth leaves, be in leaf.

frōns, frondis, *f.*, leaf, foliage; leafy branch, green bough.

frōns, frontis, *f.*, brow, forehead; front.

frūctuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūctus], abounding in fruit; productive.

frūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fruor], enjoyment; fruit, crop; profit, income; reward.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum], of or pertaining to grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply, provisions, the commissariat.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [frūmentum], fetch or get grain, forage.

frūmentum, -ī, *n.* [fruor], grain, corn.

fruor, -ī, frūctus, *intr.*, enjoy, delight in, have the benefit of.

frūstrā, *adv.*, vainly, in vain; without effect.

frūstror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [frūstrā], deceive, disappoint.

frutex, -icis, *m.*, shrub, bush, shoot.

frūx, frūgis, *f.* (*generally pl.*), fruit, produce, fruits of the earth; grain.

fuga, -ae, *f.* [fugiō], flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *tr. and intr.*, flee, vanish, pass away; run away from, avoid, escape.

fugitīvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugiō], fleeing, fugitive; *as subst., m.*, runaway slave.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [fuga], compel to flee, rout; discomfit.

fulica, -ae, *f.*, coot.

fulmen, -inis, *n.* [fulgeō], flash of lightning, thunderbolt; fire.

Fulvius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

fulvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yellow, tawny, gold-colored.

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling; sling-stone.

fundāmentum, -ī, *n.* [fundō, found], foundation.

funditor, -ōris, *m.* [funda], slinger. *The funditōrēs were*



armed with slings of leather, which were used in hurling missiles of lead (*glandēs*) or stones. Caesar's slingers were mostly auxiliary troops from the Balearic Isles. For *illus*, see p. 201.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, tr., pour forth, shed; scatter, rout, defeat.

fūnebris, -e, adj. [*fūnus*], of a funeral; *n. pl. as subst.*, funeral rites.

fūnis, -is, m., cable, rope.

fūnus, -eris, n., funeral rites, funeral; death, murder.

furca, -ae, f., fork; fork-shaped prop, split stake.

Furius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

furor, -ōris, m. [*furō*], rage, frenzy, madness.

fūrtum, -ī, n. [*fūr*, thief], theft, robbery.

futūrus, -a, -um, adj. [*fut. part. of sum*], future, destined, coming.

G

Gabali, -ōrum, m., clients of the Arverni. Map IV, E, 4.

Gabii, -ōrum, m., an ancient town of Latium. Map I, B, 8.

Gabinus, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Aulus Gabinus, consul 58 B. C.

gaesum, -ī, n., a heavy Gallic javelin.

Gāius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, -ae, m., (1) a king of the Suesstones; (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, a lieutenant of Caesar.



GALEAE

galea, -ae, f., helmet, usually of leather strengthened with brass, and

provided with a crest. On the march, the soldier carried it hanging from his shoulder, but, at the beginning of a battle, he set the crest in its place and put the helmet on at once.

Gallia, -ae, f., the country Gaul; Caesar uses the name *Gallia* in different senses. In its broadest use it includes that part of Italy north of the Rubicon, and all the land between the Alps and the Atlantic, and the Rhine and the Pyrenees, comprising modern France, most of the Netherlands and part of Switzerland, and that part of Germany west of the Rhine. This was divided into: (1) *Gallia Citerior* or *Cisalpine*, "Gaul this side of the Alps," from the standpoint of Rome, its southern boundary being the river Rubicon. It had been a Roman province since 191 B. C. (2) *Gallia Prōvincia* (Map IV, D-G, 4-5), called also *Prōvincia* and *Gallia Nostra*, a Roman province about 118 B. C. (3) *Gallia Ulterior* or *Trānsalpina*, comprising all of Gaul not included in (1) and (2). *Gallia Trānsalpina* is further divided into three parts: (a) the country of the Belgae (Map IV, D-G, 1-2), of which the *Matrona* and the *Sequana* form the southern boundary, (b) *Gallia Celtica* (Map IV, B-H, 1-4), often called simply *Gallia*, extending from the *Matrona* and the *Sequana* to the *Garunna*, and (c) *Aquitānia* (Map IV, C-D, 4-5), between the *Garunna* and the *Pyrenees*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [*Gallia*], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, -ae, f. [*gallus*, cock], hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Gaul, Gallic; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls. Map I, C-D, 2-4.

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen. (1) Gaius Cornelius Gallus, governor of Egypt under Augustus. (2) Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune under Caesar.

Garunna (less correctly, **Garumna**), -ae, *m.*, the Garonne, a river of Gaul. Map IV, C-D, 4-5.

Garunnī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe living about the sources of the Garonne. Map IV, D, 5.

Gatēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe south of the Garonne. Map IV, D, 4-5.

gaudeō, -ēre, *gāvisus sum*, *intr.*, rejoice, be glad, take pleasure.

gelidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [gelū, cold], icy cold, cold.

geminus, -a, -um, *adj.* [gignō], twin-born, twin; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, twins; double, twofold; both, two.

Geminus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

Genava, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Allobroges, modern Geneva. Map IV, G, 3.

genēr, *generī*, *m.*, son-in-law.

generātim, *adv.* [genus], by tribes.

gēns, *gentis*, *f.*, tribe, people, nation; clan, house.

genus, -eris, *n.* [cf. gēns], birth, descent, race, family; sort, class.

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany. Map I, E-G, 1-3.

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Germans, German.

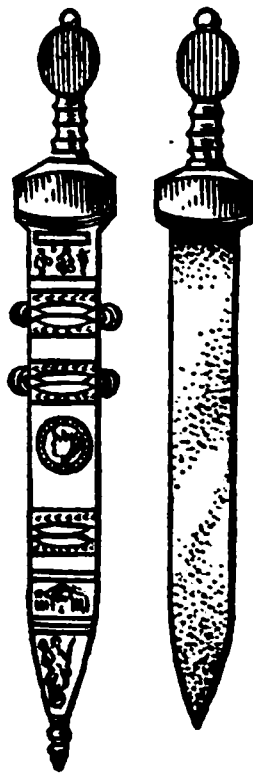
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; as *subst.*, *m.*, a German; *pl.*, the Germans.

gerō, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*, *tr.*, bear, wear, have; conduct, wage, carry on; **bellum gerere**, wage war; **rem gerere**, fight; hold, manage, do, govern; *pass.*, be done, go on; **sē gerere**, conduct oneself, behave.

gestiō, -ire, -ivī, —, *intr.* [gerō], desire eagerly, be eager, long.

gignō, -ere, *genuī*, *genitum*, *tr.*, beget, bear, produce; *pf. part.* **genitus**, descended, born.

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword. The gladius was a straight, two-edged weapon, with a wooden hilt. It was about two feet in length and was adapted for thrusting rather than for cutting. It was worn in a sheath attached to a shoulder belt on the right side.



glāns, *glandis*, *f.*, acorn; ball of lead or clay for shooting; bullet, slug. The glāns often bore an inscription, as in the illustration: "**Ferī Pompeium**" ("strike Pompey").



glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, praise, renown.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [glōria], glory in, boast of.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [glōria], glorious.

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

Gortynī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people on the southern coast of Crete. Map I, H-I, 6.

Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen; esp. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 B.C.

gracilis, -e, *adj.*, slight, slender, small.

gradior, -ī, *gressus*, *intr.*, go, walk.

gradus, -ūs, *m.*, step, footstep, pace, walk; stage, degree; *pl.*, steps, stairs.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece. Map I, G-H, 5-6.

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek; *as subst., m.*, a Greek.

Graiocelī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 4.*

Graius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

grāmen, -inis, *n.*, grass, herbage, pasture.

grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, abundant.

grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus], favor, gratitude; friendship; influence; grātiā, for the sake of; *pl.*, thanks.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [grātus], exult, rejoice; congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, agreeable, pleasant; pleased, grateful, thankful.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy; heavily laden, loaded down; *of physical condition*, languid; troublesome; severe; *of age*, advanced; serious, important.

gravitās, -ātis, *f.* [gravis], heaviness, weight; power, dignity, importance.

graviter, *adv.* [gravis], heavily, severely, seriously, with great force; graviter ferre, be annoyed or indignant at; *comp.*, **gravius**, *sup.*, **gravissimē**.

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [gravis], weigh down, make heavy.

gravor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [gravis], be unwilling, hesitate.

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.* [gubernō, steer], a helmsman, pilot.

gurges, -itis, *m.*, raging abyss, whirlpool, gulf, waters.

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, taste, eat.

H

habēna, -ae, *f.* [habeō], generally *pl.*, reins.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, have,

hold, possess, contain; consider, regard, think, know; treat, use; utter, make; *of an account*, take; **sē habēre**, be.

habitābilis, -e, *adj.* [habitō], fit for an abode, habitable.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of habeō], live or dwell in, inhabit.

hāc, *adv.* [hic], here, by this way.

Hadrūmētum, -ī, *n.*, a town on the coast of Africa, west of Zama.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan; *as subst., m.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the upper waters of the Saône and Loire. *Map IV, E-F, 3.*

haereō, -ēre, **haesī**, **haesūrus**, *intr.*, hold fast, be fixed; be perplexed.

Hamilcar, -aris, *m.*, a Carthaginian general.

hāmus, -ī, *m.*, hook.

Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, a great Carthaginian general.

Hannō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Carthaginian leader.

harpagō, -ōnis, *m.*, hook, grappling-hook.

Harūdēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe.

Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.*, a Carthaginian name.

(1) Hannibal's brother, who was slain at the battle of the Metaurus.

(2) The son of Gisco, defeated by Scipio Africanus in the Second Punic war.

(3) A Carthaginian general in the Third Punic war.

haud or haut, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not.

hauriō, -īre, **hausī**, **haustum**, *tr.*, drink, drink in, take in; drain; pierce, tear open.

haut, *see* **haud**.

Hellēspontus, -ī, *m.*, the Hellespont, modern Dardanelles, the strait separating Europe and Asia. *Map I, H, 5.*

- Helvētius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian; *as subst., m.*, the Helvetians, a Celtic tribe occupying the country between Mt. Jura, Lake Geneva, the Rhine, and the Rhone. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*
- Helvius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
- herba**, -ae, *f.*, herbage, grass; herb, plant.
- Herculēs**, -is, *m.*, a demigod, the national hero of Greece, famous for his wanderings.
- Hercynius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Hercynian; **Hercynia silva**, the mountain country stretching from the sources of the Danube to the Carpathian mountains. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*
- hērēditās**, -ātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], heirship, inheritance; an inheritance.
- hērēdium**, -ī, *n.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.
- hesternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of yesterday, yesterday's.
- heu!** *interj.*, oh! alas! ah!
- hiberna**, *see hibernus.*
- hibernācula**, -ōrum, *n.* [hiberna], winter-quarters.
- Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland. *Map I, B, 1.*
- hibernus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [hiems], of winter, winter-; **hiberna**, -ōrum (*sc. castra*), winter-quarters.
- hic, haec, hoc**, *dem. pron. of 1st pers.*, referring to an object comparatively near in space, time, order of words or of thought, this, this one; he, she, it; the following, as follows; the present; this . . . here; *in contrast with another pronoun*, this, the last named, the latter, the first named, the former; **hic** . . . **ut**, such . . . that.
- hic**, *adv.*, here, in this place, on this occasion; of a place just mentioned, there, in that place.
- hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [hiems], winter, pass the winter.
- hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter; storm.
- Hierō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Syracuse.
- hinc**, *adv.*, from this place, hence, on this side; from this time, henceforth.
- Hippō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a town on the coast of Africa west of Utica.
- Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain (often *pl.* because it was divided into two provinces). *Map I, A-C, 4-5.*
- historia**, -ae, *f.*, history.
- hodiē**, *adv.* [hic+diēs], to-day, now.
- holus**, -eris, *n.*, kitchen vegetables, as cabbage, turnips, etc.
- homō**, -inis, *m. and f.*, human being, man.
- honestās**, -ātis, *f.* [honōs], honor, reputation, honesty.
- honestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs], honorable, illustrious.
- honor or honōs**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, esteem, value; official honor, office; mark of honor, reward, prize, gift; religious honor, sacrifice.
- honōrificē**, *adv.* [honōrificus], with honor, honorably.
- honōrificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, cf. faciō], honorable, complimentary.
- hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour, time.
- Horātius**, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.
- horreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, bristle, shudder at, dread.
- horribilis**, -e, *adj.* [horreō], dreadful, fearful.
- hortāmen**, -inis, *n.* [hortor], encouragement, exhortation.
- hortātus**, -ūs, *m.* [hortor], encouragement, exhortation.
- hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, encourage, urge, urge on, prompt.
- hortus**, -ī, *m.*, garden.
- hospes**, -itis, *m. and f.*, host; guest, hereditary or family friend.
- hospitium**, -ī, *n.* [hospes], the rela-

tion of host and guest, guest-friendship, hospitality.

hostia, -ae, *f.*, an animal sacrificed, victim.

hostilis, -e, *adj.* [hostis], of an enemy, hostile; usual with an enemy.

Hostilius, -ī, *m.*, Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, an enemy, public enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither; to this or these, besides.

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.* [hūmānus], civilization, refinement.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō], natural to man, human; civilized, refined.

humilis, -e, *adj.* [humus], on the ground, low, humble; *m. pl. as subst.*, the more lowly, more humble class.

humilitās, -ātis, *f.* [humilis], lowness, shallowness.

humus, -ī, *f.*, the earth, ground, soil; *loc. humi*, on the ground.

I

I, for *ūnus*, etc.

iaceō, -ēre, -cuī, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate, lie fallen, lie low, lie dead.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct.

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō], throw about, cast; discuss, consider; shake, sway.

iactūra, -ae, *f.* [iaciō], a throwing away, loss, expense, sacrifice.

iactus, -ūs, *m.* [iaciō], a throwing, throw, cast.

iam, *adv.*, presently, at once, straightway, now; **nōn iam**, no longer; by this time, already, finally; even; then, so then.

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.* [Iānus, an old Italian deity], the Janiculum.
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door.

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place, on that side; then.

ibidem, *adv.*, in the same place.

Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Remi.

icō, -ere, icī, ictum, *tr.* (only the *pf. tenses* in classical prose), strike, smite; *w. foedus*, make, conclude.

ictus, -ūs, *m.* [icō], stroke, beat, blow; a wound; of water, jet.

idcircō, *adv.*, on that or this account, therefore.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *dem. pron.*, the same, same one; also, too, besides.

identidem, *adv.*, again and again.

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, adapted, fit.

Idūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of the remaining months.

iēiūnium, -ī, *n.* [iēiūnus, fasting], a fast, hunger.

igitur, *conj.*, usually postpositive, then, therefore, consequently, accordingly.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire; signal-fire; constellation, star; lightning; the flame of love, burning love.

ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

ignōrantia, -ae, *f.* [ignōrō], ignorance.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant of or unacquainted with; *pres. part. as adj.*, unaware, ignorant.

ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *tr. and intr.* [in-+(g)nōscō], overlook; grant pardon, forgive.

ignōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus], unknown, unfamiliar, strange; unacquainted with, ignorant.

ilia, -ōrum, *n.*, the abdomen below the ribs, groin, flanks.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *dem. pron.*, referring to an object comparatively remote in

space, time, order of words, or order of thought, that, that one; he, she, it; in contrast with another pron., the other, the former; more rarely, the latter; the well-known, the famous.

illīc, *adv.* [ille], in that place, there.

illinc, *adv.*, from that place, thence, on that side.

illō, *adv.* [ille], thither, there.

illūc, *adv.* [ille], to that place or subject.

Illyricum, -ī, *n.*, the country of Illyria. *Map II, E-F, 2-3.*

imbēcillitās, -ātis, *f.* [imbēcillus, weak], weakness, feebleness.

imber, -bris, *m.*, a rain, storm.

immānis, -e, *adj.*, vast, huge, immense; fierce, savage.

immēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+mēnsus], without measure, vast, immense, excessive, boundless.

immeritō, *adv.* [immeritus, undeserving], undeservedly, unjustly.

immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [in+mittō], send or let into, send in; let down, slacken; *pass. or reflex.*, throw oneself, leap, rush.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [in+mola, meal], sprinkle sacrificial meal upon; sacrifice, immolate.

immortālis, -e, *adj.* [in-+mortālis], immortal, eternal.

immūnis, -e, *adj.* [in-+mūnus], free from duty or tribute, untaxed; exempt, not sharing.

immūnitās, -ātis, *f.* [immūnis], freedom from public services or charges, immunity.

impār, -aris, *adj.* [in-+pār], unequal, uneven, not a match for, unable to cope with.

imparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+parātus], unprepared.

impatiēns, -entis, *adj.* [in-+patiēns], impatient, impetuous.

impatientia, -ae, *f.* [impatiēns], impatience, impetuosity.

impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [impediō], hindrance; *pl.*, baggage, luggage of an army. *This was the heavy baggage of the army, consisting of the engines of war, provisions in bulk, mills for grinding the soldier's grain, etc. It was conveyed in wagons or by beasts of burden, in contrast to the sarcina, or individual baggage, which was carried by the soldier himself.*

impediō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, *tr.* [in+pēs], entangle, hinder, interfere with; prevent; delay, detain.

impeditus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* impediō], hindered, occupied, encumbered, entangled; difficult, difficult to pass, impassable.

impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō], drive or urge on, incite, impel; push or strike against, strike.

impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.* [in+pendeō], overhang.

impēnsa, -ae, *f.* [impēnsus], cost, expenditure.

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* impendeō, weigh out], expensive, high, great.

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō], general, commander-in-chief. *For illus. see p. 135.*

imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of* imperō], order, command; **imperāta facere**, carry out orders.

imperītus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+perītus], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant.

imperium, -ī, *n.* [imperō], command, power, control, authority, leadership, reign, empire; government, form of government; military command.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [in+parō], command, bid;

demand; impose, levy; control, rule, govern.

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [*in+patrō*, effect], obtain (by request), accomplish; gain one's request.

impetus, -ūs, m., an attack, onset, charge; force, impetuosity, fury.

impius, -a, -um, adj. [*in+pius*], undutiful, impious, wicked.

implicō, -āre, -āvi (-ui), -ātum (-itum), tr. [*in+plicō*, fold], enfold, involve, overlap; unite closely.

implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [*in+plorō*, cry out], beseech, entreat, implore.

impōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, tr. [*in+pōnō*], place in, set in, place or lay upon; put, set.

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [*in+portō*], carry or bring in, import.

impraesentiārum, adv. [= *in praesentiā hārum*], for the present, now.

improbus, -a, -um, adj. [*in+probus*, good], bad, wicked, disloyal.

imprōvisō, adv. [*imprōvisus*], suddenly, without warning.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. [*in+prōvisus*, foreseen], unforeseen, unexpected; *dē imprōvisō*, on a sudden, unexpectedly, without warning.

imprūdēns, -entis, adj. [*in+prūdēns*], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, inadvertent.

imprūdentē, adv. [*imprūdēns*], imprudently.

imprudentia, -ae, f. [*imprūdēns*], want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion.

impūbēs, -eris (-is), adj. [*in+pūbēs*, adult], immature, young; unmarried, chaste.

impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [*in+pugnō*], fight against, attack, charge, fight.

impūne, adv. [*impūnis*, unpunished], without retaliation, unpunished, with impunity; *impūne ferre*, go unpunished; without danger, securely, freely.

impūnitās, -ātis, f. [*impūnis*, unpunished], freedom from punishment, impunity.

imum, imus, see inferus.

in, prep. *with acc. or abl.; with acc.*, into, to, toward, against, upon; *for, till; upon, over; with abl.*, in, in the midst of, on, upon, among, at, over; in the case of.

in-, inseparable particle used in composition, in-, un-, not.

inānis, -e, adj., empty; abandoned, desolate; useless; bodiless, unreal.

incendium, -ī, n. [*incendō*], a burning, conflagration, fire.

incendō, -ere, -dī, -ēns, tr., set fire to, burn.

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, indefinite; doubtful; untrustworthy; disturbed, in disorder.

incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cās, intr. [*in+cadō*], fall into, fall upon, fall; happen, occur; *of war*, break out.

incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīs, tr. [*in+caedō*], cut into, notch.

incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [*in+capiō*], begin, commence; begin to speak.

in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., set in rapid motion, urge on, impel, arouse; quicken, hurry.

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūs, tr. [*in+claudō*], shut in, inclose, imprison.

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.

incohō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., begin, undertake.

incola, -ae, m. [*incolō*], inhabitant, dweller.

in-colō, -ere, -colui, —, tr. and intr., dwell in, inhabit; dwell, live.

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.

- incommodum**, -ī, *n.* [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconvenience, loss, harm, disaster.
- in-crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [**crēdibilis**, believable], not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.
- incredpitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of increpō*, rattle], call or cry out to; chide, taunt, blame.
- in-cumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [**cumbō**, recline], recline upon, bend to; apply or devote oneself to, exert oneself, strive.
- incursiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**incurrō**, run into], an onset, incursion, invasion, attack.
- in-cursō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, run into, run against, strike against.
- incursus**, -ūs, *m.* [**incurrō**, run into], a running to, rush, dash, onset.
- incūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**in+causa**], bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid.
- inde**, *adv.*, of place, from that place, thence; of time, after that, next, then; of cause, thence, therefore; of source, from it, of it.
- in-dēiectus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, not thrown down, not overwhelmed.
- indiciū**, -ī, *n.* [*cf.* **indicō**, reveal], information, disclosure, proof.
- in-dicō**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, say publicly, proclaim, appoint; *w.* **bellum**, declare.
- indigeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.* [**egeō**], be in need of, want.
- indignitās**, -ātis, *f.* [**indignus**], unworthiness, outrage, disgrace.
- indignor**, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [**indignus**], deem unworthy, resent, disdain.
- in-diligēns**, -entis, *adj.* [**diligēns**, careful], heedless, careless, negligent.
- in-diligenter**, *adv.*, carelessly, heedlessly.
- in-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, bring in, introduce; draw on, cover; gather, overspread.
- indulgeō**, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, *intr.*, be kind to, favor.
- in-duō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *tr.*, put on, dress in, clothe, cover; **indūtus**, clad; entangle, impale, pierce.
- indūtiae**, -ārum, *f.*, truce, armistice.
- Indūtiomārus**, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Treveri.
- in-eō**, -īre, -ivī and -iī, -itum, *tr.*, go into, enter upon; engage in, begin; *w.* **cōnsilium**, form; *w.* **rationem**, make; **numerus inire**, enumerate.
- inermis**, -e, *adj.* [**in+arma**], without weapons, unarmed.
- iners**, -ertis, *adj.* [**in+ars**], unskilled; shiftless, inactive, unmanly.
- infāmia**, -ae, *f.* [**infāmis**], disgrace, degradation; **infāmiam habere**, be considered disgraceful.
- infāmis**, -e, *adj.* [**in+fāma**], infamous.
- infectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in+factus**], not done, unaccomplished.
- in-fēlix**, -īcis, *adj.*, unhappy, hapless.
- inferior**, see **inferus**.
- in-ferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātum, *tr.*, bring in, throw into; bear, bring; carry forward, advance; **signa inferre**, charge; inflict, inspire; *w.* **bellum**, wage; *w.* **causam**, allege.
- inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, down, low; *comp.*, inferior, -ius, lower, lower down, inferior; *sup.*, infimus or imus, -a, -um, lowest, at the foot or bottom of; inmost, the depths of; as *subst.*, *n.*, imum, the bottom, depth.
- infestō**, -āre, —, —, *tr.* [**infestus**], disturb, infest, ravage, trespass on.
- infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe; hostile.

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [**in+**
faciō], put on; color, stain.

in-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., fix or
fasten in or on.

infimus, see inferus.

in-finitus, -a, -um, adj., unlimited,
boundless, countless; enormous;
as subst., n., a great amount.

infirmitās, -ātis, f. [**infirmus**], weak-
ness, inconstancy.

in-firmus, -a, -um, adj., not strong,
weak, feeble.

infitor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [**infitiāe**,
denial], deny.

in-flectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, tr.,
bend down, bend.

in-flō, -flāre, -flāvī, -flātum, tr.,
blow into, blow.

in-fluō, -ere, -fluxī, —, intr., flow
into, flow, empty.

in-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr.,
dig in, drive in deep, plant, bury.

infrā, adv. and prep. [= **inferā, sc.**
parte], below, underneath; smaller
than.

in-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.,
pour into, communicate, infuse.

ingenium, -ī, n., disposition, nature.

ingēns, -entis, adj. [**in+****gēns**], out
of its kind, enormous, huge; great,
very large; *of sound*, loud.

in-grātus, -a, -um, adj., unpleasant,
unacceptable; ungrateful, thank-
less.

ingredior, -ī, -gressus, tr. and intr.
[**in+****gradior**], go into, enter, march
upon; advance.

iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [**in+**
iaciō], throw in or upon, put upon,
apply; inspire.

inimicitia, -ae, f. [**inimicus**], hos-
tility, enmity.

inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [**in+****amicus**],
unfriendly, hostile; *as subst., m.*,
an enemy (*personal, or not in war*),
an opponent, rival.

iniquitās, -ātis, f. [**iniquus**], uneven-
ness, unfairness; unfavorableness.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [**in+****aequus**],
uneven, steep; unequal, unfair,
unjust; adverse, unfavorable; un-
kind; impatient, discontented.

initium, -ī, n. [**in+****eō**], a going in, be-
ginning, commencement; edge,
boundary; **initium facere**, begin.

in-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctum, tr.,
join or fasten upon; impose.

in-iūrātus, -a, -um, adv., unsworn,
not bound by oath.

iniūria, -ae, f. [**in+****iūs**], injustice,
wrong, injury.

iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m. [**in+**
iussus, order], without com-
mand or order.

in-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [**ligō**,
bind], tie or bind on, attach,
fasten.

in-linō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, tr. and
intr. [**linō**, smear], smear or
spread over, anoint.

in-lūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, tr. and
intr., play, divert oneself with a
thing; mock.

inlūstris, -e, adj., bright, light; dis-
tinguished; famous, memorable.

in-nāscor, -ī, -nātus, intr., be born,
be raised; rise.

in-nātus, -a, -um, adj., native; in-
born; adhering.

in-nītor, -ī, -nīxus, intr., lean upon,
support oneself upon.

in-nocēns, -entis, adj., harmless, in-
offensive, guiltless, innocent.

innocentia, -ae, f. [**innocēns**], up-
rightness, integrity.

in-nocuus, -a, -um, adj. [**nocuus**,
harmful], harmless, unoffending,
innocent.

in-numerus, -a, -um, adj., countless,
innumerable.

inopia, -ae, f. [**inops**], want, lack,
scarcity, *esp. of food*, famine;
poverty.

in-opināns, -antis, adj. [opinor, think], not supposing, unawares.
in-ops, -opis, adj., helpless, destitute; wretched, pitiful.
inquam, intr., defect., always placed after one or more words of a quotation, say.
in-rideō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, tr. and intr., laugh at, ridicule; mock.
in-ridiculē, adv. [ridiculē, laughably], unwittily.
inritus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+ratus], invalid, useless, unavailing.
in-rorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., bedew, sprinkle upon.
in-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr., break in or into, storm.
inruptiō, -ōnis, f. [inrumpō], a breaking in, incursion, attack, onslaught.
in-sciēns, -entis, adj., unknowing, unaware, ignorant.
in-scientia, -ae, f., lack of knowledge, ignorance.
in-scius, -a, -um, adj. [scius, knowing], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unaware.
in-sequor; -ī, -secūtus, tr. and intr., follow up, pursue.
in-serō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, tr. [serō, entwine], fix into, insert.
insidiae, -ārum, f., ambush, stratagem, crafty device; **per insidiās,** by artifice or stratagem.
insidior, -ārī, -ātus, intr., lie in ambush; plot against.
insigne, -is, n. [insignis], a mark, distinguishing mark; signal; decoration, honor.
insignis, -e, adj. [in+signum], marked, extraordinary, conspicuous; memorable.
insigniter, adv. [insignis], remarkably.
insiliō, -ire, -uī, —, tr. and intr. [in

+saliō], leap upon, mount; leap in, spring up, bound.
in-sinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., wind or work into, introduce.
in-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, tr. and intr., stand upon, keep one's footing; enter upon, adopt; **digitis insistere,** stand or rise on tiptoe.
in-solēns, -entis, adj., unaccustomed; haughty, insolent.
insolenter, adv. [insolēns], in an unusual way; haughtily, insolently; **comp., insolentius.**
insolentia, -ae, f. [insolēns], insolence, pride.
in-spirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., breathe into, blow into or upon.
in-stabilis, -e, adj. [stabilis, steady], unsteady.
instar, n., indecl., likeness; **with gen.,** like, in the manner of.
instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr. [in+statuō], place; build, found, establish; begin, institute; make preparations; determine upon, adopt, appoint; **of troops,** draw up.
institutum, -ī, n. [pf. part. of instituō], custom, usage.
in-stō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, intr., stand upon; press on; approach, be at hand.
in-struō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, tr., build in, build up, construct; draw up, array; provide, equip, prepare.
insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj. [insuēscō, grow accustomed+faciō], accustomed, well-trained.
in-suētus, -a, -um, adj. [suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, unused, unfamiliar.
insula, -ae, f., island.
in-sum, inesse, infuī, —, intr., be in; belong to.
in-super, adv., above, on the top, from above.

integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched; whole, unwounded, unimpaired; uninjured; fresh; full.

in-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *tr.*, cover over, protect.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* and *intr.* [inter+legō], distinguish, perceive, discern; understand, comprehend.

intemperantia, -ae, *f.* [intemperāns, immoderate], arrogance.

in-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.*, stretch to, extend, direct *the eyes, ears, or mind*; *pf. part. as adj.*, intent, absorbed.

inter, *prep. with acc.*; of space, between, among, in the midst of; of time, during, in the course of; *in recipr. relations*, with, from, by, to; **inter sē**, with or to each other; *in other relations*, between, among, into the midst of, through.

inter-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go between, be between; be; pass; occur.

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], take between, interrupt, intercept, cut off; take away beforehand, take away, rob.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *tr.* [inter+claudō], cut off, shut off, block.

inter-dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, *tr.*, intervene *by an order*, prohibit, interdict.

interdiū, *adv.* [inter+diēs], in the daytime, by day.

inter-dum, *adv.*, meanwhile, sometimes.

inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.

inter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go among, be lost; perish, be killed.

interfector, -ōris, *m.* [interficiō], slayer, murderer.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [inter+faciō], kill, slay, destroy, murder.

intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [inter+iaciō], throw between, interpose, put or set between; *pass.*, of time or place, intervene.

interim, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [inter+emō], kill, slay.

interior, -ius, *comp. adj.* [inter], inner, interior; *m. pl. as subst.*, those within, those further inland, inhabitants of the interior.

interitus, -ūs, *m.* [intereō], death.

inter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* and *intr.*, send between; leave off, cease, interrupt; let pass, allow to elapse; **brevi tempore intermissō**, after waiting a short time.

interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [inter+necō], extermination, annihilation.

inter-pellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, interrupt, interfere with.

inter-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, place or put between, insert, interpose; cause, occasion; **fidem interpōnere**, give a pledge.

interpres, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter.

intrepretor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [interpres], explain, expound.

inter-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.*, break through, break down.

inter-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.*, cut through, tear or break down, cut off.

inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, —, *intr.*, be between, intervene, be present, take part in; have charge of; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; **magnī interesse**, be of great importance.

inter-vāllum, -ī, *n.*, space between; interval, distance.

inter-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come between, intervene, interpose.

interventus, -ūs, *m.* [interveniō], a coming between, intervention, in-

- terposition; a coming up *to interrupt or prevent something*.
- intestinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [intus, within], internal.
- in-texō**, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave in or together.
- intibum**, -ī, *n.*, endive, succory.
- intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside of; into, inside; before the completion of.
- in-tremō**, -ere, -uī, —, *intr.*, shake within, tremble, quake.
- in-trītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, not worn or exhausted, unwearied.
- intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, go into, enter, come in; penetrate.
- intrō-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [intrō, within], lead into, introduce.
- introitus**, -ūs, *m.* [introeō, go in], a going within, entrance, access.
- intrō-mittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, let go in, send into, admit.
- intrōrsus**, *adv.* [intrō, within+versus], into the interior, inside, within.
- in-tueor**, -ēri, -itus, *tr.*, look upon, gaze at.
- in-ūsitātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūsitātus, wonted], unusual, strange, startling.
- in-ūtilis**, -e, *adj.*, useless, worthless, unserviceable.
- in-vādō**, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *tr.*, invade, seize.
- in-veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, come upon, find, discover.
- inventor**, -ōris, *m.* [inveniō], discoverer, inventor, author.
- in-veterāscō**, -ere, -erāvī, —, *intr.* [veterāscō, grow old], grow old, become established, gain a foothold.
- in-victus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, invincible.
- in-videō**, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, *tr. and intr.*, look askance at, be envious of, grudge.
- invidia**, -ae, *f.* [invidus], envy, hatred; jealousy; unpopularity.
- invidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, envious, jealous.
- in-violātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unharmed, inviolate.
- invisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [invideō], hated, hateful.
- invītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, invite, request, urge.
- invītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's will, unwilling, reluctant.
- invius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+via], impassable.
- ipse**, -a, -um, *intens. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; he, she, it; *emphatic*, very, the very.
- ira**, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.
- irācundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [īra], passionate.
- irātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of irāscor, be angry], angry, enraged.
- Iris**, -idis, *f.*, the goddess of the rainbow, Juno's messenger.
- is**, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, that, that one, this; he, she, it; such, of such a sort.
- iste**, ista, istud, *dem. pron.*, of 2d pers., referring to that which is close to or belonging to the person addressed, that of yours, that.
- ita**, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way, to such a degree; on this condition; ita . . . ut, just as, so . . . that; ut . . . ita, as . . . so, while . . . yet.
- Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy. *Map I, E-F, 4-5.*
- Italicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Italia], Italian.
- ita-que**, *conj.*, and so, and thus; accordingly, therefore.
- item**, *adv.*, also, likewise.

iter, itineris, n., a way, road, passage, journey; march, line of march; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march, on the march; **magnum iter**, forced march; **iter facere**, to march.

iterum, adv., again, for the second time; twice; in turn.

Itius, -a, -um, adj. (*sc. portus*), a port of the Morini, probably Boulogne. *Map IV, D, 1.*

Iuba, -ae, m., a king of Numidia.

iuba, -ae, f., mane.

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, tr., order, bid, command; enjoin.

iūdex, -icis, m. and f. [*iūs+dīcō*], judge; **mē iūdice**, in my judgment.

iūdicium, -ī, n. [*iūdicō*], trial, judgment, decision; the power of judging, discernment, discretion.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*iūdex*], judge, think, consider.

iūgerum, -ī, n. (*gen. pl. iūgerum*), a Roman acre, a little more than half an acre of our land measure.

iugum, -ī, n., a yoke; ridge, crest.

Iūlius, -ī, m., a Roman name; see Caesar.

iumentum, -ī, n. [*iungō*], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden.

iūnctūra, -ae, f. [*iungō*], a joining, joint, fastening.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, tr., join, unite, associate; marry; make.

iūnior, see iuvenis.

Iūnius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., sister and wife of Jupiter, and queen of the gods.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter or Jove, the supreme deity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, m., the Jura mountains. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*

iūrātus, -a, -um, adj. [*iūror*, swear], sworn, bound by oath.

iūre, see iūs.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [*iūs*], take an oath, swear.

iūs, iūris, n., right, -justice, law; legal right, authority; judgment; obligation, privilege; *abl. iūre as adv.*, rightfully, justly.

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath.

iussum, -ī, n. [*pf. part. of iubeō*], order, command.

iūstitia, -ae, f. [*iūstus*], justice, uprightness.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [*iūs*], in accordance with law, just, righteous; right, proper, regular, well-grounded, important.

iuvenālis, -e, adj. [*iuvenis*], youthful, juvenile.

iuvenicus, -ī, m. [*iuvenis*], young bullock, steer, bull.

iuvenīlis, -e, adj. [*iuvenis*], youthful, juvenile.

iuvenis, -is, adj., young; *as subst., m. and f.*, a young person, youth, *esp. one between the ages of twenty and forty years; comp., iūnior*, younger.

iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [*iuvenis*], the period of youth, approximately from twenty to forty years; collectively, youth, young men.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, tr., aid, help.

iūxtā, adv., next, near, near by, by the side of.

Ixiōn, -onis, m., father of Pirithous.

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., the first day of the month, the Kalends.

L

L., *abbr. for Lūcius.*

L, for *quīnquāgintā*, etc.

Laberius, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp. Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune.

Labiēnus, -ī, m., a cognomen; *esp. Titus Atius Labienus*, Caesar's

most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic war.

labor, -ōris, m., toil, exertion, labor, hardship, pain, suffering; trial.

lābor, -ī, lāpsus, intr., slide, slip; course, flow; sink, fall; perish; fall away, commit a fault.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [labor], strive, labor, take pains; be hard pressed, be in distress or afflicted, suffer, be in danger.

labrum, -ī, n., the lip; edge, border.

lāc, lactis, n., milk.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., Lacedaemonian; *as subst., m., pl.,* the Lacedaemonians or Spartans. *Map I, H, 6.*

lacertus, -ī, m., upper arm, arm.

laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, attack.

Lacō, -ōnis, m., a Laconian, Lacedaemonian.

lacrima, -ae, f., a tear.

lacrimābilis, -e, adj. [lacrima], worthy of tears, lamentable, mournful.

lacus, -ūs, m., lake.

laedō, -ere, -sī, -sum, tr., hurt, injure; *w. fidem*, violate, break, betray; insult; distress, thwart.

laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus], gladness, joy.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful, glad, rejoicing.

Laevinus, -ī, m., cognomen of P. Valerius.

languidus, -a, -um, adj., spiritless, faint.

laniō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [lanius, butcher], tear, rend, tear in pieces.

lapis, -idis, m., a stone.

Larcus, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp.* Titus Larcus Flavus, the first dictator.

largior, -īrī, -ītus, tr. [largus, abundant], give largely or freely, bestow, supply.

largiter, adv. [largus, abundant], abundantly, much; **largiter posse,** have great influence.

largitiō, -ōnis, f. [largior], a giving freely, liberality.

lassitūdō, -inis, f. [lassus], weariness, faintness, exhaustion.

lassō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [lassus, weary], make faint, weary, exhaust.

lātē, adv. [lātus], widely, extensively, far and wide.

latebra, -ae, f. [lateō], a hiding-place, retreat; hidden meaning, mystery.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., lie hidden, lurk, be concealed or unseen, be unnoticed.

Latinus, -a, -um, adj., of Latium, Latin; *as subst., m. pl.,* the Latins. *Map II, D, 4.*

lātitūdō, -inis, f. [lātus], width, extent.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe. *Map IV, H, 2.*

latrō, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand.

latrōcinium, -ī, n. [latrōcinor], robbery, brigandage; bandit war.

latus, -eris, n., side, flank.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, extensive; *as subst., n.,* breadth, width.

laudātiō, -ōnis, f. [laudō], a praising, praise, approval.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [laus], praise, commend, admire, approve.

laus, laudis, f., praise, glory; flattery; a title to praise, merit, excellence.

lavō, -āre (-ere), lāvī, lautum (lōtum), tr., wash, wet, moisten; *pass.,* be washed, bathe.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [laxus], extend, open; loosen, relax.

lea, -ae, f., lioness.

leaena, -ae, f., lioness.

lectica, -ae, f., litter, sedan-chair.

lectus, -ī, m., couch, bed.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō], embassy.

lēgātus, -ī, m., legate, ambassador; lieutenant. Next in rank to the **imperātor** were the **lēgātī**, who belonged to the senatorial order, and were appointed by the senate at the suggestion of the general whom they were to serve. They were assigned to no permanent command, but acted as general lieutenants, sometimes being placed at the head of a single corps, often of an entire legion, and occasionally of two or more legions at once. Their duties also included occasional service as ambassadors. When the general was absent a **lēgātus** was intrusted with the chief command, and received the title **lēgātus prō prae-tōre**. For the dress of the **lēgātus**, see *illus. facing p. 135*.

legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō], a legion. The exact strength of the legion in Caesar's time we have no means of knowing. The nominal enrollment was 6,000 men, but in reality the average fighting force was probably about 3,500 to 4,000 men; and this number must have varied greatly with the length of service of the soldiers, the losses that had been sustained, etc. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort consisted of three maniples, and every manipule contained two centuries.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō], of or pertaining to a legion, legionary. The **mīles legiōnārius** was a model soldier, and the infantry, above all other arms of the service, constituted the effective power of the Roman army. Next to Caesar himself, it was the legionary who conquered Gaul. The infantry recruit must be a Roman citizen between the ages of seventeen and forty-six, and he enlisted for a term

of twenty years. He was strong, active, and capable of the greatest endurance. Usually the Italian was a short man, and Caesar tells us that his smallness was sometimes an object of ridicule among the tall, heavy Gauls. He had not only to be a good fighter, but he must be capable of enduring long marches, and must fortify his own camp at the end of his march. On the road, he carried not only his armor and weapons, but his cooking vessels, provisions for at least three days and often longer, his saw, basket, axe, pick, and spade, and very likely some of the palisades that were to help form the **vāllum**. He had no uniform, but was clothed in a woolen tunic and a cloak, and wore leathern boots. His defensive armor consisted of the **lōrica** or leathern cuirass, the helmet (**galea**), and an oblong shield (**scūtum**), while his weapons of offense were the **pīlum** or heavy javelin, and the short, two-edged **gladius**. The pay of Caesar's legionaries at first amounted to 120 **denarii** (about twenty-two dollars) a year. Caesar doubled it before the time of the Civil War. Out of this, the soldier must pay for his own arms and equipment; but the purchasing power of money was much greater than it is now. Besides, the soldier might expect substantial additions from the booty that was taken in war, or from the rewards given him by his general for good service. His food consisted regularly of wheaten porridge, occasionally supplemented by vegetables and meat; but other food might be obtained by foraging, or might be bought of the traders who followed in the train of the army. When his term of service was up, the legionary received a present of land or money, as provision for his old age. Frequently, however, he chose to reënter the

service as an *ēvocātus* (see on *ēvocātis*, Bk. III, 20, 11). For the dress of the legionary, see *illus. facing p. 201*.

lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [lēx], fixed by law.

legō, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*, *tr.*, gather, collect; pick, pick up; choose, select, appoint; read.

Lelex, -egis, *m.*, a Locrian, narrator of the tale of *Baucis and Philemon*.

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (with or without *lacus*), Lake Geneva. *Map IV, G, 3*.

Lemovicēs, -um, *m.*, a Celtic people about modern *Limoges*. *Map IV, D, 3-4*.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, smooth, gentle, mild.

lēnitās, -ātis, *f.* [lēnis], smoothness, gentleness.

lēniter, *adv.* [lēnis], softly, gently, gradually, moderately.

Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. *Cornelius Lentulus*, consul in 275 B.C.

leō, -ōnis, *m.*, a lion.

Leōtychidēs, -is, *m.*, a son of *Agis*, king of *Sparta*.

Lepidus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; esp. *Marcus Aemilius Lepidus*, a member of the second triumvirate.

Lepontii, -ōrum, *m.*, an Alpine tribe between *St. Gothard* and *Lake Maggiore*. *Map IV, H, 3*.

lepus, -oris, *m.*, hare.

Leuci, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe. *Map IV, F-G, 2*.

Leuctra, -ōrum, *n.*, a town in Greece, famous for the defeat of the *Spartans* by *Epaminondas*.

Leuctricus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Leuctra], of *Leuctra*.

levis, -e, *adj.*, light in weight or motion, slight, thin, trifling, small; fleet, agile; *fig.*, light, easy.

levitās, -ātis, *f.* [levis], lightness, restlessness, fickleness.

leviter, *adv.* [levis], lightly.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [levis], uplift, lift; support; lighten, relieve; take away, take down.

lēx, *lēgis*, *f.*, law, statute, enactment; condition, terms.

Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe southwest of the *Seine*, about modern *Lisieux*. *Map IV, C-D, 2*.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns], willingly, with pleasure.

liber, -brī, *m.*, the inner bark of trees, which in ancient times was used to write on; book.

liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

liberālis, -e, *adj.* [liber], of freedom, liberal, generous.

liberālitās, -ātis, *f.* [liberālis], generosity, liberality.

liberāliter, *adv.* [liberālis], as befits a freeman; graciously, generously.

liberē, *adv.* [liber], freely, without restraint.

liberī, -ōrum, *m.* [liber], the free members of the household, children.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [liber], set free, free, release.

libertās, -ātis, *f.* [liber], liberty, freedom.

libet, *libēre*, *libuit* or *libitum est*, *intr.*, it is pleasing.

libidō, -inis, *f.* [libet], sensual pleasure.

libō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, take a little of; pour out, pour as a libation, sprinkle; touch lightly, skim.

libra, -ae, *f.*, balance; of weight, a pound.

librīlis, -e, *adj.* [libra], of a pound weight.

Liburnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Liburnian; *Map I, F, 4*; *nāvēs Liburnae*, light galleys built like those of the *Liburnians*.

licentia, -ae, *f.* [licēns, free], freedom, liberty, license.

liceor, -ēri, licitus, *intr.*, bid.

licet, -ēre, -cuit and -citum est, *intr.*, *impers.*, it is allowed, permitted, one is at liberty, may; *passing into a conj.*, granted that, although, notwithstanding.

lictor, -ōris, *m.*, [ligō, bind], lictor. *For his dress see illus. facing p.135.*

Liger, -eris, *m.*, the river Loire. *Map IV, C-F, 3-4.*

Ligurēs, -um, *m.*, the Ligurians, people of Liguria, a district on the northwest coast of Italy. *Map II, A-B, 2.*

lilium, -ī, *n.*, lily; a name given to the scrobis, dug out in the form of a lily.

Lilybaeum, -ī, *n.*, a promontory and town of western Sicily. *Map II, C, 7.*

limbus, -ī, *m.*, border, edge, fringe.

Lingonēs, -um, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of the Vosges Mountains, about modern Langres. *Map IV, F, 2.*

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

lingula, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of lingua*], little tongue; tongue of land.

linter, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff.

linum, -ī, *n.*, flax, linen, canvas.

liquidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [liqueō, be fluid], flowing, liquid, clear, limpid.

liquor, -ōris, *m.*, a liquid, water.

lis, litis, *f.*, strife, lawsuit, damages.

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Haeduans.

littera, -ae, *f.*, letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, writing, inscription, letter, dispatch.

litus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach.

Livius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Marcus Livius Salinator, consul in 219 and 207 B.C.

locuplēs, -ētis, *adj.*, rich.

locuplētō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [locuplēs], make rich, enrich.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl. loci and loca*), a place, spot, point, locality; ground, earth; space, position. situation; destination; room, chance; degree, rank; *abl. with gen.*, in the place of, as.

longē, *adv.* [longus], of space, in length; far away, afar; of degree, by far, far; of time, *comp.*, longius, longer.

longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [longus], far off, distant, remote.

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus], length, extent.

longurius, -ī, *m.* [longus], long pole.

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, long-continued; tall.

loquor, -ī, locūtus, *tr. and intr.*, say, speak, talk, converse.

lōrica, -ae, *f.* [lōrum], leathern cuirass covered with metal, which was worn by the legionary; a breastwork, parapet. This was made usually of hurdles, and added to the wall of the camp, in case of a long stay, or in times of unusual danger. It was plaited of wickerwork, and was low enough to enable the soldier to cast the pīlum above it; while at the same time its height was great enough to protect his entire body from missiles that might be thrown by the enemy.

lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

Lūcānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Lucania, Lucanians. *Map II, E-F, 5.*

Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.

Lucrētia, -ae, *f.*, the wife of Collatinus.

lūctus, -ūs, *m.* [lūgeō], grief, sorrow, mourning.

lūcus, -ī, *m.*, consecrated grove, grove, wood, forest.

lūdus, -ī, *m.* [lūdō], a game, public game.

Lugotorix, -igis, *m.*, a British chieftain.

lūna, -ae, *f.* [*cf.* **lūceō**, be light], moon; as proper noun, the Moon-goddess.

luō, -ere, **luī**, —, *tr.*, to loose; make atonement for; *w.* **poenam**, pay, suffer.

Lūsitānī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Spain. *Map I, A, 4-5.*

lupus, -ī, *m.*, a wolf.

Lutātius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

lūx, **lūcis**, *f.*, light, daylight; **prīmā lūce** or **ortā lūce**, at daybreak.

lūxuria, -ae, *f.* [**lūxus**, excess], luxury, high living.

Lūsander, -drī, *m.*, a Spartan general.

Lysimachus, -ī, *m.*, father of Aristides.

M

M., *abbr.* for **Mārcus**.

M, for **mille**, etc.

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, a country lying north of Thessaly. *Map I, G-H, 5.*

māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall, inclosure.

māchinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**māchinor**, devise], a mechanical device, machine, engine.

mactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, honor; honor by offering to the gods.

madefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [**madeō**, be wet + **faciō**], make wet, moisten, drench.

madidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**madeō**, be wet], moist, wet, drenched.

Maedi, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of western Thrace.

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**maereō**], sad, mournful, dejected.

magis, *comp. adv.*, more, in a greater degree; rather; **magis . . . quam**, rather than.

magister, -trī, *m.*, chief, master; **magister equitum**, master of the horse, aid-de-camp of a dictator; teacher.

Magetobriga, -ae, *f.*, a town in Gaul. *Map IV, F, 3.*

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [**magister**], public office, magistracy; body of officers, government; magistrate.

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**magnus** + **faciō**], splendid, magnificent.

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**magnus**], greatness, size, extent.

magnopere (**magnō opere**), *adv.*, with great labor, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large, of great extent, much; extreme; of age; *w.* **nātū**, old; of value, great, considerable; *n. abl.* **magnō**, at a great price, dear; as *subst.*, *m.*, the Great, a surname of Pompey; *comp.*, **maior**, **maius**; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, **maiōrēs** or **maiōrēs nātū**, ancestors; *sup.*, **maximus**, -a, -um.

Māgō, -ōnis, *m.*, brother of Hannibal.

maior, see **magnus**.

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea, calm.

male, *adv.* [**malus**], badly, ill; wrongly; cruelly; unsuccessfully; *comp.*, **peius**; *sup.*, **pessimē**.

maleficium, -ī, *n.* [**maleficus**, wicked], harm, mischief.

maleficus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**male** + **faciō**], evil doing; inimical, unpropitious.

mālō, **mälle**, **māluī**, —, *tr.* [**magis** + **volō**], prefer, choose.

malum, -ī, *n.* [**malus**], evil, misfortune, harm, mischief.

mālum, -ī, *n.*, apple.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked, ill-omened; *comp.*, **peior**, -ius; *sup.*, **pessimus**, -a, -um.

mālus, -ī, *m.*, pole, mast, beam.

mandātum, -ī, *n.* [**mandō**], command, charge.

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, enjoin, order, command; commit, intrust, consign; **sē mandāre**, betake oneself, take to.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people whose territory lay between that of the Haedui and the Lingones. *Map IV, F, 3.*

Mandubracius, -ī, m., a prince of the Trinovantes.

māne, adv., in the morning.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, intr., stay, remain, stop; be left.

manifestus, -a, -um, adj., clear, manifest, plain.

Mānilius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

manipulus, -ī, m. [manus+pleō, fill], a handful of hay about a pole, anciently used as a standard; a company of two centuries, manipule. *The manipulus was the thirtieth part of a legion.*

Mānlius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

(1) Marcus Manlius Capitolinus, who saved the Capitol in the Gallic war, consul in 392 B.C.

(2) Titus Manlius Torquatus, dictator in 353 B.C.

(3) Lucius Manlius Vulso, consul in 256 B.C.

(4) Gnaeus Manlius Vulso, consul in 189 B.C.

(5) Lucius Manlius Censorinus, consul in 149 B.C.

(6) Lucius Manlius, a proconsul who was defeated by the Aquitani in 78 B.C.

mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [mānsuētus, tamed+faciō], tame; pass., mānsuēfierī, be tamed.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mansuētus, tamed], tameness; gentleness, compassion.

manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [manus+mittō], release, emancipate.

manus, -ūs, f., hand; blow of the hand, blow, cast; a force, band of troops, number, company; *ferrea manus*, grappling-iron.

Mārcellus, -ī, m., a cognomen of the

plebeian gens Claudia; esp. Marcus Claudius Marcellus, consul in 51 B.C.

Mārcius, -ī, m., see Ancus.

Marcomānī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a praenomen.

Mardonius, -ī, m., a Persian general.

mare, -is, n., the sea.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare], of the sea; sea-; maritime, on the sea; *maritima pars*, the sea-coast.

marītus, -ī, m. [mās], husband.

Marius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Gaius Marius, consul seven times, and opponent of Sulla in the Civil War.

marmor, -oris, n., marble.

Mārs, -tis, m., the Roman god of war; fig., war, battle.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. [Mārs], of Mars; of the month of March.

mās, maris, adj., masculine, male; as subst., m., a male.

Masinissa, -ae, m., a king of Numidia.

māssa, -ae, f., kneaded dough; a lump (of metal), mass (of curd).

matara, -ae, f., javelin, pike.

māter, -tris, f., mother; *mātrēs familiae*, matrons.

māteria, -am, and māteriēs, -em, f. [māter] (only in nom. and acc. sing.), matter, material of which anything is made, timber.

māterior, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [māteria], get wood.

māternus, -a, -um, adj. [māter], of a mother, mother's, maternal.

Matiscō, -ōnis, f., a town belonging to the Haedui, modern Mâcon. *Map IV, F, 3.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n. [māter], marriage, matrimony.

Matrona, -ae, m., the Marne, a river of Gaul. *Map IV, E-F, 2.*

mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus], early, speedily.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [mātūrus], make ripe; make haste, hasten.

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe, matured; *fig.*, ripened, of ripe judgment; early.

maximē, *sup. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, exceedingly, chiefly, especially.

maximus, *see* magnus.

Maximus, -ī, *m.*, Greatest, a cognomen.

medicus, -ī, *m.*, physician.

mediocris, -e, *adj.* [medius], middling, ordinary, moderate.

mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris], in a small degree.

Mediomatrici (-ēs), -ōrum (-um), *m.*, a Gallic people about modern Metz. *Map IV, F-G, 2.*

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius+terra], midland, inland, interior.

meditor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, consider, plan.

medium, *see* medius.

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, the middle of, the midst of; in the middle or midst; of time, intervening; as *subst.*, *n.*, **medium**, -ī, the middle, midst.

Meldi, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people on the Marne, about modern Meaux. *Map IV, E, 2.*

melior, *see* bonus.

melius, *see* bene.

membrum, -ī, *n.*, limb, member, part.

meminī, -isse, *tr.*, *defect.*, remember, recollect.

memor, -oris, *adj.*, mindful, heedful.

memoria, -ae, *f.* [memor], memory, recollection; remembrance, time; narration, record, tradition.

Menapii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

Menelāi portus, *m.*, a port in northern Africa.

mēns, *mentis*, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, thought; purpose, resolution; feelings, heart.

mēnsa, -ae, *f.* [mētior], table; meal, course; **mēnsae secundae**, dessert.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

mēnsūra, -ae, *f.* [mētior], measuring, measurement.

menta, -ae, *f.*, mint.

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention; **mentiōnem habere**, make mention.

mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [mercor], a merchant, trader; *in particular*, the traders who followed the army, to traffic with the soldiers. They bought the booty which the men had to dispose of, and bartered or sold them provisions and various wares. When the legions encamped, the **mercātōrēs** remained outside the walls, near the decuman gate; and on the march, they followed the rear of the column.

mercātūra, -ae, *f.* [mercor, trade], trade, commerce.

mercēnnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [mercēs], hired for pay; mercenary.

mercēs, -ēdis, *f.* [mereō], price, fee, offer of reward.

Mercurius, -ī, *m.* [merx, merchandise], Mercury, the messenger of the gods, son of Jupiter and Maia.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum or **mereor**, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, deserve, earn, gain, acquire.

mergō, -ere, **mersī**, **mersum**, *tr.*, plunge, sink, overwhelm.

mergus, -ī, *m.* [mergō], diver, waterfowl.

merīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [merīdiēs], of midday; **merīdiānum tempus**, noon.

meridiēs, -ēī, m., midday; the south.

meritum, -ī, n. [meritus], merit, desert, benefit; demerit, fault, offense.

meritus, see mereō.

Messāla, -ae, m., a cognomen; esp. Marcus Valerius Messala, consul in 61 B.C.

-met, encl. suffix, self, own.

Metellus, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Quintus Caecilius Metellus Macedonicus, conqueror of Macedonia, consul 143 B.C.

mētior, -īrī, mēnsus, tr., measure, deal or measure out, distribute.

Mētius, -ī, m., Marcus Metius, a friend of Caesar.

metō, -ere, messuī, messum, tr., cut, reap; destroy, lay waste.

metuēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of metuō, fear], fearing, afraid; metuēns deōrum, god-fearing, reverent.

metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread, terror; cause of fear.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [mē], my, mine, my own, of mine; my own, i.e., master of myself.

migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., move, migrate.

mīles, -itis, m., soldier, soldiery.

mīliārium, -ī, n. [mīlle], milestone.

militāris, -e, adj. [mīles], of war, military; rēs militāris, warfare, the art of war.

militia, -ae, f. [mīles], military service, warfare.

militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [mīles], be a soldier, wage war.

mīlle (pl. mīlia or mīllia), num. adj., a thousand.

Minerva, -ae, f., the goddess of wisdom and of the arts and sciences.

minimē, see parum.

minimus, see parvus.

minor, see parvus.

Minturnae, -ārum, f., a town of southern Latium. Map II, D, 5.

Minucius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Minucius, consul in 458 B.C., defeated by the Aequi.

(2) Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Caesar's army, and afterward one of his assassins.

minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. and intr., lessen, diminish, break or chop into pieces; offend against; settle; ebb; minuente aestū, at ebb tide.

minus, see parum.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus, tr., wonder at, be amazed, marvel; admire.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, marvelous.

misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum, tr., mix, mingle.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, unfortunate, sad.

miserābilis, -e, adj. [miseror], wretched, unhappy, miserable.

miserandus, -a, -um, adj. [miseror], lamentable, miserable.

misericordia, -ae, f. [misericors, merciful], mercy, pity, clemency.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, tr. [miser], lament, pity.

missus, -ūs, m. [mittō], a sending; order.

Mithridātēs, -is (Greek acc. -ēn), m., a famous king of Pontus.

mītis, -e, adj., mild, mellow, soft; gentle, kind.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, tr., let go, send, send away, dispatch; cast; shoot; give over, cease.

mōbilis, -e, adj. [moveō], movable, changeable, inconstant, hasty.

mōbilitās, -ātis, f. [mōbilis], movableness, activity, agility; changeableness, inconstancy.

mōbiliter, adv. [mōbilis], rapidly, easily.

moderātus, -a, -um, adj. [moderor], self-controlled, temperate.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [modus], limit; control, guide; manage, govern.

modestia, -ae, *f.* [modus], moderation, humility.

modicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus], in proper measure; modest, scanty, small.

modius, -ī, *m.* [modus], measure; peck.

modo, *adv.* [modus], only, merely; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also or even; *of time*, now, just now, a little while ago; *correl. with another adv.*, now, at one moment; [*modo . . . modo*, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another; *in commands or wishes*, only.

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, size; limit, amount; fashion; way, manner, method; *quem ad modum*, in what way, how; kind, sort; *eius modi*, of that or this sort; *abl. with gen.*, like, as, in the character of; rhythm, measure, time.

moenia, -ium, *n.*, city walls, walls, ramparts.

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, a mass, dam, dike, mole; mass of stone, missile.

molestē, *adv.* [molestus], with trouble or difficulty; *molestē ferre*, be annoyed or vexed (at).

mōlimentum, -ī, *n.* [mōlior], exertion, effort.

molliō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), -ītum, *tr.* [mollis], make soft, soften.

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft, yielding, gentle, mild; inconstant; gently sloping.

mollitia, -ae, *f.* [mollis], softness, weakness, irresolution.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [mola, mill], grind.

mōmentum, -ī, *n.* [moveō], a movement; moment, instant; weight, importance.

Mona, -ae, *f.*, usually in ancient writers the island of Anglesey,

probably in Caesar the Isle of Man. *Map I, C, 1.*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, remind, advise, warn, instruct, urge; forewarn, predict.

monitum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of moneō*], admonition, advice, counsel, oracle.

mōns, **montis**, *m.*, hill, height; mount, mountain-.

montānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mōns], of mountains, mountain.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, stopping; *abl. as adv.*, with time, gradually.

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease.

Morini, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe of modern Picardy. *Map IV, E, 1.*

mорий, -ī (-īrī), **mortuus**, *intr.*, die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [mora], delay, wait, stay; stop, retard, hinder; *nihil morārī*, care nothing for, not value at all.

mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death.

morsus, -ūs, *m.* [mordeō], a biting, bite.

mortālis, -e, *adj.* [mors], mortal, human.

mortuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of morior*], dead, in death.

mōrum, -ī, *n.*, mulberry.

mōrus, -ī, *f.*, mulberry-tree.

mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, way, manner, usage, wont, custom.

Mosa, -ae, *m.*, the Meuse or Maas, a river of Belgic Gaul. *Map IV, F, 1-2.*

mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement, motion; *political* movement, uprising.

moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *tr.*, move, stir, set in motion; *castra movēre*, break camp; *sē movēre*, move; remove, expel; excite, arouse; commence; influence, affect.

mox, *adv.*, soon, presently, before long, by and by, then, afterward.

mūcrō, -ōnis, m., sharp point or edge, sword's point, sword.

mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsum, tr., stroke lightly; soothe, appease.

muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier], a woman's, womanlike.

mulier, -eris, f., woman.

multifidus, -a, -um, adj. [multus + findō], many-cleft, cleft into many parts.

multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus], a multitude, crowd, great number; the common people.

multō, adv. [multus], by much, much, far, by far.

multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., punish.

multum, adv. [multus], much, greatly, especially, very; often, frequently; *comp.*, plūs, more; *sup.*, plūrimum, most, very.

multus, -a, -um, adj., many, many a; much, abundant, a great quantity of; extensive, great; *comp.*, plūs, plūris, more, in greater number or quantity; *pl.*, a number of, several; *n. sing. as subst.*, more; *m. pl. as subst.*, more, the majority; *sup.*, plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very large, abundant, of great volume.

Mummius, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp.* Lucius Mummius, consul in 146 B.C., and conqueror of Corinth.

mundus, -ī, m., ornament; the universe, world.

municipium, -ī, n., free town.

mūnimentum, -ī, n. [mūniō], fortification, protection, defense.

mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr. [moenia], wall, fortify, defend; build.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō], fortifications, works, intrenchments.

mūnus, -eris, n., a service, office; duty, burden; favor, kindness; gift.

mūrālis, -e, adj. [mūrus], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrālis falx, a**

wall-hook; **pīlum mūrāle, a large** pike, to be hurled from a wall.

mūrex, -icis, m., the purple-fish; hence, collectively, purple-fish.

murmur, -uris, n., murmur.

mūrus, -ī, m., wall, city wall.

Mūs, Mūris, m., a cognomen; see Decius.

mūscus, -ī, m., moss.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., maimed, mutilated, blunt; **mutilus, cornibus, having short, blunt horns.**

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [freq. of moveō], change, transform, replace; be changed, alter.

mūtuus, -a, -um, adj. [mūtō], borrowed; in return; mutual.

N

nam, conj., for, inasmuch as.

Nammeius, -ī, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

Namnetēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe about modern Nantes. Map IV, C, 3.

nam-que, conj., for, for in fact, inasmuch as.

nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nānctus), tr., get by accident or good fortune, obtain; meet with, find.

Nantuātēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe. Map IV, G, 3-4.

Narbō, -ōnis, m., a town of the Province, modern Narbonne. Map IV, E, 5.

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., report, say, describe.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up; be found.

Nasua, -ae, m., a leader of the Suebi.

nātālis, -e, adj. [nāscor], pertaining to birth, of one's birth; *as subst.* (sc. diēs), m., birthday.

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor], origin; kind;

nation, tribe, people; *often applied to a distant and barbarous people.*
nātivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor], produced by nature, natural.
nātūra, -ae, *f.* [nāscor], birth; nature, character; appearance, shape; natural character or constitution, situation.
nātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of nāscor], born, arisen, occurring, produced; *as subst., m., a son, pl., children; old, of age.*
nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor], *only in abl. sing., birth, age.*
naufragium, -ī, *n.* [nāvis+frangō], shipwreck.
nauta, -ae, *m.* [=nāvita], sailor.
nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta], of a sailor, naval, nautical.
nāvāle, *see nāvālis.*
nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis], naval; *as subst., n., usually pl., but sing. in poetry, a dock, dockyard.*
nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [dim. of nāvis], small boat, skiff.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō], a sailing; navigation, voyage.
nāvigium, -ī, *n.* [nāvigō], vessel, ship, boat.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [nāvis+agō], set sail, sail.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, a ship. *Caesar's ships were of three sorts, the nāvēs longae, nāvēs onerāriae, and nāvēs actuāriae. The war-vessels (nāvēs longae) were long, narrow vessels of small draught, which were ill adapted to rough water. In stormy weather they had not only to make port, but to be drawn up ashore on rollers. They averaged, perhaps, 50 yards in length and about 5 in width, and were provided with high, sharp prows, which were used as rams against the enemy's ships. The sterns were high. The nāvis longa was provided with one sail, and usually three banks of oars,*

and was capable of great speed. The nāvis onerāria, or freight-boat, was much shorter and broader, and slower than the war-galley. It had a deeper draught, and carried more sail. The nāvis actuāria, or transport, was a low shallow vessel, which Caesar used in conveying troops, horses and munitions of war. It was built in such a way as to attain as much speed as possible.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nāvus, busy], do zealously; **operam nāvāre**, act vigorously, do one's best.

-ne, *encl. adv. and conj.; as adv., in direct questions, it is an untranslatable sign of interrogation; as conj., in indirect questions, whether; -ne . . . an, whether . . . or; for an in the second part of a double question, or.*

nē, *adv. and conj.; as adv., not; nē . . . quidem, not even; as conj., that not, for fear that; from with verbals in -ing; after verbs of fearing, that.*

nebula, -ae, *f.*, cloud, mist, fog.

nec or neque, *conj.*, and not, nor; **nec . . . nec or neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor.

necessāriō, *adv.* [necessārius], unavoidably, under compulsion.

necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse], necessary; urgent, critical; *m. pl. as subst., kinsmen.*

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, unyielding; unavoidable, necessary.

necessitās, -ātis, *f.* [necesse], necessity, exigency, need; constraint, compulsion; interest.

necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse], relationship, friendship, bond.

nec-ne, *conj.*, or not.

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nex], kill, destroy.

Nectanabis, -bidis, *m.*, an Egyptian king.

nefārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās], impious, execrable.

ne-fās, *n. indecl.*, a transgression of the divine law, sin, crime.

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [nec + legō], not to heed, disregard, neglect.

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, say no, deny, refuse.

negōtium, -ī, *n.* [nec + ōtium], concern, business, undertaking; **negōtium dare**, assign a task; trouble, difficulty; **nōn quicquam negōti esse**, be no trouble.

Nemetēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe living about modern Speier. *Map IV, H, 2.*

nēmō (*dat.* **nēminī**, *acc.* **nēminem**), *m. and f.* [ne + homō], nobody, no one.

nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*, a grandson, descendant.

nē-quāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means.

neque, see **nec**.

nequeō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), -itum, *intr.* [ne + queō, be able], be unable, not to be able, cannot.

nēquīquam, *adv.* [nē + old *abl.* of **quisquam**], not in any way, in vain; to no purpose.

Nēreīs, -idos, *f.*, a daughter of the seagod Nereus, sea-nymph, Nereid.

Nerō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen. See **Claudius**.

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with the Nervii, Nervian.

Nervii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Belgic tribe between the Sambre and Scheldt. *Map IV, E-F, 1-2.*

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew, tendon, nerve; a bowstring, cord; energy, power, strength.

neu, see **nēve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [ne + uter], neither; *pl.*, neither side or party.

nē-ve or neu, *conj.*, and not, nor, and not to, and that . . . not.

nex, *necis*, *f.*, death, execution, murder, slaughter.

niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black, dark, dusky.

nihil, or *poet.* **nīl**, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; **nōn nihil**, something; *as adv.*, not at all, not a bit; **nōn nihil**, to some extent, somewhat.

nihilum, -ī, *n.* [nihil], not a bit, nothing; **nihilō minus**, none the less.

nimbus, -ī, *m.*, rain-storm, rain-cloud, storm-cloud.

nimius, -a, -um, *adj.* [nimis, too much], too great, too much, excessive.

Ninus, -ī, *m.*, the first king of Assyria and husband of Semiramis.

nisi, *conj.* [nī + sī], if not, unless; *after a neg. cl.*, save only, except, unless, but; **nisi sī**, except, unless.

Nitiobrogēs, -um, *m.*, a people of Aquitania. *Map IV, D, 4.*

nītor, -ī, **nīsus** or **nīxus**, *intr.*, rely upon; strive, endeavor.

niveus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nix, snow], of snow; snowy; snow-white, white.

nō, **nāre**, **nāvī**, *intr.*, swim.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.* [nōscō], well-known, famous, renowned; high-born, noble; excellent.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.* [nōbilis], fame; rank, nobility; the nobility, nobles.

nocēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of **noceō**], harmful, wicked, guilty.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *intr.*, hurt, injure, do harm; be an obstacle, hinder.

noctū, *adv.* [nox], by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], of night, at night, nocturnal.

nōdus, -ī, *m.*, knot, joint.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *tr. and intr.*, [ne + volō], not to wish, be unwilling.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, a name; the gentile or clan name; reputation, renown, responsibility; account, sake; *abl. with gen.*, as.

nōminātim, *adv.* [nōminō], by name.

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], name, call; mention.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [nōnāgintā], ninetieth.

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety.

nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōn-nūllus or **nōn nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

nōn-numquam or **nōn numquam**, *adv.*, sometimes, at times.

nōnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [novem], ninth.

Norbānus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

Nōreia, -ae, *f.*, the capital of the Norici.

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Norici, Norican.

nōscō, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; *pf. tense*, have learned and hence know; *pf. part. as adj.*, known, familiar.

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [nōs], our, ours, our own; my; *m. pl. as subst.*, our soldiers, our men.

nota, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], mark, mark of ignominy, reproach.

nōtitia, -ae, *f.* [nōscō], celebrity, fame; acquaintance, knowledge.

notō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nota], mark; censure; observe, note.

Notus, -ī, *m.*, the south wind, wind.

nōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of nōscō*], known, familiar, well-known.

novem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine.

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Suessiones, modern Soissons. *Map IV, E, 2.*

novitās, -ātis, *f.* [novus], newness, novel kind or nature, strangeness.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, fresh, recent; novel, strange, unheard-of; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, last, hindermost, the end of, rear; novissimum agmen, the rear; *m. pl. as subst.*, those at the rear, the rear.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night; multā nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae, *f.* [noxius, harmful], injury, crime, offense.

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud, mist.

nūbilum, [-ī, *n.* [nūbilus, cloudy], cloudy weather; *pl.* clouds.

nūbō, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil oneself, be married, marry (*of the woman only*).

nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nūdus], strip, uncover; expose, leave exposed; bring to view; deprive of.

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked; lightly clad.

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ne+ūllus], no, not any; *as subst.*, *m.*, no one, nobody.

num, *interrog. adv.*; with a direct question to which an answer in the negative is expected, often best untranslated; not so . . . is it? with indirect question, whether.

Numa, -ae, *m.*, a Roman proper name; esp. Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, will, divine will; divinity, power, majesty; god.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, a number; amount, quantity; account, estimation; *abl. with gen.*, in the number of, as.

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidians.

Numidia, -ae, *f.*, a country of northern Africa, west of Carthage. *Map I, D, 6.*

nummus, -ī, *m.*, piece of money, coin.

numquam, *adv.* [ne+umquam], never, not at all.

nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time; in these circumstances.

nūntia, -ae, *f.* [nūntius], female messenger, messenger.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nūntius], announce, report; give orders, direct.

nūntius, -a, -um, *adj.*, announcing; *as subst., m.*, messenger, message, news, tidings.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, not long since.

nūtriō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītum, *tr.*, nurse, nourish, feed.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod, nodding; sign, command.

nux, **nucis**, *f.*, nut.

nympha, -ae, *f.*, a nymph; *pl.*, the nymphs, goddesses who dwell in the sea, fountains, woods, mountains, etc.

O

ō, *interj.*, O! oh!

ob, *prep. with acc.*, toward; on account of; by reason of.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+aes], in debt; *as subst., m.*, debtor.

ob-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead toward; prolong, extend.

ob-eō, -īre, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, *tr. and intr.*, go to or against; perish, die.

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [ob+iaciō], throw before, interpose; *pf. part. as adj.*, interposed, lying before, opposite.

obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō], approach to death, death; destruction, overthrow.

ob-linō, -ere, -lēvi, -litum, *tr.* [linō, smear], smear, defile.

oblīquē, *adv.* [oblīquus], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

oblīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sidewise, slanting, oblique.

oblitus, *see* oblinō.

oblītus, *see* oblivīscor.

oblivīscor, -ī, **oblītus**, *tr. and intr.*, forget, disregard.

ob-orior, -īrī, -ortus, *intr.*, spring up, rise, appear.

ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, overwhelm, destroy.

obscurus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark; obscure, unintelligible.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+sacrō], implore, entreat.

ob-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *intr.*, yield, submit, obey; assist.

ob-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, heed, observe, mark; celebrate.

obses, -idis, *m. and f.*, hostage, pledge, security.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [ob+sedeō], obstruct, blockade, besiege.

obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege; peril; oppression.

ob-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, seal, sign, execute.

ob-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, stand in the way, oppose.

obsolētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [obsolēscō, wear out], worn out, shabby.

obsōnium, -ī, *n.*, food, side-dish.

obstinātē, *adv.* [obstinātus, resolved], firmly, inflexibly, resolutely.

ob-stipēscō, -ere, -stipui, —, *intr.* [ob+stupeō, be stunned], be stupefied, be struck dumb.

ob-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intr.*, stand in the way; oppose.

ob-stringō, -ere, -strīxi, -strictum, *tr.*, bind, place under obligations.

ob-stupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [stupefaciō, make stupid], amaze, stupefy.

ob-temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [temperō, be moderate], comply with; obey, be subject to rule.

obtestātiō, -ōnis, f. [obtestor], entreaty.

ob-testor, -ārī, -ātus, tr., call to witness, invoke, entreat, call upon.

obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. and intr. [ob+teneō], hold, govern; occupy; retain, have control of, administer; gain, obtain; prevail, gain one's point; **rem obtinēre**, gain the victory.

obtingō, -ere, -tigī, —, intr. [ob+tangō], fall to one's lot, befall.

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, f. [obtrectō, decry], disparagement, detraction.

ob-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come to, come in the way, meet; fall to the lot of, be allotted; be revealed.

obviam, adv. [ob+viam], in the way, against; **obviam venire**, come to meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [ob+cadō], occasion, opportunity.

occāsus, -ūs, m. [occidō], a falling, setting; **occāsus sōlis** and **occāsus**, sunset; the west.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, intr. [ob+cadō], fall or go down, perish, be lost; set; **occidēns sōl**, the setting sun, west.

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr. [ob+caedō], cut down, put to death, kill.

occultē, adv. [occultus], in concealment, secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of **occulō**, hide], hide, conceal.

occultus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of **occulō**, cover], covered, concealed; as *subst.*, *n.*, in **occultō**, in concealment.

occupātiō, -ōnis, f. [occupō], a seizing, occupying; business, affair; occupation, engagement.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ob+capiō], take possession of, occupy, seize; hold, fill; anticipate; *pf. part.*, busy, engaged in.

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō], run to meet, meet, encounter, oppose, offer resistance; rush; find; occur, suggest itself.

Ōceanus, -ī, m., the ocean.

Ocelum, -ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul. *Map IV, G, 4.*

Octāviānus, -ī, m., a surname of the Emperor Augustus.

octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octō], eighth; **octāvus decimus**, eighteenth.

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [octō+centum], eight hundred.

octō, indecl. num. adj., eight.

Octodūrus, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri, modern Martigny. *Map IV, G, 3.*

octōgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [octō], eighty each.

octōgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [octōgintā], eightieth.

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj. [octō], eighty.

octōnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [octō], eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -ī, m., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, tr., *defect.*, hate, detest.

odium, -ī, n. [ōdī], hatred, aversion.

Oetaeus, -a, -um, adj., of Mount Oeta in Thessaly; Thessalian.

offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, tr. and intr. [ob+-fendō, strike], dash against, strike; come upon, find; offend; cause to stumble.

offēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [offendō], a striking against; offense.

offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, tr. [ob+ferō], bring before, bring in one's way, expose, offer, present, show; **sē offerre**, expose oneself, cast oneself in the way of.

officīna, -ae, f., workshop, arsenal.

officium, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], courtesy, honor; allegiance, duty, performance of duty; obedience.

olim, *adv.*, once, formerly.

oliva, -ae, *f.*, olive, olive-tree.

omittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō], let go; let fall, give up, neglect, omit.

omnino, *adv.* [omnis], altogether, entirely, in all; only, alone; *with negatives*, at all.

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole, the whole of.

onerarius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], fitted for burdens, transport-, (*sc. nāvis*) transport-ship, freight-ship.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [onus], load, burden.

onus, -eris, *n.*, a load, pack, burden; weight; freight, cargo.

onustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus], burdened, laden.

opera, -ae, *f.* [opus], work, pains, aid, effort; **operam dare**, take pains, exert oneself, give one's attention, listen.

operiō, -īre, **operui**, **opertum**, *tr.*, cover.

opiniō, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, think], way of thinking, belief, opinion; reputation; expectation; **opiniōnem habere**, *with the gen.*, have a reputation for anything.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*, it behooves, it ought, it is best.

opportūnē, *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, at the right time.

opportunitās, -ātis, *f.* [opportūnus], fitness, convenience; fit time, favorable position or opportunity, advantage.

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+portus], fit, convenient, opportune.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum], of or pertaining to a town; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, townspeople.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, city; stronghold.

oppleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [ob+-pleō, fill], fill completely, fill.

opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], weigh down, burden, crush; overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise.

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō], a storming, besieging, attack. *When it was practicable, the Romans preferred to take a stronghold by assault (oppugnātiō repentīna). While the light-armed troops discharged a shower of darts and stones upon the walls, to dislodge the defenders, the soldiers filled up the moat with earth, hurdles, etc., and then the attacking column rushed forward under the protection of their interlocked shields (testūdō), to storm the gates and break through the walls. If the town could not be taken by these means, a blockade (obsidiō) might be resorted to, and the inhabitants starved into surrender, if possible. But when the town could not be stormed, and was too well provisioned to be reduced by a blockade, the regular siege (oppugnātiō) was the only means left to break down the defense. The first measure taken was the construction of the agger (see agger), which was pushed rapidly forward to the ditch about the town, or sometimes ran parallel with it. The workmen were protected by the movable screens called plutei, and by sheds (vineae, testudinēs, mūscoli), and the slingers and bowmen kept up a constant fire of missiles to drive the defenders from the walls. When the agger was completed, the ditch was filled up with earth, stones, etc., usually carried through the covered galleries of the agger; and the besiegers were then ready for the actual assault (expugnātiō) to begin. Parties of soldiers.*

protected by sheds (*testudinēs*), labored with pickaxes to make breaches in the walls, or strove to tear down the masonry by means of wall-hooks (*falcēs mūrālēs*). But their principal reliance was placed on the battering-ram (see *ariēs*) and the movable tower (see *turris*). Engines (see *tormentum*) for hurling missiles discharged heavy stones upon the besieged. On the other hand, the townspeople were using every means in their power to prevent the entrance of the enemy. Towers were erected on their walls, opposite those of the besiegers; sallies were made; firebrands and stones were hurled upon the woodwork of the sheds and the siege-towers. If a breach was made in the wall, the besiegers fought their way in under cover of their shields, locked into a *testūdō*, and, unless the townspeople were able to make an unusually desperate resistance, the sack of the city followed, and the inhabitants were generally sold as slaves. The various means of assault are shown in the *illus. facing p. 233*.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*ob+pugnō*], attack, storm, besiege.

ops, opis, f. (*without nom. or dat. sing.*), aid, help; power; *pl.*, power, influence, resources, wealth, riches.

optimē, see bene.

optimus, see bonus.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., choose; desire, demand, wish for, pray for; select, choose.

opulēns, -entis, adj. [*ops*], rich, powerful.

opus, -eris, n., work, task; handicraft, art; deed, achievement; structure, siege-work; fortification; want, need; *opus est*, there is need of, it is necessary; *magnō opere*, greatly; *tantō opere*, so

much, so greatly, so earnestly; *quantō opere*, how much.

ōra, -ae, f., margin, border; coast, shore.

ōrāclum, see ōrāculum.

ōrāculum or ōrāclum, -ī, n. [*ōrō*], an oracle, prophecy.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [*ōrō*], a speech, harangue, argument, words.

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [*ōrō*], orator; ambassador.

orbis, -is, m., a circle, circuit, round surface; disk, quoit; orb of the eye, eye; the world; also *orbis terrae or terrarum*, the world.

Orcynia, -ae, f. adj., a Greek name for the Hercynian forest.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*ōrdō*], arrange, regulate.

ōrdō, -inis, m., a row, rank of soldiers, series; *ordinēs servāre*, keep in line; order, arrangement; *sine ordine*, without order, aimlessly, promiscuously; rank, dignity.

Orgetorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

oriēns, -entis, adj. [*pres. part. of orior*], rising; as *subst.*, *m.*, the rising sun, east; the orient.

origō, -inis, f. [*orior*], source, origin lineage; ancestry, ancestors; *Originēs*, title of a work by Cato.

orior, -irī, ortus, intr., arise, spring; come forth, grow; be born; take place, begin; *ortā lūce*, at day-break.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [*ōrnō*, furnish], adornment, decoration.

ōrnātus, -ūs, m. [*ōrnō*, furnish], equipment, dress.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of ōrnō*, furnish], furnished, fitted out; distinguished, illustrious.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., speak, entreat, beseech.

ortus, -ūs, m. [*orior*], a rising; *ortus (sōlis)*, the rising of the sun, sunrise, east; an origin, source.

os, ossis, n., a bone.

ōs, ōris, n., mouth; opening.

ōsculum, -ī, n. [ōs], a little mouth; kiss.

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Britany. *Map IV, B, 2.*

ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, tr. [obs = ob+tendō], display, show, point out; disclose, make known, make heard; set forth, state, declare.

ōstium, -ī, n. [ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

ōtium, -ī, n., leisure; peace; **per ōtium**, at leisure, at one's ease.

ovis, -is, f., a sheep.

ōvum, -ī, n., an egg.

P

P., *abbr. for Pūblius.*

pābulātor, -ōris, m. [pābulor], forager.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [pābulum], get fodder, forage.

pābulum, -ī, n., fodder, pasture, forage.

pacīscor, -ī, -pactus, tr., agree.

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [pāx], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; *pf. part. as adj.*, subdued, quiet.

pactiō, -ōnis, f. [pacīscor], agreement.

pactum, -ī, n. [pacīscor], agreement, arrangement, manner, way.

pactus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of pacīscor*], agreed upon, stipulated.

Padus, -ī, m., the river Po. *Map II, A-C, 2.*

paene, adv., nearly, almost.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, tr., *impers.*, with *acc. of person and gen. of thing*, it makes one sorry for, one repents of, one is sorry for or regrets.

pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton.

Palaeopharsālus, -ī, f., a city of Thessaly, Old Pharsalus. *Map I, H, 5.*

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

Palātīnus, -a, -um, adj., Palatine, of the Palatium. *Map III, D-E, 4.*

palleō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., be pale; be discolored; grow yellow.

pallidus, -a, -um, adj. [palleō], pale, pallid, colorless.

palma, -ae, f., the palm of the hand, hand; a date-palm, date.

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, morass, marsh, pool.

palūster, -tris, -tre, adj. [palūs], marshy; of the swamp, swamp.

Pamphylīus, -a, -um, adj., Pamphylian; **Pamphylīum mare**, that part of the Mediterranean south of Pamphylia. *Map I, I-J, 5.*

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, tr., spread, stretch out; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands.

Papīrius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

pār, paris, adj., equal, well-matched; similar; of the same age; *as subst.*, *m.*, an equal; a pair.

parātus, -ūs, m. [parō], preparation, provision.

parātus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part. of parō*], prepared, equipped, ready; skilled.

parcē, adv. [parcus], sparingly, carefully.

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, intr., spare, preserve; treat with forbearance, not injure; *abs.*, be sparing.

parēns, -entis, m. and f. [pariō], father or mother, parent; a relative.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., appear; obey, be subject to.

pariēs, -etis, m., wall of a building.

parilis, -e, adj. [pār], equal, like.

Parīsīi, -ōrum, m., a Celtic people about modern Paris. *Map IV, E, 2.*

pariter, *adv.* [pār], equally, in like manner; at the same time.

Parnāsus, -ī, *m.*, a two-peaked mountain in Boeotia, sacred to Apollo and the Muses, Mount Parnassus.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare, provide, prepare for, equip, obtain; get, acquire; determine.

pars, **partis**, *f.*, a part, share, division; **ex maximā parte**, in a very great degree, in very many respects; side, direction; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side; district; party, faction.

partim, *adv.* [pars], partly; **partim . . . partim**, partly . . . partly, some . . . others.

partior, -īrī, -ītus, *tr.* [pars], part, divide, distribute.

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough; *as subst., n.*, an insufficiency, lack; *comp.*, **minus**, less, in a less degree, not; *sup.*, **minimē**, least, very little, by no means, not at all.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of parvus*], little; slight, insignificant; young; *as subst., m.*, little child.

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little, slight; young; mean, humble; *comp.*, **minor**, **minus**; *sup.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, least, very small, insignificant; *n. as subst. or adv.*, least, the least, very little.

passim, *adv.* [pandō], spread out, in every direction.

passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; stride; **mille passuum**, thousand paces, mile.

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [pateō+faciō], lay open, open.

patefiō, -fierī, -factus sum [*pass. of patefaciō*], be made open, be opened.

patēns, -entis, *adj.* [pateō], open, exposed, unprotected.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, stand open, stretch out, extend.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *pl.*, ancestors, senators, patricians.

paternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, father's, paternal.

patienter, *adv.* [patior], with sufferance or submission, patiently.

patientia, -ae, *f.* [patior], the power of bearing or suffering, patience, patient endurance, contentment.

patior, -ī, **passus**, *tr.*, suffer, endure, permit.

patria, -ae, *f.* [patrius], fatherland, native country.

patrimōnium, -ī, *n.* [pater], patrimony, inheritance, property.

patrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], of a father, father's; ancestral.

patruēlis, -e, *adj.* [patruus], of a father's brother, uncle's; of a cousin; of cousins.

patruus, -ī, *m.* [pater], father's brother, uncle.

patulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pateō], spread out, spreading wide; standing open, open.

paucitās, -ātis, *f.* [paucus], fewness, scarcity, small number.

paucus, -a, -um, *adj.*, few; *as subst., m. pl.*, a few, only a few; *n. pl.*, a few things, few words, briefly.

paulātim, *adv.* [paulum], little by little, gradually.

paulisper, *adv.* [paulum], a short time, a little while.

paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], by a little, a little, just a little, somewhat.

paululum, *adv.* [paululus, very little], a very little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little; a little while.

Paulus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see **Aemilius**.

pauper, -eris, *adj.*, poor, of small means; scanty, small; *as subst., m.*, a poor man.

paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [pauper], poverty, small means.

Pausaniās, -ae, m., a Spartan general.

paveō, -ēre, **pāvī**, —, tr. and intr., be afraid of; be afraid, be terrified.

pavidus, -a, -um, adj. [paveō], trembling, fearful, timorous, timid.

pavor, -ōris, m. [paveō], trembling, terror.

pāx, **pācis**, f., peace.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., make a mistake; transgress, sin; **peccantēs**, offenders.

pectus, -oris, n., breast; heart, mind.

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecū, cattle], wealth, money, sum of money.

pecus, **pecoris**, n., cattle, flock, herd.

pecus, -udis, f., beast, animal; in particular, a sheep.

pedālis, -e, adj. [pēs], of a foot in thickness or diameter.

pedes, -itis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier; collectively, infantry.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae**, infantry.

peditātus, -ūs, m. [pedes], foot-soldiers, infantry.

Pedius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Quintus Pedius, Caesar's grand-nephew and legate.

pelagus, -ī, n., the sea.

pellis, -is, f., skin, hide.

pellō, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, tr., strike, beat; drive out or away, banish, expel; defeat, repulse.

Pelopeius, -a, -um, adj., of Pelops, a king of Phrygia; Phrygian.

Peloponnēsus, -ī, f., the Peloponnesus, the southern part of Greece.

penātēs, -ium, m., the Penates or guardian deities of the household; fig., home, dwelling.

pendeō, -ēre, **pependī**, —, intr., hang, hang in the air, overhang.

pendō, -ere, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, tr.,

weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (as money was, in early times, weighed in payment); w. **poenam**, pay, suffer.

penetrālis, -e, adj. [penetrō, enter], inner, inward; as subst., n. pl., inner rooms or chambers, shrine.

penitus, adv., inwardly, far within.

penna, -ae, f., a feather, plume; wing; flight.

per, prep. w. acc.; of space, through, among, amid, throughout; along, at; over, across; of time, throughout, during; of cause, by reason of, on account of; of agency, by means of, through the agency of, by; **per sē**, of oneself; in oaths, by; in other relations, through, of, by, at.

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr., drive or carry through, complete.

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [per+capiō], take fully, receive, assume; perceive, hear, learn.

percontātiō, -ōnis, f. [percontor], inquiring; question, inquiry.

per-currō, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursum, tr. and intr., run through or over, pass over or along.

percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, tr. [per+quatiō], strike through, strike, beat, smite.

per-discō, -ere, -didicī, —, tr., learn thoroughly, get by heart.

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., destroy, ruin; lose, give over; pf. part. **perditus**, as adj., ruined, desperate.

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr., lead or bring through, bring over; bring, lead, conduct; extend, construct; win, win over.

per-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr., go through; pass away, be lost; perish, die.

per-equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., ride through, ride about or around.

per-exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small, very little.

per-facilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy.

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear through, bear; endure, submit to; announce, report, spread abroad.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [per+faciō], accomplish, complete, make.

perfidia, -ae, *f.* [perfidus, faithless], faithlessness, treachery.

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *tr.* [per+frangō], break or burst through.

perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee], deserter.

per-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee for refuge, desert.

perfugium, -ī, *n.* [perfugiō], place of refuge, refuge, shelter.

per-fungor, -fungī, -fūctus, *intr.*, perform, undergo, endure.

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to Pergamus. *Map I, I, 5.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō], go on, march, advance.

periclitor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [periculum], try, test, prove.

periculum, *see* periculum.

periculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [periculum], dangerous.

periculum, or **periclum**, -ī, *n.*, trial, attempt; **periculum facere**, to make trial; risk, peril, danger.

perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *tr.* [per+emō], destroy, kill, slay.

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skillful; familiar with, accustomed to.

periūrium, -ī, *n.* [periūrus, false], perjury.

per-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm, *intr.*, continue, remain.

per-mātūrēscō, -ere, -mātūruī, —,

intr. [mātūrēscō, ripen], become quite ripe, ripen.

per-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, let go, permit, intrust, commit.

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, disturb, alarm; influence.

per-mulceō, -ēre, -mulsī, -mulsum, *tr.*, stroke gently; soothe; appease, conciliate.

permūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [permūtō], exchange.

per-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, change completely; interchange, exchange.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* [per+nex], destruction, calamity, loss, disaster.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [perniciēs], destructive, fatal.

per-paucī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few, but very few.

perpendiculum, -ī, *n.* [perpendō, weigh carefully], plummet, plumb-line.

Perpenna, -ae, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, perpetual, permanent; **in perpetuum**, for all time, forever, for life.

perquirō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, *tr.* [per+quaerō], ask for anxiously, make careful inquiry about.

per-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.*, break through, force one's way.

Persae, -ārum, *m.*, the Persians.

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow after, follow, pursue; proceed against, take vengeance upon.

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [persevērus, very strict], persist, persevere.

per-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay in full, pay.

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [per+speciō, spy], see through.

perceive, see; observe, ascertain; examine, inspect.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr., convince, persuade, induce, satisfy; *impers. pass.*, be convinced, believe.

per-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertinācia, -ae, f. [**pertināx**, stubborn], obstinacy.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, intr. [**per+teneō**], stretch, extend; tend, have to do with; belong.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f. [**perturbō**], disturbance, alarm, confusion.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., disturb greatly, disturb, throw into confusion.

Perusia, -ae, f., a city of Etruria. *Map II, C, 3.*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come through, arrive, reach, come.

per-vertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, tr., overturn, corrupt, undermine.

pēs, pedis, m., foot; foot (as a measure); *pl.*, pace, swiftness of foot; **pedibus**, on foot; **pedem ferre**, move; **pedibus aditum habere**, be accessible by land.

petō, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -itum, tr., pursue, strive after, aim at, seek; attack, assail; **fugam petere**, take to flight; make for, travel to; demand, ask for; ask, beg.

Petreius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Marcus Petreius, a partisan of Pompey.

Petrocorī, -ōrum, m., a people inhabiting modern Perigord. *Map IV, C-D, 4.*

phalanx, -ngis, f., phalanx.

Pharnacēs, -is, m., son of Mithridates.

Philēmōn, -onis (acc. -ona), m., an old man of Phrygia.

Philippī, -ōrum, m., a city of Macedonia. *Map I, H, 5.*

Philippus, -ī, m., a king of Macedonia, Philip III.

phōca, -ae, f., seal, sea-calf.

Phōcis, -idis, f., Phocis, a country in Greece between Boeotia and Aetolia.

Phrygia, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor. *Map I, I, 5.*

Phrygius, -a, -um, adj., Phrygian, of Phrygia.

Picēnum, -ī, n., a district of eastern Italy. *Map II, D, 3-4.*

piceus, -a, -um, adj. [**pix**, pitch], pitchy, pitch-black.

Pictonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe south of the Loire. *Map IV, C-D, 3.*

pictus, see pingō.

pietās, -ātis, f. [**pius**], dutiful behavior, duty; devotion, loyalty, faithfulness to natural ties; justice.

pīlum, -ī, n., pike, heavy javelin.



The pīlum was an iron-pointed missile weapon, averaging nearly two yards in length. The point at the end was almost half the length of the javelin, and was made of soft iron (except at the extreme end) so that it would bend upon striking the enemy's shield. This made it very difficult to draw out, and useless for throwing back. The pīlum could be thrown to a distance of 30 yards or more. It was the weapon used by the Roman foot-soldier in beginning battle. After the first onslaught, which was made by the **levis armātūra**, slingers and bowmen, the advancing legionary hurled the pīlum, and then, hastening forward, drew the short sword (**gladius**), and attacked at close quarters.

pīlus, -ī, m., a maniple of the **triarii**, who formed the third line of the

- Roman legion*; *prīmi pīli centuriō*, the centurion of the first maniple, chief centurion.
- pingō*, -ere, *pinxi*, *pictum*, *tr.*, paint; *pf. part. as adj.*, painted, ornamented; of various colors.
- pinna*, -ae, *f.*, feather, wing; of a dolphin, fin; a parapet, battlement.
- pirāta*, -ae, *m.*, pirate, corsair.
- Pirūstae*, -ārum, *m.*, an Illyrian people.
- piscis*, -is, *m.*, a fish, used collectively, fish; the constellation of the Fishes.
- Pisō*, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen.
- Pittheus*, -ei (-eos), *m.*, son of Pelops and king of Troezen.
- pīus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, dutiful, just, holy; faithful to kindred, loyal.
- placeō*, -ēre, -uī (-itum est), -itum, *intr.*, please, be pleasing, suit; *impers.*, it is settled, determined.
- placidus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*placeō*], calm, gentle, mild, placid.
- placitus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*placeō*], pleasing, pleasant.
- placō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, soothe, appease, placate.
- plānē*, *adv.* [*plānus*], plainly, clearly, distinctly.
- plangor*, -ōris, *m.* [*plangō*, strike], a beating, noise of beating; wailing, lamentation.
- plānitēs*, -ēi, *f.* [*plānus*], level ground, a plain.
- plānus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, flat; as *subst.*, *n.*, a plane, level, plain.
- Plataeae*, -ārum, *f.*, a town in Greece, southwest of Thebes. Map I, H, 5.
- plēbs*, *plēbis* or *plēbēs*, -ei, *f.*, common people, populace.
- plēnē*, *adv.* [*plēnus*], fully, completely, entirely.
- plēnus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, full; complete; filled; of a river, swollen; plentiful.

plērique, -aeque, -aque, *adj.* [*plērus*, very many], very many, the greater part or most of.

plērumque, *adv.* [*plērusque*, most], for the most part, commonly, frequently.

plumbum, -i, *n.*, lead; *plumbum album*, tin.

plūrimum, see *multum*.

plūrimus, see *multus*.

plūs, *adj.*, see *multus*.

plūs, *adv.*, see *multum*.

pluteus, -i, *m.*, shed, mantelet; defense, breastwork. The term *pluteus* is usually applied to a screen, made of wickerwork, which was employed to protect the soldiers as



they pushed the *agger* forward toward a besieged city. It was generally curved into a half-cylindrical form, and ran on three rollers. Wet hides protected it from firebrands thrown from the city walls.

pōcūm, -i, *n.*, drinking cup, goblet.

poena, -ae, *f.*, compensation, indemnity; punishment, penalty; vengeance.

Poeni, see *Poenus*.

Poenicus, see *Pūnicus*.

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian; as *subst.*, *m.*, a Carthaginian; *Poeni*, the Phoenicians, i.e., the Carthaginians, who were descended from them.

poēta, -ae, *m.*, a poet.

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb; *digitus pollex*, the thumb.

polliceor, -ērī, -itus, *tr.*, offer, promise.

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pollicitor, promise], a promise, offer.

Pōmētia, -ae, *f.*, see **Suessa**.

Pompeius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; (1) Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the triumvir, son-in-law and rival of Julius Caesar. (2) Gnaeus Pompeius, son of (1).

Pompilius, -ī, *m.*, see **Numa**.

pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit; an apple.

pondō, *adv.* [cf. **pondus**], by weight, in weight.

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight, mass; load, burden.

pōnō, -erē, **posui**, **positum**, *tr.*, put, place, set, set up, fix; lay, lay down, put down; **arma pōnere**, lay or throw down one's arms; consign, lay away, store up; **arange**; *w.* **castra**, pitch; arrange; *pass.*, depend on; *pf. part.* **positus**, situated, lying.

pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge, draw-bridge, passageway.

pontus, -ī, *m.*, the sea, the deep.

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, a country of Asia Minor, situated on the Black Sea. *Map I, J, 4.*

populātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor], a ravaging, pillaging.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.*, lay waste, ravage.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, body of citizens; throng, multitude.

porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [por = prō + regō], stretch forth, reach, extend.

Porsenna, -ae, *m.*, a king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, city gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, bear, carry; transport, bring.

portōrium, -ī, *n.* [portus], import or export tax, duty.

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port, haven.

poscō, -ere, **poposci**, —, *tr.*, ask, ask urgently, beg; ask for, demand.

positus, see **pōnō**.

possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possidō], possession, occupation; property.

possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por = prō + sedeō], be master of, hold, possess, occupy.

possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [por = prō + sidō, settle], take possession of, occupy, seize.

possum, **posse**, **potui**, —, *intr.* [potis, able + sum], be able, can, have power or influence; **multum posse**, have much power or influence; **tantum posse**, be so strong.

post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*; as *adv.*, behind, in the rear; after, afterward, later; as *prep.*, behind, after, since.

post-eā, *adv.*, afterward.

postea-quam, *adv.*, after.

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.* [post], the following, next; *m. pl. as subst.*, descendants, posterity; *comp.*, posterior, -ius; *sup.*, **postrēmus**, -a, -um, last; **ad postrēmum**, at last, finally.

postis, -is, *m.*, post, door-post; *pl.*, door.

postliminium, -ī, *n.* [post + limen, threshold], a return to one's old condition and privileges, right of return.

post-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place behind; neglect, disregard.

post-quam, *conj.*, after, as soon as, when.

postrēmō, *adv.* [postrēmus], at last, finally.

postrēmus, see **posterus**.

postrīdiē, *adv.* [locative posterī + diē], next day; **postrīdiē eius diēi**, the next or following day.

postulātum, -ī, *n.* [pf. part. of

postulō, a demand, claim, request.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, demand, ask for, require.

Postumius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Spurius Postumius, *consul in 321 B.C.*

(2) Aulus Postumius Albinus, *consul in 241 B.C.*

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of possum*], mighty, powerful, influential, victorious; *w. vōtī*, having attained; *as subst., pl.*, **potentiōrēs**, the more powerful people or citizens.

potentātus, -ūs, *m.* [*potēns*], power, supremacy.

potentia, -ae, *f.* [*potēns*], power, might; *political* power, sovereignty; influence.

potestās, -ātis, *f.* [*potis*, able], power, authority; ability; opportunity, chance, possibility; permission; **potestātem facere**, give an opportunity, grant permission.

potior, -īrī, -ītus, *intr.* [*potis*, able], become master of, get possession of, acquire; possess.

potius, *comp. adv.* [*potis*, able], rather, preferably; *sup.*, **potissimum**, especially, in preference to all others.

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before; in comparison with.

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [*prae+habeō*], hold out, offer, give; **opiniōnem praebere**, give an impression; furnish, afford.

prae-caveō, -ēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.*, take precautions.

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *tr.*, go before, precede.

praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [*prae+caput*], head foremost, headlong, precipitate; steep, precipitous.

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [*praecipiō*], command.

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [*prae+capiō*], take in advance; instruct, order.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*praeceps*], throw headlong, throw; rush headlong, sink, fall.

praecipuē, *adv.* [*praecipuus*], chiefly, especially.

praecipuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*praecipiō*], taken before *other things*; eminent, prominent.

praeclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum, *tr.* [*prae+claudō*], close or shut in front, shut or cut off.

Praecōninus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; *esp.* Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a Roman legate.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder; prey; - **praedam facere**, get booty.

prae-dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, proclaim, declare, assert.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.* [*praeda*], plunder, pillage.

prae-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead before; make or construct before or in front, construct.

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [*praeficiō*], overseer, commander, officer, captain of cavalry. The title **praefectus** stood for no definite rank, but was applied to the chief officers of the auxiliary force (e.g. **praefectus equitum**), the engineers (e.g. **praefectus fabrum**), etc.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry in front, carry in procession, display; put before, prefer; **sē praeferre alicui**, show oneself better than some one.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*prae+faciō*], place over, place in command of.

prae-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, fix or fasten before, set in front or on the end.

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr.,
send forward *or* in advance.

praemium, -ī, n., reward, recompense, prize.

Praeneste, -is, n., one of the oldest cities of Latium. *Map I, B, 8.*

prae-optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
choose, prefer.

prae-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
prepare beforehand, provide.

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, tr.,
place before, place in command of, set over.

prae-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr.,
break off, tear away.

praeruptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praerumpō], steep, rugged.

prae-saepiō, -īre, -psi, -ptum, tr.,
hedge *or* block up, barricade.

prae-scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.,
order, direct, prescribe.

praescriptum, -ī, n. [praescribō],
order, dictation.

praesēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of praesum], present, in person; prompt; powerful; aiding, propitious.

praesentia, -ae, f. [praesēns], presence, the present; in praesentiā, for the present.

praesertim, adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, -ī, n. [praeses], defense, protection, aid, garrison, guard, outpost; redoubt, stronghold; safety.

prae-stō, -āre, -itī, -itum, tr. and intr., stand before, surpass; show, exhibit; supply, furnish, give, bestow; discharge, perform; **prae-stat, impers.,** it is better.

prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr., be over, be in command of, be in charge of; rule over.

praeter, adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv., besides; *as prep.,* beyond; besides, except; contrary to.

praeter-eā, adv., beyond this, besides, furthermore.

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, tr., go by, pass by; outstrip; pass over, leave unmentioned, omit, neglect; *pf. part. as adj.,* past; *as subst., n.,* the past.

praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., send by; let pass, overlook.

praeter-quam, adv., besides, except.

prae-texō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave in front, edge, border.

praetor, -ōris, m. [for praetor from prae-eō, go in front], leader; general, praetor.

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor], of a praetor, pretorian; *as subst., m.,* a man of pretorian rank, ex-praetor.

praetūra, -ae, f. [praetor], praetorship.

prae-ustus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praeūrō, burn at the end], burned in front *or* at the end.

prandium, -ī, n., luncheon.

prātum, -ī, n., meadow, mead.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., distorted; vicious, bad.

precor, -ārī, -ātus, tr. and intr. [prex], ask, supplicate, pray, offer prayer to.

premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, tr., press, press hard, urge; mark, imprint, tread on; oppress, harass, annoy; *in a military sense,* press hard, overwhelm; *pf. part. pressus,* pressed down, marked; overwhelmed.

prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsum, tr., grasp, seize.

pressus, see premō.

pretium, -ī, n., price; reward, recompense; ransom; punishment.

prex, precis, f., prayer, request, entreaty.

prīdiē, adv., on the day before.

primipilus, -ī, *m.* [**primus**+**pīlus**], the first *or* chief centurion.

primitiae, -ārum, *f.* [**primus**], the first yield, first fruits.

primō, *adv.* [**primus**], at the beginning, at first; first.

primum, *adv.* [**primus**], first, at first; **cum primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

primus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of prior*], first, foremost, earliest; *as subst.*, *m. pl.*, the first men, foremost men; *in primis*, especially.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [**primus**+**capiō**], first, foremost, chief, eminent; *as subst.*, *m.*, leader, chief.

principatus, -ūs, *m.* [**princeps**], chief authority, leadership, headship.

prior, **prius**, *comp. adj.*, former, first; superior; *as subst.*, *m. pl.*, those in advance; forefathers, the ancients.

Priscus, -ī, *m.*, elder; *as a cognomen*, the Elder.

prīstinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, preceding, previous; **prīstinus diēs**, the day before.

prius, *comp. adv.* [**prior**], before, previously; first; **prius . . . quam**, sooner . . . than, before.

prius-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before.

privātim, *adv.* [**privātus**], privately, individually.

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of privō*], individual, private; *as subst.*, *m.*, a private citizen.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; for, in behalf of; in return *or* exchange for, instead of; in the character of, as; in accordance with, in proportion to, in view of, considering.

probābilis, -e, *adj.* [**probō**], worthy of approval, good.

probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, [**probus**, good], approve of, prove, demonstrate, esteem, favor, adopt.

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go *or* come forward, advance; **iter prōcēdere**, make a journey.

Procillus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman cognomen.

Proclēs, -ī (-is), *m.*, brother of Eurysthenes, son of Aristodemus.

prō-cōnsul, -is, *m.*, the governor of a province, proconsul.

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, distant, far, from afar; far from, without; **procul dubiō**, without doubt.

prōculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**prō**+**calcō**], tread down, trample upon.

prō-cumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [**-cumbō**, recline], lean over, lean forward; lie down, fall; slope.

prō-cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, take care of, attend to.

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [**prō**+**eō**], go forth *or* forward, advance.

prōditor, -ōris, *m.* [**prōdō**], betrayer, traitor.

prō-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, make known, hand down; betray.

prō-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead *or* bring forth, bring; *w. cōpiās*, draw up; prolong, protract.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [**proelium**], join battle, engage, fight.

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle, skirmish, engagement.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**proficīscor**], a departure.

prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, carry out, bring out *or* forth.

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [**prō**+**faciō**], make progress, advance, gain an advantage; accomplish.

proficīscor, -ī, **profectus**, *intr.* [*cf.* **prōficiō**], set out, depart; proceed.

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus, *tr. and intr.* [**prō**+**fateor**], state publicly, avow *or* declare one's purpose.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, crush completely, overthrow, put to flight.

prō-fluō, -ere, -fluxī, —, *intr.*, flow forth or along, issue, rise.

pro-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee from or before, flee, escape.

pro-fundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fundus, bottom], deep, vast; *as subst., m.*, the depths of the sea, the deep, sea.

prōgeniēs, -ēī, *f.* [prō+gignō], progeny, race.

prōgenitor, -ōris, *m.* [prōgeniēs], ancestor, progenitor.

prō-gnātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, born, descended.

prōgredior, -ī, -gressus, *intr.* [prō+gradior], go forward, march out, advance, proceed.

prōgressus, -ūs, *m.* [prōgredior], progress.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [prō+habeō], hold before, restrain, keep, prevent; hinder from, cut off; protect; *abs.*, offer resistance.

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [prō+iaciō], throw forward, throw away, abandon; throw down, cast.

Promēthidēs, -ae, *m.*, son of Prometheus, Deucalion.

prō-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.*, let hang down, let grow; promise, assure; give hope of.

prō-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move forward, advance; extend.

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* prōmō, bring out], manifest, evident; prepared, ready; quick, prompt.

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.* [prōmineō, project], headland, promontory.

prōnē, *adv.* [prōnus], in an inclined position, sloping downward.

prō-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,

announce, publish, relate, report.

prōnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bending forward, on one's face; headlong.

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, extend, enlarge.

propatulum, -ī, *n.* [pateō], open space, court.

prope, *prep. with acc. and adv.*; *as prep.*, near, near to; *as adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; *comp.*, **propius**, *sup.*, **proximē**, nearest, very near; last, latest.

prō-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward or forth, put to flight, rout, dislodge, break down.

properē, *adv.* [properus, quick], hastily, quickly.

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry; do with haste.

propinquitās, -ātis, *f.* [propinquus], nearness, proximity, relationship, kinship.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope], near; *as subst., m. and f.*, a relative, kinsman or kinswoman.

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, put forth, offer, suggest; state, explain, represent; present, raise, display.

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, own, special; peculiar, characteristic.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, near; on account of.

propter-eā, *adv.*, for this reason, therefore; **propterea quod**, because.

prō-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, sally; hurl weapons; fight for, defend.

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* prōpellō], drive forth or off, drive back, repel.

prōra, -ae, *f.*, the bow of a ship, prow.

prōrsus, *adv.* [prō+vorsus = versus], by all means, indeed, certainly.

prō-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*,
tear down, overthrow, demolish.

prō-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum,
tr., publish; proscribe, outlaw.

prō-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, *tr.*, follow
up; pursue; address, take leave of.

prōspectus, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō], view,
prospect; in prōspectū, in sight;
faculty of sight, sight.

prōsperē, *adv.* [prōsperus, as de-
sired], favorably, prosperously.

prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.*
and intr. [prō+speciō, spy], look
forward; have a prospect of, over-
look; descry, discern, see afar,
observe; look out for, take pre-
cautions.

prō-sternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum,
tr., throw forward or to the
ground, overthrow, ruin.

prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *intr.*,
be useful, profit, benefit, help.

prō-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*,
frighten or drive away, affright.

prōtinus, *adv.* [prō+tenus], forward;
next, then; at once, immediately.

prō-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,
drive in confusion, dislodge, re-
pulse.

prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*,
carry forward; *usually pass.*,
move forward, sail.

prōventus, -ūs, *m.* [prōveniō, come
forth], a coming forth; issue,
result.

prō-vidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *tr.*,
see beforehand, foresee, care for,
provide.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office; province.

prō-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*,
fly or rush forth.

proximē, *see prope.*

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of pro-*
prior], nearest, next, very near; *as*
subst., m. pl., bystanders, neigh-
bors.

prūdētia, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns], fore-
sight, discretion, prudence.

pruinōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pruīna,
frost], frosty, covered with frost.

prūnum, -ī, *n.*, plum.

Prūsia, -ae, *m.*, king of Pontus.

Pseudophilippus, -ī, *m.*, the pre-
tended Philip.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, *m.*, an Aquitanian
tribe about modern Pau. Map
IV, C, 5.

pūblicē, *adv.* [pūblicus], in behalf of
the people or state, officially; as a
state.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pūbli-
cus], make public, confiscate.

Pūblicola, -ae, *m.*, a cognomen; *see*
Valerius.

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus], be-
longing to the state, common,
public; *as subst., n.*, public place.

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet], shame,
modesty, propriety.

puella, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of puer*], girl,
maiden.

puer, -ī, *m.*, boy, child; lad, young
man; *pl.*, children.

puerilis, -e, *adj.* [puer], childish,
boyish, youthful.

puerulus, -ī, *m.* [*dim. of puer*], little
boy.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*
[pugna], fight, contend, struggle.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beauti-
ful, handsome; noble, honorable;
comp., pulchrior, *sup.*, pulcherri-
mus.

pullulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*
[pullulus, sprout], sprout out,
grow, increase.

pullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark, blackish.

pulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of*
pellō], push, strike or beat, strike
or beat against.

pulsus, -ūs, *m.* [pellō], stroke, beat;
pulsus rēmōrum, rowing.

pulvis, -eris, *m. and f.*, dust.

pūniceus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Pūnicus],
 reddish, red, purple.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Poenus],
 Punic, Carthaginian.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship; ship.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pūrus
 +agō], clean, clear; excuse, exonerate.

purpureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [purpura,
 purple], purple, crimson.

pūrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. putō], clean,
 pure.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, clean,
 clear up; consider, suppose, think.

Pŷramus, -ī, *m.*, a young man of
 Babylon, the lover of Thisbe.

Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyre-
 naean; with or without montēs (or
 saltus), the Pyrenees. *Map I,*
B-C, 4.

Pŷrrha, -ae, *f.*, the daughter of
 Epimetheus and wife of Deu-
 calion.

Pŷrrhus, -ī, *m.*, a king of Epirus.

Q

Q., *abbr. for Quīntus.*

quā, *adv.* [quī], where, by which
 way; to what extent, as far as.

quācumque, *adv.* [quīcumque], wher-
 ever.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*
adj. [quadrāgintā], forty each,
 forty.

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*
 [quadrāgintā], fortieth.

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty.

quadrīngēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*
adj. [quadrīngentī], four hundred
 each.

quadrīngentēsīmus, -a, -um, *num.*
adj. [quadrīngentī], four-hun-
 dredth.

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*
 [quattuor+centum], four hundred.

quadrīngentiēs, *num. adv.* [quad-
 ringentī], four hundred times.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī or -sīī, -sītum, *tr.*,
 seek, hunt for; seek to obtain,
 strive for; ask, inquire, examine.

quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō], inquiry,
 investigation, examination.

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō], a
 quaestor. *The quaestor in the serv-*
ice of the proconsul was properly
a financial officer who had charge
of the pay rolls and supplies, the
commissariat, and the valuation
and sale of the spoils taken in war.
Occasionally, however, he was in-
trusted with a military command,
and performed the same service
as the lēgātus.

quaestus, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō], gaining,
 acquisition, profit.

quālis, -e, *adj.*; *interrog.*, of what
 sort? what kind of? *rel.*, of
 such a kind, such as, as.

quam, *adv.*, to what degree, how,
 how greatly; *after comparatives,*
than; after expressions of time,
later than, after; correl. w. tam
expressed or understood, as; with
superlatives, as . . . as possible.

quam-diū, *adv.*, as long as.

quam ob rem or **quamobrem**, *see rēs.*

quam-quam, *conj.*, although, though.

quandō, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

quantum, *adv.* [quantus], as much
 as, as far as, as much; how much,
 how far, to how great an extent.

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*; *interrog.*, how
 great? how large? how much?
quantō opere, how much? how
 deeply? *rel.*, as great, as large or as
 much as; **tantus . . . quantus**, as
 much or so much . . . as; *as subst.,*
n., how much, how little.

quā-rē, *adv.*, whereby, by reason of
 which, wherefore; for this reason,
 therefore, then.

quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [quattuor], fourth, the fourth.

qua-si, *adv.*, as if, just as if, as though; as, as it were.

quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four.

quattuordecim, *indecl. num. adj.* [quattuor+decem], fourteen.

-que, *conj., encl.*, and; **-que . . . -que**, both . . . and.

quercus, -ūs, *f.*, an oak, oak-tree.

queror, -ī, **questus**, *tr. and intr.*, complain, lament; complain of, find fault with.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, *pron.*; *interrog.*, used *subst. and adj.*, who? which? what? what kind of? *rel.*, who, which, what, that; often best translated by a *pers. or dem. pron.* with or without "and"; *indef. rel.*, whoever, whichever, whatever; anyone who, anything that.

quī, *adv.* [quī], how.

quia, *conj.*, because.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, *indef. pron.*; as *adj.*, certain, some, a; as *subst.*, a certain one, somebody, something.

quidem, *adv.*, *postpositive*, indeed, it is true, even; **nē . . . quidem**, not even, not . . . either.

quiēs, **quiētis**, *f.*, rest, quiet; **quiētem capere**, to rest.

quiēscō, -ere, **quiēvī**, **quiētum**, *intr.* [quiēs], rest, be inactive.

quī-libet, **quae-libet**, **quod-libet**, *indef. pron.*, any, all.

quīn, *conj. and adv.* [quī+ne]; as *conj.*, but, but that, so that not; after words of doubt or ignorance, that, but that; after words of hindering, from; as *adv.*, nay, nay even, moreover; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover.

Quīnctius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

quīncūnx, -ūncis, *m.* [quīnque+ūncia, twelfth], five twelfths; anything arranged in oblique lines or rows, the figure formed by the four corners of a square and its middle point, a quincunx.

quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.* [quīnque+decem], fifteen.

quīngentēsimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīngentī], five-hundredth.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [quīnque+centum], five hundred.

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [quīnque], five each.

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnquāgintā], fiftieth.

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty.

quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five.

quīnquiēs, *num. adj.* [quīnque], five times.

quīntus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [quīnque], fifth.

Quīntus, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

Quīrinālis, -e, *adj.* [Quirīnus], of Quirinus or Romulus, Quirinal; as *subst.*, *m.* (sc. collis), the Quirinal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

quis, **quae** (qua), **quid**, *indef. pron.*, anybody, anyone, anything, any.

quis, **quae**, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? what a? what sort of? *acc. n.*, with *adv.* use, **quid**, what? what amount? how far? in what respect? how? why?

quis-nam, **quaenam**, **quidnam**, *interrog. pron.*, who or what then? pray who or what?

quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quodpiam**, and as *subst.*, **quidpiam** or **quippiam**, *indef. adj. pron.*, anyone, anything, any.

quis-quam, **quaequam**, **quidquam** or **quicquam**, *indef. pron.*; as *subst.*, anyone, anybody, anything; as *adj.*, any.

quis-que, **quaeque**, **quidque** or **quod-**

que, *indef. pron.*, each one, every one; *as adj.*, each, every.

quisquis, **quicquid**, *indef. rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever, every one or everything which.

quī-vīs, **quaevis**, **quidvis** (*adj.*, **quodvis**), *indef. pron.*, who or what you wish; anyone, anything, any whatever, any.

quō, *conj.*, in order that, that; **quō minus** or **quōminus**, so that . . . not, that . . . not, from.

quō, *adv.* [**quī**]; *interrog.*, whither? where? *rel.*, whither, where; and to this, to this point; *indef.*, anywhere.

quo-ad, *adv.*, as far as, as long as; till, until.

quod, *adv. and conj.* [**quī**]; *as adv.*, in respect of which, in what; *in transitions with other particles*, as **sī**, **nisi**, **quoniam**, *etc.*, but, though; *as conj.*, that, in that, the fact that, as to the fact that, because, since.

quōminus, *see quō*.

quondam, *adv.*, once, formerly.

quoniam, *conj.* [**quom+iam**], since, as, seeing that.

quoque, *conj.*, placed after the emphatic word, also, too.

quōque **versus**, in every direction.

quot, *indecl. adj.*; *rel.*, as many as, as; *interrog.*, how many?

quot-annis, *adv.*, as many years as there are; every year, yearly.

quotiēns, *adv.* [**quot**], how often? how many times? as often as, as many times as.

quotiēnscumque, *adv.*, as often as, whenever.

quousque, *adv.*, till when, until.

R

Racilia, *-ae, f.*, the wife of *Cincinnatus*.

radius, *-ī, m.*, rod; beam, ray

rādix, *-īcis, f.*, root; radish; *pl.*, *w. montis* or *collis*, foot, base.

rādō, *-ere, -sī, -sum, tr.*, scrape, shave; touch *in passing*, graze.

raeda, *-ae, f.*, wagon.

rāmālia, *-ium, n.* [**rāmus**], twigs, brushwood.

rāmus, *-ī, m.*, branch, twig.

rapiditās, *-ātis, f.* [**rapidus**, seizing], swiftness.

rapīna, *-ae, f.* [**rapīō**], robbery, pillage.

rapīō, *-ere, -puī, -ptum, tr.*, carry off, seize, snatch or hurry away, sweep away, take by force, rob.

rārus, *-a, -um, adj.*, scattered, far apart, here and there, few; rare.

ratio, *-ōnis, f.* [**ratus**], account, reckoning; **pecūniae ratiōnem habēre**, take an account, consider; **ratiōnem inire**, cast up accounts, make a reckoning, plan; **ratiō atque ūsus**, theory and practice; method, way, measure; reason, ground; theory, science, art; **ratiō ōrdōque**, plan and arrangement; affair, transaction.

ratio, *-is, f.*, raft, boat, vessel.

Rauracī, *-ōrum, m.*, a Gallic tribe. *Map IV, G, 3.*

re- or **red-**, *inseparable particle, used in composition*, back, again.

rebelliō, *-ōnis, f.* [**rebellis**, revolted], a renewal of war, revolt; **rebelliōnem facere**, renew the war.

Rebilus, *-ī, m.*, a cognomen.

re-cēdō, *-ere, -cessī, -cessum, intr.*, move back, retreat.

recēns, *-entis, adj.*, new, fresh, recent, late; **animae recentēs**, souls of those lately dead.

re-cēseō, *-ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēsum, tr.*, count over, enumerate, review.

receptus, *-ūs, m.* [**recipiō**], a place of withdrawal, refuge; retreat, withdrawal; **receptum** or **receptūs canere**, sound the retreat.

re-cingō, -ere, -cīnxi, -cīnctum, tr., ungird, loosen.

reciperō, see recuperō.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re-+capiō], take back, receive, admit; **recipere in fidem**, take under one's protection; **sē recipere**, recover oneself, betake oneself, withdraw, retreat, return.

re-clinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [clinō, bend], bend or lean back, recline.

re-cognōscō, -ere, -cognōvi, -cognitum, tr., know again, recognize, recall.

re-condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., hide away; close again, shut.

rēctē, adv. [rēctus], straightly, rightly, well.

rēctor, -ōris, m. [regō], a guider, ruler, governor, master.

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of regō], straight, direct.

recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., win back, recover.

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causa], refuse, decline, be reluctant.

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr., give back, restore, give up, resign; render, make; make or cause to be; utter in response; *w. iūs*, administer; offer.

red-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, intr., turn back, return, turn; come around, be brought; slope down.

redigō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō], drive back; reduce, bring; render, make.

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, tr. [red-+emō], buy back, ransom; release.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.

reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō], a returning, return.

reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], a going back, returning, return.

red-oleō, -ēre, -olui, —, intr. [oleō, smell], emit scent, be odorous.

Redonēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe living near modern Rennes. *Map IV, C, 2-3.*

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead or conduct back; extend back.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, tr., bring back, move back; **pedem referre**, move backward, retreat; bring again, bring; report, tell.

rē-fert, -ferre, -tulit, —, intr. [rēs+ferō], it is of advantage, matters.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [re-+faciō], remake, renew, refresh, recruit; repair, refit; with **sē**, recover.

refringō, -ere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr. [re-+frangō], break in or open, break, destroy.

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, intr., flee back, escape.

rēgina, -ae, f. [rēx], queen.

Rēginus, -ī, m., a cognomen.

regiō, -ōnis, f. [regō], direction, line, region, country; neighborhood, situation.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [rēx], of a king, royal, king's; befitting a king, regal; as *subst., m. pl.*, the king's officers or troops.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [rēgnum], be king, reign, govern, rule over.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [rēx], royal authority, sovereignty, supremacy, rule, reign, kingdom.

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., rule, govern; guide, control.

regredior, -ī, -gressus, intr. [re-+gradior], go back, return.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., a cognomen; esp. Marcus Atilius Regulus, a hero of the First Punic war.

reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [re-+

iaciō, throw or hurl back, drive back.

re-lāguēscō, -ere, -guī, —, *intr.*, grow faint or weak.

re-laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, unloose, open.

re-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, lift up, make light, ease, rest.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, piety; moral obligation, oath; religious matters in general.

re-liquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave; *impers. pass.*, be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**relinquō**], remaining, other, rest of; in **reliquum tempus**, afterward, for the future; *n.*, as *subst.*, a remainder, residue, rest.

re-mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, send back word.

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsi, —, *intr.*, remain, be left.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [**rēmus**+agō], rower, oarsman.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [**rēmex**], propel the oar, row.

re-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, move or go back, return.

reminīscor, -ī, —, *intr.*, recall, remember.

remissus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of remittō*], relaxed, not rigid, mild.

re-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send back, throw back; remit; release; relax, weaken.

re-mollēscō, -ere, —, —, *intr.* [**mollēscō**, become soft], grow soft, melt; be enervated or weakened; be influenced.

re-moror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr. and intr.*, tarry, linger, delay.

remōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**removeō**], remote.

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr. and intr.*, move back or away, put aside, withdraw, remove.

re-mūneror, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [**mūneror**, reward], reward, repay.

Rēmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or one of the Remi; as *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the Remi, a Belgic tribe. *Map IV, E-F, 2.*

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar.

re-novō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**novō**, make new], renew.

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, bring back word, report.

reor, **rērī**, **ratus**, *tr.*, believe, think, suppose.

reparābilis, -e, *adj.* [**reparō**], that may be repaired, reparable.

re-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, get again, replace; renew, restore.

re-pellō, -ere, **reppulī**, **repulsum**, *tr.*, drive back, repel, drive away; reject, refuse; refute, confute.

repente, *adv.* [**repēns**, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly.

repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**repēns**, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty.

reperiō, -īre, **repperī**, **repertum**, *tr.*, find again; find, meet with; discover, find out, ascertain.

re-petō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.*, ask back, exact; seek again, recall.

re-pleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [**-pleō**, fill], fill again, fill up, fill.

rēpō, -ere, **rēpsi**, —, *intr.*, creep, crawl.

re-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore, place

re-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry back, get, win; **praemium reportāre**, win a reward.

re-praesentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [**praesentō**, place before], do at once.

re-prehendō, -ere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.*, draw back; blame, censure.

reprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [**re**+**premō**], press or keep back, curb, check, restrain.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [repudium, putting away], put away; refuse, scorn.

re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., fight back, oppose, resist.

re-quiēs, -ētis (acc. requiem), f., rest, repose; respite, intermission.

re-quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum, intr. [quiēscō, become quiet], rest, repose; *of the dead*, rest, sleep.

requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr. [re-+quaerō], seek again, look after, search for.

rēs, rei, f., a thing, matter, affair; **rēs militāris**, warfare, the art of war; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain-supply, provisions; **rēs divīnae**, religious exercises, divine worship, sacrifice; fact, circumstance; **quam ob rem**, why; case, deed; **rem gerere**, fight; achievement, event; *pl.*, things in general, the universe; **rēs or rēs pūblica**, the state, commonwealth, republic, civil affairs, government; **novae rēs**, a change of government, revolution; interest, fortune; uncertainty, trouble; means; habit, custom.

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, tr., cut or break down, tear down, destroy.

re-sciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scitum, tr., find out, learn.

re-scribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., write again; transfer, promote.

re-secō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum, tr., cut off.

re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., keep back, save up, reserve.

resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, intr. [re-+sedeō], sit or remain behind, sit, remain.

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, intr., remain standing, halt, stop; make a stand, resist, withstand, oppose.

re-solvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr., unbind, loose, loosen.

respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. and intr. [re-+speciō, spy], look back, look at, regard; contemplate, be mindful of.

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, intr., answer, reply; correspond.

respōnsum, -ī, n. [respondeō], an answer, reponse.

re-spuō, -ere, -spuī, —, tr. [spuō, spit], refuse, reject.

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr. [re-+statuō], replace, restore, reinstate; renew; *w. aciem*, form again.

re-stō, -stāre, -stitī, —, intr., hold out; resist, oppose; be left, remain.

re-supīnus, -a, -um, adj., lying on the back, facing upward.

retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, tr. [re-+teneō], hold or keep back, retain, detain, hold; maintain.

re-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., drag or bring back.

retrō, adv., backward, to the rear, back.

re-vellō, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, tear], pull or tear away, pull out; wrest away.

reverētia, -ae, f. [revereor, revere], awe, reverence.

re-vertō, -ere, -tī, — (regularly in pf. tenses only) or re-vertor, -ī, -versus, intr., turn back, return.

re-vinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, tr., bind back or fast, fasten, bind.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., recall, call off, withdraw; recover.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēa, -ae, f., *praenomen of Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, which formed the boundary between Gaul and Germany. *Map I, D-E, 2-3.*

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone, a river of Gaul. *Map I, D, 3-4.*

Rhodii, -ōrum, *m.*, the inhabitants of Rhodes.

rictus, -ūs, *m.*, gaping jaws, jaws.

rigor, -ōris, *m.* [rigeō], hardness, firmness.

riguus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rigō, to water], watered; besprinkled, spattered.

rīma, -ae, *f.*, cleft, chink, crack.

ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank of a river, bank, margin.

rīsus, -ūs, *m.* [rīdeō], laughter.

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak-tree, oak, oak-timber; strength, vigor.

rōbustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōbur], strong.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question, request; ask for, beg.

rogus, -ī, *m.*, funeral pyre.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome. *Map I, E, 4.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rome, Roman; *as subst., m.*, a Roman, *pl.*, the Romans.

Rōmulus, -ī, *m.*, the mythical founder and first king of Rome.

rōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [rōs, dew], shed moisture, drip.

rōstrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rōstrum], furnished with a beak, beaked.

rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw], beak, snout, muzzle; beak or prow of a ship; *pl.*, the Rostra, or speaker's platform in the forum.

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.

ruber, rubra, rubrum, *adj.*, red; rubrum mare, the Red Sea, the Arabian and Persian Gulf.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble.

rudis, -e, *adj.*, unformed, rough, coarse; rude, inexperienced.

Rūfīnus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see Cornēlius.

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen; see Sulpicus.

rūgōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [rūga, wrinkle], wrinkled, shriveled.

rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, rumor, gossip.

rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum, *tr.*, break; break in upon, interrupt.

ruō, -ere, rūī, rutum, *tr.*, fall or rush down, hasten, rush.

rūpēs, -is, *f.* [rumpō], rock, cliff.

rūrsum, *see* rūsus.

rūsus or **rūrsum**, *adv.* [reversus or reversum, *pf. part. of* revertō], back, back again, again, once more, in turn, further.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Celtic tribe. *Map IV, D-E, 4-5.*

Rutilus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen of one of Caesar's lieutenants.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Sabines, an Italian people adjoining the Latins on the north. *Map II, D, 4.*

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, cognomen of the legate Quintus Titurius.

Sabis, -is, *m.*, a tributary of the Meuse, the modern Sambre. *Map IV, E-F, 1.*

sacer, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, dedicated, sacred; holy.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [sacer], a priest, priestess.

sacrārium, -ī, *n.* [sacer], a shrine, sanctuary.

sacrificium, -ī, *n.* [sacrificus, sacrificial], sacrifice.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [sacer+faciō], sacrifice.

sacrilegus, -ī, *m.* [sacer+legō], one that robs a temple, an impious person.

sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sacer], consecrate, dedicate.

sacrum, -ī, *n.* [sacer], something holy; *pl.*, sacred things, sacred images; religious rites, sacrifices.

saeculum, -ī, *n.*, generation, age.

saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently.

saepenumerō, *adv.* [**saepe**+**numerus**], often, again and again.

saepēs, *-is, f.* hedge.

saepiō, *-ire, -psī, -ptum, tr.* [**saepēs**], hedge in, inclose, fortify, guard.

saeviō, *-ire, -iī, -itum, intr.* [**saevus**], rage, be furious, be violent.

saevus, *-a, -um, adj.*, fierce, furious; cruel, harsh.

sagitta, *-ae, f.*, arrow, shaft.

sagittārius, *-ī, m.* [**sagitta**], bowman, archer. *Caesar's archers came, for the most part, from Crete. They were armed with bows of more than 3½ feet in length, and carried quivers, each of which contained from 12 to 14 arrows.*

Saguntinī, *-ōrum, m.*, the people of *Saguntum*.

Saguntum, *-ī, n.*, a city on the east coast of Spain. *Map I, C, 5.*

Salamis, *-īnis, f.*, an island near the coast of Attica, west of Athens. *Map I, H, 6.*

salignus, *-a, -um, adj.* [**salix**], of willow-wood, willow.

Salinātor, *-ōris, m.*, a cognomen.

salix, *-icis, f.*, willow-tree, willow.

saltus, *-ūs, m.*, wooded height, forest-pasture, forest; mountain pass.

salūs, **salūtis**, *f.*, health; welfare, safety; *ad salūtem*, to a place of safety; greeting, salutation.

Samnitēs, *-ium (acc. pl. -ēs or -as), m.*, the Samnites, a Sabine people east of Latium. *Map II, D-E, 4.*

sanciō, *-ire, sānxī, sānctum, tr.*, make sacred, ordain, ratify.

sānctus, *-a, -um, adj.* [*pf. part. of sanciō*], sacred, holy, inviolable.

sanguis, *-inis, m.*, blood, bloodshed.

sānitās, *-ātis, f.* [**sānus**], soundness, good sense; *ad sānitātem reverti*, come to one's senses.

Santonī, *-ōrum or -um, m.*, a people of modern Saintonge. *Map IV, C-D, 4.*

sānus, *-ā, -um, adj.*, sound in body or mind, discreet, sensible.

sarcina, *-ae, f.*, baggage, pack, load. *This was the personal baggage carried by the legionary in addition to his arms and armor. It comprised his ration of grain, his cooking vessels, cloak, axe, hammer, etc. The weight of the whole amounted to about 60 pounds. In order that the burden might inconvenience the soldier as little as possible, Marius introduced forked poles, on which the food and cooking utensils could be fastened and carried over the shoulder. See ill. facing p. 135.*

Sardēs, *-ium (acc. -īs), f.*, the chief city of Lydia, in Asia Minor.

Sardinia, *-ae, f.*, an island in the Mediterranean. *Map I, E, 5.*

Sardiniēnsis, *-e, adj.* [**Sardinia**], Sardinian.

sarmentum, *-ī, n.*, brushwood, fagot.

sata, *-ōrum, n.* [*pf. part. of serō*], standing corn, crops.

satis, *indecl. adj.*, enough, sufficient; *as subst.*, enough; *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently, tolerably, somewhat, quite; *comp.*, **satius**, better, preferable.

satis-faciō, *-ere, -fēcī, -factum, intr.*, do enough for, give satisfaction to, apologize, make amends.

satisfactiō, *-ōnis, f.* [**satisfaciō**], excuse, plea, explanation.

satrapēs, *-ae [nom. pl., -ae], m.*, governor, satrap.

Sāturnius, *-a, -um, adj.*, of Saturn, Saturnian; *as subst., m.*, son of Saturn, *i.e.*, Jupiter.

satus, *see serō.*

sauciō, *-āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.* [**saucius**], wound, hurt.

saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded, injured.

saxum, -i, n., rock.

scālae, -ārum, *f.* [*cf.* **scandō**, climb], ladder, scaling-ladder.

scapha, -ae, *f.*, small boat, skiff.

scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of **scelerō**, defile], stained with crime, wicked, accursed.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, evil or impious act, a crime, sin.

scientia, -ae, *f.* [**sciēs**], knowledge, science, skill.

scilicet, *adv.* [**scire**+**licet**], you may know, evidently, that is; ironically, forsooth, doubtless.

scindō, -ere, **scidī**, **scissum**, *tr.*, split; tear down, destroy; *pass.*, be split, burst open.

sciō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, know, know how, understand.

Scipio, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen. (1) Gnaeus Cornelius Scipio Asina, consul in 260 B.C. (2) Lucius Scipio, consul in 259 B.C. (3) Publius Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., son of (2). (4) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, son of (3), consul in 205 and 194, conqueror of Hannibal. (5) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor, grandson of Lucius Aemilius Paulus, and destroyer of Carthage. (6) Lucius Cornelius Scipio Asiagenes, consul in 83 B.C. (7) Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, tribune of the plebs in 49 B.C., father-in-law of Pompey.

scitum, -ī, *n.* [**sciscō**, approve], decree.

Scordisci, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Pannonia. Map I, G, 3.

scribō, -ere, **scripsī**, **scriptum**, *tr.* and *intr.*, write, write out, tell or say in writing.

scriptor, -ōris, *m.* [**scribō**], writer, author.

scrobis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, ditch, pit.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield. The **scūtum** was an oblong shield, about four feet long by two and a half wide, not flat, but having a curved surface. It was made of boards closely joined together, and covered on the outside with heavy linen and leather. It was rimmed with metal, and had a metal projection or boss (**umbō**) in the middle, from which ran metal ornaments in the shape of thunderbolts over the surface of the shield. On the march, the soldier kept the **scūtum** in a leathern cover (**tegimentum**) and carried it hanging by a thong on his back or at his left side.

sē- or **sēd-**, inseparable particle used in composition, apart, away; =**sine**, without.

sē-cernō, -ere, -crāvī, -crētum, *tr.*, separate, distinguish.

secō, -āre, **secuī**, **sectum**, *tr.*, cut, cut through; run through, tra-

sectō, *adv.* [**sēcernō**], separately, apart, privately, secretly.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**secō**], a cutting, parcelling out; booty, spoil.

sectūra, -ae, *f.* [**secō**], a cutting; mine, quarry.

secundum, *prep.* with *acc.* [**secundus**], by, along, besides; in accordance with, according to.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [**sequor**], following, second; favorable, favoring; successful.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe; the lictor's axe, a symbol of authority.

sed, *conj.* with stronger adversative force than **autem**, the general word, both strong and weak, but, on the contrary.

sēdecim, *indecl. num. adj.* [**sex**+**decem**], sixteen.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, intr.,
sit, sit down; wait; rest, settle.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], seat, tribunal;
settlement; abode.

sedīle, -is, n. [sedeō], seat, chair.

sēditiō, -ōnis, f. [sēd-+eō], a going
aside; dissension, rebellion, revolt.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sēditiō],
full of sedition; rebellious, se-
ditionous.

sē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.,
lead aside, set aside, put by.

Sedulus, -ī, m., a leader of the
Lemovices.

sēdulus, -a, -um, adj., busy, careful.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m., a people living
about modern *Sitten*. Map IV,
G-H, 3.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe.

seges, -etis, f., cornfield, standing
corn, crop.

Segontiāci, -ōrum, m., a tribe of
southeast Britain. Map IV, C-
D, 1.

Segovax, -actis, m., a British prince
of Kent.

sē-gregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.
[gregō, collect], set apart, remove.

Segusiāvi, -ōrum, m., a tribe west of
the Rhone, about modern *Lyons*.
Map IV, E-F, 4.

sē-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr.,
separate, divide.

**sēlibra, -ae, f. [sē (=sēmi, half)+
libra],** a half-pound.

semel, num. adv., once, one time;
semel atque iterum, repeatedly.

sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], a
planting, sowing.

sēmi-barbarus, -a, -um, adj., semi-
barbarous.

Semiramis, -idis (-is,) f., a cele-
brated queen of Assyria.

semper, adv., always, perpetually.

Semprōnius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

(1) Tiberius Sempronius Longus,

consul in 218 B.C. (2) Marcus
Sempronius Rutilus, one of Cae-
sar's lieutenants.

Sēna, -ae, f., a town on the Umbrian
coast. Map II, D, 3.

senātor, -ōris, m. [senex], senator.

senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], council of
elders, senate.

senecta, -ae, f. [senex], old age.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], old age.

senex, senis, adj., old; as subst., m.,
old man, elder; comp., senior,
-ōris, older; as subst., m., old
man; pl., the elders.

sēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [sex],
six each.

senior, see senex.

Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of northern
Celtic Gauls, part of whom settled in
upper Italy. Map II, D, 3.

sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], judgment,
opinion, decision; wish, resolu-
tion; proposal; ex sententiā, ac-
cording to one's wish.

sentēs, -ium, m., thorns, briars.

sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsū, tr.,
perceive, realize, know; hear, see;
think, observe, decide; idem
sentire, be of the same opinion.

sēparātim, adv. [sēparō], apart, sep-
arately.

sē-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,
sever, separate; pf. part. as adj.,
separated, marked off, separate.

sepeliō, -ire, -ivī, -pultum, tr.,
bury.

septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.

**septentriōnēs, -um, m. [septem+
triōnēs, plowing oxen],** the stars of
the Great Bear, which were com-
pared to oxen drawing a wagon,
hence the North.

**septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [sep-
tem],** seventh.

**septingentēsimus, -a, -um, num.
adj. [septingenti],** seven hun-
dredth.

septingentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. *septem+centum*], seven hundred.

septuāgēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*septuāgintā*], seventieth.

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., seventy.

sepultūra, -ae, f. [*sepeliō*], burial.

Sēquana, -ae, m., the Seine, a river of Gaul. *Map IV, D-F, 2-3.*

Sēquamī, -ōrum, m., the Sequanians, an important tribe of eastern Gaul, north of the Rhone. *Map IV, F-G, 3.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, ensue; keep to; accede to, obey; fall to the share of, belong to; make use of, take advantage of; *fidem sequi*, put oneself under the protection of.

Ser., abbr. for Servius.

sera, -ae, f., bar, cross-bar, bolt.

Sergius, -ī, m., a Roman name; see *Catilina*.

sērius, comp. of sērō.

sermō, -ōnis, m. [*serō*], conversation, discourse.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant; beget, produce; *pf. part.*, begotten, born, sprung.

sērō, adv., late; *comp.*, sērius.

serpens, -entis, m. and f. [*serpō*, creep], snake, serpent.

Sertōrius, -ī, m., a Roman name; *esp. Quintus Sertorius, a partisan of Marius.*

servilis, -e, adj. [*servus*], of a slave, servile.

Servilius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, intr. [*servus*], be a slave or subservient to; submit; be at one's service; follow, seek for, heed.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [*servus*], slavery, servitude.

Servius, -ī, m., a praenomen.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., give heed to, watch, keep, maintain, preserve, save; *abs.*, keep guard; *fidem servāre*, keep one's word.

servulus, -ī, m. [*dim. of servus*], young slave.

servus, -ī, m., slave.

sēsqui-pedālis, -e, adj. [*sēsqui*, (one and a) half+*pedālis*, of a foot], of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch.

sētius, comp. adv., less, otherwise; *nihilō sētius*, none the less.

seu or sī-ve, conj., or if, be it that, or; *seu . . . seu or sive . . . sive*, either . . . or, whether . . . or.

sevērē, adv. [*sevērus, grave*], rigidly, strictly.

sē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call aside or apart, withdraw.

sex, indecl. num. adj., six.

sexāgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [*sexāgintā*], sixty each.

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., sixty.

sexcentēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*sexcentī*], six-hundredth.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [*sex+centum*], six hundred.

Sextius, -ī, m., a Roman name. (1) Publius Sextius Baculus, a brave centurion of Caesar's army. (2) Titus Sextius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

sextus, -a, -um, num. adj. [*sex*], sixth.

sexus, -ūs, m., sex; offspring.

sī, conj., if; whether, on the chance that, to see if.

Sibusātēs, -um, m., a tribe living near the Pyrenees, about modern Saubusse. *Map IV, C, 5.*

sic, adv., thus, in this manner; so, to such a degree; yet, still; *sic . . . ut*, just . . . as, so . . . that.

siccitās, -ātis, f. [*siccus*], dryness.

siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [*siccus*], make dry, drain; dry up, dry.

siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry, unwet; as *subst.*, *n.*, a dry place, dry land.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily. *Map I, F, 6.*

sic-utī, or **sic-ut**, *adv.*, so as, just as, as, as it were.

sidus, -eris, *n.*, constellation; star, heavenly body.

signifer, -ī, *m.* [**signum**+**ferō**], standard bearer. *See illus. facing p. 201.*

significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**significō**], signal, sign.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [**signum**+**faciō**], make signs, show, indicate.

signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, token, emblem; trace, track; a military standard, ensign; signal; image, statue, picture. *The signa or standards were of the utmost importance in the Roman army, as through their movements, which the general governed by means of signals from the trumpeters, the movements of all the troops were directed. Signa were of several kinds. There were the aquila of the legion, the signum (in a narrow sense) of the maniple, and the vexillum of the veterans, the cavalry, etc., as well as the vexillum which was the standard of the general. The cohort had no ensign of its own, and so the standard of the first maniple did duty as the signum of the whole cohort. It was borne on a long staff, and had a cross-piece at the top, from which fluttered ribbons, and the figure of an upright hand, below which was a complicated arrangement of disks and a crescent, each part of which had its especial significance. The cavalry followed the vexillum, a square banner of cloth, fringed at the bottom, which was borne on a long staff. Vexilla were of different colors. The term vexillum was also applied to the general's standard, which was set up at his tent as the signal for*

battle, or displayed as a sign for quick marching. It was a large banner, either red, or white with red lettering. For the different sorts of signa see illus. facing p. 201.

silēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **sileō**, be silent], still, quiet, silent, **silentium**, -ī, *n.* [**silēns**], stillness, silence; *abl. as adv.*, in silence, silently.

Silēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian.

Silius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Titus Silius, a military tribune.

silva, -ae, *f.*, wood, woodland, forest.

silvestris, -e, *adj.* [**silva**], of a wood or forest, wooded.

Silvia, -ae, *f.*, see **Rhēa**.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar, having a resemblance; *comp.*, **similior**, -ius, *sup.*, **simillimus**, -a, -um.

similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [**similis**], likeness, resemblance.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, together; as soon as; **simul atque**, as soon as; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and; partly . . . partly.

simulācrum, -ī, *n.* [**simulō**], image, figure, statue; form, phantom.

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [**simulō**], simulation, pretense, deceit.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [**similis**], make like, imitate; feign, pretend.

sīn, *conj.* [**sī**+**ne**], but if.

sincērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; *fig.*, chaste.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

singillatim, *adv.* [**singulī**], singly, one by one.

singulāris, -e, *adj.* [**singulī**], single; singular, unusual, remarkable.

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one apiece, single, one by one, one at a time, one on each side; several, respective; successive.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left, left-

hand, on the left; *sub sinistrā* (sc. *manū*), on the left.

sinistrōrsus, *adv.* [*sinister*+*vorsus* = *versus*], turned to the left, to the left.

sinō, -ere, *sivī* (*sī*), *situm*, *tr.*, let down; suffer, allow, permit.

sinus, -ūs, *m.*, a fold of a garment.

sistō, -ere, *stitī*, *statum*, *tr. and intr.* [*stō*], cause to stand; rest, stay.

sitis, -is, *f.*, thirst.

situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, site, position.

sive, see *seu*.

socer, *socerī*, *m.*, father-in-law.

societās, -ātis, *f.* [*socius*], fellowship, partnership, league, alliance.

socius, -ī, *m.*, companion, comrade; ally; accomplice.

Sōcraticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to Socrates, a pupil of Socrates.

sōl, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun; sunshine; *personified*, the Sun-god.

soldūrii, -ōrum, *m.*, vassals, retainers.

soleō, -ēre, -itus *sum*, *intr.*, be accustomed, be wont.

solidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, undivided; firm, hard.

sōlitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*sōlus*], solitude; wilderness.

solitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of soleō*], customary, usual, wonted.

sollers, -rtis, *adj.*, skilful, clever.

sollertia, -ae, *f.* [*sollers*], skill, shrewdness, quickness of thought.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, stir up, agitate, instigate; urge.

sollicitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agitated, anxious, watchful, alive (to).

solum, -ī, *n.*, bottom, ground; earth, soil.

sōlum, *adv.* [*sōlus*], only, merely; *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also.

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only, the only.

solvō, -ere, *solvī*, *solūtum*, *tr.* [*sē*+*luō*], loosen, untie, disengage; (sc. *nāvēs*), weigh anchor, put to sea; free, release, absolve; break up, banish, dispel; impair, enfeeble; annul; pay.

sonō, -āre, -uī, *sonātūrus*, *tr. and intr.*, sound, resound, make a noise; celebrate, praise.

sordidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sordēs*, filth], dirty; darkened, dingy.

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister; cousin.

sors, *sortis*, *f.*, lot, casting of lots; oracle, oracular response.

Sosylus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian.

Sotiātēs, -ium, *m.*, the most powerful people of Aquitania. *Map IV, C-D, 4-5.*

Sp., *abbr. for Spurius.*

Sparta, -ae, *f.*, Sparta. *Map I, H, 6.*

spatiōr, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.* [*cf. spatium*], walk, go, proceed.

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, distance; interval; period of time, time; opportunity.

speciēs, -iēī, *f.* [*speciō*, spy], sight, spectacle; shape, form; pretense.

spectāculum, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], place for spectators, place at a show; show, spectacle.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of speciō*, spy], look or gaze at, see, observe; face, lie, be situated.

speculātor, -ōris, *m.* [*speculor*, spy], spy, scout. *The speculātor was the individual spy, or reconnoitrer, sent out alone to obtain information in regard to the enemy. Usually he was himself a soldier, and differed from the explorātor mainly in the fact that the explorātōrēs were not sent out singly, but in detachments.*

speculātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*speculātor*], scouting, reconnoitring.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, *intr.*, spy.
 spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [spēs], hope, anticipate.
 spēs, speī, *f.*, hope, expectation.
 spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō], breath, air; breath of life, life; airs, pride.
 spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [spoli-um], strip, despoil, plunder.
 spolium, -ī, *n.*, skin; spoil, booty.
 sponda, -ae, *f.*, bedstead, frame of a couch.
 spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *tr.*, assure, promise, undertake.
 spontis, sponte, *gen. and abl. sing. from an obsolete nom.* spōns, *f.* [cf. spondeō], of one's own accord, voluntarily; suā sponte, of one's own accord.
 spūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, foam, froth.
 Spurius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.
 stabiliō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.* [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.
 stabilitās, -ātis, *f.* [stabilis, steady], steadiness.
 stāgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [stāgnum], stagnate; of places, be overflowed or inundated.
 stāgnum, -ī, *n.*, standing water, lake.
 statim, *adv.* [stō], at once, immediately.
 statio, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], a standing, stationing; military post, sentry, guard, outpost; reserve; in statione esse, be on guard.
 statua, -ae, *f.* [status], image, statue.
 statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [status], set up; put in position, place; resolve; decide, judge.
 statūra, -ae, *f.* [stō], stature.
 status, -ūs, *m.* [stō], standing, position; condition.
 sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātum, *tr.*, stretch out, spread, lay; stretch

stimulus, -ī, *m.*, a goad, spur; stake concealed beneath the ground as a defense.
 stipendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stīpendium], liable to duty, tributary; as *subst.*, *m.*, a tributary.
 stipendium, -ī, *n.* [stips, gift + pendō], tax; campaign.
 stipes, stīpit, *m.*, log, stock, trunk of a tree.
 stipula, -ae, *f.*, stalk, stem; dried stalks, straw.
 stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, *intr.*, stand, stand upright; stand still, be immovable; remain, be; be fixed or placed; stand by, abide by.
 strāmen, -inis, *n.* [sternō], straw.
 strāmentum, -ī, *n.* [sternō], straw, litter.
 strātum, -ī, *n.* [sternō], bed, couch.
 strēnuē, *adv.* [strēnuus, prompt], strenuously, promptly.
 strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make noise], confused noise, noise, clash.
 strideō (stridō), -ēre (-ere), stridī, —, *intr.*, make a noise, hiss.
 stridō, see strideō.
 stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictum, *tr.*, draw tight; touch or sweep lightly; strip off; w. gladium, unsheathe.
 studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr.*, be eager, desire, wish; pay attention or heed to, lay stress on.
 studiōsē, *adv.* [studiōsus, eager], eagerly, carefully.
 studium, -ī, *n.* [studeō], eagerness, enthusiasm, good-will, devotion, desire; occupation, pursuit.
 stultē, *adv.* [stultus], foolishly, stupidly.
 stultitia, -ae, *f.* [stultus], folly.
 suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr. and*

sub, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*; with *acc.*, of motion, under, beneath, into; of time, just before, toward, about, just at, during; with *abl.*, of place, under, beneath, at the foot of; of time, in, at, within; of direction, on, toward; **sub sinistrā** (*sc. manū*), on the left; *w. oculis*, before; of other relations, under, beneath, with, in the reign of.

sub-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put or set under, plunge under.

sub-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, draw or lead up, beach; withdraw, draw off.

subductiō, -ōnis, *f.* [subdūcō], a leading or drawing up; drawing ashore, beaching.

sub-eō, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *tr.*, come or go under, come up, approach; succeed, take the place of; endure, submit to.

sub-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *tr.*, dig under; stab or pierce underneath.

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [sub+iaciō], hurl or put under or near, place below; cast, throw up; expose, make subject; *pf. part. as adj.*, lying under or below, near, neighboring.

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [sub+agō], drive up; put down, conquer, subdue, subjugate; incite; constrain.

subitō, *adv.* [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly, all at once.

subitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected, suddenly arisen.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, lift up, help up, support; *sē sub-levāre*, rise up.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake, palisade.

sublicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sublica], resting on piles; *pōns sublicius*, the pile-bridge built by *Ancus Marcius*. *Map III, D, 4.*

sub-luō, -ere, —, -lūtum, *tr.* [luō, wash], wash underneath, wash.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ministrō, serve], furnish, supply, give.

sub-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, let down, lower, drop; send up, send to one's assistance.

sub-moveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, dislodge, drive back.

sub-ruō, -ere, -ui, -utum, *tr.*, undermine, dig under.

sub-sequor, -ī, -secutus, *tr. and intr.*, follow on, follow.

subsidium, -ī, *n.* [sub+sedeō], reserve, aid, assistance; reserves, reinforcements; **subsidia comparare**, make provision; **subsidiō venire**, or **subsidium ferre**, relieve.

sub-sidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *intr.* [sidō, sit down], sit down, settle down, sink, subside.

sub-sistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *intr.*, stand, remain; hold out, hold firm.

sub-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be under; be near or close at hand.

sub-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, take away, withdraw.

sub-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, bring up, transport.

sub-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to aid, assist.

succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō], go under, enter, go or come up from beneath; come close to, come up to, advance; succeed to, take the place of, follow; in *locum succedere*, succeed to one's position; in *stationem succedere*, take one's place on guard.

succendō, -ere, -cendī, -censum, *tr.* [sub+cendō, burn], set on fire from below, kindle.

successus, -ūs, *m.* [succēdō], an advance, approach; onset; success.

succidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [sub+caedō], cut from beneath, cut down, fell, cut through.

succingō, -ere, -cīnxī, -cīnctum, tr. [sub+cingō], gird below, gird; *pf. part.*, with tucked-up skirt.

succrēscō, -ere, —, —, intr. [sub+crēscō], grow from below, grow up; be supplied anew.

succumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr. [sub+cumbō, recline], fall or sink down, yield, succumb.

succurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [sub+currō], run under or to the help of, assist, succor.

sūcus, -ī, m., juice, moisture.

sudis, -is, f., pile, stake.

sūdor, -ōris, m. [sūdō, sweat], sweat, perspiration.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m., a powerful people of central Germany. *Map IV, H-I, 2.*

Suessa, -ae, f., a city in Latium, usually called Suessa Pometia. *Map I, B, 8.*

Suessiōnēs, -um, m., a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons. *Map IV, E, 2.*

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [sub+faciō], put under; be enough; choose, elect.

suffrāgium, -ī, n., ballot, vote; decision, election.

suffrāgor, -ārī, -ātus, intr., vote for, support.

Sugambri, -ōrum, m., a German tribe. *Map IV, G, 1.*

sui, sibi, sē, sēsē, sing. and pl. pron. of 3d pers.; reflex., of himself, herself, itself; of themselves; *in acc. as subject of inf.*, him, her, it, them, he, she, etc.; *recipr.*, each other, one another.

Sulla, -ae, m., a Roman cognomen; esp. Lucius Cornelius Sulla, consul in 88 B.C., afterwards dictator, and champion of the aristocracy against Marius.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., a Roman name.

(1) Publius Sulpicius, consul in 280 B.C.

(2) Publius Sulpicius Rufus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist, happen, belong.

summa, -ae, f. [summus], the top; sum total, aggregate; chief control, general management, final decision; **summa imperi**, the chief command; *in summā*, in general, generally.

summus, see superus.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr. [sub+emō], take, take to oneself, take on, assume, take into one's hands; undertake; consume, eat.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptus], expensive, lavish.

sūmptus, -ūs, m. [sūmō], expense, cost.

supellectilis (more commonly supellex), -is, f., furniture, goods, furnishings.

super, adv. and prep. with acc. and abl.; as adv., above, on top; *as prep. with acc.*, over, above, beyond; *as prep. with abl.*, above, concerning, about.

superbē, adv. [superbus], proudly, arrogantly.

superbus, -a, -um, adj., proud, haughty; *as subst., m.*, the Proud, cognomen of Tarquinius, the seventh king of Rome.

super-incidō, -ere, —, —, intr., fall from above, fall upon.

super-iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr., throw on, cast over.

superior, see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [superus], rise above, overtop; be superior, surpass; survive; **vītā superāre**, survive; overrule, overmatch; subdue, conquer.

super-sedeō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,

intr., sit over, be above; refrain or desist from.

superstes, -itis, *adj.* [super+stō], standing by; remaining alive, surviving.

super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be left, survive.

superus, -a, -um, *adj.* [super], high, high up; **Mare Superum**, the Adriatic; *as subst., pl.*, **superi**, the gods above, gods; *comp.*, **superior**, -ius, higher, upper, superior, stronger; conquering, victorious; *of time*, earlier, former, previous; *sup.*, **summus**, -a, -um, and **suprēmus**, -a, -um, highest; the highest or uppermost part of, top of, surface of; *as subst., n.*, **summum**, the top, summit; greatest, most important, preëminent, utmost; complete, perfect; *of time*, last, final.

super-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr. and intr.*, come up, arrive, rush in; come upon, surprise.

supīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, backward, on the back; **manibus supīnis**, with upturned or outspread hands.

suppetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, *intr.* [sub+petō], be at hand, hold out, suffice.

suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [sub+pleō, fill], fill up, make full, fill.

supplex, -icis, *adj.*, suppliant; *as subst., m.*, a suppliant.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [supplicō, kneel], public prayer in times of calamity or rejoicing; thanksgiving.

suppliciter, *adv.* [supplex], as a suppliant, humbly.

supplicium, -ī, *n.* [supplex], punishment, torture, execution.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sub+portō], bring up, carry or convey to.

supputātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+putō], a reckoning up, computation.

suprā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [su-

perus] *as adv.*, above; earlier, before; *as prep.*, above, on; *of time*, before.

suprēmus, *see superus.*

surgō, -ere, **surrēxī**, **surrēctum**, *tr. and intr.* [sub+regō], raise; rise, arise.

sūs, **suis**, *m. and f.*, a swine, boar.

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [sub+capiō], take up, assume, receive; enter upon, begin, undertake.

suscitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sub+citō, urge], stir up, rekindle.

suspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.* [speciō, spy], look up, admire.

suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [sub+speciō, spy], suspicion, distrust.

suspīcor, -ārī, -ātus, *tr.* [*cf.* **suspiciō**, look up], mistrust, suspect.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of* **sustineō**], sustain, maintain; withstand; hold out, endure.

sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [sub+teneō], hold up, support, sustain, bear the weight of; **sē sustinēre**, stand, stand up; check, stay; withstand; bear, undergo, hold out; maintain; wear.

suus, -a, -um, *poss. pron.*, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; one's own peculiar or personal; *w. mors*, natural; *m. pl. as subst.*, one's own people, family, or friends, one's own men, party, or troops; *n. pl. as subst.*, one's property.

Syphāx, -ācis, *m.*, a king of Numidia.

Syria, -ae, *f.*, a country of Asia, on the Mediterranean. Map I, J, 5.

T

T., *abbr. for Titus.*

tabellārius, -ī, *m.* [tabella, tablet], letter or dispatch carrier.

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent.

tabula, -ae, *f.*, plank; tablet;
tabula picta, a painted tablet,
painting, picture.

tabulātum, -ī, *n.* [tabula], flooring
of boards, story.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*,
be silent, keep silent.

Tachus, -ī, *m.*, a king of Egypt.

taeda, -ae, *f.*, pine-wood; torch, *esp.*
the marriage-torch; marriage.

taedium, -ī, *n.* [taedet, it wearies],
weariness, disgust.

tālea, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar.

talentum, -ī, *n.*, talent, about
\$1,132 in gold.

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a sort;
tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as; of
this sort.

tam, *adv.*, so, so far; *correl. w.*, **quam**,
in such a degree, as much, so.

tamen, *adv.*, yet, for all that, still,
nevertheless, however.

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames. *Map*
IV, C-D, 1.

tametsī, *adv.* [tamen+etsī], al-
though.

tam-quam, *adv.*, as if, just as if; on
the ground that.

tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, *tr.*,
touch, take away; reach, come to;
border on; *fig.*, touch, move,
affect.

tantopere, *adv.* [tantō+opere], so
greatly, very greatly, fiercely.

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of*
tantus], so small or little, so
diminutive, so trifling.

tantum, *adv.* [tantus], so much; only,
alone, merely; **tantum . . . quan-**
tum, as much or as far . . . as.

tantum-modo, *adv.*, so much only;
only, merely.

tantundem, *adv.* [tantus], just as
great or far, just so far.

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, such,
so large; **tantus . . . quantus**, as
great or large . . . as, such . . . as;
n. as subst., so much; **tantum . . .**
quantum, as much . . . as; *gen. of*
price, **tantī**, of such value, worth
so much.

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m.*, an Aquitanian
tribe about modern Tarbes. *Map*
IV, C, 5.

tardē, *adv.* [tardus], slowly, with
delay.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus],
retard, hinder, check.

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tardy, sluggish,
slow.

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of
Tarentum. *Map II, F, 5.*

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, a Greek city in
southern Italy. *Map II, F, 5.*

Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, name of an early
Roman gens, said to have come
from Etruria.

(1) Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth
king of Rome.

(2) Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh
king of Rome.

(3) Sextus Tarquinius, son of (2).

(4) Tarquinius Collatinus, husband
of Lucretia.

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m.*, a Gallic people
on the west coast of Aquitania.
Map IV, C, 4-5.

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull, ox.

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, a British prince.

Tectosagēs, -um, *m.*, a branch of the
Volcae. *Map IV, D-E, 5.*

tēctum, -ī, *n.* [tegō], covering,
roof; roofed inclosure, house, hall.

tegimentum, -ī, *n.* [tegō], covering.

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, *tr.*, cover,
cover over; shelter, protect; con-
ceal, keep secret; crown, adorn.

tellūs, -ūris, *f.*, earth; land, ground;
space of ground, district.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, dart, javelin
weapon.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temere], imprudent, rash, indiscreet.

temere, *adv.*, by chance, without reason or cause, rashly.

temeritās, -ātis, *f.* [temere], chance; rashness, indiscretion.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, beam, pole, especially of a chariot.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperāns], moderation, self-control.

temperātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of temperō*], moderate, temperate, mild.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tempus], restrain one's self, refrain.

tempestās, -ātis, *f.* [tempus], time, season; weather, bad weather; storm, tempest.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [tendō], handle; make trial of, attempt, attack.

tempus, -oris, *n.*, time, season; occasion, crisis; passage or duration of time.

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe living east of the Usipetes. *Map IV, G-H, 1.*

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; aim; *w. insidiās*, lay.

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.*, shades, darkness.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr.*, hold, keep; occupy, watch, guard; seize, possess, inhabit; check, stay, hold back, control, bind; detain; *castris sē tenere*, keep inside the camp; include, extend; *for cursum tenere*, take one's way, steer, sail.

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, soft; of tender age, young.

tentō, *see temptō.*

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, little, slight.

tenuiter, *adv.* [tenuis], thinly, slightly.

tepeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be warm.

tepidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [tepeō], moderately warm, warm.

ter, *num. adv.*, thrice, three times.

Terentius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

(1) Publius (or Gaius) Terentius Varro, consul in 216 B.C. (2)

Marcus Terentius Varro, a partisan of Pompey in the Civil War.

teres, -etis, *adj.* [terō], rubbed or rounded off, smooth.

tergeō, -ēre, tersī, tersum, *tr.* [terō], rub or wipe off, wipe clean.

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back, rear; *tergum vertere or dare*, turn one's back, take to flight, flee; covering of the back, skin, hide; *w. suis*, back, piece of bacon.

tergus, -oris, *n.*, the back; *tergus suis*, a piece of bacon.

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each or apiece; three on each side; three by three.

terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, *tr.*, rub, grind; grind against, graze.

terra, -ae, *f.*, the earth; land, territory, country, soil; *personified as a goddess*, Terra, Earth.

Terrasidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; *esp. Titus Terrasidius*, a military tribune.

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra], of earth, earthy, earthen.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten, alarm; frighten or drive away.

territō, -āre, —, —, *tr.* [*freq. of terreō*], frighten greatly, terrify.

territōrium, -ī, *n.* [terra], territory, domain.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [terreō], fear, panic.

tertiō, *adv.* [tertius], for the third time.

tertius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], the third, third.

testa, -ae, *f.* [=tosta, from *torreō*, parch], bit of burned clay, bit of earthenware; potsherd.

testamentum, -i, *n.* [testor], will, testament.

testimōnium, -i, *n.* [testis], witness, evidence, proof.

testis, -is, *m.* and *f.*, witness.

testūdō, -inis, *f.* [testa], tortoise; shed, *testudo*, covered column.

(1) The term *testūdō* is applied to the overlapping formation of shields

sloping roof from which missiles rolled easily, and which was covered with raw hides as a protection against fire. The end turned toward the enemy had an opening let into it, through which the head of the ram could readily move. The men in charge of the *ariēs* stood at the opposite end, and, drawing the beam back by means of ropes, set it swinging heavily against the enemy's walls. See *illus.* facing p. 233.

TESTUDO

which an attacking column threw up to protect itself, when it rushed forward to break open a gate or scale a wall. (2) A heavy shed for the protection of attacking parties was also called *testūdō*. This had a heavy roof, but no floor or sides, except the side that was turned toward the enemy. Under cover of such sheds the soldiers could work safely close to the wall of a besieged town. (3) The *testūdō arietaria* was a shed in which the *ariēs* was hung if it was not placed in the lowest story of a siege-tower. It had a steeply

testula, -ae, *f.* [dim. of *testa*, bit of burned clay], voting tablet.

Teutoni, -ōrum, (-um), *m.*, the Teutons, a people from northern Germany.

textum, -i, *n.* [texō, weave], web, fabric, cloth.

Thēbāni, -ōrum, *m.*, the people of Thebes, a town in Greece. Map I, H, 5.

Themis, -idis (acc. -in, voc. -i), *f.*, the goddess of justice and prophecy.

Themistoclēs, -is, or -i, *m.*, an Athenian statesman.

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country of Greece. *Map I, G-H, 5.*

Thermopylae, -ārum, *f.*, a pass between the mountains and the sea, opposite the north end of the island of Euboea. *Map I, H, 5.*

Thisbē, -ēs (*acc. -ēn*), *f.*, a maiden of Babylon.

Ti., *abbr. for Tiberius.*

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the principal river of central Italy. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, beam, piece of timber.

Tigrānēs, -is (*Greek acc. -ēn*), *m.*, a king of Armenia, son-in-law of Mithridates.

tigris, -is (*-idis*), *m. and f.*, tiger, tigress.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the Tigurini; as *subst., m. pl.*, the Tigurini, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians. *Map IV, G, 3.*

tilia, -ae, *f.*, linden-tree.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, dread; be afraid of, be anxious, be alarmed.

timidē, *adv.* [timidus], with fear or cowardice, timidly.

timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō], fear, dread, alarm, timidity.

tinguō (-gō), -ere, tīnxī, tinctum, *tr.*, wet, drench, bathe, dye.

Tissaphernēs, -is, *m.*, a Persian governor of Lydia and Caria.

Titānia, -ae, *f.*, Pyrrha, granddaughter of the Titan Iapetus.

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Quintus Titurius Sabinus, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Titus, -ī, *m.*, a praenomen.

toga, -ae, *f.* [tegō], toga, the outer garment worn by the Romans in civil life.

togātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [toga], wearing the toga.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, bear up under, endure; hold out; nourish, support.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, raise, take up, pick up; *w.* ancoram, weigh; take on board, carry; *w.* clāmōrem, set up; take away, carry off, remove; break off, put an end to; kill.

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.*, a town on the Garonne, modern Toulouse. *Map IV, D, 5.*

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Tolosa. *Map IV, D, 5.*

tormentum, -ī, *n.* [torqueō], an engine for hurling missiles; torment, torture. **Tormenta** were engines fashioned after the principle of the cross-bow, though the force was supplied, not by the rebound of a bow, but by elastic cords woven of ropes, hair, etc. Two sorts were used in Caesar's army, the **cata-pulta**, which threw light missiles and arrows, and the **ballista**, which flung heavy missiles and stones. The **onager** was not employed till a later time. The **ballista** and the **onager** are shown in the *illus. facing p. 233.*

tortilis, -e, *adj.* [torqueō], twisted, winding.

torus, -ī, *m.*, a swelling; cushion, couch; marriage-bed, marriage.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.

totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number.

totiēns, *adv.* [tot], so many times, so often.

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, the whole of, all, entire.

trabs, **trabis**, *f.*, a beam, timber, log, tree.

tractō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, drag; handle, manage; treat, conduct oneself toward.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [trāns+dō], give up, deliver over, surrender; hand down, report, tell; impart, teach.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [trāns+dūcō], lead across or over, bring over, draw over.

trāgula, -ae, f., a light javelin or dart, used by the Gauls.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, tr., draw, drag, drag along, draw out or forth; derive, deduce; carry along or with, get, take on, assume, acquire; take upon; distract.

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [trāns+iaciō], throw over, put over, transport, bring across; thrust through, pierce, stab; go over, pass over, cross.

trāiectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō], a crossing over, crossing, passage.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquillus, calm], stillness; calmness of mind or weather.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond.

trāscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, tr. and intr. [trāns+scandō, climb], climb across or over into, board.

trāns-eō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum, tr. and intr., go over, pass over, cross; pass by, pass; desert.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr., take or carry across, transfer.

trāns-figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., pierce through, transfix.

trāns-fodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr., dig or thrust through, transfix, wound.

trāns-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, intr., flee to the other side, desert.

trāns-gredior, -i, -gressus, tr. and intr. [trāns+gradior], step across, pass over, cross.

trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [trāns+agō], drive or carry

through, finish, bring to an end, settle.

trānsitus (acc. -um, abl. -ū), m. [trānseō], a going over, passage.

trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, adj. [marīnus, of the sea], from over the sea; foreign.

trānsmissus, -ūs, m. [trānsmittō], a sending across, passing over, passage.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, —, tr. and intr. [trāns+nō], swim across.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry over, remove, transport.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj. [trāns+Rhēnus], beyond or across the Rhine; *m. pl. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine.

trānstrum, -ī, n., cross-beam or timber; bench for rowers.

trāns-versus, -a, -um, adj., turned across, cross-, at right angles.

Trasumēnus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria. *Map II, C, 3.*

Trebia, -ae, f., a small tributary of the Po. *Map II, B, 2.*

Trebius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Marcus Trebius Gallus, a military tribune.

Trebōnius, -ī, m., a Roman name; esp. Gaius Trebonius, a friend of Cicero and Caesar.

trecentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [trecentī], three-hundredth.

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., three hundred.

tredecim, indecl. num. adj. [trēs+decem], thirteen.

tremebundus, -a, -um, adj. [tremō], trembling, quaking.

tremō, -ere, -uī, —, intr., tremble, quiver, shudder.

tremulus, -a, -um, adj. [tremō], shaking, quivering, tremulous.

trepidātiō, -ōnis, f. [trepidō], alarm, confusion.

trepidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agitated, alarmed, disturbed.

trēs, tria, *num. adj.*, three.

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic people about modern Treves. *Map IV, F-H, 2.*

Tribocī, -ōrum, *m.*, a tribe in the neighborhood of modern Strasburg. *Map IV, G-H, 2.*

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune. The tribūnī militum were generally young men of senatorial or equestrian rank, who had little or no experience in military affairs, and who were in reality using the office as a good means of entering political life, and of gaining at the same time some military experience. There were six to each legion, and they originally divided the command, three holding it at once; but Caesar soon discovered that his tribunes were not especially efficient officers, and put the lēgātī in command of the legions. The tribunes were given light duties, and no independent command except on unimportant occasions. They performed such offices as keeping the muster-rolls, giving out the watchword, keeping order in camp, etc.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.* [tribus, division of the people], assign, allot, bestow, grant, yield; pay, render; ascribe, attribute.

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* [tribuō], tribute, tax.

trīcēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [trīgintā], thirtieth.

trīciēs, *num. adv.* [trīgintā], thirty times.

tricuspis, -idis, *adj.* [trēs+cuspis], with three points, three-pronged; tricuspis tēlum, the trident.

tridēns, -entis, *adj.* [trēs+dēns], with three teeth, three-pronged; as *subst.*, *m.*, trident.

trīdium, -ī, *n.* [trēs+diēs], three days.

triennium, -ī, *n.* [trēs+annus], period of three years, three years.

trīgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty.

trimēnstris, -e, *adj.* [trēs+mēnsis], of or for three months.

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [trēs], threefold, triple.

Trinovantēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe of south-eastern Britain. *Map IV, D, 1.*

tripertitō, *adv.* [tripertitus, in three parts], in or into three parts.

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, in three divisions or lines, triple; three.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, with three corners, triangular.

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, unhappy, gloomy, disconsolate, melancholy, saddening.

trīstitia, -ae, *f.* [trīstis], sadness, dejection.

Trītōn, -ōnis (*acc.* -ōna), *m.*, Triton, Neptune's son, a sea-god.

trīumphālis, -e, *adj.* [trīumphus], triumphal; having had a triumph.

trīumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [trīumphus], celebrate a triumph; dē aliquō trīumphāre, celebrate a triumph in honor of a victory over anyone.

trīumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph; trīumphum agere, to triumph.

Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city of Asia Minor. *Map I, H-I, 5.*

Troucillus, -ī, *m.*, a cognomen.

truncō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [truncus], maim, cut off; foliis truncāre, to strip of leaves.

truncus, -a, -um, *adj.*, maimed, disfigured.

trux, **trucis**, *adj.*, fierce, stern, savage.

tū, **tuī** (*nom. pl. vōs*), *pers. pron.*, thou, you.

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. *This was a straight, long, bell-mouthed instrument, over three feet in length. With it the tubicinēs or trumpeters gave the signals for attack and retreat. For its appearance see the illus. facing p. 201.*

tueor, -ēri, *tūtus*, *tr.*, look at, watch over; care for; defend, protect.

tugurium, -ī, *n.*, hut, cottage.

Tulingi, -ōrum, *m.*, a German tribe. *Map IV, G-H, 3.*

Tullius, -ī, *m.*, name of a Roman gens.

(1) Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.

(2) Marcus Tullius Cicero, see Cicerō.

(3) Quintus Tullius Cicero, see Cicerō.

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, see Hostilius.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, thereupon.

tumulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tumulus], cover with a mound, bury.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion; disturbance, rebellion.

tumulus, -ī, *m.* [tumeō, swell], a swelling, mound, hill; sepulchral mound.

tunc, *adv.*, then, just then, at that time.

tunica, -ae, *f.*, an undergarment, tunic.

turbō, -inis, *m.* [verb turbō], whirlwind; of a shell, a whorl, spiral.

turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [turba, crowd], disturb, break; make turbid.

turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of cavalry, the tenth part of an āla, numbering about 33 men.

Turonī, -ōrum, *m.*, a people of Touraine. *Map IV, D, 3.*

turpis, -e, *adj.*, unsightly, unseemly, disgraceful, shameful, dishonorable, foul.

turpiter, *adv.* [turpis], basely, shamefully, disgracefully.

turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis], ugliness; baseness, disgrace.

turris, -is, *f.*, tower; high building, citadel. *The towers used by the Romans in war were of two sorts, (1) the turris vallāris and (2) the turris mōbilis or ambulātōria. The first was an immovable tower, of several stories in height, constructed upon a wall to serve as a defense. The turris ambulātōria was a movable wooden tower on wheels or rollers, built up to at least the height of the wall it was to aid in storming. Caesar had siege-towers of as many as ten stories. Sometimes it was constructed on the agger, and sometimes was placed beside it. Stairs on the inside led from story to story. Three sides were boarded up, with windows let in to enable the besiegers to discharge missiles at the enemy. Often the upper stories were provided with drawbridges, which enabled attacking parties easily to reach a city wall; and in the upper parts were also placed engines of war. Often the ariēs was hung in the lowest story. The whole structure was protected from fire by wet hides hung over it, and abundant provision of water was kept in reservoirs in the lowest part. See illus. facing p. 233.*



Tuscia, -ae, *f.*, Etruria. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

Tusculum, -ī, *n.*, a town near Rome. *Map I, B, 8.*

Tuscus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Tuscan, Etruscan; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Etruscans, Etrurians. *Map II, C, 3-4.*

tūtēla, -ae, *f.* [tueor], watch, protection, defense; keeper, guardian.

tūtō, *adv.* [tūtus], safely, securely.

tūtor, -ōris, *m.* [tueor], guardian, tutor.

tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of tueor*], protected, safe, in safety, secure.

tyrannicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tyrannical, despotic.

tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, monarch, sovereign, lord.

U

ūber, -eris, *adj.*, rich, full, fruitful.

ubi, *adv.*; *rel.*, where, in which place, when, whenever; **ubi primum**, as soon as; *interrog.*, when? where?

ubique, *adv.*, in any place, everywhere.

Ubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Ubii; *as subst., m. pl.*, the Ubii, a German tribe on the east bank of the Rhine, near Cologne. *Map IV, G-H, 1-2.*

ulciscor, -ī, *ultus*, *tr.*, take vengeance on, punish, avenge.

ūllus, -a, -um (*gen. ūllius*), *adj.*, any; *as subst.*, anyone, anybody.

ulmus, -ī, *f.*, elm-tree.

ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther, beyond, ulterior.

ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of ulterior*], most remote or distant; last part of, end of; last, extreme; utmost, greatest.

ultrō, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord; without provocation or cause, actually.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.* [ululō, howl], a howling, yell, shrieking.

ulva, -ae, *f.*, swamp-grass, sedge.

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow; *of the dead*, a shade, ghost.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, the shoulder.

ūmidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūmeō, be moist], moist, damp, wet.

umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever.

ūnā, [ūnus], *adv.*, together, along with, at the same time.

unda, -ae, *f.*, a wave, billow; stream; water, moisture.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence, from which; on the side that.

ūndecim, *indecl. num. adj.* [ūnus+decem], eleven.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [ūnus+decimus], eleventh.

ūndēvigintī, *indecl. num. adj.* [ūnus+dē+vigintī], one from twenty, nineteen.

undique, *adv.* [unde+que], from all sides, on all sides.

unguentum, -ī, *n.*, ointment, perfume.

ūnicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus], single, only.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus+versus], all together, whole, entire.

ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, single; only, alone; the same; in **ūnum**, to one place, together.

urbs, **urbis**, *f.*, city; *esp.* the City, Rome.

urgeō (**urgueō**), -ēre, **ursī**, —, *tr.*, press, press on, press hard; drive, urge.

urna, -ae, *f.*, urn, burial-urn.

ūrus, -ī, *m.*, wild ox or bison.

Usipetēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe beyond the Rhine, below Cologne. *Map IV, F-G, 1.*

usquam, *adv.*, in or to any place.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even to, even, as far as; **usque adeō**, to so great an extent.

ūsus, -ūs, m. [ūtor], use, control, management; service, advantage; **ūsui or ex ūsū**, of advantage; practice, skill, experience; occasion, need.

ut or uti, adv. and conj.; as *adv.*, when, since, as soon as; as, just as, like; inasmuch as, seeing that; though, although; *introducing an indirect question*, how; **ut . . . sic**, while . . . yet, though . . . still; **ut quisque with a sup. followed by ita with a sup.**, the more . . . the more; as *conj.*, that, so that, so as to, in order that.

uter, utra, utrum, pron.; *interrog.*, which of the two? which? *indef.*, whichever of two, whichever one.

uter-que, utraque, utrumque, adj., each of two, both; *pl.*, of two parties, each side, both.

Utica, -ae, f., a town in Africa. *Map I, E, 6.*

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor], useful, serviceable, expedient.

ūtilitās, -ātis, f. [ūtilis], usefulness, advantage, service.

uti-nam, conj., oh that! if only! I wish that!

ūtor, -i, ūsus, intr., make use of, employ; adopt, have; observe, exercise, show; keep possession of; enjoy; associate with.

utpote, adv., namely, as.

utrimque, adv. [uterque], on both sides; from each side, from each.

utrobique, adv., on both sides.

utrum, adv. [uter], whether.

ūva, -ae, f., a grape, bunch of grapes.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife, consort.

V

V, for quīque, etc.

Vacalus, -i, m., the Waal, a branch of the Rhine. *Map IV, F, 1.*

vacātiō, -ōnis, f. [vacō], freedom, exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., be empty or unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō], empty, unoccupied; free, destitute.

vadum, -i, n., ford, shallow, shoal; bed, channel; *of a river*, vada nōta, its wonted channel.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, intr. [vagus], roam about, roam, wander.

vagus, -a, -um, adj., wandering, roving.

valēns, -entis, adj. [valeō], powerful.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, intr., be strong, be powerful, have strength or power, have weight or influence; succeed; **multum valēre**, be strong or powerful, have great influence: **minus valēre**, be less or too little powerful, have too little power; *imp.*, farewell, good-bye.

Valerius, -i, m., a Roman name.

(1) Lucius Valerius Publicola, *consul in 509 B.C.*

(2) Publius Valerius Laevinus, *consul in 280 B.C.*

(3) Lucius Valerius Laevinus, *consul in 206 B.C.*

(4) Lucius Valerius Flaccus, *propraetor in Gaul, 83 B.C.*

(5) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, *a Roman legate defeated by the Aquitani.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valeō], state of health; good health; infirmity, sickness.

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], strong, stout, powerful.

vallēs (-is), -is, f., a vale, valley.

vāllum, -i, n. [vāllus], wall of earth, earthworks, intrenchments, rampart. *The term vāllum was loosely used by the Romans, sometimes applying to the rampart of earth (also called agger) surrounding a camp, and sometimes to the palisade of stakes that often surmounted the earthwork. The reg-*

ular fortification of a Roman camp consisted of a wall and ditch (see fossa). The rampart was usually made with the earth thrown up from the ditch, and its slope was made firm with turf, stones, etc., if time permitted. Inside, it was

vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, zealously, powerfully.

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, *tr.*, bear, carry, convey; *pass.*, be carried, ride, sail.

VALLUM AND FOSSA

vallus, -ī, *m.*, a stake, pale.

Vangionēs, -um, *m.*, a German tribe.

varietās, -ātis, *f.* [varius], difference, variety; varied color.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, different; manifold, changing.

Varrō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; see Terentius.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vāstus], make empty, ravage, destroy.

vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, empty, uninhabited; vast, immenae.

vāsum, -ī, *n.*, vessel, jar.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [vāticinor, predict], prediction, prophecy.

vectigal, -ālis, *n.* [vectigālis], tax, revenue, tribute.

vectigālis, -e, *adj.* [vehō], paying revenue or tribute, tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō], for carrying; vectōria nāvigia, transport-ships.

Veientēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of the Etrurian town Veii. Map I, A, 7.

vel, *conj.* [volō], or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.

vēlāmen, -inis, *n.* [vēlō], a covering, veil, garment.

Velānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp., Quintus Velanius, a military tribune.

Vellocassēs, -um, *m.*, a Belgic tribe on the Seine. Map IV, D, 2.

Vellavī, -ōrum, *m.*, clients of the Arverni living in modern Velay. Map IV, E-F, 4.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vēlum], cover, veil, wrap, cover over.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, *f.* [vēlōx], swiftness, speed.

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, fleet.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, a covering, veil; awning, curtain; sail; vēla dare or facere, set sail.

vel-ut or vel-utī, adv., even as, just as if, as though.

vēna, -ae, f., a blood-vessel, vein; of minerals, a vein of metal.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], hunting, hunting expedition; hunting spectacle.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, hunt], a hunter.

vēndō, -ere, -didī, —, tr. [vēnum, sale+dō], sell, put to sale; sell at auction.

Venellī, -ōrum, m., a people of Normandy. *Map IV, C, 2.*

vēnēnātus, -a, -um, adj. [venēnō, poison], filled with poison, poisonous.

venēnum, -ī, n., poison.

Venetī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe of Brittany, near modern Vannes. *Map IV, B, 3.*

Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of the Veneti. *Map IV, B, 3.*

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of or with the Veneti.

venia, -ae, f., favor, grace, indulgence; pardon.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, intr., come, go; in dēditionem venīre, surrender.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [double freq. of veniō], keep coming, be wont to come, resort.

ventus, -ī, m., the wind.

Venusia, -ae, f., a town in southern Italy. *Map II, E, 5.*

Veragrī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people in the Alps. *Map IV, G, 3-4.*

Verbigenus, -ī, m., one of the four divisions of the Helvetians.

verbum, -ī, n., a word; *pl.*, words, discourse, conversation; a saying, expression; *verba facere*, to speak.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., a chief of the Arverni.

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Arverni and commander of the allied Gallic forces at Alesia.

vereor, -ērī, -itus, tr., to reverence, fear, dread.

vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., be inclined, lie toward, look toward; slope, incline.

vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret, the chief magistrate of the Haeduan.

vērō, adv. [vērus], postpositive, in truth, indeed, assuredly; however, but; to mark a climax, even.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of vertō], turn often, turn; change; *pass. as deponent*, live, dwell, remain, be, be occupied or busy.

versus, -ūs, m. [vertō], a line, line of writing, verse.

vertex, -icis, m. [vertō], a whirlpool; the crown of the head, head; top, peak, summit.

vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, tr., turn, turn around; *tergum vertere*, to flee; *annō vertente*, in the course of a year; change, alter.

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a chief of the Helvetians.

vērum, adv. [vērus], truly, certainly; but.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, genuine, reasonable, right; *as subst., n.*, the truth, reality, fact; *vērī simile*, probable.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., the chief town of the Sequani, modern Besançon. *Map IV, F, 3.*

vesper, -erī (-eris), m., the evening star, evening; *sub vesperum*, toward evening.

Vestālis, -e, adj., Vestal, pertaining to Vesta.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vōs], your, yours.

vestigium, -ī, n. [vestigō, track], the sole of the foot; step, footprint; trace, mark; spot, place.

vestiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, *tr.*, clothe, dress.

vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing, vesture; a cover, spread.

vestitus, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō], clothing, garments.

veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus], old, veteran.

vetō, -āre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, not to allow, forbid; prevent, hinder.

Vettōnēs, -um, *m.*, a tribe in Lusitania, in Spain. *Map I, A, 5.*

Veturius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name.

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient; former, of a former time.

vetustās, -ātis, *f.* [vetus], old age, long existence; antiquity, ancient times.

vetustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus], old, ancient.

vexillum, -ī, *n.* [*dim. of vēlum*], a standard, banner. *For a description see signum; for illud. see plate facing p. 201.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of vehō*], shake; harass, plunder, overrun.

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, path; journey, march.

viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via], a traveler.

vicēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [vigintī], twenty each, twenty.

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [vigintī], twentieth.

vicīēs, *num. adv.* [vigintī], twenty times.

vicīnia, -ae, *f.* [vicīnus], neighborhood, nearness; neighbors.

vicīnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vicus], neighboring, near by, near.

vicis, *f.*, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; in vicem or in vicēs, in turn, alternately, one another.

victima, -ae, *f.*, a sacrifice, victim.

victor, -ōris, *m.*, a victor; as *adj.*, victorious.

victōria, -ae, *f.* [victor], victory.

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vivō], means of living, living, food; manner of life.

vicus, -ī, *m.*, street; village.

videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, understand; see to, take care; *pass.*, seem, appear, seem good, be decided or adjudged.

vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a watching, watch.

vigintī, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty.

vīlis, -e, *adj.*, of small price, of little value, cheap.

vīlla, -ae, *f.*, country house, farmhouse, farm, villa.

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, pliant twig, wither, osier.

Viminālis, -e, *adj.* [vīmen], of osiers; Viminal; as *subst., m.* (*sc. collis*), the Viminal Hill. *Map III, E, 2-3.*

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīctum, *tr.*, bind, fetter; restrain.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *tr. and intr.*, conquer, overcome, defeat; convince, win; prevail, have one's way.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [vinciō], bond, fastening; *pl.*, bonds, chains, prison.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vindex], claim, maintain; assert authority; avenge, punish; in aliquem vindicāre, take vengeance upon.

vineā, -ae, *f.*, vineyard, vine-arbor, vine; a shed for the defense of a besieging party. *This was a structure 7 or 8 feet high, about 6 feet wide, and from 13 to 16 feet long. It was built of wood and wicker-work, and ran on rollers. Like other Roman siege-works built of inflammable materials, it was protected from fire by wet coverings,*

such as raw hides, etc. The vinea is shown in the illus. facing p. 233.

- vinētum**, -ī, *n.* [vinum], vine-garden, vineyard.
vinum, -ī, *n.*, wine.
violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vis], violate, injure, dishonor.
vir, virī, *m.*, a man; man of courage; husband.
vireō, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, be green or fresh.
virēs, see **vis**.
virginens, -a, -um, *adj.* [virgō], of or like a maiden, maidenly.
virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin, young girl.
virgulta, -ōrum, *n.*, thicket; sprouts, brushwood.
viridis, -e, *adj.* [vireō], green; young, fresh.
Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, a Haeduan chief.
Viridovix, -icis, *m.*, a chief of the Venelli.
virilis, -e, *adj.* [vir], male, manly.
viritim, *adv.* [vir], man by man, singly, individually.
Viromandui, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe of modern Picardy. Map IV, E-F, 1-2.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir], manliness, courage, bravery; excellence.

- vis**, *acc.* vim, *obl.* vi, *f.*, force, violence; great number; *pl.*, virēs, -ium, strength; vim facere, use violence, resist; influence.
viscus, -eris, *n.* (usually *pl.*), the internal organs, entrails; flesh.
visus, -ūs, *m.* [videō], a sight, spectacle.
vita, -ae, *f.*, life; way of life, manner of living.
vitiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vitium], make defective, injure, damage.
vitis, -is, *f.*, a vine, grapevine.
vitium, -ī, *n.*, fault, imperfection.
vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, shun, avoid, escape.
vitrum, -ī, *n.*, glass; woad, a plant used in dyeing blue.
vitulina, -ae, *f.* [vitulus, calf], veal.
vivō, -ere, vixi, *intr.*, live; support life, feed; dwell.
vivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vivō], alive, living; of rock, unwrought, native.
vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, barely, with difficulty.
Vocātēs, -ium, *m.*, an Aquitanian people. Map IV, C-D, 4.
Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of the Norici.
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vōx], call, summon; call by name, name.
Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.*, a Gallic tribe in the Alps. Map IV, F, 4.
Volcae, -arum, *m.*, a people of the Province. Map IV, D-F, 4-5.
volō, velle, volui, —, *tr. and intr.*, will, be willing, wish, purpose, determine; be minded, be about.
Volsi, -ōrum, *m.*, an ancient tribe of southern Latium. Map II, D, 4.
volucer, -cris, -cre, *adj.* [volō, fly], flying, winged; fleet, swift; as *subst.*, *f.*, a bird.
voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [volō], will, wish, desire; consent, approval; goodwill, attachment.

voluptās, -ātis, *f.* [volō], what one wishes; pleasure, delight; darling.

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name; esp. Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, a tribune of Caesar's army.

volūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of volvō], roll, turn; turn over in one's mind, ponder, consider.

volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtum, * *tr.*, roll; *pass. with reflex. meaning*, roll along, flow.

vōs, see tū.

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges Mountains. *Map IV, G, 2-3.*

vōtum, -ī, *n.* [voveō], vow, promise; wish, prayer.

voveō, -ēre, vovī, vōtum, *tr.*, devote, vow; wish, wish for.

vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, sound, tone; cry, shout; utterance, speech; word, saying.

Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, the god of fire and metals; *fig.*, fire.

vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus], commonly, publicly, universally.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people, crowd; the rabble, masses.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vulnus], wound.

vulnus, -eris, *n.*, a wound.

Vulsō, -ōnis, *m.*, a cognomen; see Mānlius (3).

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, expression, countenance, look, features, face.

X

X, for decem, etc.

Xanthippus, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan general.

Xenophōn, -ōntis, *m.*, an Athenian soldier and author.

Xerxēs, -is, *m.*, a king of Persia.

Z

Zama, -ae, *f.*, a town in northern Africa. *Map I, E, 6.*

